Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)

First Published: 2018-07-18

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883
CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

Preventing Unauthorized Access  1
Finding Feature Information    1
Preventing Unauthorized Access    1
Feature Information for Preventing Unauthorized Access    2

CHAPTER 2

Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels  3
Restrictions for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges  3
Information About Passwords and Privilege Levels    4
Default Password and Privilege Level Configuration    4
Additional Password Security    4
Password Recovery    4
Terminal Line Telnet Configuration    5
Username and Password Pairs    5
Privilege Levels    5
How to Control Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels    6
Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password    6
Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption    7
Disabling Password Recovery    9
Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line    10
Configuring Username and Password Pairs    11
Setting the Privilege Level for a Command    13
Changing the Default Privilege Level for Lines    15
Logging into and Exiting a Privilege Level    16
Monitoring Switch Access    16
Configuration Examples for Setting Passwords and Privilege Levels    17
Example: Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password    17
Contents

Configuring PPP Authentication Using AAA 33
  PPP Authentication Using Kerberos 35
  PPP Authentication Using Local Password 35
  PPP Authentication Using Group RADIUS 36
  Configuring RADIUS Attribute 44 in Access Requests 36
  PPP Authentication Using Group TACACS 36
  PPP Authentication Using group group-name 36
  Configuring AAA Scalability for PPP Requests 37
Configuring ARAP Authentication Using AAA 37
  ARAP Authentication Allowing Authorized Guest Logins 39
  ARAP Authentication Allowing Guest Logins 39
  ARAP Authentication Using Line Password 39
  ARAP Authentication Using Local Password 40
  ARAP Authentication Using Group RADIUS 40
  ARAP Authentication Using Group TACACS 40
  ARAP Authentication Using Group group-name 40
Configuring NASI Authentication Using AAA 41
  NASI Authentication Using Enable Password 42
  NASI Authentication Using Line Password 42
  NASI Authentication Using Local Password 43
  NASI Authentication Using Group RADIUS 43
  NASI Authentication Using Group TACACS 43
  NASI Authentication Using group group-name 43
Specifying the Amount of Time for Login Input 44
Enabling Password Protection at the Privileged Level 44
Changing the Text Displayed at the Password Prompt 45
Preventing an Access Request with a Blank Username from Being Sent to the RADIUS Server 45
Configuring Message Banners for AAA Authentication 46
  Configuring a Login Banner 46
  Configuring a Failed-Login Banner 47
Configuring AAA Packet of Disconnect 48
Enabling Double Authentication 48
  How Double Authentication Works 49
  Configuring Double Authentication 50
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessing the User Profile After Double Authentication</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling Automated Double Authentication</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Automated Double Authentication</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting Automated Double Authentication</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Dynamic Authorization Service for RADIUS CoA</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring a Device to Ignore Bounce and Disable RADIUS CoA Requests</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Domain Stripping at the Server Group Level</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-AAA Authentication Methods</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Line Password Protection</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establishing Username Authentication</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling CHAP or PAP Authentication</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using MS-CHAP</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining PPP Authentication using MS-CHAP</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Examples</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: RADIUS Authentication</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: TACACS Authentication</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Kerberos Authentication</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: AAA Scalability</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Configuring Login and Failed-Login Banners for AAA Authentication</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: AAA Packet of Disconnect Server Key</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Double Authentication</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Automated Double Authentication</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional References for Configuring Authentication</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Information for Configuring Authentication</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 5

### Configuring Authorization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization Prerequisites</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information About Configuring Authorization</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Named Method Lists for Authorization</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization Methods</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization Methods</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method Lists and Server Groups</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization Types</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization Types</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Generating Interim Accounting Records 107
Configuring an Alternate Method to Enable Periodic Accounting Records 108
Generating Interim Service Accounting Records 109
Generating Accounting Records for a Failed Login or Session 110
Specifying Accounting NETWORK-Stop Records Before EXEC-Stop Records 110
Suppressing System Accounting Records over Switchover 110
Configuring AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting 111
Configuring AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records 111
AAA Broadcast Accounting 111
Configuring Per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting 112
AAA Session MIB 112
Establishing a Session with a Router if the AAA Server Is Unreachable 113
Monitoring Accounting 113
Troubleshooting Accounting 113
Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting 114
Example: Configuring a Named Method List 114
Example: Configuring AAA Resource Accounting 116
Example: Configuring AAA Broadcast Accounting 116
Example: Configuring per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting 117
Example: AAA Session MIB 117
Additional References for Configuring Accounting 117
Feature Information for Configuring Accounting 118

CHAPTER 7
Configuring Local Authentication and Authorization 121
How to Configure Local Authentication and Authorization 121
Configuring the Switch for Local Authentication and Authorization 121
Monitoring Local Authentication and Authorization 123
Additional References 124
Feature Information for Local Authentication and Authorization 124

CHAPTER 8
Configuring TACACS+ 125
Prerequisites for TACACS+ 125
Information About Controlling Switch Access with TACACS+ 126
TACACS+ and Switch Access 126
### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS Accounting</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Configure RADIUS</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying the RADIUS Server Host</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring RADIUS Login Authentication</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining AAA Server Groups</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring RADIUS Authorization for User Privileged Access and Network Services</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting RADIUS Accounting</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Settings for All RADIUS Servers</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Device to Use Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Device for Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring CoA on the Device</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring CoA Functionality</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Information for RADIUS</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing                       | 183  |
- Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing                        | 183  |
- Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing                       | 184  |
  - RADIUS Server Load Balancing Overview                               | 184  |
  - Transaction Load Balancing Across RADIUS Server Groups              | 184  |
  - RADIUS Server Status and Automated Testing                        | 185  |
- How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing                        | 186  |
  - Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group            | 186  |
  - Troubleshooting RADIUS Server Load Balancing                       | 187  |
- Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing              | 188  |
  - Example: Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group   | 188  |
  - Example: Monitoring Idle Timer                                     | 190  |
  - Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with the Same Authentication and Authorization Server | 191  |
  - Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Different Authentication and Authorization Servers | 192  |
Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Overlapping Authentication and Authorization Servers 192
Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Subset of Authorization Servers 192
Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Superset of Authorization Servers 193
Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 193
Feature Information for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 194

CHAPTER 11  Device Sensor 197
Restrictions for Device Sensor 197
Information About Device Sensor 197
Device Sensor 197
How to Configure Device Sensor 199
Enabling Accounting Augmentation 199
Creating a Cisco Discovery Protocol Filter 200
Creating an LLDP Filter 201
Creating a DHCP Filter 202
Applying a Protocol Filter to the Sensor Output 203
Tracking TLV Changes 204
Verifying the Device Sensor Configuration 205
Troubleshooting Tips 206
Configuration Examples for Device Sensor 207
Examples: Configuring the Device Sensor 207
Additional References for Device Sensor 208
Feature Information for Device Sensor 208

CHAPTER 12  HTTP Gleaning 209
Information About HTTP Gleaning 209
HTTP Gleaning Overview 209
How to Configure HTTP Gleaning 210
Configuring the Device Sensor Filter Specification for the HTTP TLV 210
Verifying HTTP Gleaning 211
Additional References for HTTP Gleaning 211
How to Configure MACsec Encryption 227
Configuring MKA and MACsec 227
Configuring an MKA Policy 227
Configuring MACsec on an Interface 229
Configuring MKA MACsec using PSK 232
Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK 232
Configuring MACsec MKA on an Interface using PSK 233
Configuring Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption 234
Generating Key Pairs 235
Configuring Enrollment using SCEP 235
Configuring Enrollment Manually 237
Applying the 802.1x MACsec MKA Configuration on Interfaces 239
Configuring MACsec XPN 241
Configuring an MKA Policy for XPN 241
Applying the XPN MKA Policy to an Interface 242
Configuring MKA/MACsec for Port Channel 242
Configuring MKA/MACsec for Port Channel using PSK 242
Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 2 EtherChannels 244
Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 3 EtherChannels 245
Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement 246
Configuring an MKA Policy for Secure Announcement 246
Configuring Secure Announcement Globally (Across all the MKA Policies) 248
Configuring EAPoL Announcements on an Interface 248
Configuring Cisco TrustSec MACsec 249
Configuring Cisco TrustSec Switch-to-Switch Link Security in Manual Mode 249
Configuring Examples for MACsec Encryption 251
Example: Configuring MKA and MACsec 251
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK 252
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using EAP-TLS 252
Example: Configuring MACsec XPN 252
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK 255
Example: Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement 262
Examples: Cisco TrustSec Switch-to-Switch Link Security 265
Example: Displaying MKA Statistics 267
Verifying the Status of the Secure Shell Connection 296
Verifying the Secure Shell Status 297
Monitoring and Maintaining Secure Shell Version 2 298
Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 301
Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 1 301
Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 2 301
Example: Configuring Secure Shell Versions 1 and 2 301
Example: Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device 302
Example: Configuring Server-Side SCP 302
Example: Setting an SNMP Trap 302
Examples: SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication 302
Example: Enabling Client-Side Debugs 302
Example: Enabling ChPass with a Blank Password Change 303
Example: Enabling ChPass and Changing the Password on First Login 303
Example: Enabling ChPass and Expiring the Password After Three Logins 304
Example: SNMP Debugging 304
Examples: SSH Debugging Enhancements 305
Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 306
Feature Information for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 307

CHAPTER 17

SSH Support Over IPv6 309
Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6 309
Information About SSH Support over IPv6 309
SSH over an IPv6 Transport 309
How to Enable SSH Support over IPv6 310
Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device 310
Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6 311
Example: Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device 311
Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6 311
Feature Information for SSH Support over IPv6 312

CHAPTER 18

X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 313
X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 313
Prerequisites for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 313
Restrictions for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 313
Information About X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 314
Digital Certificates 314
Server and User Authentication using X.509v3 314
How to Configure X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 314
Configuring IOS SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication 314
Configuring IOS SSH Server to Verify User's Digital Certificate for User Authentication 315
Verifying Configuration for Server and User Authentication Using Digital Certificates 317
Configuration Examples for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 318
Example: Configuring IOS SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication 318
Example: Configuring IOS SSH Server to Verify User's Digital Certificate for User Authentication 318
Additional References for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 319
Feature Information for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 319

CHAPTER 19

Secure Copy 321
Prerequisites for Secure Copy 321
Information About Secure Copy 321
How Secure Copy Works 321
How to Configure Secure Copy 322
Configuring Secure Copy 322
Configuration Examples for Secure Copy 323
Example: Secure Copy Configuration Using Local Authentication 323
Example: SCP Server-Side Configuration Using Network-Based Authentication 324
Additional References 324
Feature Information for Secure Copy 324

CHAPTER 20

Configuring Secure Socket Layer HTTP 327
Information about Secure Socket Layer HTTP 327
Secure HTTP Servers and Clients Overview 327
Certificate Authority Trustpoints 327
CipherSuites 329
Default SSL Configuration 330
SSL Configuration Guidelines 330
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Switch and ACL Functions</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stack Member and ACL Functions</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Switch Failure and ACLs</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access List Numbers</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Named IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACL Logging</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN Map Configuration Guidelines</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN Maps with Router ACLs</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN Maps and Router ACL Configuration Guidelines</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Ranges for ACLs</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information about Network Security with ACLs</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Configure ACLs</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Numbered Standard ACL</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Numbered Extended ACL</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Named Standard ACLs</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Extended Named ACLs</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Time Ranges for ACLs</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying an IPv4 ACL to a Terminal Line</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Named MAC Extended ACLs</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying a MAC ACL to a Layer 2 Interface</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring VLAN Maps</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a VLAN Map</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Examples for ACLs</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples: Using Time Ranges with ACLs</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples: Including Comments in ACLs 380
IPv4 ACL Configuration Examples 381
  ACLs in a Small Networked Office 381
  Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office 382
  Example: Numbered ACLs 383
  Examples: Extended ACLs 383
  Examples: Named ACLs 384
  Examples: Time Range Applied to an IP ACL 384
  Examples: Configuring Commented IP ACL Entries 385
  Examples: ACL Logging 385
Configuration Examples for ACLs and VLAN Maps 387
  Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Deny a Packet 387
  Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Permit a Packet 387
  Example: Default Action of Dropping IP Packets and Forwarding MAC Packets 387
  Example: Default Action of Dropping MAC Packets and Forwarding IP Packets 388
  Example: Default Action of Dropping All Packets 388
Configuration Examples for Using VLAN Maps in Your Network 389
  Example: Wiring Closet Configuration 389
  Example: Restricting Access to a Server on Another VLAN 390
  Example: Denying Access to a Server on Another VLAN 390
Configuration Examples for ACLs 391
Feature Information for IPv4 ACLs 391

CHAPTER 23
IPv6 ACLs 393
IPv6 ACLs Overview 393
  Switch Stacks and IPv6 ACLs 394
  ACL Precedence 394
  VLAN Maps 394
  Interactions with Other Features and Switches 395
Restrictions for IPv6 ACLs 395
Default Configuration for IPv6 ACLs 396
Configuring IPv6 ACLs 396
Attaching an IPv6 ACL to an Interface 400
Configuring a VLAN Map 401
CHAPTER 24

Configuring DHCP 407

Information About DHCP 407
  DHCP Server 407
  DHCP Relay Agent 407
  DHCP Snooping 407
  Option-82 Data Insertion 409
  Cisco IOS DHCP Server Database 411
  DHCP Snooping Binding Database 412
  DHCP Snooping and Switch Stacks 413

How to Configure DHCP Features 413
  Default DHCP Snooping Configuration 413
  DHCP Snooping Configuration Guidelines 414
  Configuring the DHCP Server 414
  DHCP Server and Switch Stacks 414
  Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent 415
  Specifying the Packet Forwarding Address 416
  Prerequisites for Configuring DHCP Snooping and Option 82 418
  Enabling the Cisco IOS DHCP Server Database 419
  Monitoring DHCP Snooping Information 419

Configuring DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation 420
  DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation 420
  Default Port-Based Address Allocation Configuration 420
  Port-Based Address Allocation Configuration Guidelines 420
  Enabling the DHCP Snooping Binding Database Agent 420
  Enabling DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation 422
  Monitoring DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation 424

Feature Information for DHCP 424

CHAPTER 25

DHCP Options Support 427

Restrictions for DHCP Options Support 427
CHAPTER 26

DHCP Client Option 12  433
  Information About DHCP Options Support  433
  Additional References  433
  Feature Information for DHCP Client Option 12  434

CHAPTER 27

DHCP Gleaning  435
  Prerequisites for DHCP Gleaning  435
  Information About DHCP Gleaning  435
    Overview of DHCP Gleaning  435
    DHCP Snooping  436
  How to Configure DHCP Gleaning  436
    Configuring an Interface as a Trusted or an Untrusted Source for DHCP Gleaning  436
  Configuration Examples for DHCP Gleaning  438
    Example: Configuring an Interface as a Trusted or an Untrusted Source for DHCP Gleaning  438
  Additional References for Device Sensor  438
  Feature Information for DHCP Gleaning  438

CHAPTER 28

DHCPv6 Options Support  441
  Information About DHCPv6 Options Support  441
    CAPWAP Access Controller DHCPv6 Option  441
    DNS Search List Option  442
    DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option  442
    DHCPv6 Relay Agent  443
  How to Configure DHCPv6 Options Support  443
    Configuring CAPWAP Access Points  443
    Configuring DNS Search List Using IPv6 Router Advertisement Options  444
Contents

CHAPTER 29  DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration  449
Restrictions for Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source  449
Information About DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration  449
DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration  449
How to Configure a DHCPv6 Relay Source  450
  Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source  450
    Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source on an Interface  450
  Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source Globally  451
Configuration Examples for DHCPv6 Relay Source  452
  Example: Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source on an Interface  452
Additional References for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration  452
Feature Information for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration  453

CHAPTER 30  Configuring IP Source Guard  455
Information About IP Source Guard  455
  IP Source Guard  455
    IP Source Guard for Static Hosts  455
    IP Source Guard Configuration Guidelines  456
How to Configure IP Source Guard  457
  Enabling IP Source Guard  457
  Configuring IP Source Guard for Static Hosts on a Layer 2 Access Port  458
Monitoring IP Source Guard  460
Additional References  460
Feature Information for IP Source Guard  461

CHAPTER 31  Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection  463
Restrictions for Dynamic ARP Inspection  463
Understanding Dynamic ARP Inspection  464
  Interface Trust States and Network Security  466
Rate Limiting of ARP Packets 467
Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries 467
Logging of Dropped Packets 467
Default Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration 468
Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries 468
Configuring ARP ACLs for Non-DHCP Environments 468
Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection in DHCP Environments 471
Limiting the Rate of Incoming ARP Packets 473
Performing Dynamic ARP Inspection Validation Checks 475
Monitoring DAI 477
Verifying the DAI Configuration 477
Additional References 478
Feature Information for Dynamic ARP Inspection 479

CHAPTER 32 Configuring IPv6 First Hop Security 481
Prerequisites for First Hop Security in IPv6 481
Restrictions for First Hop Security in IPv6 481
Information about First Hop Security in IPv6 482
How to Configure an IPv6 Snooping Policy 484
How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to an Interface 485
How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 487
How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs Globally 488
How to Configure the IPv6 Binding Table Content 489
How to Configure an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy 490
How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to an Interface 491
How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 492
How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to VLANs Globally 493
How to Configure an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy 494
How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to an Interface 497
How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 498
How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to VLANs Globally 499
How to Configure an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy 499
Example: Avoiding a Short Device-Tracking Binding Reachable Time 529
Feature History and Information for SISF-Based Device Tracking 529

CHAPTER 34

Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 531
Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 531
Information About 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 531
  Port-Based Authentication Process 532
  Port-Based Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange 534
Authentication Manager for Port-Based Authentication 535
  Port-Based Authentication Methods 535
  Per-User ACLs and Filter-Ids 536
  Port-Based Authentication Manager CLI Commands 536
Ports in Authorized and Unauthorized States 538
Port-Based Authentication and Switch Stacks 539
  802.1x Host Mode 539
  802.1x Multiple Authentication Mode 540
    Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment 540
MAC Move 542
MAC Replace 542
  802.1x Accounting 543
  802.1x Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs 543
  802.1x Readiness Check 544
Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication 544
  802.1x Authentication with VLAN Assignment 545
  802.1x Authentication with Per-User ACLs 546
  802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs 547
VLAN ID-Based MAC Authentication 548
  802.1x Authentication with Guest VLAN 548
  802.1x Authentication with Restricted VLAN 549
  802.1x Authentication with Inaccessible Authentication Bypass 550
    Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Support on Multiple-Authentication Ports 550
    Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Authentication Results 550
    Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Feature Interactions 551
  802.1x Critical Voice VLAN 551
Contents

802.1x User Distribution 552
   802.1x User Distribution Configuration Guidelines 552
IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Voice VLAN Ports 552
IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Port Security 553
IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Wake-on-LAN 553
IEEE 802.1x Authentication with MAC Authentication Bypass 554
Network Admission Control Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x Validation 555
Flexible Authentication Ordering 556
Open1x Authentication 556
Multidomain Authentication 557
802.1x Suppliant and Authenticator Switches with Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) 558
Voice Aware 802.1x Security 559
Common Session ID 560
How to Configure 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 560
Default 802.1x Authentication Configuration 560
802.1x Authentication Configuration Guidelines 562
   802.1x Authentication 562
   VLAN Assignment, Guest VLAN, Restricted VLAN, and Inaccessible Authentication Bypass 563
   MAC Authentication Bypass 564
   Maximum Number of Allowed Devices Per Port 564
Configuring 802.1x Readiness Check 564
Configuring Voice Aware 802.1x Security 566
Configuring 802.1x Violation Modes 568
Configuring 802.1x Authentication 569
Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 570
Configuring Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication 573
Configuring the Host Mode 574
Configuring Periodic Re-Authentication 576
Changing the Quiet Period 577
Changing the Switch-to-Client Retransmission Time 578
Setting the Switch-to-Client Frame-Retransmission Number 579
Setting the Re-Authentication Number 580
Enabling MAC Move 582
### CHAPTER 37

**Configuring Port-Based Traffic Control** 649

- Overview of Port-Based Traffic Control 649
- Information About Storm Control 649
  - Storm Control 649
  - How Traffic Activity is Measured 649
  - Traffic Patterns 650
- How to Configure Storm Control 651
  - Configuring Storm Control and Threshold Levels 651
- Information About Protected Ports 653
  - Protected Ports 653
  - Default Protected Port Configuration 654
  - Protected Ports Guidelines 654
- How to Configure Protected Ports 654
  - Configuring a Protected Port 654
- Monitoring Protected Ports 655
- Information About Port Blocking 656
  - Port Blocking 656
- How to Configure Port Blocking 656
  - Blocking Flooded Traffic on an Interface 656
- Monitoring Port Blocking 658
- Prerequisites for Port Security 658
- Restrictions for Port Security 658
- Information About Port Security 658
  - Port Security 658
  - Types of Secure MAC Addresses 658
  - Sticky Secure MAC Addresses 659
  - Security Violations 659
  - Port Security Aging 660
Port Security and Switch Stacks  660
Default Port Security Configuration  661
Port Security Configuration Guidelines  661
Port-Based Traffic Control  662
How to Configure Port Security  663
Configuration Examples for Port Security  669
Additional References for Port-Based Traffic Control  670
Feature Information for Port-Based Traffic Control  670

CHAPTER 38  Port Security  673
Prerequisites for Port Security  673
Restrictions for Port Security  673
Information About Port Security  673
  Port Security  673
  Types of Secure MAC Addresses  674
  Sticky Secure MAC Addresses  674
  Security Violations  674
  Port Security Aging  676
  Port Security and Switch Stacks  676
Default Port Security Configuration  676
Port Security Configuration Guidelines  676
Port-Based Traffic Control  678
How to Configure Port Security  678
  Enabling and Configuring Port Security  678
  Enabling and Configuring Port Security Aging  683
Configuration Examples for Port Security  685

CHAPTER 39  Port Security MAC Aging  687
Information About Port Security MAC Aging  687
  Default MAC Address Table Settings  687
  MAC Address Table Creation  687
How to Configure Port Security MAC Aging  688
  Changing the Address Aging Time  688
Feature Information for Port Security  688
Creating a Restricted SNMP View of Lawful Intercept MIBs  715
Enabling SNMP Notifications for Lawful Intercept  717
Disabling SNMP Notifications  718
Example: Enabling Mediation Device Access Lawful Intercept MIBs  719
Additional References for Lawful Intercept  719
Feature Information for Lawful Intercept  720

CHAPTER 42
Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority  721
Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority  721
Certificates That Identify an Entity  721
Source Interface for Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint  722
How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority  722
Configuring the Interface for All Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint  722
Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority  725
Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority Example  725
Additional References  725
Feature Information for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority  726

CHAPTER 43
Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  727
Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  727
Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP Overview  727
Cloud Web Security with LDAP Source Interfaces  728
How to Configure Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  728
Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF  728
Configuration Examples for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  730
Example: Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF  730
Additional References for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  730
Feature Information for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP  731

CHAPTER 44
Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI  733
Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI  733
Prerequisites for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates  733
Restrictions for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates  734
Preventing Unauthorized Access

- Finding Feature Information, on page 1
- Preventing Unauthorized Access, on page 1
- Feature Information for Preventing Unauthorized Access, on page 2

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table at the end of this module.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Preventing Unauthorized Access

You can prevent unauthorized users from reconfiguring your switch and viewing configuration information. Typically, you want network administrators to have access to your switch while you restrict access to users who dial from outside the network through an asynchronous port, connect from outside the network through a serial port, or connect through a terminal or workstation from within the local network.

To prevent unauthorized access into your switch, you should configure one or more of these security features:

- At a minimum, you should configure passwords and privileges at each switch port. These passwords are locally stored on the switch. When users attempt to access the switch through a port or line, they must enter the password specified for the port or line before they can access the switch.

- For an additional layer of security, you can also configure username and password pairs, which are locally stored on the switch. These pairs are assigned to lines or ports and authenticate each user before that user can access the switch. If you have defined privilege levels, you can also assign a specific privilege level (with associated rights and privileges) to each username and password pair.

- If you want to use username and password pairs, but you want to store them centrally on a server instead of locally, you can store them in a database on a security server. Multiple networking devices can then use the same database to obtain user authentication (and, if necessary, authorization) information.
• You can also enable the login enhancements feature, which logs both failed and unsuccessful login attempts. Login enhancements can also be configured to block future login attempts after a set number of unsuccessful attempts are made. For more information, see the Cisco IOS Login Enhancements documentation.

Feature Information for Preventing Unauthorized Access

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preventing Unauthorized Access</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest</td>
<td>You can prevent unauthorized users from reconfiguring your switch and viewing configuration information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Restrictions for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

The following are the restrictions for controlling switch access with passwords and privileges:

- Disabling password recovery will not work if you have set the switch to boot up manually by using the `boot manual` global configuration command. This command produces the boot loader prompt (`switch:`) after the switch is power cycled.

- Password type 0 and type 7 are deprecated. So password type 0 and type 7, used for administrator login to Console, Telnet, SSH, webUI, and NETCONF, must be migrated to password type 8 or type 9.

- No action is required if username and password are type 0 and type 7 for local authentication such as CHAP, EAP and so on for ISG and Dot1x.

- Enable password type 0 and type 7 must be migrated to password type 8 or type 9.

- Password type 5 is deprecated. Password type 5 must be migrated to stronger password type 8 or type 9.
Information About Passwords and Privilege Levels

Default Password and Privilege Level Configuration

A simple way of providing terminal access control in your network is to use passwords and assign privilege levels. Password protection restricts access to a network or network device. Privilege levels define what commands users can enter after they have logged into a network device.

This table shows the default password and privilege level configuration.

Table 2: Default Password and Privilege Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable password and privilege level</td>
<td>No password is defined. The default is level 15 (privileged EXEC level). The password is not encrypted in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable secret password and privilege level</td>
<td>No password is defined. The default is level 15 (privileged EXEC level). The password is encrypted before it is written to the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line password</td>
<td>No password is defined.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Password Security

To provide an additional layer of security, particularly for passwords that cross the network or that are stored on a Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server, you can use either the `enable password` or `enable secret` global configuration commands. Both commands accomplish the same thing; that is, you can establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC mode (the default) or any privilege level you specify.

We recommend that you use the `enable secret` command because it uses an improved encryption algorithm.

If you configure the `enable secret` command, it takes precedence over the `enable password` command; the two commands cannot be in effect simultaneously.

If you enable password encryption, it applies to all passwords including username passwords, authentication key passwords, the privileged command password, and console and virtual terminal line passwords.

Password Recovery

By default, any end user with physical access to the switch can recover from a lost password by interrupting the boot process while the switch is powering on and then by entering a new password.

The password-recovery disable feature protects access to the switch password by disabling part of this functionality. When this feature is enabled, the end user can interrupt the boot process only by agreeing to set the system back to the default configuration. With password recovery disabled, you can still interrupt the boot process and change the password, but the configuration file (config.text) and the VLAN database file (vlan.dat) are deleted.
If you disable password recovery, we recommend that you keep a backup copy of the configuration file on a secure server in case the end user interrupts the boot process and sets the system back to default values. Do not keep a backup copy of the configuration file on the switch. If the switch is operating in VTP transparent mode, we recommend that you also keep a backup copy of the VLAN database file on a secure server. When the switch is returned to the default system configuration, you can download the saved files to the switch by using the Xmodem protocol.

To re-enable password recovery, use the `service password-recovery` global configuration command.

**Terminal Line Telnet Configuration**

When you power-up your switch for the first time, an automatic setup program runs to assign IP information and to create a default configuration for continued use. The setup program also prompts you to configure your switch for Telnet access through a password. If you did not configure this password during the setup program, you can configure it when you set a Telnet password for a terminal line.

**Username and Password Pairs**

You can configure username and password pairs, which are locally stored on the switch. These pairs are assigned to lines or ports and authenticate each user before that user can access the switch. If you have defined privilege levels, you can also assign a specific privilege level (with associated rights and privileges) to each username and password pair.

**Privilege Levels**

Cisco devices use privilege levels to provide password security for different levels of switch operation. By default, the Cisco IOS software operates in two modes (privilege levels) of password security: user EXEC (Level 1) and privileged EXEC (Level 15). You can configure up to 16 hierarchical levels of commands for each mode. By configuring multiple passwords, you can allow different sets of users to have access to specified commands.

**Privilege Levels on Lines**

Users can override the privilege level you set using the `privilege level` line configuration command by logging in to the line and enabling a different privilege level. They can lower the privilege level by using the `disable` command. If users know the password to a higher privilege level, they can use that password to enable the higher privilege level. You might specify a high level or privilege level for your console line to restrict line usage.

For example, if you want many users to have access to the `clear line` command, you can assign it level 2 security and distribute the level 2 password fairly widely. But if you want more restricted access to the `configure` command, you can assign it level 3 security and distribute that password to a more restricted group of users.

**Command Privilege Levels**

When you set a command to a privilege level, all commands whose syntax is a subset of that command are also set to that level. For example, if you set the `show ip traffic` command to level 15, the `show` commands and `show ip` commands are automatically set to privilege level 15 unless you set them individually to different levels.
How to Control Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password

The enable password controls access to the privileged EXEC mode. Follow these steps to set or change a static enable password:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `enable password password`
4. `end`
5. `show running-config`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>enable password password</code></td>
<td>Defines a new password or changes an existing password for access to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# enable password secret321</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Enter <code>?123</code></td>
<td>When the system prompts you to enter the enable password, you need not precede the question mark with the Ctrl-v; you can simply enter <code>abc?123</code> at the password prompt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>end</th>
<th>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>show running-config</th>
<th>Verifies your entries.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>copy running-config startup-config</th>
<th>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption**

Follow these steps to establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC mode (the default) or any privilege level you specify:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. Use one of the following:
   - `enable password [level level] {password encryption-type encrypted-password}`
   - `enable secret [level level] {password encryption-type encrypted-password}`
4. service password-encryption
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config
# Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption

## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> Use one of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• enable password [level level]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{password encryption-type encrypted-password}</td>
<td>Defines a new password or changes an existing password for access to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• enable secret [level level]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{password encryption-type encrypted-password}</td>
<td>Defines a secret password, which is saved using a nonreversible encryption method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# enable password example102</td>
<td>(Optional) For <code>level</code>, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is normal user EXEC mode privileges. The default level is 15 (privileged EXEC mode privileges).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# enable secret level 1 password secret123sample</td>
<td>For <code>password</code>, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> service password-encryption</td>
<td>(Optional) For encryption-type, only type 5, a Cisco proprietary encryption algorithm, is available. If you specify an encryption type, you must provide an encrypted password—an encrypted password that you copy from another switch configuration. If you specify an encryption type and then enter a clear text password, you can not re-enter privileged EXEC mode. You cannot recover a lost encrypted password by any method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# service password-encryption</td>
<td>(Optional) Encrypts the password when the password is defined or when the configuration is written. Encryption prevents the password from being readable in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Disabling Password Recovery

Follow these steps to disable password recovery to protect the security of your switch:

**Before you begin**

If you disable password recovery, we recommend that you keep a backup copy of the configuration file on a secure server in case the end user interrupts the boot process and sets the system back to default values. Do not keep a backup copy of the configuration file on the switch. If the switch is operating in VTP transparent mode, we recommend that you also keep a backup copy of the VLAN database file on a secure server. When the switch is returned to the default system configuration, you can download the saved files to the switch by using the Xmodem protocol.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `system disable password recovery switch {all | <1-9>}`
4. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

**Before you begin**
- Attach a PC or workstation with emulation software to the switch console port, or attach a PC to the Ethernet management port.
- The default data characteristics of the console port are 9600, 8, 1, no parity. You might need to press the Return key several times to see the command-line prompt.

**SUMMARY STEPS**
1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `line vty 0 15`
4. `password password`
5. `end`
6. `show running-config`
7. `copy running-config startup-config`

---

### Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

**Purpose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Disables password recovery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system disable password recovery switch {all</td>
<td>&lt;1-9&gt;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# system disable password recovery switch all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

To remove `disable password recovery`, use the `no system disable password recovery switch all` global configuration command.

### Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

Beginning in user EXEC mode, follow these steps to set a Telnet password for the connected terminal line:

**Before you begin**
- Attach a PC or workstation with emulation software to the switch console port, or attach a PC to the Ethernet management port.
- The default data characteristics of the console port are 9600, 8, 1, no parity. You might need to press the Return key several times to see the command-line prompt.

**SUMMARY STEPS**
1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `line vty 0 15`
4. `password password`
5. `end`
6. `show running-config`
7. `copy running-config startup-config`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>If a password is required for access to privileged EXEC mode, you will be prompted for it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Configures the number of Telnet sessions (lines), and enters line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>line vty 0 15</code></td>
<td>There are 16 possible sessions on a command-capable Device. The 0 and 15 mean that you are configuring all 16 possible Telnet sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# line vty 0 15</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Sets a Telnet password for the line or lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>password password</code></td>
<td>For <code>password</code>, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-line)# password abcxyz543</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-line)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring Username and Password Pairs

Follow these steps to configure username and password pairs:
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. username name [privilege level] {password encryption-type password}
4. Use one of the following:
   • line console 0
   • line vty 0 15
5. login local
6. end
7. show running-config
8. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> username name [privilege level] {password encryption-type password}</td>
<td>Sets the username, privilege level, and password for each user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# username adamsample privilege 1 password secret456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# username 111111111111 mac attribute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

| Step 4 | Use one of the following:  
|        | • line console 0  
|        | • line vty 0 15  
| Example: | Device(config)# line console 0  
|         | or  
|         | Device(config)# line vty 15  |

| Purpose | Enters line configuration mode, and configures the console port (line 0) or the VTY lines (line 0 to 15). |

| Step 5 | login local  
| Example: | Device(config-line)# login local  |

| Purpose | Enables local password checking at login time. Authentication is based on the username specified in Step 3. |

| Step 6 | end  
| Example: | Device(config)# end  |

| Purpose | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

| Step 7 | show running-config  
| Example: | Device# show running-config  |

| Purpose | Verifies your entries. |

| Step 8 | copy running-config startup-config  
| Example: | Device# copy running-config startup-config  |

| Purpose | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

## Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

Follow these steps to set the privilege level for a command:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. privilege mode level level command  
4. enable password level level password  
5. end  
6. copy running-config startup-config
## Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

### Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | **enable**        | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**  
Device> `enable`  
- Enter your password if prompted. |
| 2    | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device# `configure terminal` |
| 3    | **privilege mode level level command** | Sets the privilege level for a command.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# `privilege exec level 14 configure`  
- For **mode**, enter `configure` for global configuration mode, `exec` for EXEC mode, `interface` for interface configuration mode, or `line` for line configuration mode.  
- For **level**, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges. Level 15 is the level of access permitted by the `enable` password.  
- For **command**, specify the command to which you want to restrict access. |
| 4    | **enable password level level password** | Specifies the password to enable the privilege level.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# `enable password level 14 SecretPswd14`  
- For **level**, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges.  
- For **password**, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined. |
| 5    | **end**           | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# `end` |
| 6    | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.  
**Example:**  
Device# `copy running-config startup-config` |
Changing the Default Privilege Level for Lines

Follow these steps to change the default privilege level for the specified line:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. line vty line
4. privilege level level
5. end
6. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> line vty line</td>
<td>Selects the virtual terminal line on which to restrict access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# line vty 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> privilege level level</td>
<td>Changes the default privilege level for the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# privilege level 15</td>
<td>For level, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges. Level 15 is the level of access permitted by the enable password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### What to do next

Users can override the privilege level you set using the `privilege level` line configuration command by logging in to the line and enabling a different privilege level. They can lower the privilege level by using the `disable` command. If users know the password to a higher privilege level, they can use that password to enable the higher privilege level. You might specify a high level or privilege level for your console line to restrict line usage.

### Logging into and Exiting a Privilege Level

Beginning in user EXEC mode, follow these steps to log into a specified privilege level and exit a specified privilege level.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable level`
2. `disable level`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>enable level</code></td>
<td>Logs in to a specified privilege level. Following the example, Level 15 is privileged EXEC mode. For <code>level</code>, the range is 0 to 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable 15</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>disable level</code></td>
<td>Exits to a specified privilege level. Following the example, Level 1 is user EXEC mode. For <code>level</code>, the range is 0 to 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# <code>disable 1</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitoring Switch Access

*Table 3: Commands for Displaying DHCP Information*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show privilege</code></td>
<td>Displays the privilege level configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Examples for Setting Passwords and Privilege Levels

Example: Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password

This example shows how to change the enable password to l1u2c3k4y5. The password is not encrypted and provides access to level 15 (traditional privileged EXEC mode access):

```
Device(config)# enable password l1u2c3k4y5
```

Example: Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption

This example shows how to configure the encrypted password $1$FaD0$Xyti5Rkl$3LoyxzS8 for privilege level 2:

```
Device(config)# enable secret level 2 5 $1$FaD0$Xyti5Rkl$3LoyxzS8
```

Example: Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

This example shows how to set the Telnet password to let45me67in89:

```
Device(config)# line vty 10
Device(config-line)# password let45me67in89
```

Example: Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

This example shows how to set the configure command to privilege level 14 and define SecretPswd14 as the password users must enter to use level 14 commands:

```
Device(config)# privilege exec level 14 configure
Device(config)# enable password level 14 SecretPswd14
```

Additional References

Error Message Decoder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To help you research and resolve system error messages in this release, use the Error Message Decoder tool.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi">https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>Password protection restricts access to a network or network device. Privilege levels define what commands users can enter after they have logged into a network device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 3

Configuring Login Block

• Information About Login Block, on page 19

Information About Login Block

Protecting Against Denial of Service and Dictionary Login Attacks

Connecting to a device for the purposes of administering (managing) the device, at either the User or Executive level, is most frequently performed using Telnet or SSH (secure shell) from a remote console (such as a PC). SSH provides a more secure connection option because communication traffic between the user’s device and the managed device are encrypted. The Login Block capability, when enabled, applies to both Telnet connections and SSH connections. Beginning in Release versions 12.3(33)SRB2, 12.2(33)SXH2, and 12.4(15)T1, the Login Block capability also applies to HTTP connections.

The automated activation and logging of the Login Block and Quiet Period capabilities introduced by this feature are designed to further enhance the security of your devices by specifically addressing two well known methods that individuals use to attempt to disrupt or compromise network devices.

If the connection address of a device is discovered and is reachable, a malicious user may attempt to interfere with the normal operations of the device by flooding it with connection requests. This type of attack is referred to as an attempted Denial-of-Service, because it is possible that the device may become too busy trying to process the repeated login connection attempts to properly handle normal routing services or are not able to provide the normal login service to legitimate system administrators.

The primary intention of a dictionary attack, unlike a typical DoS attack, is to actually gain administrative access to the device. A dictionary attack is an automated process to attempt to login by attempting thousands, or even millions, of username/password combinations. (This type of attack is called a “dictionary attack” because it typically uses, as a start, every word found in a typical dictionary as a possible password.) As scripts or programs are used to attempt this access, the profile for such attempts is typically the same as for DoS attempts; multiple login attempts in a short period of time.

By enabling a detection profile, the device can be configured to react to repeated failed login attempts by refusing further connection request (login blocking). This block can be configured for a period of time, called a “quiet period”. Legitimate connection attempts can still be permitted during a quiet period by configuring an access-list (ACL) with the addresses that you know to be associated with system administrators.
Delays Between Successive Login Attempts

A device can accept virtual connections as fast as they can be processed. Introducing a delay between login attempts helps to protect the device against malicious login connections such as dictionary attacks and DoS attacks. Delays can be enabled in one of the following ways:

- Through the `auto secure` command. If you enable the AutoSecure feature, the default login delay time of one second is automatically enforced.

- Through the `login block-for` command. You must enter this command before issuing the `login delay` command. If you enter only the `login block-for` command, the default login delay time of one second is automatically enforced.

- Through the global configuration mode command, `login delay`, which allows you to specify login delay time to be enforced, in seconds.

Login Shutdown If DoS Attacks Are Suspected

If the configured number of connection attempts fail within a specified time period, the device does not accept any additional connections for a “quiet period.” (Hosts that are permitted by a predefined access-control list [ACL] are excluded from the quiet period.)

The number of failed connection attempts that trigger the quiet period can be specified through the new global configuration mode command `login block-for`. The predefined ACL that is excluded from the quiet period can be specified through the new global configuration mode command `login quiet-mode access-class`.

This functionality is disabled by default, and it is not enabled if AutoSecure if enabled.
Configuring Authentication

Authentication provides a method to identify users, which includes the login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and encryption, depending on the selected security protocol. Authentication is the way a user is identified prior to being allowed access to the network and network services.

- Prerequisites for Configuring Authentication, on page 21
- Restrictions for Configuring Authentication, on page 21
- Information About Configuring Authentication, on page 22
- How to Configure AAA Authentication Methods, on page 29
- Additional References for Configuring Authentication, on page 76
- Feature Information for Configuring Authentication, on page 77

Prerequisites for Configuring Authentication

The Cisco software implementation of authentication is divided into Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) authentication and nonauthentication methods. Cisco recommends that, whenever possible, AAA security services be used to implement authentication.

Restrictions for Configuring Authentication

- The number of AAA method lists that can be configured is 250.
- If you configure one RADIUS server with the nonstandard option and another RADIUS server without the nonstandard option, the RADIUS-server host with the nonstandard option does not accept a predefined host. If you configure the same RADIUS server host IP address for a different UDP destination port for accounting requests by using the `acct-port` keyword and a UDP destination port for authentication requests by using the `auth-port` keyword with and without the nonstandard option, the RADIUS server does not accept the nonstandard option.
Information About Configuring Authentication

Named Method Lists for Authentication

A named list of authentication methods is first defined before AAA authentication can be configured, and the named list is then applied to various interfaces. The method list defines the types of authentication and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific interface before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces, except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

A method list is a sequential list describing the authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. Cisco software uses the first listed method to authenticate users. If that method fails to respond, the Cisco software selects the next authentication method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method, or all methods defined in the method list are exhausted.

Note that the Cisco software attempts authentication with the next listed authentication method only when there is no response from the previous method. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle, that is, the security server or local username database responds by denying the user access, then the authentication process stops and no other authentication methods are attempted.

Method Lists and Server Groups

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 make up the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 make up the group of TACACS+ servers.

*Figure 1: Typical AAA Network Configuration*
Using server groups, you can specify a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. For example, server groups allow you to define R1 and R2 as a server group, and define T1 and T2 as a separate server group. For example, you can specify R1 and T1 in the method list for authentication login, while specifying R2 and T2 in the method list for PPP authentication.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, authentication—the second host entry configured acts as failover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server will try the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries will be tried in the order in which they are configured.)

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) numbers, refer to the “Configuring RADIUS” or “Configuring TACACS+” chapter.

**Method List Examples**

Suppose the system administrator has decided on a security solution where all interfaces will use the same authentication methods to authenticate PPP connections. In the RADIUS group, R1 is contacted first for authentication information, then if there is no response, R2 is contacted. If R2 does not respond, T1 in the TACACS+ group is contacted; if T1 does not respond, T2 is contacted. If all designated servers fail to respond, authentication falls to the local username database on the access server itself. To implement this solution, the system administrator would create a default method list by entering the following command:

```bash
aaa authentication ppp default group radius group tacacs+ local
```

In this example, “default” is the name of the method list. The protocols included in this method list are listed after the name, in the order they are to be queried. The default list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

When a remote user attempts to dial in to the network, the network access server first queries R1 for authentication information. If R1 authenticates the user, it issues a PASS response to the network access server and the user is allowed to access the network. If R1 returns a FAIL response, the user is denied access and the session is terminated. If R1 does not respond, then the network access server processes that as an ERROR and queries R2 for authentication information. This pattern would continue through the remaining designated methods until the user is either authenticated or rejected, or until the session is terminated.

It is important to remember that a FAIL response is significantly different from an ERROR. A FAIL means that the user has not met the criteria contained in the applicable authentication database to be successfully authenticated. Authentication ends with a FAIL response. An ERROR means that the security server has not responded to an authentication query. Because of this, no authentication has been attempted. Only when an ERROR is detected will AAA select the next authentication method defined in the authentication method list.

Suppose the system administrator wants to apply a method list only to a particular interface or set of interfaces. In this case, the system administrator creates a named method list and then applies this named list to the applicable interfaces. The following example shows how the system administrator can implement an authentication method that will be applied only to interface 3:

```bash
aaa authentication ppp default group radius group tacacs+ local
aaa authentication ppp apple group radius group tacacs+ local none
interface async 3
  ppp authentication chap apple
```
In this example, “apple” is the name of the method list, and the protocols included in this method list are listed after the name in the order in which they are to be performed. After the method list has been created, it is applied to the appropriate interface. Note that the method list name (apple) in both the AAA and PPP authentication commands must match.

In the following example, the system administrator uses server groups to specify that only R2 and T2 are valid servers for PPP authentication. To do this, the administrator must define specific server groups whose members are R2 (172.16.2.7) and T2 (172.16.2.77), respectively. In this example, the RADIUS server group “rad2only” is defined as follows using the `aaa group server` command:

```plaintext
aaa group server radius rad2only
  server 172.16.2.7
```

The TACACS+ server group “tac2only” is defined as follows using the `aaa group server` command:

```plaintext
aaa group server tacacs+ tac2only
  server 172.16.2.77
```

The administrator then applies PPP authentication using the server groups. In this example, the default methods list for PPP authentication follows this order: `group rad2only, group tac2only, and local`:

```plaintext
aaa authentication ppp default group rad2only group tac2only local
```

If a method list is configured under VTY lines, the corresponding method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows how to configure a method list under a VTY line:

```plaintext
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config)# authorization commands 15 auth1
```

The following example shows how to configure a method list in AAA:

```plaintext
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 auth1 group tacacs+
```

If no method list is configured under VTY lines, the default method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows a VTY configuration without a method list:

```plaintext
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
```

The following example shows how to configure the default method list:

```plaintext
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 default group tacacs+
```

---

**About RADIUS Change of Authorization**

A standard RADIUS interface is typically used in a pulled model, in which the request originates from a device attached to a network and the response is sent from the queried servers. The Cisco software supports the RADIUS CoA request defined in RFC 5176 that is used in a pushed model, in which the request originates from the external server to the device attached to the network, and enables the dynamic reconfiguring of sessions from external authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) or policy servers.
Use the following per-session CoA requests:

- Session reauthentication
- Session termination
- Session termination with port shutdown
- Session termination with port bounce
- Security and Password
- Accounting

CoA Requests

CoA requests, as described in RFC 5176, are used in a pushed model to allow for session identification, host reauthentication, and session termination. The model comprises one request (CoA-Request) and two possible response codes:

- CoA acknowledgment (ACK) [CoA-ACK]
- CoA non-acknowledgment (NAK) [CoA-NAK]

The request is initiated from a CoA client (typically a RADIUS or policy server) and directed to the device that acts as a listener.

RFC 5176 Compliance

The Disconnect Request message, which is also referred to as Packet of Disconnect (POD), is supported by the device for a session termination.

The following table shows the IETF attributes that are supported for the RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) feature.

Table 5: Supported IETF Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Acct-Session-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Message-Authenticator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Error-Cause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table shows the possible values for the Error-Cause attribute.

Table 6: Error-Cause Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Residual Session Context Removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CoA Request Response Code

The CoA Request Response code can be used to issue a command to the device. The supported commands are listed in the “CoA Request Commands” section.

The packet format for a CoA Request Response code as defined in RFC 5176 consists of the following fields: Code, Identifier, Length, Authenticator, and Attributes in the Type:Length:Value (TLV) format.

The Attributes field is used to carry Cisco VSAs.

#### Session Identification

For disconnect and CoA requests targeted at a particular session, the device locates the session based on one or more of the following attributes:

- Acct-Session-Id (IETF attribute #44)
- Audit-Session-Id (Cisco vendor-specific attribute (VSA))
- Calling-Station-Id (IETF attribute #31, which contains the host MAC address)

Unless all session identification attributes included in the CoA message match the session, the device returns a Disconnect-NAK or CoA-NAK with the “Invalid Attribute Value” error-code attribute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Invalid EAP Packet (Ignored)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Unsupported Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Missing Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>NAS Identification Mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Invalid Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Unsupported Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Unsupported Extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407</td>
<td>Invalid Attribute Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Administratively Prohibited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
<td>Request Not Routable (Proxy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
<td>Session Context Not Found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504</td>
<td>Session Context Not Removable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505</td>
<td>Other Proxy Processing Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>506</td>
<td>Resources Unavailable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>Request Initiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
<td>Multiple Session Selection Unsupported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A CoA NAK message is not sent for all CoA requests with a key mismatch. The message is sent only for the first three requests for a client. After that, all the packets from that client are dropped. When there is a key mismatch, the response authenticator sent with the CoA NAK message is calculated from a dummy key value.

**CoA ACK Response Code**

If an authorization state is changed successfully, a positive acknowledgment (ACK) is sent. The attributes returned within a CoA ACK can vary based on the CoA Request.

**CoA NAK Response Code**

A negative acknowledgment (NAK) indicates a failure to change the authorization state and can include attributes that indicate the reason for the failure.

**CoA Request Commands**

The commands supported on the device are shown in the table below. All CoA commands must include the session identifier between the device and the CoA client.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Cisco VSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bounce host port</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=bounce-host-port“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable host port</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=disable-host-port“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reauthenticate host</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=reauthenticate“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate session</td>
<td>This is a standard disconnect request that does not require a VSA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Session Reauthentication**

To initiate session reauthentication, the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server sends a standard CoA-Request message that contains a Cisco VSA and one or more session identification attributes. The Cisco VSA is in the form of Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=reauthenticate“.

The current session state determines the device’s response to the message in the following scenarios:

- If the session is currently authenticated by IEEE 802.1x, the device responds by sending an Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPoL)-RequestId message to the server.
- If the session is currently authenticated by MAC authentication bypass (MAB), the device sends an access request to the server, passing the same identity attributes used for the initial successful authentication.
- If session authentication is in progress when the device receives the command, the device terminates the process and restarts the authentication sequence, starting with the method configured to be attempted first.
Session Termination

A CoA Disconnect-Request terminates the session without disabling the host port. CoA Disconnect-Request termination causes reinitialization of the authenticator state machine for the specified host, but does not restrict the host’s access to the network. If the session cannot be located, the device returns a Disconnect-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the device terminates the session. After the session has been completely removed, the device returns a Disconnect-ACK message.

To restrict a host’s access to the network, use a CoA Request with the Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port" VSA. This command is useful when a host is known to cause problems on the network and network access needs to be immediately blocked for the host. If you want to restore network access on the port, reenable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism.

CoA Request Disable Host Port

The RADIUS server CoA disable port command administratively shuts down the authentication port that is hosting a session, resulting in session termination. This command is useful when a host is known to cause problems on the network and network access needs to be immediately blocked for the host. If you want to restore network access on the port, reenable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism. This command is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that has the following VSA:

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes described in the “Session Identification” section. If the device cannot locate the session, it returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the device locates the session, it disables the hosting port and returns a CoA-ACK message.

If the device fails before returning a CoA-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active device when the request is re-sent from the client. If the device fails after returning a CoA-ACK message to the client but before the operation is complete, the operation is restarted on the new active device.

To ignore the RADIUS server CoA disable port command, see the “Configuring the Device to Ignore Bounce and Disable RADIUS CoA Requests” section.

CoA Request Bounce Port

A RADIUS server CoA bounce port sent from a RADIUS server can cause a link flap on an authentication port, which triggers DHCP renegotiation from one or more hosts connected to this port. This incident can occur when there is a VLAN change and the endpoint is a device (such as a printer) that does not have a mechanism to detect a change on this authentication port. The CoA bounce port is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that contains the following VSA:

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=bounce-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes described in the Session Identification. If the session cannot be located, the device returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the device disables the hosting port for a period of 10 seconds, reenables it (port-bounce), and returns a CoA-ACK.

To ignore the RADIUS server CoA bounce port, see the “Configuring the Device to Ignore Bounce and Disable RADIUS CoA Requests” section.
Domain Stripping

You can remove the domain name from the username received at the global level by using the `radius-server domain-stripping` command. When the `radius-server domain-stripping` command is configured, all the AAA requests with “user@example.com” go to the remote RADIUS server with the reformatted username “user.” The domain name is removed from the request.

Note

Domain stripping will not be done in a TACACS configuration.

The AAA Broadcast Accounting feature allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time, that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows you to send accounting information to private and public AAA servers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.

The Domain Stripping feature allows domain stripping to be configured at the server group level. Per-server group configuration overrides the global configuration. If domain stripping is not enabled globally, but it is enabled in a server group, then it is enabled only for that server group. Also, if virtual routing and forwarding (VRF)-specific domain stripping is configured globally and in a server group for a different VRF, domain stripping is enabled in both the VRF’s. VRF configurations are taken from server-group configuration mode. If server-group configurations are disabled in global configuration mode but are available in server-group configuration mode, all configurations in server-group configuration mode are applicable.

After the domain stripping and broadcast accounting are configured, you can create separate accounting records as per the configurations.

How to Configure AAA Authentication Methods

Configuring Login Authentication Using AAA

The AAA security services facilitate a variety of login authentication methods. Use the `aaa authentication login` command to enable AAA authentication no matter which of the supported login authentication methods you decide to use. With the `aaa authentication login` command, you create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried at login. These lists are applied using the `login authentication` line configuration command.

To configure login authentication by using AAA, use the following commands beginning in global configuration mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `Router(config)# aaa new-model`
2. `Router(config)# aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]
3. `Router(config)# line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]
4. `Router(config-line)# login authentication`
DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 Router(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 Router(config)# aaa authentication login {default</td>
<td>Creates a local authentication list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list-name} method{method2...}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 Router(config)# line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 Router(config-line)# login authentication</td>
<td>Applies the authentication list to a line or set of lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{default</td>
<td>list-name}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What to do next

The list-name is a character string used to name the list you are creating. The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify none as the final method in the command line.

For example, to specify that authentication should succeed even if (in this example) the TACACS+ server returns an error, enter the following command:

aaa authentication login default group tacacs+ none

Because the none keyword enables any user logging in to successfully authenticate, it should be used only as a backup method of authentication.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the login authentication command, use the default keyword followed by the methods that are to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

For example, to specify RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login, enter the following command:

aaa authentication login default group radius

The table below lists the supported login authentication methods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Uses the enable password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krb5</td>
<td>Uses Kerberos 5 for authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Login Authentication Using Enable Password

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `enable method` keyword to specify the enable password as the login authentication method. For example, to specify the enable password as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default enable
```

Before you can use the enable password as the login authentication method, you need to define the enable password. For more information about defining enable passwords, refer to the chapter “Configuring Passwords and Privileges.”

Login Authentication Using Kerberos

Authentication via Kerberos is different from most other authentication methods: the user’s password is never sent to the remote access server. Remote users logging in to the network are prompted for a username. If the key distribution center (KDC) has an entry for that user, it creates an encrypted ticket granting ticket (TGT) with the password for that user and sends it back to the router. The user is then prompted for a password, and the router attempts to decrypt the TGT with that password. If it succeeds, the user is authenticated and the TGT is stored in the user’s credential cache on the router.

While krb5 does use the KINIT program, a user does not need to run the KINIT program to get a TGT to authenticate to the router. This is because KINIT has been integrated into the login procedure in the Cisco IOS XE implementation of Kerberos.
Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `krb5` method keyword to specify Kerberos as the login authentication method. For example, to specify Kerberos as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default krb5
```

Before you can use Kerberos as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the Kerberos security server. For more information about establishing communication with a Kerberos server, refer to the chapter “Configuring Kerberos.”

### Login Authentication Using Line Password

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `line` method keyword to specify the line password as the login authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the login authentication method, you need to define a line password. For more information about defining line passwords, refer to the Configuring Line Password Protection.

### Login Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `local` method keyword to specify that the Cisco router or access server will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default local
```

For information about adding users into the local username database, refer to the Establishing Username Authentication.

### Login Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

### Configuring RADIUS Attribute 8 in Access Requests

After you have used the `aaa authentication login` command to specify RADIUS and your login host has been configured to request its IP address from the NAS, you can send attribute 8 (Framed-IP-Address) in access-request packets by using the `radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req` command in global configuration mode. This command makes it possible for NAS to provide the RADIUS server a hint of the user IP address in advance for user authentication. For more information about attribute 8, refer to the appendix “RADIUS Attributes” at the end of the book.
Login Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `group tacacs+` method to specify TACACS+ as the login authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

Login Authentication Using group group-name

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the login authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group loginrad`:

```plaintext
aaa group server radius loginrad
  server 172.16.2.3
  server 172.16.2.17
  server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `loginrad`.

To specify `group loginrad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication login default group loginrad
```

Before you can use a group name as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.” For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

Configuring PPP Authentication Using AAA

Many users access network access servers through dialup via async or ISDN. Dialup via async or ISDN bypasses the CLI completely; instead, a network protocol (such as PPP or ARA) starts as soon as the connection is established.

The AAA security services facilitate a variety of authentication methods for use on serial interfaces running PPP. Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command to enable AAA authentication no matter which of the supported PPP authentication methods you decide to use.

To configure AAA authentication methods for serial lines using PPP, use the following commands in global configuration mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Router(config)# `aaa new-model`
2. Router(config)# `aaa authentication ppp default [list-name] method1[method2...]`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Router(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Router(config)# aaa authentication ppp {default</td>
<td>list-name'} method1{method2...}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Router(config)# interface interface-type interface-number</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode for the interface to which you want to apply the authentication list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Router(config-if)# ppp authentication {protocol1 [protocol2...]} [if-needed] {default</td>
<td>list-name'} {callin} [one-time][optional]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to do next

With the `aaa authentication ppp` command, you create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when a user tries to authenticate via PPP. These lists are applied using the `ppp authentication` line configuration command.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `ppp authentication` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods you want used in default situations.

For example, to specify the local username database as the default method for user authentication, enter the following command:

```bash
aaa authentication ppp default local
```

The `list-name` is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.

For example, to specify that authentication should succeed even if (in this example) the TACACS+ server returns an error, enter the following command:

```bash
aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+ none
```

---

**Note**

Because `none` allows all users logging in to authenticate successfully, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

The table below lists the supported login authentication methods.
Table 9: AAA Authentication PPP Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if-needed</td>
<td>Does not authenticate if user has already been authenticated on a TTY line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krb5</td>
<td>Uses Kerberos 5 for authentication (can only be used for PAP authentication).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>Uses the local username database for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local-case</td>
<td>Uses case-sensitive local username authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Uses no authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group radius</td>
<td>Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group tacacs+</td>
<td>Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group group-name</td>
<td>Uses a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers for authentication as defined by the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaa group server radius or aaa group server tacacs+ command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PPP Authentication Using Kerberos

Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `krb5` `method` keyword to specify Kerberos as the authentication method for use on interfaces running PPP. For example, to specify Kerberos as the method of user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default krb5
```

Before you can use Kerberos as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the Kerberos security server. For more information about establishing communication with a Kerberos server, refer to the chapter “Configuring Kerberos”.

**Note**

Kerberos login authentication works only with PPP PAP authentication.

PPP Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `method` keyword `local` to specify that the Cisco router or access server will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of authentication for use on lines running PPP when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default local
```

For information about adding users into the local username database, refer to the Establishing Username Authentication.
PPP Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

Configuring RADIUS Attribute 44 in Access Requests

After you have used the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method, you can configure your device to send attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID) in access-request packets by using the `radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req` command in global configuration mode. This command allows the RADIUS daemon to track a call from the beginning to the end.

PPP Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `group tacacs+` method to specify TACACS+ as the login authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

PPP Authentication Using group group-name

Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the login authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group ppprad`:

```
aaa group server radius ppprad
  server 172.16.2.3
  server 172.16.2.17
  server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `ppprad`.

To specify `group ppprad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default group ppprad
```

Before you can use a group name as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”
Configuring AAA Scalability for PPP Requests

You can configure and monitor the number of background processes allocated by the PPP manager in the network access server (NAS) to deal with AAA authentication and authorization requests. The AAA Scalability feature enables you to configure the number of processes used to handle AAA requests for PPP, thus increasing the number of users that can be simultaneously authenticated or authorized.

To allocate a specific number of background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# aaa processes number</td>
<td>Allocates a specific number of background processes to handle AAA authentication and authorization requests for PPP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The argument `number` defines the number of background processes earmarked to process AAA authentication and authorization requests for PPP and can be configured for any value from 1 to 2147483647. Because of the way the PPP manager handles requests for PPP, this argument also defines the number of new users that can be simultaneously authenticated. This argument can be increased or decreased at any time.

Allocating additional background processes can be expensive. You should configure the minimum number of background processes capable of handling the AAA requests for PPP.

Configuring ARAP Authentication Using AAA

Using the `aaa authentication arap` command, you can create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when AppleTalk Remote Access Protocol (ARAP) users attempt to log in to the device. These lists are used with the `arap authentication` line configuration command.

Use the following commands starting in global configuration mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Device(config)# aaa new-model
2. Device(config)# aaa authentication arap
3. Device(config)# line number
4. Device(config-line)# autoselect arap
5. Device(config-line)# autoselect during-login
6. Device(config-line)# arap authentication list-name
7. Device(config-line)# end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication arap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring ARAP Authentication Using AAA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enables authentication for ARAP users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3:</td>
<td>(Optional) Changes to line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# line number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4:</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables autoselection of ARAP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# autoselect arap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5:</td>
<td>(Optional) Starts the ARAP session automatically at user login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# autoselect during-login</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6:</td>
<td>(Optional—not needed if default is used in the aaa authentication arap command) Enables TACACS+ authentication for ARAP on a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# arap authentication list-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7:</td>
<td>Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The list-name is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The method argument refers to the actual list of methods the authentication algorithm tries, in the sequence entered.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the arap authentication command, use the default keyword followed by the methods you want to use in default situations.

The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify none as the final method in the command line.

**Note**

Because none allows all users logging in to be authenticated, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

The following table lists the supported login authentication methods.

**Table 10: AAA Authentication ARAP Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auth-guest</td>
<td>Allows guest logins only if the user has already logged in to EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>Allows guest logins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>Uses the line password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>Uses the local username database for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local-case</td>
<td>Uses case-sensitive local username authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group radius</td>
<td>Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group tacacs+</td>
<td>Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyword</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group group-name</td>
<td>Uses a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers for authentication as defined by the aaa group server radius or aaa group server tacacs+ command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, to create a default AAA authentication method list used with ARAP, use the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication arap default if-needed none
```

To create the same authentication method list for ARAP and name the list MIS-access, use the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication arap MIS-access if-needed none
```

This section includes the following sections:

### ARAP Authentication Allowing Authorized Guest Logins

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `auth-guest` keyword to allow guest logins only if the user has already successfully logged in to the EXEC. This method must be the first listed in the ARAP authentication method list but it can be followed by other methods if it does not succeed. For example, to allow all authorized guest logins--meaning logins by users who have already successfully logged in to the EXEC--as the default method of authentication, using RADIUS only if that method fails, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication arap default auth-guest group radius
```

**Note**

By default, guest logins through ARAP are disabled when you initialize AAA. To allow guest logins, you must use the `aaa authentication arap` command with either the `guest` or the `auth-guest` keyword.

### ARAP Authentication Allowing Guest Logins

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `guest` keyword to allow guest logins. This method must be the first listed in the ARAP authentication method list but it can be followed by other methods if it does not succeed. For example, to allow all guest logins as the default method of authentication, using RADIUS only if that method fails, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication arap default guest group radius
```

### ARAP Authentication Using Line Password

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `method` keyword `line` to specify the line password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of ARAP user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa authentication arap default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the ARAP authentication method, you need to define a line password. For more information about defining line passwords, refer to the section Configuring Line Password Protection in this chapter.
ARAP Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `method` keyword `local` to specify that the Cisco router or access server will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of ARAP user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication arap default local
```

For information about adding users to the local username database, refer to the Establishing Username Authentication.

ARAP Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the ARAP authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication arap default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

ARAP Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `group tacacs+` method to specify TACACS+ as the ARAP authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication arap default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

ARAP Authentication Using Group group-name

Use the `aaa authentication arap` command with the `group` `group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the ARAP authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group araprad`:

```
aaa group server radius araprad
  server 172.16.2.3
  server 172.16.2.17
  server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `araprad`.

To specify `group araprad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:
aaa authentication arap default group araprad

Before you can use a group name as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.” For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

Configuring NASI Authentication Using AAA

Using the `aaa authentication nasi` command, you can create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when NetWare Asynchronous Services Interface (NASI) users attempt to log in to the device. These lists are used with the `nasi authentication line` configuration command.

To configure NASI authentication using AAA, use the following commands starting in global configuration mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `Device(config)# aaa new-model`
2. `Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi`
3. `Device(config)# line number`
4. `Device(config-line)# nasi authentication list-name`
5. `Device(config-line)# end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Device(config)# line number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>Device(config-line)# nasi authentication list-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>Device(config-line)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The `list-name` is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The `method` argument refers to the actual list of methods that the authentication algorithm tries, in the sequence entered.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `aaa authentication nasi` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods you want to use in default situations.
The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify none as the final method in the command line.

---

**Note**
Because none allows all users logging in to be authenticated, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

The table below lists the supported NASI authentication methods.

### Table 11: AAA Authentication NASI Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Uses the enable password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>Uses the line password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>Uses the local username database for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local-case</td>
<td>Uses case-sensitive local username authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Uses no authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group radius</td>
<td>Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group tacacs+</td>
<td>Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group group-name</td>
<td>Uses a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers for authentication as defined by the group-name command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NASI Authentication Using Enable Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the keyword `enable` to specify the enable password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the enable password as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, use the following command:

```
aaa authentication nasi default enable
```

Before you can use the enable password as the authentication method, you need to define the enable password. For more information about defining enable passwords, refer to the chapter “Configuring Passwords and Privileges.”

### NASI Authentication Using Line Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `method` keyword `line` to specify the line password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication nasi default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the NASI authentication method, you need to define a line password. For more information about defining line passwords, refer to the Configuring Line Password Protection.
NASI Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `method` keyword `local` to specify that the Cisco router or access server will use the local username database for authentication information. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication nasi default local
```

For information about adding users to the local username database, refer to the Establishing Username Authentication.

NASI Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the NASI authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication nasi default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the NASI authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

NASI Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group tacacs+` method keyword to specify TACACS+ as the NASI authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
aaa authentication nasi default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

NASI Authentication Using group group-name

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the NASI authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group nasirad`:

```
aaa group server radius nasirad
  server 172.16.2.3
  server 172.16.2.17
  server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `nasirad`.

To specify `group nasirad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:
aaa authentication nasi default group nasirad

Before you can use a group name as the NASI authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

Specifying the Amount of Time for Login Input

The `timeout login response` command allows you to specify how long the system will wait for login input (such as username and password) before timing out. The default login value is 30 seconds; with the `timeout login response` command, you can specify a timeout value from 1 to 300 seconds. To change the login timeout value from the default of 30 seconds, use the following command in line configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-line)# timeout login response seconds</td>
<td>Specifies how long the system will wait for login information before timing out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enabling Password Protection at the Privileged Level

Use the `aaa authentication enable default` command to create a series of authentication methods that are used to determine whether a user can access the privileged EXEC command level. You can specify up to four authentication methods. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.

Use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# aaa authentication enable default method1 [method2...]</td>
<td>Enables user ID and password checking for users requesting privileged EXEC level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All `aaa authentication enable default` requests sent by the router to a RADIUS server include the username “Senab15S.” Requests sent to a TACACS+ server will include the username that is entered for login authentication.

The method argument refers to the actual list of methods the authentication algorithm tries, in the sequence entered. The table below lists the supported enable authentication methods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Uses the enable password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>Uses the line password for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Uses no authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12: AAA Authentication Enable Default Methods
### Changing the Text Displayed at the Password Prompt

Use the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command to change the default text that the Cisco IOS XE software displays when prompting a user to enter a password. This command changes the password prompt for the enable password as well as for login passwords that are not supplied by remote security servers. The `no` form of this command returns the password prompt to the following default value:

```
Password:
```

The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command does not change any dialog that is supplied by a remote TACACS+ or RADIUS server.

The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command works when RADIUS is used as the login method. You will be able to see the password prompt defined in the command shown even when the RADIUS server is unreachable. The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command does not work with TACACS+. TACACS+ supplies the NAS with the password prompt to display to the users. If the TACACS+ server is reachable, the NAS gets the password prompt from the server and uses that prompt instead of the one defined in the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command. If the TACACS+ server is not reachable, the password prompt defined in the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command may be used.

Use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Router(config)# aaa authentication password-prompt text-string</code></td>
<td>Changes the default text displayed when a user is prompted to enter a password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Preventing an Access Request with a Blank Username from Being Sent to the RADIUS Server

The following configuration steps provide the ability to prevent an Access Request with a blank username from being sent to the RADIUS server. This functionality ensures that unnecessary RADIUS server interaction is avoided, and RADIUS logs are kept short.

```
Note

The  `aaa authentication suppress null-username` command is available beginning in Cisco IOS XE Release 2.4.
```
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa authentication suppress null-username

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 aaa authentication suppress null-username</td>
<td>Prevents an Access Request with a blank username from being sent to the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication suppress null-username</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Message Banners for AAA Authentication

AAA supports the use of configurable, personalized login and failed-login banners. You can configure message banners that will be displayed when a user logs in to the system to be authenticated using AAA and when, for whatever reason, authentication fails.

Configuring a Login Banner

To configure a banner that is displayed when a user logs in (replacing the default message for login), perform the following task:

Before you begin

To create a login banner, you must configure a delimiting character that notifies the system that the following text string must be displayed as the banner, and then the text string itself. The delimiting character is repeated at the end of the text string to signify the end of the banner. The delimiting character can be any single character in the extended ASCII character set, but once defined as the delimiter, that character cannot be used in the text string for the banner.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. `aaa new-model` Device(config)# `aaa new-model`
2. Device(config)# `aaa authentication banner delimiter string delimiter`
3. Device(config)# `end`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 <code>aaa new-model</code> Device(config)# <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication banner</code></td>
<td>Creates a personalized login banner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>delimiter string delimiter</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 Device(config)# <code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What to do next

After you have configured a login banner, you must complete basic authentication configuration using AAA if you have not already done so. For information about the different types of AAA authentication available, please refer to “Configuring Authentication” in the *Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Configuration Guide*.

Configuring a Failed-Login Banner

To configure a message that is displayed when a user login fails (replacing the default message for failed login), perform the following task:

Before you begin

To create a failed-login banner, you must configure a delimiting character, which notifies the system that the following text string must be displayed as the banner, and then configure the text string itself. The delimiting character is repeated at the end of the text string to signify the end of the failed-login banner. The delimiting character can be any single character in the extended ASCII character set, but once defined as the delimiter, that character cannot be used in the text string making up the banner.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Device(config)# `aaa new-model`
2. Device(config)# `aaa authentication fail-message`  `delimiter string delimiter`
3. Device(config)# `end`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 Device(config)# <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication fail-message</code></td>
<td>Creates a message to be displayed when a user login fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>delimiter string delimiter</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 Device(config)# <code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
What to do next

After you have configured a failed-login banner, you must complete basic authentication configuration using AAA if you have not already done so. For information about the different types of AAA authentication available, please refer to “Configuring Authentication” in the Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Configuration Guide.

Configuring AAA Packet of Disconnect

Packet of disconnect (POD) terminates connections on the network access server (NAS) when particular session attributes are identified. By using session information obtained from AAA, the POD client residing on a UNIX workstation sends disconnect packets to the POD server running on the network access server. The NAS terminates any inbound user session with one or more matching key attributes. It rejects requests when required fields are missing or when an exact match is not found.

To configure POD, perform the following tasks in global configuration mode:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Device(config)# aaa accounting network default
2. Device(config)# aaa accounting delay-start
3. Device(config)# aaa pod server server-keystring
4. Device(config)# radius-server host IP address non-standard

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables AAA accounting records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting network default</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start-stop radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Delays generation of the start accounting record until the Framed-IP-Address is assigned, allowing its use in the POD packet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting delay-start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables POD reception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa pod server server-keystring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Declares a RADIUS host that uses a vendor-proprietary version of RADIUS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server host IP address non-standard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enabling Double Authentication

Depending on the Cisco release, PPP sessions could be authenticated only by using a single authentication method: either PAP or CHAP. Double authentication requires remote users to pass a second stage of authentication (after CHAP or PAP authentication) before gaining network access.

This second (“double”) authentication requires a password that is known to the user but not stored on the user’s remote host. Therefore, the second authentication is specific to a user, not to a host. This provides an
additional level of security that will be effective even if information from the remote host is stolen. In addition, this also provides greater flexibility by allowing customized network privileges for each user.

The second stage authentication can use one-time passwords such as token card passwords, which are not supported by CHAP. If one-time passwords are used, a stolen user password is of no use to the perpetrator.

**How Double Authentication Works**

With double authentication, there are two authentication/authorization stages. These two stages occur after a remote user dials in and a PPP session is initiated.

In the first stage, the user logs in using the remote host name; CHAP (or PAP) authenticates the remote host, and then PPP negotiates with AAA to authorize the remote host. In this process, the network access privileges associated with the remote host are assigned to the user.

---

**Note**

We suggest that the network administrator restrict authorization at this first stage to allow only Telnet connections to the local host.

In the second stage, the remote user must Telnet to the network access server to be authenticated. When the remote user logs in, the user must be authenticated with AAA login authentication. The user then must enter the `access-profile` command to be reauthorized using AAA. When this authorization is complete, the user has been double authenticated, and can access the network according to per-user network privileges.

The system administrator determines what network privileges remote users will have after each stage of authentication by configuring appropriate parameters on a security server. To use double authentication, the user must activate it by issuing the `access-profile` command.

---

**Caution**

Double authentication can cause certain undesirable events if multiple hosts share a PPP connection to a network access server, as shown in the figure below. First, if a user, Bob, initiates a PPP session and activates double authentication at the network access server (per the figure below), any other user will automatically have the same network privileges as Bob until Bob’s PPP session expires. This happens because Bob’s authorization profile is applied to the network access server’s interface during the PPP session and any PPP traffic from other users will use the PPP session Bob established. Second, if Bob initiates a PPP session and activates double authentication, and then before Bob’s PPP session has expired, another user, Jane, executes the `access-profile` command (or, if Jane Telnets to the network access server and `autocommand access-profile` executed), a reauthorization will occur and Jane’s authorization profile will be applied to the interface—replacing Bob’s profile. This can disrupt or halt Bob’s PPP traffic, or grant Bob additional authorization privileges Bob should not have.

---

**Figure 2: Possibly Risky Topology: Multiple Hosts Share a PPP Connection to a Network Access Server**
Configuring Double Authentication

To configure double authentication, you must complete the following steps:

1. Enable AAA by using the `aaa-new-model` global configuration command. For more information about enabling AAA, refer to the chapter “AAA Overview.”

2. Use the `aaa authentication` command to configure your network access server to use login and PPP authentication method lists, then apply those method lists to the appropriate lines or interfaces.

3. Use the `aaa authorization` command to configure AAA network authorization at login. For more information about configuring network authorization, refer to the “Configuring Authorization” chapter.

4. Configure security protocol parameters (for example, RADIUS or TACACS+). For more information about RADIUS, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about TACACS+, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

5. Use access control list AV pairs on the security server that the user can connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.

6. (Optional) Configure the `access-profile` command as an autocommand. If you configure the autocommand, remote users will not have to manually enter the `access-profile` command to access authorized rights associated with their personal user profile.

Note

If the `access-profile` command is configured as an autocommand, users will still have to Telnet to the local host and log in to complete double authentication.

Follow these rules when creating the user-specific authorization statements (These rules relate to the default behavior of the `access-profile` command):

- Use valid AV pairs when configuring access control list AV pairs on the security server.
- If you want remote users to use the interface’s existing authorization (that which existed prior to the second stage authentication/authorization), but you want them to have different access control lists (ACLs), you should specify only ACL AV pairs in the user-specific authorization definition. This might be desirable if you set up a default authorization profile to apply to the remote host, but want to apply specific ACLs to specific users.
- When these user-specific authorization statements are later applied to the interface, they can either be added to the existing interface configuration or they can replace the existing interface configuration—depending on which form of the `access-profile` command is used to authorize the user. You should understand how the `access-profile` command works before configuring the authorization statements.
- If you will be using ISDN or Multilink PPP, you must also configure virtual templates at the local host.

To troubleshoot double authentication, use the `debug aaa per-user` debug command. For more information about this command, refer to the Cisco IOS Debug Command Reference.

Accessing the User Profile After Double Authentication

In double authentication, when a remote user establishes a PPP link to the local host using the local host name, the remote host is CHAP (or PAP) authenticated. After CHAP (or PAP) authentication, PPP negotiates with
AAA to assign network access privileges associated with the remote host to the user. (We suggest that privileges at this stage be restricted to allow the user to connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.)

When the user needs to initiate the second phase of double authentication, establishing a Telnet connection to the local host, the user enters a personal username and password (different from the CHAP or PAP username and password). This action causes AAA reauthentication to occur according to the personal username/password. The initial rights associated with the local host, though, are still in place. By using the `access-profile` command, the rights associated with the local host are replaced by or merged with those defined for the user in the user’s profile.

To access the user profile after double authentication, use the following command in EXEC configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; <strong>access-profile</strong> [merge</td>
<td>replace]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ignore-sanity-checks]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you configured the `access-profile` command to be executed as an autocommand, it will be executed automatically after the remote user logs in.

### Enabling Automated Double Authentication

You can make the double authentication process easier for users by implementing automated double authentication. Automated double authentication provides all of the security benefits of double authentication, but offers a simpler, more user-friendly interface for remote users. With double authentication, a second level of user authentication is achieved when the user Telnets to the network access server or router and enters a username and password. With automated double authentication, the user does not have to Telnet to the network access server; instead the user responds to a dialog box that requests a username and password or personal identification number (PIN). To use the automated double authentication feature, the remote user hosts must be running a companion client application.

Note: Automated double authentication, like the existing double authentication feature, is for Multilink PPP ISDN connections only. Automated double authentication cannot be used with other protocols such as X.25 or SLIP.

Automated double authentication is an enhancement to the existing double authentication feature. To configure automated double authentication, you must first configure double authentication by completing the following steps:

1. Enable AAA by using the `aaa-new model` global configuration command.
2. Use the `aaa authentication` command to configure your network access server to use login and PPP authentication method lists, then apply those method lists to the appropriate lines or interfaces.
3. Use the `aaa authorization` command to configure AAA network authorization at login. For more information about configuring network authorization, refer to the chapter “Configuring Authorization.”
4. Configure security protocol parameters (for example, RADIUS or TACACS+). For more information about RADIUS, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about TACACS+, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”
5. Use access control list AV pairs on the security server that the user can connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.

6. Configure the access-profile command as an autocommand. If you configure the autocommand, remote users will not have to manually enter the access-profile command to access authorized rights associated with their personal user profile. To learn about configuring autocommands, refer to the autocommand command in the CiscoIOS Dial Technologies Command Reference, Release 12.2.

---

**Note**

If the access-profile command is configured as an autocommand, users will still have to Telnet to the local host and log in to complete double authentication.

Follow these rules when creating the user-specific authorization statements (These rules relate to the default behavior of the access-profile command):

- Use valid AV pairs when configuring access control list AV pairs on the security server.
- If you want remote users to use the interface’s existing authorization (that which existed prior to the second stage authentication/authorization), but you want them to have different access control lists (ACLs), you should specify only ACL AV pairs in the user-specific authorization definition. This might be desirable if you set up a default authorization profile to apply to the remote host, but want to apply specific ACLs to specific users.
- When these user-specific authorization statements are later applied to the interface, they can either be added to the existing interface configuration, or replace the existing interface configuration--depending on which form of the access-profile command is used to authorize the user. You should understand how the access-profile command works before configuring the authorization statements.
- If you will be using ISDN or Multilink PPP, you must also configure virtual templates at the local host.

To troubleshoot double authentication, use the debug aaa per-user debug command. For more information about this command, refer to the Cisco IOS Debug Command Reference.

After you have configured double authentication, you are ready to configure the automation enhancement.

### Configuring Automated Double Authentication

To configure automated double authentication, use the following commands, starting in global configuration mode.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Device(config)# ip trigger-authentication
2. Do one of the following:
   - Device(config)# interface bri number
   - 
   - 
   - 
   - Device(config)# interface serial number :23
3. Device(config-if)# ip trigger-authentication
DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | Device(config)# ip trigger-authentication  
**Example:** ```timeout seconds [port number]``` | Enables automation of double authentication. |
| Step 2 | Do one of the following:  
- Device(config)# interface bri number  
-  
- Device(config)# interface serial number:23 | Selects an ISDN BRI or ISDN PRI interface and enter the interface configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | Device(config-if)# ip trigger-authentication | Applies automated double authentication to the interface. |

**Troubleshooting Automated Double Authentication**

To troubleshoot automated double authentication, use the following commands in privileged EXEC mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Device# show ip trigger-authentication  
2. Device# clear ip trigger-authentication  
3. Device# debug ip trigger-authentication

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Device# show ip trigger-authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Device# clear ip trigger-authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Device# debug ip trigger-authentication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring the Dynamic Authorization Service for RADIUS CoA**

Use the following procedure to enable the router as an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server for dynamic authorization service to support the CoA functionality that pushes the policy map in an input and output direction.
### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa server radius dynamic-author
5. client \{ip_addr | hostname\} \[server-key \[0 | 7\] string\]
6. domain \{delimiter character \| stripping \[right-to-left\]\}
7. port \{port-num\}

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router&gt; enable</td>
<td><em>Enter your password if prompted.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa server radius dynamic-author</td>
<td>Sets up the local AAA server for dynamic authorization service, which must be enabled to support the CoA functionality to push the policy map in an input and output direction and enter dynamic authorization local server configuration mode. In this mode, the RADIUS application commands are configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> client {ip_addr</td>
<td>hostname} [server-key [0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-locsvr-da-radius)#client 192.168.0.5 server-key cisco1</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Configuring the server key at the client level overrides the server key configured at the global level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> domain {delimiter character | stripping [right-to-left]}</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures username domain options for the RADIUS application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-locsvr-da-radius)# domain stripping right-to-left</td>
<td><em>The delimiter keyword specifies the domain delimiter. One of the following options can be specified for the character argument: @, /, $, %, , # or -</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring a Device to Ignore Bounce and Disable RADIUS CoA Requests

When an authentication port is authenticated with multiple hosts and there is a Change of Authorization (CoA) request for one host to flap on this port or one host session to be terminated on this port, the other hosts on this port are also affected. Thus, an authenticated port with multiple hosts can trigger a DHCP renegotiation from one or more hosts in the case of a flap, or it can administratively shut down the authentication port that is hosting the session for one or more hosts.

Perform the following steps to configure the device to ignore RADIUS server Change of Authorization (CoA) requests in the form of a bounce port command or disable port command.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. authentication command bounce-port ignore
5. authentication command disable-port ignore
6. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Domain Stripping at the Server Group Level

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **aaa group server radius** `server-name`
4. **domain-stripping** `[strip-suffix word] [right-to-left] [prefix-delimiter word] [delimiter word]`
5. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa group server radius <code>server-name</code></td>
<td>Adds the RADIUS server and enters server group RADIUS configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• The <code>server-name</code> argument specifies the RADIUS server group name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa group server radius radl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

**Step 4**

`domain-stripping [strip-suffix word] [right-to-left] [prefix-delimiter word] [delimiter word]`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-sg-radius)# domain-stripping
delimiter username@example.com
```

**Purpose**

Configures domain stripping at the server group level.

**Step 5**

`end`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

Exits server group RADIUS configuration mode and returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

### Non-AAA Authentication Methods

### Configuring Line Password Protection

You can This task is used to provide access control on a terminal line by entering the password and establishing password checking.

**Note**

If you configure line password protection and then configure TACACS or extended TACACS, the TACACS username and password take precedence over line passwords. If you have not yet implemented a security policy, we recommend that you use AAA.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]
4. password password
5. login

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

| Step 3 | line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number] |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Example: | Device(config)# line console 0 |

**Purpose:**
Enter line configuration mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>password password</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-line)# secret word</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose:**
Assigns a password to a terminal or other device on a line. The password checker is case sensitive and can include spaces; for example, the password “Secret” is different from the password “secret,” and “two words” is an acceptable password.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>login</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-line)# login</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose:**
Enables password checking at login.

You can disable line password verification by disabling password checking by using the no version of this command.

**Note**
The login command only changes username and privilege level but it does not execute a shell; therefore autocommands will not be executed. To execute autocommands under this circumstance, you need to establish a Telnet session back into the router (loop-back). Make sure that the router has been configured for secure Telnet sessions if you choose to implement autocommands this way.

## Establishing Username Authentication

You can create a username-based authentication system, which is useful in the following situations:

- To provide a TACACS-like username and encrypted password-authentication system for networks that cannot support TACACS
- To provide special-case logins: for example, access list verification, no password verification, autocommand execution at login, and “no escape” situations

To establish username authentication, use the following commands in global configuration mode as needed for your system configuration:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Do one of the following:
   - Device(config)# username name [nopassword | password password | password encryption-type encrypted password]
   - Device(config)# username name [access-class number]
2. Device(config)# username name [privilege level]
3. Device(config)# username name [autocommand command]
4. Device(config)# username name [noescape] [nohangup]

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Establishes username authentication with encrypted passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Device(config)# username name [nopassword</td>
<td>password password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Device(config)# username name [access-class number]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Device(config)# username name [privilege level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional)</td>
<td>Sets the privilege level for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Device(config)# username name [autocommand command]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional)</td>
<td>Specifies a command to be executed automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>Device(config)# username name [noescape] [nohangup]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional)</td>
<td>Sets a “no escape” login environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The keyword noescape prevents users from using escape characters on the hosts to which they are connected. The nohangup feature does not disconnect after using the autocommand.

⚠️ **Caution**

Passwords will be displayed in clear text in your configuration unless you enable the service password-encryption command. For more information about the service password-encryption command, refer to the Cisco IOS Security Command Reference.

**Enabling CHAP or PAP Authentication**

One of the most common transport protocols used in Internet service providers’ (ISPs’) dial solutions is the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP). Traditionally, remote users dial in to an access server to initiate a PPP session. After PPP has been negotiated, remote users are connected to the ISP network and to the Internet.

Because ISPs want only customers to connect to their access servers, remote users are required to authenticate to the access server before they can start up a PPP session. Normally, a remote user authenticates by typing in a username and password when prompted by the access server. Although this is a workable solution, it is difficult to administer and awkward for the remote user.

A better solution is to use the authentication protocols built into PPP. In this case, the remote user dials in to the access server and starts up a minimal subset of PPP with the access server. This does not give the remote user access to the ISP’s network—it merely allows the access server to talk to the remote device.

PPP currently supports two authentication protocols: Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) and Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). Both are specified in RFC 1334 and are supported on synchronous...
and asynchronous interfaces. Authentication via PAP or CHAP is equivalent to typing in a username and password when prompted by the server. CHAP is considered to be more secure because the remote user’s password is never sent across the connection.

PPP (with or without PAP or CHAP authentication) is also supported in dialout solutions. An access server utilizes a dialout feature when it initiates a call to a remote device and attempts to start up a transport protocol such as PPP.

See the *Cisco IOS XE Dial Technologies Configuration Guide*, Release 2 for more information about CHAP and PAP.

**Note**

To use CHAP or PAP, you must be running PPP encapsulation.

When CHAP is enabled on an interface and a remote device attempts to connect to it, the access server sends a CHAP packet to the remote device. The CHAP packet requests or “challenges” the remote device to respond. The challenge packet consists of an ID, a random number, and the host name of the local router.

When the remote device receives the challenge packet, it concatenates the ID, the remote device’s password, and the random number, and then encrypts all of it using the remote device’s password. The remote device sends the results back to the access server, along with the name associated with the password used in the encryption process.

When the access server receives the response, it uses the name it received to retrieve a password stored in its user database. The retrieved password should be the same password the remote device used in its encryption process. The access server then encrypts the concatenated information with the newly retrieved password--if the result matches the result sent in the response packet, authentication succeeds.

The benefit of using CHAP authentication is that the remote device’s password is never transmitted in clear text. This prevents other devices from stealing it and gaining illegal access to the ISP’s network.

CHAP transactions occur only at the time a link is established. The access server does not request a password during the rest of the call. (The local device can, however, respond to such requests from other devices during a call.)

When PAP is enabled, the remote router attempting to connect to the access server is required to send an authentication request. If the username and password specified in the authentication request are accepted, the Cisco IOS XE software sends an authentication acknowledgment.

After you have enabled CHAP or PAP, the access server will require authentication from remote devices dialing in to the access server. If the remote device does not support the enabled protocol, the call will be dropped.

To use CHAP or PAP, you must perform the following tasks:

1. Enable PPP encapsulation.
2. Enable CHAP or PAP on the interface.
3. For CHAP, configure host name authentication and the secret or password for each remote system with which authentication is required.

**Enabling PPP Encapsulation**

To enable PPP encapsulation, use the following command in interface configuration mode:
Enabling PAP or CHAP

To enable CHAP or PAP authentication on an interface configured for PPP encapsulation, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# <strong>encapsulation ppp</strong></td>
<td>Enables PPP on an interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# **ppp authentication {protocol1 [protocol2...]} [if-needed] {default</td>
<td>list-name} [callin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you configure `ppp authentication chap` on an interface, all incoming calls on that interface that initiate a PPP connection will have to be authenticated using CHAP; likewise, if you configure `ppp authentication pap`, all incoming calls that start a PPP connection will have to be authenticated via PAP. If you configure `ppp authentication chap pap`, the access server will attempt to authenticate all incoming calls that start a PPP session with CHAP. If the remote device does not support CHAP, the access server will try to authenticate the call using PAP. If the remote device does not support either CHAP or PAP, authentication will fail and the call will be dropped. If you configure `ppp authentication pap chap`, the access server will attempt to authenticate all incoming calls that start a PPP session with PAP. If the remote device does not support PAP, the access server will try to authenticate the call using CHAP. If the remote device does not support either protocol, authentication will fail and the call will be dropped. If you configure the `ppp authentication` command with the `callin` keyword, the access server will only authenticate the remote device if the remote device initiated the call.

Authentication method lists and the `one-time` keyword are only available if you have enabled AAA—they will not be available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. If you specify the name of an authentication method list with the `ppp authentication` command, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined in the specified method list. If AAA is enabled and no method list is defined by name, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined as the default. The `ppp authentication` command with the `one-time` keyword enables support for one-time passwords during authentication.

The `if-needed` keyword is only available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. The `ppp authentication` command with the `if-needed` keyword means that PPP will only authenticate the remote device via PAP or CHAP if they have not yet authenticated during the life of the current call. If the remote device authenticated via a standard login procedure and initiated PPP from the EXEC prompt, PPP will not authenticate via CHAP if `ppp authentication chap if-needed` is configured on the interface.

**Caution**

If you use a `list-name` that has not been configured with the `aaa authentication ppp` command, you disable PPP on the line.

For information about adding a `username` entry for each remote system from which the local router or access server requires authentication, see the *Establishing Username Authentication, on page 58.*
Inbound and Outbound Authentication

PPP supports two-way authentication. Normally, when a remote device dials into an access server, the access server requests that the remote device prove that it is allowed access. This is known as inbound authentication. At the same time, the remote device can also request that the access server prove that it is who it says it is. This is known as outbound authentication. An access server also does outbound authentication when it initiates a call to a remote device.

Enabling Outbound PAP Authentication

To enable outbound PAP authentication, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp pap sent-username username password password</td>
<td>Enables outbound PAP authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The access server uses the username and password specified by the `ppp pap sent-username` command to authenticate itself whenever it initiates a call to a remote device or when it has to respond to a remote device’s request for outbound authentication.

Refusing PAP Authentication Requests

To refuse PAP authentication from peers requesting it, meaning that PAP authentication is disabled for all calls, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp pap refuse</td>
<td>Refuses PAP authentication from peers requesting PAP authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the refuse keyword is not used, the router will not refuse any PAP authentication challenges received from the peer.

Creating a Common CHAP Password

For remote CHAP authentication only, you can configure your router to create a common CHAP secret password to use in response to challenges from an unknown peer; for example, if your router calls a rotary of routers (either from another vendor, or running an older version of the Cisco IOS software) to which a new (that is, unknown) router has been added. The `ppp chap password` command allows you to replace several username and password configuration commands with a single copy of this command on any dialer interface or asynchronous group interface.

To enable a router calling a collection of routers to configure a common CHAP secret password, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp chap password secret</td>
<td>Enables a router calling a collection of routers to configure a common CHAP secret password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Refusing CHAP Authentication Requests

To refuse CHAP authentication from peers requesting it, meaning that CHAP authentication is disabled for all calls, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp chap refuse</td>
<td>Refuses CHAP authentication from peers requesting CHAP authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[callin]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the `callin` keyword is used, the router will refuse to answer CHAP authentication challenges received from the peer, but will still require the peer to answer any CHAP challenges the router sends.

If outbound PAP has been enabled (using the `ppp pap sent-username` command), PAP will be suggested as the authentication method in the refusal packet.

Delaying CHAP Authentication Until Peer Authenticates

To specify that the router will not authenticate to a peer requesting CHAP authentication until after the peer has authenticated itself to the router, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp chap wait secret</td>
<td>Configures the router to delay CHAP authentication until after the peer has authenticated itself to the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This command (which is the default) specifies that the router will not authenticate to a peer requesting CHAP authentication until the peer has authenticated itself to the router. The `no ppp chap wait` command specifies that the router will respond immediately to an authentication challenge.

Using MS-CHAP

Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAP) is the Microsoft version of CHAP and is an extension of RFC 1994. Like the standard version of CHAP, MS-CHAP is used for PPP authentication; in this case, authentication occurs between a PC using Microsoft Windows NT or Microsoft Windows 95 and a Cisco device or access server acting as a network access server.

MS-CHAP differs from the standard CHAP as follows:

- MS-CHAP is enabled by negotiating CHAP Algorithm 0x80 in LCP option 3, Authentication Protocol.
- The MS-CHAP Response packet is in a format designed to be compatible with Microsoft Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51, Microsoft Windows 95, and Microsoft LAN Manager 2.x. This format does not require the authenticator to store a clear or reversibly encrypted password.
- MS-CHAP provides an authenticator-controlled authentication retry mechanism.
- MS-CHAP provides an authenticator-controlled change password mechanism.
- MS-CHAP defines a set of “reason-for-failure” codes returned in the Failure packet message field.

Depending on the security protocols you have implemented, PPP authentication using MS-CHAP can be used with or without AAA security services. If you have enabled AAA, PPP authentication using MS-CHAP can
be used in conjunction with both TACACS+ and RADIUS. The table below lists the vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (IETF Attribute 26) that enable RADIUS to support MS-CHAP.

**Table 13: Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes for MS-CHAP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor-ID Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Type Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Proprietary Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Challenge</td>
<td>Contains the challenge sent by a network access server to an MS-CHAP user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Response</td>
<td>Contains the response value provided by a PPP MS-CHAP user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets. This attribute is identical to the PPP CHAP Identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Defining PPP Authentication using MS-CHAP**

To define PPP authentication using MS-CHAP, use the following commands in interface configuration mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Device(config-if)# encapsulation ppp
2. Device(config-if)# ppp authentication ms-chap [if-needed] [list-name | default] [callin] [one-time]

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# encapsulation ppp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp authentication ms-chap [if-needed] [list-name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

If you configure `ppp authentication ms-chap` on an interface, all incoming calls on that interface that initiate a PPP connection will have to be authenticated using MS-CHAP. If you configure the `ppp authentication` command with the `callin` keyword, the access server will only authenticate the remote device if the remote device initiated the call.

Authentication method lists and the `one-time` keyword are only available if you have enabled AAA—they will not be available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. If you specify the name of an authentication method list with the `ppp authentication` command, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined in the specified method list. If AAA is enabled and no method list is defined by name, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined as the default. The `ppp authentication` command with the `one-time` keyword enables support for one-time passwords during authentication.

The `if-needed` keyword is only available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. The `ppp authentication` command with the `if-needed` keyword means that PPP will only authenticate the remote device via MS-CHAP if that device has not yet authenticated during the life of the current call. If the remote device
authenticated through a standard login procedure and initiated PPP from the EXEC prompt, PPP will not authenticate through MS-CHAP if `ppp authentication chap if-needed` is configured.

**Note**

If PPP authentication using MS-CHAP is used with username authentication, you must include the MS-CHAP secret in the local username/password database. For more information about username authentication, refer to the “Establish Username Authentication” section.

## Authentication Examples

### Example: RADIUS Authentication

This section provides two sample configurations using RADIUS.

The following example shows how to configure the router to authenticate and authorize using RADIUS:

```
aaa authentication login radius-login group radius local
aaa authentication ppp radius-ppp if-needed group radius
aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated
aaa authorization network default group radius
line 3
  login authentication radius-login
interface serial 0
  ppp authentication radius-ppp
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authentication and authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa authentication login radius-login group radius local` command configures the router to use RADIUS for authentication at the login prompt. If RADIUS returns an error, the user is authenticated using the local database.
- The `aaa authentication ppp radius-ppp if-needed group radius` command configures the Cisco IOS XE software to use PPP authentication using CHAP or PAP if the user has not already logged in. If the EXEC facility has authenticated the user, PPP authentication is not performed.
- The `aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated` command queries the RADIUS database for information that is used during EXEC authorization, such as autocommands and privilege levels, but only provides authorization if the user has successfully authenticated.
- The `aaa authorization network default group radius` command queries RADIUS for network authorization, address assignment, and other access lists.
- The `login authentication radius-login` command enables the radius-login method list for line 3.
- The `ppp authentication radius-ppp` command enables the radius-ppp method list for serial interface 0.

The following example shows how to configure the router to prompt for and verify a username and password, authorize the user’s EXEC level, and specify it as the method of authorization for privilege level 2. In this example, if a local username is entered at the username prompt, that username is used for authentication.

If the user is authenticated using the local database, EXEC authorization using RADIUS will fail because no data is saved from the RADIUS authentication. The method list also uses the local database to find an autocommand. If there is no autocommand, the user becomes the EXEC user. If the user then attempts to issue commands that are set at privilege level 2, TACACS+ is used to attempt to authorize the command.
aaa authentication login default group radius local
aaa authorization exec default group radius local
aaa authorization command 2 default group tacacs+ if-authenticated
radius-server host 172.16.71.146 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req
radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req

The lines in this sample RADIUS authentication and authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa authentication login default group radius local` command specifies that the username and password are verified by RADIUS or, if RADIUS is not responding, by the router’s local user database.

- The `aaa authorization exec default group radius local` command specifies that RADIUS authentication information be used to set the user’s EXEC level if the user authenticates with RADIUS. If no RADIUS information is used, this command specifies that the local user database be used for EXEC authorization.

- The `aaa authorization command 2 default group tacacs+ if-authenticated` command specifies TACACS+ authorization for commands set at privilege level 2, if the user has already successfully authenticated.

- The `radius-server host 172.16.71.146 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646` command specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server host, the UDP destination port for authentication requests, and the UDP destination port for accounting requests.

- The `radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req` command sends RADIUS attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID) in access-request packets.

- The `radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req` command sends RADIUS attribute 8 (Framed-IP-Address) in access-request packets.

**Example: TACACS Authentication**

The following example shows how to configure TACACS+ as the security protocol to be used for PPP authentication:

```
aaa new-model
aaa authentication ppp test group tacacs+ local
interface serial 0
    ppp authentication chap pap test
tacacs-server host 192.0.2.3
tacacs-server key goaway
```

The lines in this sample TACACS+ authentication configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables the AAA security services.

- The `aaa authentication` command defines a method list, “test,” to be used on serial interfaces running PPP. The keywords `group tacacs+` means that authentication will be done through TACACS+. If TACACS+ returns an ERROR of some sort during authentication, the keyword `local` indicates that authentication will be attempted using the local database on the network access server.

- The `interface` command selects the line.

- The `ppp authentication` command applies the test method list to this line.

- The `tacacs-server host` command identifies the TACACS+ daemon as having an IP address of 192.0.2.3.

- The `tacacs-server key` command defines the shared encryption key to be “goaway.”
The following example shows how to configure AAA authentication for PPP:

```
aaa authentication ppp default if-needed group tacacs+ local
```

In this example, the keyword `default` means that PPP authentication is applied by default to all interfaces. The `if-needed` keyword means that if the user has already authenticated by going through the ASCII login procedure, then PPP is not necessary and can be skipped. If authentication is needed, the keywords `group tacacs+` mean that authentication will be done through TACACS+. If TACACS+ returns an ERROR of some sort during authentication, the keyword `local` indicates that authentication will be attempted using the local database on the network access server.

The following example shows how to create the same authentication algorithm for PAP, but it calls the method list “MIS-access” instead of “default”:

```
aaa authentication ppp MIS-access if-needed group tacacs+ local
interface serial 0
ppp authentication pap MIS-access
```

In this example, because the list does not apply to any interfaces (unlike the default list, which applies automatically to all interfaces), the administrator must select interfaces to which this authentication scheme should apply by using the `interface` command. The administrator must then apply this method list to those interfaces by using the `ppp authentication` command.

**Example: Kerberos Authentication**

To specify Kerberos as the login authentication method, use the following command:

```
aaa authentication login default krb5
```

To specify Kerberos authentication for PPP, use the following command:

```
aaa authentication ppp default krb5
```

**Example: AAA Scalability**

The following example shows a general security configuration using AAA with RADIUS as the security protocol. In this example, the network access server is configured to allocate 16 background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP.

```
aaa new-model
radius-server host alcatraz
radius-server key myRaDiUSpassWoRd
radius-server configure-nas
username root password ALongPassword
aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local
aaa authentication login admins local
aaa authorization network default group radius local
aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius
aaa processes 16
line 1 16
  autoselect ppp
  autoselect during-login
  login authentication admins
  modem dialin
interface group-async 1
  group-range 1 16
```
encapsulation ppp
ppp authentication pap dialins

The lines in this sample RADIUS AAA configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA network security services.
- The `radius-server host` command defines the name of the RADIUS server host.
- The `radius-server key` command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.
- The `radius-server configure-nas` command defines that the Cisco router or access server will query the RADIUS server for static routes and IP pool definitions when the device first starts up.
- The `username` command defines the username and password to be used for the PPP Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) caller identification.
- The `aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local` command defines the authentication method list “dialins,” which specifies that RADIUS authentication, then (if the RADIUS server does not respond) local authentication will be used on serial lines using PPP.
- The `aaa authentication login admins local` command defines another method list, “admins,” for login authentication.
- The `aaa authorization network default group radius local` command is used to assign an address and other network parameters to the RADIUS user.
- The `aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius` command tracks PPP usage.
- The `aaa processes` command allocates 16 background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP.
- The `line` command switches the configuration mode from global configuration to line configuration and identifies the specific lines being configured.
- The `autoselect ppp` command allows a PPP session to start up automatically on these selected lines.
- The `autoselect during-login` command is used to display the username and password prompt without pressing the Return key. After the user logs in, the autoselect function (in this case, PPP) begins.
- The `login authentication admins` command applies the “admins” method list for login authentication.
- The `modem dialin` command configures modems attached to the selected lines to only accept incoming calls.
- The `interface group-async` command selects and defines an asynchronous interface group.
- The `group-range` command defines the member asynchronous interfaces in the interface group.
- The `encapsulation ppp` command sets PPP as the encapsulation method used on the specified interfaces.
- The `ppp authentication pap dialins` command applies the “dialins” method list to the specified interfaces.

Example: Configuring Login and Failed-Login Banners for AAA Authentication

The following example shows how to configure a login banner that is displayed when a user logs in to the system, (in this case, the phrase “Unauthorized Access Prohibited”). The asterisk (*) is used as the delimiting character. RADIUS is specified as the default login authentication method.
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication banner *Unauthorized Access Prohibited*
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius

This configuration displays the following login banner:

Unauthorized Access Prohibited
Username:

The following example shows how to configure a failed-login banner that is displayed when a user tries to log in to the system and fails, (in this case, the phrase “Failed login. Try again”). The asterisk (*) is used as the delimiting character. RADIUS is specified as the default login authentication method.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication banner *Unauthorized Access Prohibited*
Device(config)# aaa authentication fail-message *Failed login. Try again.*
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius

This configuration displays the following login and failed-login banner:

Unauthorized Access Prohibited
Username:
Password:
Failed login. Try again.

Example: AAA Packet of Disconnect Server Key

The following example shows how to configure POD (packet of disconnect), which terminates connections on the network access server (NAS) when particular session attributes are identified.

aaa new-model
aaa authentication ppp default radius
aaa accounting network default start-stop radius
aaa accounting delay-start
aaa pod server server-key xyz123
radius-server host 192.0.2.3 non-standard
radius-server key rad123

Example: Double Authentication

The examples in this section illustrate possible configurations to be used with double authentication. Your configurations could differ significantly, depending on your network and security requirements.

Note

These configuration examples include specific IP addresses and other specific information. This information is for illustration purposes only: your configuration will use different IP addresses, different usernames and passwords, and different authorization statements.

Example: Configuration of the Local Host for AAA with Double Authentication

These two examples show how to configure a local host to use AAA for PPP and login authentication, and for network and EXEC authorization. An example each is shown for RADIUS and for TACACS+. 

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
In both the examples, the first three lines configure AAA with a specific server as the AAA server. The next two lines configure AAA for PPP and login authentication, and the last two lines configure network and EXEC authorization. The last line is necessary only if the `access-profile` command will be executed as an autocommand.

The following example shows device configuration with a RADIUS AAA server:

```
aaa new-model
radius-server host severserver
radius-server key myradiuskey
aaa authentication ppp default group radius
aaa authentication login default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa authorization exec default group radius
```

The following example shows device configuration with a TACACS+ server:

```
aaa new-model
tacacs-server host security
  tacacs-server key mytacacskey
  aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+
  aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
  aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
  aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+
```

### Example: Configuration of the AAA Server for First-Stage PPP Authentication and Authorization

This example shows a configuration on the AAA server. A partial sample AAA configuration is shown for RADIUS.

TACACS+ servers can be configured similarly. (See the Complete Configuration with TACACS Example.)

This example defines authentication/authorization for a remote host named “hostx” that will be authenticated by CHAP in the first stage of double authentication. Note that the ACL AV pair limits the remote host to Telnet connections to the local host. The local host has the IP address 10.0.0.2.

The following example shows a partial AAA server configuration for RADIUS:

```
hostx  Password = "welcome"
  User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
  Framed-Protocol = PPP,
  cisco-avpair = "lcp:interface-config=ip unnumbered fastethernet 0",
  cisco-avpair = "ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any 172.21.114.0 0.0.0.255 eq telnet",
  cisco-avpair = "ip:inacl#4=deny icmp any any",
  cisco-avpair = "ip:route#5=10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0",
  cisco-avpair = "ip:route#6=10.10.0.0 255.0.0.0",
  cisco-avpair = "ipx:inacl#3=deny any"
```

### Example: Configuration of the AAA Server for Second-Stage Per-User Authentication and Authorization

This section contains partial sample AAA configurations on a RADIUS server. These configurations define authentication and authorization for a user (Pat) with the username “patuser,” who will be user-authenticated in the second stage of double authentication.

TACACS+ servers can be configured similarly. (See the Complete Configuration with TACACS Example.)

Three examples show sample RADIUS AAA configurations that could be used with each of the three forms of the `access-profile` command.
The first example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the default form (no keywords) of the `access-profile` command. Note that only ACL AV pairs are defined. This example also sets up the `access-profile` command as an autocmd.

```
patuser  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any host 10.0.0.2 eq telnet”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#4=deny icmp any any”
```

The second example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the `access-profile merge` form of the `access-profile` command. This example also sets up the `access-profile merge` command as an autocmd.

```
patuser  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile merge”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any any”
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.0.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.2.0.0 255.255.0.0”
```

The third example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the `access-profile replace` form of the `access-profile` command. This example also sets up the `access-profile replace` command as an autocmd.

```
patuser  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile replace”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any any”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#4=permit icmp any any”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.10.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.12.0.0 255.255.0.0”
```

Example: Complete Configuration with TACACS

This example shows TACACS+ authorization profile configurations both for the remote host (used in the first stage of double authentication) and for specific users (used in the second stage of double authentication). This TACACS+ example contains approximately the same configuration information as shown in the previous RADIUS examples.

This sample configuration shows authentication/authorization profiles on the TACACS+ server for the remote host “hostx” and for three users, with the usernames “pat_default,” “pat_merge,” and “pat_replace.” The configurations for these three usernames illustrate different configurations that correspond to the three different forms of the `access-profile` command. The three user configurations also illustrate setting up the autocmd for each form of the `access-profile` command.

The figure below shows the topology. The example that follows the figure shows a TACACS+ configuration file.
Figure 3: Example Topology for Double Authentication

This sample configuration shows authentication/authorization profiles on the TACACS+ server for the remote host “hostx” and for three users, with the usernames “pat_default,” “pat_merge,” and “pat_replace.”

```plaintext
key = "mytacacskey"
default authorization = permit

#-----------------------------Remote Host (BRI)-------------------------
# This allows the remote host to be authenticated by the local host
# during first-stage authentication, and provides the remote host
# authorization profile.
#---------------------------------------------------------------
user = hostx
{
    login = cleartext "welcome"
    chap = cleartext "welcome"
    service = exec
        { # This is the autocommand that executes when pat_default logs in.
            autocmd = "access-profile"
        }
    service = ppp protocol = lcp {
        interface-config="ip unnumbered fastethernet 0"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        # It is important to have the hash sign and some string after
        # it. This indicates to the NAS that you have a per-user
        # config.
        inacl#3="permit tcp any 172.21.114.0 0.0.0.255 eq telnet"
        inacl#4="deny icmp any any"
        route#5="10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0"
        route#6="10.10.0.0 255.0.0.0"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ipx {
        # see previous comment about the hash sign and string, in protocol = ip
        inacl#3="deny any"
    }
}
#------------------- "access-profile" default user "only acls" ------------------
# Without arguments, access-profile removes any access-lists it can find
# in the old configuration (both per-user and per-interface), and makes sure
# that the new profile contains ONLY access-list definitions.
#--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
user = pat_default
{
    login = cleartext "welcome"
    chap = cleartext "welcome"
    service = exec
        {
            # This is the autocommand that executes when pat_default logs in.
            autocmd = "access-profile"
        }
}
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
service = ppp protocol = ip {
  # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
  # here.
  # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IP
  # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
  # this)!
  inacl#3="permit tcp any host 10.0.0.2 eq telnet"
  inacl#4="deny icmp any any"
}
service = ppp protocol = ipx {
  # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
  # here.
  # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IPX
  # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
  # this)!
}

#--------------------- "access-profile merge" user ---------------------------
#
# With the 'merge' option, first all old access-lists are removed (as before),
# but then (almost) all AV pairs are uploaded and installed. This will allow
# for uploading any custom static routes, sap-filters, and so on, that the user
# may need in his or her profile. This needs to be used with care, as it leaves
# open the possibility of conflicting configurations.
#
#--------------------- "access-profile replace" user ----------------------------
#
# With the 'replace' option, ALL old configuration is removed and ALL new
# configuration is installed.
#
# One caveat: access-profile checks the new configuration for address-pool and
# address AV pairs. As addresses cannot be renegotiated at this point, the
# command will fail (and complain) when it encounters such an AV pair.
Example: Automated Double Authentication

This example shows a complete configuration file with automated double authentication configured. The configuration commands that apply to automated double authentication are preceded by descriptions with a double asterisk (**).

Current configuration:

```text
! version 11.3
no service password-encryption
!
hostname myrouter
!
! **The following AAA commands are used to configure double authentication:
!
! **The following command enables AAA:
aaa new-model
! **The following command enables user authentication via the RADIUS AAA server:
aaa authentication login default none
aaa authentication ppp default group radius
! **The following command causes the remote user’s authorization profile to be
```
! downloaded from the AAA server to the router when required:
  !
  aaa authorization network default group radius
  !
  enable password mypassword
  !
  ip host blue 172.21.127.226
  ip host green 172.21.127.218
  ip host red 172.21.127.114
  ip domain-name example.com
  ip name-server 172.16.2.75
  !
  interface FastEthernet0/0/0
  ip address 172.21.127.186 255.255.255.248
  no ip route-cache
  no ip mroute-cache
  no keepalive
  ntp disable
  no cdp enable
  !
  interface Virtual-Templ吃1
  ip unnumbered loopback0
  no ip route-cache
  no ip mroute-cache
  !
  ! **The following command specifies that device authentication occurs via FFP CHAP:
  ppp authentication chap
  !
  router eigrp 109
  network 172.21.0.0
  no auto-summary
  !
  ip default-gateway 172.21.127.185
  no ip classless
  ip route 172.21.127.114 255.255.255.255 172.21.127.113
  ! **Virtual profiles are required for double authentication to work:
  virtual-profile virtual-template 1
  dialer-list 1 protocol ip permit
  no cdp run
  ! **The following command defines where the TACACS+ AAA server is:
  tacacs-server host 172.16.57.35 port 1049
  tacacs-server timeout 90
  ! **The following command defines the key to use with TACACS+ traffic (required):
  tacacs-server key mytacacskey
  snmp-server community public RO
  !
  line con 0
  exec-timeout 0 0
  login authentication console
  line aux 0
  transport input all
  line vty 0 4
  exec-timeout 0 0
  password lab
  !
  end

The lines in this sample RADIUS AAA configuration are defined as follows:

- The **aaa new-model** command enables AAA network security services.
- The **aaa authentication login admins local** command defines another method list, “admins”, for login authentication.
• The `aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local` command defines the authentication method list “dialins,” which specifies that RADIUS authentication then (if the RADIUS server does not respond) local authentication will be used on serial lines using PPP.

• The `aaa authorization network default group radius local` command is used to assign an address and other network parameters to the RADIUS user.

• The `aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius` command tracks PPP usage.

• The `username` command defines the username and password to be used for the PPP Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) caller identification.

• The `radius-server host` command defines the name of the RADIUS server host.

• The `radius-server key` command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.

• The `interface group-async` command selects and defines an asynchronous interface group.

• The `group-range` command defines the member asynchronous interfaces in the interface group.

• The `encapsulation ppp` command sets PPP as the encapsulation method used on the specified interfaces.

• The `ppp authentication ms-chap dialins` command selects MS-CHAP as the method of PPP authentication and applies the “dialins” method list to the specified interfaces.

• The `line` command switches the configuration mode from global configuration to line configuration and identifies the specific lines being configured.

• The `autoselect ppp` command allows a PPP session to start up automatically on these selected lines.

• The `autoselect during-login` command is used to display the username and password prompt without pressing the Return key. After the user logs in, the autoselect function (in this case, PPP) begins.

• The `login authentication admins` command applies the “admins” method list for login authentication.

• The `modem dialin` command configures modems attached to the selected lines to only accept incoming calls.

---

**Additional References for Configuring Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IOS commands</td>
<td><em>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Standards**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified MIBs are supported by this feature, and support</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS XE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for existing MIBs has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 1334</td>
<td>PPP Authentication Protocols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2433</td>
<td>Microsoft PPP CHAP Extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2903</td>
<td>Generic AAA Architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2904</td>
<td>AAA Authorization Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2906</td>
<td>AAA Authorization Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2989</td>
<td>Criteria for Evaluating AAA Protocols for Network Access</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Configuring Authentication

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 14: Feature Information for Configuring Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authentication</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>Authentication provides a method to identify users, which includes the login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and encryption, depending on the selected security protocol. Authentication is the way a user is identified prior to being allowed access to the network and network services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Authorization

AAA authorization enables you to limit the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. Once this is done, the user will be granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

AAA Authorization Prerequisites, on page 79
Information About Configuring Authorization, on page 80
How to Configure Authorization, on page 83
Authorization Configuration Examples, on page 85
Additional References for Configuring Authorization, on page 89
Feature Information for Configuring Authorization, on page 89

AAA Authorization Prerequisites

Before configuring authorization using named method lists, you must first perform the following tasks:

• Enable AAA on your network access server.

• Configure AAA authentication. Authorization generally takes place after authentication and relies on authentication to work properly. For more information about AAA authentication, refer to the “Configuring Authentication” module.

• Define the characteristics of your RADIUS or TACACS+ security server if you are issuing RADIUS or TACACS+ authorization. For more information about configuring your Cisco network access server to communicate with your RADIUS security server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about configuring your Cisco network access server to communicate with your TACACS+ security server, refer to the “Configuring TACACS+” module.

• Define the rights associated with specific users by using the username command if you are issuing local authorization. For more information about the username command, refer to the Cisco IOS Security Command Reference.
Information About Configuring Authorization

Named Method Lists for Authorization

Method lists for authorization define the ways that authorization will be performed and the sequence in which these methods will be performed. A method list is simply a named list describing the authorization methods to be queried (such as RADIUS or TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authorization, thus ensuring a backup system in case the initial method fails. Cisco IOS XE software uses the first method listed to authorize users for specific network services; if that method fails to respond, the Cisco IOS XE software selects the next method listed in the list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authorization method, or all methods defined are exhausted.

Note

The Cisco IOS XE software attempts authorization with the next listed method only when there is no response from the previous method. If authorization fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user services—the authorization process stops and no other authorization methods are attempted.

Method lists are specific to the authorization type requested:

- Commands—Applies to the EXEC mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.
- EXEC—Applies to the attributes associated with a user EXEC terminal session.
- Network—Applies to network connections. This can include a PPP, SLIP, or ARAP connection.
- Reverse Access—Applies to reverse Telnet sessions.

When you create a named method list, you are defining a particular list of authorization methods for the indicated authorization type.

Once defined, method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods will be performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). If the `aaa authorization` command for a particular authorization type is issued without a named method list specified, the default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces or lines except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. (A defined method list overrides the default method list.) If no default method list is defined, local authorization takes place by default.

AAA Authorization Methods

AAA supports five different methods of authorization:

- TACACS+—The network access server exchanges authorization information with the TACACS+ security daemon. TACACS+ authorization defines specific rights for users by associating attribute-value pairs, which are stored in a database on the TACACS+ security server, with the appropriate user.
Authorization Methods

To have the network access server request authorization information via a TACACS+ security server, use the `aaa authorization` command with the `group tacacs+` method keyword. For more specific information about configuring authorization using a TACACS+ security server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.” For an example of how to enable a TACACS+ server to authorize the use of network services, including PPP and ARA, see the TACACS Authorization Examples.

To allow users to have access to the functions they request as long as they have been authenticated, use the `aaa authorization` command with the `if-authenticated` method keyword. If you select this method, all requested functions are automatically granted to authenticated users.

There may be times when you do not want to run authorization from a particular interface or line. To stop authorization activities on designated lines or interfaces, use the `none` method keyword. If you select this method, authorization is disabled for all actions.

To select local authorization, which means that the router or access server consults its local user database to determine the functions a user is permitted to use, use the `aaa authorization` command with the `local` method keyword. The functions associated with local authorization are defined by using the `username` global configuration command. For a list of permitted functions, refer to the chapter “Configuring Authentication.”

To have the network access server request authorization via a RADIUS security server, use the `radius` method keyword. For more specific information about configuring authorization using a RADIUS security server, refer to the chapter Configuring RADIUS. For an example of how to enable a RADIUS server to authorize services, see the RADIUS Authorization Example.
Authorization method lists for SLIP follow whatever is configured for PPP on the relevant interface. If no lists are defined and applied to a particular interface (or no PPP settings are configured), the default setting for authorization applies.

### Method Lists and Server Groups

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers, and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 make up the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 make up the group of TACACS+ servers.

Using server groups, you can specify a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. For example, server groups allow you to define R1 and R2 as separate server groups, and T1 and T2 as separate server groups. This means you can specify either R1 and T1 in the method list or R2 and T2 in the method list, which provides more flexibility in the way that you assign RADIUS and TACACS+ resources.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, authorization—the second host entry configured acts as fail-over backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server will try the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries will be tried in the order they are configured.)

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on DNIS numbers, refer to the chapter Configuring RADIUS or the chapter Configuring TACACS+.

### AAA Authorization Types

Cisco IOS XE software supports five different types of authorization:

- **Commands**—Applies to the EXEC mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.
- **EXEC**—Applies to the attributes associated with a user EXEC terminal session.
- **Network**—Applies to network connections. This can include a PPP, SLIP, or ARAP connection.
- **Reverse Access**—Applies to reverse Telnet sessions.
- **Configuration**—Applies to downloading configurations from the AAA server.
- **IP Mobile**—Applies to authorization for IP mobile services.

### Authorization Types

Named authorization method lists are specific to the indicated type of authorization.
To create a method list to enable authorization that applies specific security policies on a per-user basis, use the auth-proxy keyword. For detailed information on the authentication proxy feature, refer to the chapter “Configuring Authentication Proxy” in the “Traffic Filtering and Firewalls” part of this book.

To create a method list to enable authorization for all network-related service requests (including SLIP, PPP, PPP NCPs, and ARAP), use the network keyword.

To create a method list to enable authorization to determine if a user is allowed to run an EXEC shell, use the exec keyword.

To create a method list to enable authorization for specific, individual EXEC commands associated with a specific privilege level, use the commands keyword. (This allows you to authorize all commands associated with a specified command level from 0 to 15.)

To create a method list to enable authorization for reverse Telnet functions, use the reverse-access keyword.

For information about the types of authorization supported by the Cisco IOS XE software, refer to the AAA Authorization Types.

Authorization Attribute-Value Pairs

RADIUS and TACACS+ authorization both define specific rights for users by processing attributes, which are stored in a database on the security server. For both RADIUS and TACACS+, attributes are defined on the security server, associated with the user, and sent to the network access server where they are applied to the user’s connection.

For a list of supported RADIUS attributes, refer to the “RADIUS Attributes Overview and RADIUS IETF Attributes” chapter. For a list of supported TACACS+ AV pairs, refer to the “Configuring TACACS+” chapter.

How to Configure Authorization

Configuring AAA Authorization Using Named Method Lists

To configure AAA authorization using named method lists, use the following commands beginning in global configuration mode:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Device(config)# aaa authorization {auth-proxy | network | exec | commands level | reverse-access | configuration | ipmobile} {default | list-name} [method1 [method2...]]
2. Do one of the following:
   - Device(config)# line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]
   - Device(config)# interface interface-type interface-number
3. Do one of the following:
   - Device(config-line)# authorization {arap | commands level | exec | reverse-access} {default | list-name}
   - Device(config-line)# ppp authorization {default | list-name}
## Disabling Authorization for Global Configuration Commands

The `aaa authorization` command with the keyword `commands` attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level. Because there are configuration commands that are identical to some EXEC-level commands, there can be some confusion in the authorization process. Using `no aaa authorization config-commands` stops the network access server from attempting configuration command authorization.

To disable AAA authorization for all global configuration commands, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# no aaa authorization config-commands</code></td>
<td>Disables authorization for all global configuration commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To disable AAA authorization on the console, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# no aaa authorization console</code></td>
<td>Disables authorization on the console.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
AAA authorization is disabled on the console by default. If AAA authorization is enabled on the console, disable it by configuring the `no aaa authorization console` command during the AAA configuration stage. AAA should be disabled on the console for user authentication.
Configuring Authorization for Reverse Telnet

Telnet is a standard terminal emulation protocol used for remote terminal connection. Normally, you log in to a network access server (typically through a dialup connection) and then use Telnet to access other network devices from that network access server. There are times, however, when it is necessary to establish a reverse Telnet session. In reverse Telnet sessions, the Telnet connection is established in the opposite direction--from inside a network to a network access server on the network periphery to gain access to modems or other devices connected to that network access server. Reverse Telnet is used to provide users with dialout capability by allowing them to Telnet to modem ports attached to a network access server.

It is important to control access to ports accessible through reverse Telnet. Failure to do so could, for example, allow unauthorized users free access to modems where they can trap and divert incoming calls or make outgoing calls to unauthorized destinations.

Authentication during reverse Telnet is performed through the standard AAA login procedure for Telnet. Typically the user has to provide a username and password to establish either a Telnet or reverse Telnet session. Reverse Telnet authorization provides an additional (optional) level of security by requiring authorization in addition to authentication. When enabled, reverse Telnet authorization can use RADIUS or TACACS+ to authorize whether or not this user is allowed reverse Telnet access to specific asynchronous ports, after the user successfully authenticates through the standard Telnet login procedure.

Reverse Telnet authorization offers the following benefits:

- An additional level of protection by ensuring that users engaged in reverse Telnet activities are indeed authorized to access a specific asynchronous port using reverse Telnet.

- An alternative method (other than access lists) to manage reverse Telnet authorization.

To configure a network access server to request authorization information from a TACACS+ or RADIUS server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session, use the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization reverse-access method1 [method2 ...]
```

This feature enables the network access server to request reverse Telnet authorization information from the security server, whether RADIUS or TACACS+. You must configure the specific reverse Telnet privileges for the user on the security server itself.

Authorization Configuration Examples

Example: TACACS Authorization

The following examples show how to use a TACACS+ server to authorize the use of network services, including PPP and ARA. If the TACACS+ server is not available or an error occurs during the authorization process, the fallback method (none) is to grant all authorization requests:

```
aaa authorization network default group tacacs+ none
```
The following example shows how to allow network authorization using TACACS+:

```bash
aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
```

The following example shows how to provide the same authorization, but it also creates address pools called “mci” and “att”:

```bash
aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
ip address-pool local
ip local-pool mci 172.16.0.1 172.16.0.255
ip local-pool att 172.17.0.1 172.17.0.255
```

These address pools can then be selected by the TACACS daemon. A sample configuration of the daemon follows:

```bash
user = mci_customer1 {
    login = cleartext "some password"
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        addr-pool=mci
    }
}
user = att_customer1 {
    login = cleartext "some other password"
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        addr-pool=att
    }
}
```

### Example: RADIUS Authorization

The following example shows how to configure the router to authorize using RADIUS:

```bash
aaa new-model
aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated
aaa authorization network default group radius
radius-server host ip
radius-server key
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The **aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated** command configures the network access server to contact the RADIUS server to determine if users are permitted to start an EXEC shell when they log in. If an error occurs when the network access server contacts the RADIUS server, the fallback method is to permit the CLI to start, provided the user has been properly authenticated.

The RADIUS information returned may be used to specify an autocmd or a connection access list be applied to this connection.

- The **aaa authorization network default group radius** command configures network authorization via RADIUS. This can be used to govern address assignment, the application of access lists, and various other per-user quantities.

---

**Note**

Because no fallback method is specified in this example, authorization will fail if, for any reason, there is no response from the RADIUS server.
Example: Reverse Telnet Authorization

The following examples show how to cause the network access server to request authorization information from a TACACS+ security server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session:

```plaintext
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
aaa authorization reverse-access default group tacacs+
!
tacacs-server host 172.31.255.0
tacacs-server timeout 90
tacacs-server key goaway
```

The lines in this sample TACACS+ reverse Telnet authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA.
- The `aaa authentication login default group tacacs+` command specifies TACACS+ as the default method for user authentication during login.
- The `aaa authorization reverse-access default group tacacs+` command specifies TACACS+ as the method for user authorization when trying to establish a reverse Telnet session.
- The `tacacs-server host` command identifies the TACACS+ server.
- The `tacacs-server timeout` command sets the interval of time that the network access server waits for the TACACS+ server to reply.
- The `tacacs-server key` command defines the encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the network access server and the TACACS+ daemon.

The following example shows how to configure a generic TACACS+ server to grant a user, pat, reverse Telnet access to port tty2 on the network access server named “maple” and to port tty5 on the network access server named “oak”:

```plaintext
user = pat
    login = cleartext lab
    service = raccess {
        port#1 = maple/tty2
        port#2 = oak/tty5
```

In this example, “maple” and “oak” are the configured host names of network access servers, not DNS names or alias.

The following example shows how to configure the TACACS+ server (CiscoSecure) to grant a user named pat reverse Telnet access:

```plaintext
user = pat
    profile_id = 90
    profile_cycle = 1
    member = Tacacs_Users
    service=shell {
        default cmd=permit
    }
    service=raccess {
```
CiscoSecure only supports reverse Telnet using the command line interface in versions 2.1(x) through version 2.2(1).

An empty “service=raccess {}” clause permits a user to have unconditional access to network access server ports for reverse Telnet. If no “service=raccess” clause exists, the user is denied access to any port for reverse Telnet.

For more information about configuring TACACS+, refer to the “Configuring TACACS” chapter. For more information about configuring CiscoSecure, refer to the CiscoSecure Access Control Server User Guide, version 2.1(2) or greater.

The following example shows how to cause the network access server to request authorization from a RADIUS security server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session:

```
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login default group radius
aaa authorization reverse-access default group radius
radius-server host 172.31.255.0
radius-server key go away
auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS reverse Telnet authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA.
- The `aaa authentication login default group radius` command specifies RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login.
- The `aaa authorization reverse-access default group radius` command specifies RADIUS as the method for user authorization when trying to establish a reverse Telnet session.
- The `radius-server host` command identifies the RADIUS server.
- The `radius-server key` command defines the encryption key used for all RADIUS communications between the network access server and the RADIUS daemon.

The following example shows how to send a request to the RADIUS server to grant a user named “pat” reverse Telnet access at port tty2 on the network access server named “maple”:

```
Username = “pat”
Password = “goaway”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User
cisco-avpair = “raccess:port#1=maple/tty2”
```

The syntax "raccess:port=any/any" permits a user to have unconditional access to network access server ports for reverse Telnet. If no "raccess:port={nasname }/{tty number }" clause exists in the user profile, the user is denied access to reverse Telnet on all ports.

For more information about configuring RADIUS, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”
Additional References for Configuring Authorization

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Configuring Authorization

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 15: Feature Information for Configuring Authorization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>AAA authorization enables you to limit the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user's profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. Once this is done, the user will be granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Accounting

The AAA accounting feature allows the services that users are accessing and the amount of network resources that users are consuming to be tracked. When AAA accounting is enabled, the network access server reports user activity to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security server (depending on which security method is implemented) in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. This data can then be analyzed for network management, client billing, and auditing.

- Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 91
- Restrictions for Configuring Accounting, on page 91
- Information About Configuring Accounting, on page 92
- How to Configure AAA Accounting, on page 105
- Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting, on page 114
- Additional References for Configuring Accounting, on page 117
- Feature Information for Configuring Accounting, on page 118

Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting

The following tasks must be performed before configuring accounting using named method lists:

- Enable AAA on the network access server by using the `aaa new-model` command in global configuration mode.

- Define the characteristics of the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server if RADIUS or TACACS+ authorization is issued. For more information about configuring the Cisco network access server to communicate with the RADIUS security server, see the Configuring RADIUS module. For more information about configuring the Cisco network access server to communicate with the TACACS+ security server, see the Configuring TACACS+ module.

Restrictions for Configuring Accounting

- Accounting information can be sent simultaneously to a maximum of only four AAA servers.

- For Service Selection Gateway (SSG) systems, the `aaa accounting network broadcast` command broadcasts only `start-stop` accounting records. If interim accounting records are configured using the
The ssg accounting interval command, the interim accounting records are sent only to the configured default RADIUS server.

**Topic 2.1**

**Information About Configuring Accounting**

**Named Method Lists for Accounting**

Similar to authentication and authorization method lists, method lists for accounting define the way accounting is performed and the sequence in which these methods are performed.

Named accounting method lists allow particular security protocol to be designated and used on specific lines or interfaces for accounting services. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

A method list is simply a named list describing the accounting methods to be queried (such as RADIUS or TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists allow one or more security protocols to be designated and used for accounting, thus ensuring a backup system for accounting in case the initial method fails. Cisco IOS software uses the first method listed to support accounting; if that method fails to respond, the Cisco IOS software selects the next accounting method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed accounting method, or all methods defined are exhausted.

---

**Note**

The Cisco IOS software attempts accounting with the next listed accounting method only when there is no response from the previous method. If accounting fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server responds by denying the user access—the accounting process stops and no other accounting methods are attempted.

Accounting method lists are specific to the type of accounting being requested. AAA supports seven different types of accounting:

- **Network** -- Provides information for all PPP, SLIP, or ARAP sessions, including packet and byte counts.
- **EXEC** -- Provides information about user EXEC terminal sessions of the network access server.
- **Commands** -- Provides information about the EXEC mode commands that a user issues. Command accounting generates accounting records for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.
- **Connection** -- Provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server, such as Telnet, local-area transport (LAT), TN3270, packet assembler/disassembler (PAD), and rlogin.
- **System** -- Provides information about system-level events.
- **Resource** -- Provides “start” and “stop” records for calls that have passed user authentication, and provides “stop” records for calls that fail to authenticate.
- **VRRS** -- Provides information about Virtual Router Redundancy Service (VRRS).
System accounting does not use named accounting lists; only the default list for system accounting can be defined.

Once again, when a named method list is created, a particular list of accounting methods for the indicated accounting type are defined. Accounting method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). If the `aaa accounting` command for a particular accounting type is issued without specifying a named method list, the default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces or lines except those that have a named method list explicitly defined (A defined method list overrides the default method list). If no default method list is defined, then no accounting takes place.

This section includes the following subsections:

### Method Lists and Server Groups

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers, and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 comprise the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 comprise the group of TACACS+ servers.

Cisco IOS software, RADIUS and TACACS+ server configurations are global. A subset of the configured server hosts can be specified using server groups. These server groups can be used for a particular service. For example, server groups allow R1 and R2 to be defined as separate server groups (SG1 and SG2), and T1 and T2 as separate server groups (SG3 and SG4). This means either R1 and T1 (SG1 and SG3) or R2 and T2 (SG2 and SG4) can be specified in the method list, which provides more flexibility in the way that RADIUS and TACACS+ resources are assigned.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server from the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, accounting—the second host entry configured acts as failover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order in which they are configured).

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) numbers, see the “Configuring RADIUS” or “Configuring TACACS+” module in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide: Securing User Services.

### AAA Accounting Methods

The Cisco IOS software supports the following two methods for accounting:

- **TACACS+**—The network access server reports user activity to the TACACS+ security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.
• RADIUS--The network access server reports user activity to the RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.

With CSCuc32663, passwords and accounting logs are masked before being sent to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security servers. Use the `aaa accounting commands visible-keys` command to send unmasked information to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security servers.

### Accounting Record Types

For minimal accounting, use the `stop-only` keyword, which instructs the specified method (RADIUS or TACACS+) to send a stop record accounting notice at the end of the requested user process. For more accounting information, use the `start-stop` keyword to send a start accounting notice at the beginning of the requested event and a stop accounting notice at the end of the event. To stop all accounting activities on this line or interface, use the `none` keyword.

### Accounting Methods

The table below lists the supported accounting methods.

**Table 16: AAA Accounting Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>group radius</code></td>
<td>Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>group tacacs+</code></td>
<td>Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>group group-name</code></td>
<td>Uses a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers for accounting as defined by the server group <code>group-name</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. Additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all other methods return an error, specify additional methods in the command. For example, to create a method list named `acct_tac1` that specifies RADIUS as the backup method of authentication in the event that TACACS+ authentication returns an error, enter the following command:

```
aaa accounting network acct_tac1 stop-only group tacacs+ group radius
```

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `aaa accounting` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods that are wanted to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

For example, to specify RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login, enter the following command:

```
aaa accounting network default stop-only group radius
```

AAA Accounting supports the following methods:

- **group tacacs** --To have the network access server send accounting information to a TACACS+ security server, use the `group tacacs+ method` keyword.
• **group radius** -- To have the network access server send accounting information to a RADIUS security server, use the `group radius` method keyword.

---

**Note**

Accounting method lists for SLIP follow whatever is configured for PPP on the relevant interface. If no lists are defined and applied to a particular interface (or no PPP settings are configured), the default setting for accounting applies.

• **group group-name** -- To specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the accounting method, use the `aaa accounting` command with the `group group-name` method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group loginrad`:

```plaintext
aaa group server radius loginrad
server 172.16.2.3
server 172.16.2.17
server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the `group loginrad`.

To specify `group loginrad` as the method of network accounting when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa accounting network default start-stop group loginrad
```

Before a group name can be used as the accounting method, communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server must be enabled.

### AAA Accounting Types

#### Network Accounting

Network accounting provides information for all PPP, SLIP, or ARAP sessions, including packet and byte counts.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through an EXEC session:

```plaintext
Wed Jun 27 04:44:45 2001
  NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
  NAS-Port = 5
  User-Name = "username1"
  Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
  Caller-ID = "562"
  Acct-Status-Type = Start
  Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
  Service-Type = Exec-User
  Acct-Session-Id = "0000000D"
  Acct-Delay-Time = 0
  User-IId = "username1"
  NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"

Wed Jun 27 04:45:00 2001
```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 5
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “562”
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = “0000000E”
Framed-IP-Address = “10.1.1.2”
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”

Wed Jun 27 04:47:46 2001
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 5
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “562”
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = “0000000E”
Framed-IP-Address = “10.1.1.2”
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Acct-Input-Octets = 3075
Acct-Output-Octets = 167
Acct-Input-Packets = 39
Acct-Output-Packets = 9
Acct-Session-Time = 171
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”

Wed Jun 27 04:48:45 2001
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 5
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “408”
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = “000000BD”
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”

The following examples show the information contained in a TACACS+ network accounting record for a PPP user who first started an EXEC session:

Wed Jun 27 04:00:35 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 start task_id=28
service=shell

Wed Jun 27 04:00:46 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 start task_id=30
addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp

Wed Jun 27 04:00:49 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 408/4327528 update
task_id=30 addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp protocol=ip addr=10.1.1.1

Wed Jun 27 04:01:31 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 stop task_id=30
addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp protocol=ip addr=10.1.1.1 bytes_in=2844
bytes_out=1622 paks_in=36 paks_out=24 elapsed_time=51

Wed Jun 27 04:01:32 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 stop task_id=28
service=shell elapsed_time=57
The precise format of accounting packets records may vary depending on the security server daemon.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through autoselect:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:30:52 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 3
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "562"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = "0000000B"
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
Wed Jun 27 04:36:49 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 3
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "562"
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = "0000000B"
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Framed-IP-Address = "10.1.1.1"
Acct-Input-Octets = 8630
Acct-Output-Octets = 5722
Acct-Input-Packets = 94
Acct-Output-Packets = 64
Acct-Session-Time = 357
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through autoselect:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:02:19 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 start task_id=35 service=ppp
Wed Jun 27 04:02:25 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 update task_id=35 service=ppp protocol=ip addr=10.1.1.2
Wed Jun 27 04:05:03 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 stop task_id=35 service=ppp protocol=ip addr=10.1.1.2 bytes_in=3366 bytes_out=2149 paks_in=42 paks_out=28 elapsed_time=164
```

**EXEC Accounting**

EXEC accounting provides information about user EXEC terminal sessions (user shells) on the network access server, including username, date, start and stop times, the access server IP address, and (for dial-in users) the telephone number the call originated from.
The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS EXEC accounting record for a dial-in user:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:26:23 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 1
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "5622329483"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = "00000006"
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 1
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "5622329483"
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = "00000006"
Acct-Session-Time = 62
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ EXEC accounting record for a dial-in user:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:46:21 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
start task_id=2 service=shell
Wed Jun 27 04:08:55 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=2 service=shell elapsed_time=1354
```

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS EXEC accounting record for a Telnet user:

```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 26
User-Name = "username1"
Caller-ID = "10.68.202.158"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = "00000010"
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 26
User-Name = "username1"
Caller-ID = "10.68.202.158"
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
```
The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ EXEC accounting record for a Telnet user:

```
start task_id=41 service=shell
stop task_id=41 service=shell elapsed_time=9
```

**Command Accounting**

Command accounting provides information about the EXEC shell commands for a specified privilege level that are being executed on a network access server. Each command accounting record includes a list of the commands executed for that privilege level, as well as the date and time each command was executed, and the user who executed it.

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ command accounting record for privilege level 1:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:46:47 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=3 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show version <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:46:58 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=4 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show interfaces Ethernet 0 <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:03 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=5 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show ip route <cr>
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ command accounting record for privilege level 15:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:47:17 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=6 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd=configure terminal <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:21 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=7 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd=interface Serial 0 <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:29 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 562329430/4327528
stop task_id=8 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd-ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0 <cr>
```

The Cisco implementation of RADIUS does not support command accounting.

**Connection Accounting**

Connection accounting provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server such as Telnet, LAT, TN3270, PAD, and rlogin.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS connection accounting record for an outbound Telnet connection:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:28:00 2001
```
The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ connection accounting record for an outbound Telnet connection:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:47:43 2001
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
start task_id=10 service=connection protocol=telnet addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=telnet
username1-sun
```

```
Wed Jun 27 03:48:38 2001
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 56223239430/4327528
stop task_id=10 service=connection protocol=telnet addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=telnet
username1-sun bytes_in=4467 bytes_out=96 paks_in=61 paks_out=72 elapsed_time=55
```

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS connection accounting record for an outbound rlogin connection:

```
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 56223239430/4327528
start task_id=10 service=connection protocol=rlogin addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=rlogin
username1-sun
```

```
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 56223239430/4327528
stop task_id=10 service=connection protocol=rlogin addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=rlogin
username1-sun bytes_in=4467 bytes_out=96 paks_in=61 paks_out=72 elapsed_time=55
```
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”
Wed Jun 27 04:30:09 2001
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 2
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “5622329477”
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Login
Acct-Session-Id = “0000000A”
Login-Service = Rlogin
Login-IP-Host = “10.68.202.158”
Acct-Input-Octets = 18686
Acct-Output-Octets = 86
Acct-Input-Packets = 90
Acct-Output-Packets = 68
Acct-Session-Time = 22
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ connection accounting record for an outbound rlogin connection:

Wed Jun 27 03:48:46 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528 start task_id=12 service=connection protocol=rlogin addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=rlogin username1-sun /user username1
Wed Jun 27 03:51:37 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528 stop task_id=12 service=connection protocol=rlogin addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=rlogin username1-sun /user username1 bytes_in=659926 bytes_out=138 paks_in=2378 paks_out=1251 elapsed_time=171

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ connection accounting record for an outbound LAT connection:

Wed Jun 27 03:53:06 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528 start task_id=18 service=connection protocol=lat addr=VAX cmd=lat VAX
Wed Jun 27 03:54:15 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528 stop task_id=18 service=connection protocol=lat addr=VAX cmd=lat VAX bytes_in=0 bytes_out=0 paks_in=0 paks_out=0 elapsed_time=6

System Accounting

System accounting provides information about all system-level events (for example, when the system reboots or when accounting is turned on or off).

The following accounting record shows a typical TACACS+ system accounting record server indicating that AAA Accounting has been turned off:

Wed Jun 27 03:55:32 2001 172.16.25.15 unknown unknown unknown start task_id=25 service=system event=sys_acct reason=reconfigure

Note
The precise format of accounting packets records may vary depending on the TACACS+ daemon.
The following accounting record shows a TACACS+ system accounting record indicating that AAA Accounting has been turned on:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:55:22 2001 172.16.25.15 unknown unknown unknown stop  task_id=23
   service=system  event=sys_acct  reason=reconfigure
```

Additional tasks for measuring system resources are covered in the Cisco IOS software configuration guides. For example, IP accounting tasks are described in the Configuring IP Services chapter in the Cisco IOS Application Services Configuration Guide.

### Resource Accounting

The Cisco implementation of AAA accounting provides “start” and “stop” record support for calls that have passed user authentication. The additional feature of generating “stop” records for calls that fail to authenticate as part of user authentication is also supported. Such records are necessary for users employing accounting records to manage and monitor their networks.

This section includes the following subsections:

#### AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting

Before AAA resource failure stop accounting, there was no method of providing accounting records for calls that failed to reach the user authentication stage of a call setup sequence. Such records are necessary for users employing accounting records to manage and monitor their networks and their wholesale customers.

This functionality generates a “stop” accounting record for any calls that do not reach user authentication; “stop” records are generated from the moment of call setup. All calls that pass user authentication behave as they did before; that is, no additional accounting records are seen.

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with normal call flow (no disconnect) and without AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.

*Figure 4: Modem Dial-In Call Setup Sequence With Normal Flow and Without Resource Failure Stop Accounting Enabled*

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with normal call flow (no disconnect) and with AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.
AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records

AAA resource accounting for start-stop records supports the ability to send a “start” record at each call setup, followed by a corresponding “stop” record at the call disconnect. This functionality can be used to manage and monitor wholesale customers from one source of data reporting, such as accounting records.

With this feature, a call setup and call disconnect “start-stop” accounting record tracks the progress of the resource connection to the device. A separate user authentication “start-stop” accounting record tracks the user management progress. These two sets of accounting records are interlinked by using a unique session ID for the call.

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with AAA resource start-stop accounting enabled.
AAA Accounting Enhancements

AAA Broadcast Accounting

AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows service providers to send accounting information to their own private AAA servers and to the AAA servers of their end customers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.

Broadcasting is allowed among groups of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, and each server group can define its backup servers for failover independently of other groups.

Thus, service providers and their end customers can use different protocols (RADIUS or TACACS+) for the accounting server. Service providers and their end customers can also specify their backup servers independently. As for voice applications, redundant accounting information can be managed independently through a separate group with its own failover sequence.

AAA Session MIB

The AAA session MIB feature allows customers to monitor and terminate their authenticated client connections using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). The data of the client is presented so that it correlates directly to the AAA Accounting information reported by either the RADIUS or the TACACS+ server. AAA session MIB provides the following information:

- Statistics for each AAA function (when used in conjunction with the `show radius statistics` command)
- Status of servers providing AAA functions
- Identities of external AAA servers
- Real-time information (such as idle times), providing additional criteria for use by SNMP networks for assessing whether or not to terminate an active call

**Note**

This command is supported only on Cisco AS5300 and Cisco AS5800 universal access server platforms.

The table below shows the SNMP user-end data objects that can be used to monitor and terminate authenticated client connections with the AAA session MIB feature.
Table 17: SNMP End-User Data Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SessionId</th>
<th>The session identification used by the AAA Accounting protocol (same value as reported by RADIUS attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID)).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UserId</td>
<td>The user login ID or zero-length string if a login is unavailable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IpAddr</td>
<td>The IP address of the session or 0.0.0.0 if an IP address is not applicable or unavailable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IdleTime</td>
<td>The elapsed time in seconds that the session has been idle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnect</td>
<td>The session termination object used to disconnect the given client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallId</td>
<td>The entry index corresponding to this accounting session that the Call Tracker record stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table below describes the AAA summary information provided by the AAA session MIB feature using SNMP on a per-system basis.

Table 18: SNMP AAA Session Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ActiveTableEntries</th>
<th>Number of sessions currently active.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActiveTableHighWaterMark</td>
<td>Maximum number of sessions present at once since last system reinstallation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TotalSessions</td>
<td>Total number of sessions since last system reinstallation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisconnectsedSessions</td>
<td>Total number of sessions that have been disconnected using since last system reinstallation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. `aaa accounting {system | network | exec | connection | commands level} {default | list-name} {start-stop | stop-only | none} [method1 [method2...]]`

4. Do one of the following:
   - `line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]`
   - `interface interface-type interface-number`

5. Do one of the following:
   - `accounting {arap | commands level | connection | exec} {default | list-name}
   - `ppp accounting {default | list-name}`

6. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa accounting {system</td>
<td>network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa accounting system default start-stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> Do one of the following:</td>
<td>Enters the line configuration mode for the lines to which the accounting method list is applied. or Enters the interface configuration mode for the interfaces to which the accounting method list is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• `line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>interface interface-type interface-number</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Accounting

#### Suppressing Generation of Accounting Records for Null Username Sessions

When AAA Accounting is activated, the Cisco IOS software issues accounting records for all users on the system, including users whose username string, because of protocol translation, is NULL. An example of this is users who come in on lines where the `aaa authentication login method-list none` command is applied. To prevent accounting records from being generated for sessions that do not have usernames associated with them, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting suppress null-username</td>
<td>Prevents accounting records from being generated for users whose username string is NULL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Generating Interim Accounting Records

To enable periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting update newinfo periodic number</td>
<td>Enables periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When the `aaa accounting update` command is activated, the Cisco IOS software issues interim accounting records for all users on the system. If the keyword `newinfo` is used, interim accounting records are sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report. An example of this would be when IPCP completes IP address negotiation with the remote peer. The interim accounting record includes the negotiated IP address used by the remote peer.

When used with the keyword `periodic`, interim accounting records are sent periodically as defined by the `number` argument. The interim accounting record contains all of the accounting information recorded for that user up to the time the interim accounting record is sent.

**Caution**
Using the `aaa accounting update periodic` command can cause heavy congestion when many users are logged in to the network.

### Configuring an Alternate Method to Enable Periodic Accounting Records

You can use the following alternative method to enable periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa accounting network default
4. action-type {none | start-stop [periodic {disable | interval minutes}] | stop-only}
5. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Router&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Router# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa accounting network default</td>
<td>Configures the default accounting for all network-related service requests and enters accounting method list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Router(config)# aaa accounting network default</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>action-type {none</td>
<td>start-stop [periodic {disable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Generating Interim Service Accounting Records

Perform this task to enable the generation of interim service accounting records at periodic intervals for subscribers.

Before you begin

RADIUS Attribute 85 in the user service profile always takes precedence over the configured interim-interval value. RADIUS Attribute 85 must be in the user service profile. See the RADIUS Attributes Overview and RADIUS IETF Attributes feature document for more information.

Note

If RADIUS Attribute 85 is not in the user service profile, then the interim-interval value configured in Generating Interim Accounting Records is used for service interim accounting records.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. subscriber service accounting interim-interval minutes

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

Router> enable
Generating Accounting Records for a Failed Login or Session

When AAA accounting is activated, the Cisco IOS XE software does not generate accounting records for system users who fail login authentication, or who succeed in login authentication but fail PPP negotiation for some reason.

To specify that accounting stop records be generated for users who fail to authenticate at login or during session negotiation, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting send stop-record authentication failure</td>
<td>Generates “stop” records for users who fail to authenticate at login or during session negotiation using PPP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifying Accounting NETWORK-Stop Records Before EXEC-Stop Records

For PPP users who start EXEC terminal sessions, it can be specified that NETWORK records be generated before EXEC-stop records. In some cases, such as billing customers for specific services, is can be desirable to keep network start and stop records together, essentially “nesting” them within the framework of the EXEC start and stop messages. For example, a user dialing in using PPP can create the following records: EXEC-start, NETWORK-start, EXEC-stop, NETWORK-stop. By nesting the network accounting records, NETWORK-stop records follow NETWORK-start messages: EXEC-start, NETWORK-start, NETWORK-stop, EXEC-stop.

To nest accounting records for user sessions, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting nested</td>
<td>Nesting network accounting records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Suppressing System Accounting Records over Switchover

To suppress the system accounting-on and accounting-off messages during switchover, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

Router# configure terminal

Step 3 subscriber service accounting interim-interval minutes

Example:

Router(config)# subscriber service accounting interim-interval 10

Generating Accounting Records for a Failed Login or Session

Enable the generation of interim service accounting records at periodic intervals for subscribers. The minutes argument indicates the number of periodic intervals to send accounting update records from 1 to 71582 minutes.

Purpose Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>configure terminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 3 subscriber service accounting interim-interval minutes

Example:

Router(config)# subscriber service accounting interim-interval 10

Specifying Accounting NETWORK-Stop Records Before EXEC-Stop Records

Nest accounting records for user sessions, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting nested</td>
<td>Nesting network accounting records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Suppressing System Accounting Records over Switchover

To suppress the system accounting-on and accounting-off messages during switchover, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

Router# configure terminal
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting redundancy suppress system-records</td>
<td>Suppresses the system accounting messages during switchover.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting

To enable resource failure stop accounting, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting resource method-list stop-failure group server-group</td>
<td>Generates a “stop” record for any calls that do not reach user authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** Before configuring this feature, the tasks described in the Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 91 section must be performed, and SNMP must be enabled on the network access server. For more information about enabling SNMP on a Cisco router or access server, see the Configuring SNMP Support chapter in the Cisco IOS Network Management Configuration Guide.

### Configuring AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records

To enable full resource accounting for start-stop records, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting resource method-list start-stop group server-group</td>
<td>Supports the ability to send a “start” record at each call setup. followed with a corresponding “stop” record at the call disconnect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** Before configuring this feature, the tasks described in the Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 91 section must be performed, and SNMP must be enabled on the network access server. For more information about enabling SNMP on a Cisco router or access server, see the Configuring SNMP Support chapter in the Cisco IOS Network Management Configuration Guide.

### AAA Broadcast Accounting

AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows service providers to send accounting information to their own private AAA servers and to the AAA servers of their end customers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.
Broadcasting is allowed among groups of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, and each server group can define its backup servers for failover independently of other groups.

Thus, service providers and their end customers can use different protocols (RADIUS or TACACS+) for the accounting server. Service providers and their end customers can also specify their backup servers independently. As for voice applications, redundant accounting information can be managed independently through a separate group with its own failover sequence.

### Configuring Per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting

To configure AAA broadcast accounting per DNIS, use the `aaa dnis map accounting network` command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa dnis map dnis-number accounting network {start-stop</td>
<td>stop-only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AAA Session MIB

The AAA session MIB feature allows customers to monitor and terminate their authenticated client connections using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). The data of the client is presented so that it correlates directly to the AAA Accounting information reported by either the RADIUS or the TACACS+ server. AAA session MIB provides the following information:

- Statistics for each AAA function (when used in conjunction with the `show radius statistics` command)
- Status of servers providing AAA functions
- Identities of external AAA servers
- Real-time information (such as idle times), providing additional criteria for use by SNMP networks for assessing whether or not to terminate an active call

This command is supported only on Cisco AS5300 and Cisco AS5800 universal access server platforms.

The table below shows the SNMP user-end data objects that can be used to monitor and terminate authenticated client connections with the AAA session MIB feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 19: SNMP End-User Data Objects</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SessionId</td>
<td>The session identification used by the AAA Accounting protocol (same value as reported by RADIUS attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserId</td>
<td>The user login ID or zero-length string if a login is unavailable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Establishing a Session with a Router if the AAA Server Is Unreachable

To establish a console session with a router if the AAA server is unreachable, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no aaa accounting system guarantee-first</td>
<td>The <code>aaa accounting system guarantee-first</code> command guarantees system accounting as the first record, which is the default condition. In some situations, users may be prevented from starting a session on the console or terminal connection until after the system reloads, which can take more than three minutes. To resolve this problem, use the <code>no aaa accounting system guarantee-first</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitoring Accounting

No specific `show` command exists for either RADIUS or TACACS+ accounting. To obtain accounting records displaying information about users logged in, use the following command in privileged EXEC mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show accounting</td>
<td>Allows display of the active accountable events on the network and helps collect information in the event of a data loss on the accounting server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Troubleshooting Accounting

To troubleshoot accounting information, use the following command in privileged EXEC mode:
Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting

Example: Configuring a Named Method List

The following example shows how to configure a Cisco AS5200 (enabled for AAA and communication with a RADIUS security server) in order for AAA services to be provided by the RADIUS server. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, then the local database is queried for authentication and authorization information, and accounting services are handled by a TACACS+ server.

```
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login admins local
aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local
aaa authorization network network1 group radius local
aaa accounting network network2 start-stop group radius group tacacs+
username root password ALongPassword
tacacs-server host 172.31.255.0
tacacs-server key goaway
radius-server host 172.16.2.7
radius-server key myRaDiUSpassWoRd
interface group-async 1
group-range 1 16
encapsulation ppp
ppp authentication chap dialins
ppp authorization network1
ppp accounting network2
line 1 16
autoselect ppp
autoselect during-login
login authentication admins
modem dialin
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS AAA configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA network security services.
- The `aaa authentication login admins local` command defines a method list, “admins”, for login authentication.
- The `aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local` command defines the authentication method list “dialins”, which specifies that first RADIUS authentication and then (if the RADIUS server does not respond) local authentication is used on serial lines using PPP.
- The `aaa authorization network network1 group radius local` command defines the network authorization method list named “network1”, which specifies that RADIUS authorization is used on serial lines using PPP. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, then local network authorization is performed.
- The `aaa accounting network network2 start-stop group radius group tacacs+` command defines the network accounting method list named “network2”, which specifies that RADIUS accounting services...
(in this case, start and stop records for specific events) are used on serial lines using PPP. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, accounting services are handled by a TACACS+ server.

- The **username** command defines the username and password to be used for the PPP Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) caller identification.

- The **tacacs-server host** command defines the name of the TACACS+ server host.

- The **tacacs-server key** command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the TACACS+ server host.

- The **radius-server host** command defines the name of the RADIUS server host.

- The **radius-server key** command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.

- The **interface group-async** command selects and defines an asynchronous interface group.

- The **group-range** command defines the member asynchronous interfaces in the interface group.

- The **encapsulation ppp** command sets PPP as the encapsulation method used on the specified interfaces.

- The **ppp authentication chap dialins** command selects Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) as the method of PPP authentication and applies the “dialins” method list to the specified interfaces.

- The **ppp authorization network1** command applies the blue1 network authorization method list to the specified interfaces.

- The **ppp accounting network2** command applies the red1 network accounting method list to the specified interfaces.

- The **line** command switches the configuration mode from global configuration to line configuration and identifies the specific lines being configured.

- The **autoselect ppp** command configures the Cisco IOS XE software to allow a PPP session to start up automatically on these selected lines.

- The **autoselect during-login** command is used to display the username and password prompt without pressing the Return key. After the user logs in, the autoselect function (in this case, PPP) begins.

- The **login authentication admins** command applies the admins method list for login authentication.

- The **modem dialin** command configures modems attached to the selected lines to accept only incoming calls.

The **show accounting** command yields the following output for the preceding configuration:

```
Active Accounted actions on tty1, User username2 Priv 1
Task ID 5, Network Accounting record, 00:00:52 Elapsed
task_id=5 service=ppp protocol=ip address=10.0.0.98
```

The table below describes the fields contained in the preceding output.
### Table 21: show accounting Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Accounted actions on</td>
<td>Terminal line or interface name user with which the user logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>User’s ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priv</td>
<td>User’s privilege level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task ID</td>
<td>Unique identifier for each accounting session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Record</td>
<td>Type of accounting session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed</td>
<td>Length of time (hh:mm:ss) for this session type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute=value</td>
<td>AV pairs associated with this accounting session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example: Configuring AAA Resource Accounting**

The following example shows how to configure the resource failure stop accounting and resource accounting for start-stop records functions:

```
!Enable AAA on your network access server.
aa new-model
!Enable authentication at login and list the AOL string name to use for login authentication.
aa authentication login AOL group radius local
!Enable authentication for ppp and list the default method to use for PPP authentication.
aa authentication ppp default group radius local
!Enable authorization for all exec sessions and list the AOL string name to use for authorization.
aa authorization exec AOL group radius if-authenticated
!Enable authorization for all network-related service requests and list the default method to use for all network-related authorizations.
aa authorization network default group radius if-authenticated
!Enable accounting for all exec sessions and list the default method to use for all start-stop accounting services.
aa accounting exec default start-stop group radius
!Enable accounting for all network-related service requests and list the default method to use for all start-stop accounting services.
aa accounting network default start-stop group radius
!Enable failure stop accounting.
aa accounting resource default stop-failure group radius
!Enable resource accounting for start-stop records.
aa accounting resource default start-stop group radius
```

**Example: Configuring AAA Broadcast Accounting**

The following example shows how to turn on broadcast accounting using the global `aaa accounting` command:

```
aaa group server radius isp
   server 10.0.0.1
   server 10.0.0.2
aaa group server tacacs+ isp_customer
   server 172.0.0.1
aaa accounting network default start-stop broadcast group isp group isp_customer
```
radius-server host 10.0.0.1
radius-server host 10.0.0.2
radius-server key key1
tacacs-server host 172.0.0.1 key key2

The broadcast keyword causes “start” and “stop” accounting records for network connections to be sent simultaneously to server 10.0.0.1 in the group isp and to server 172.0.0.1 in the group isp_customer. If server 10.0.0.1 is unavailable, failover to server 10.0.0.2 occurs. If server 172.0.0.1 is unavailable, no failover occurs because backup servers are not configured for the group isp_customer.

Example: Configuring per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting

The following example shows how to turn on per-DNIS broadcast accounting using the global aaa dnis map accounting network command:

aaa group server radius isp
  server 10.0.0.1
  server 10.0.0.2
aaa group server tacacs+ isp_customer
  server 172.0.0.1
aaa dnis map enable
aaa dnis map 7777 accounting network start-stop broadcast group isp group isp_customer
radius-server host 10.0.0.1
radius-server host 10.0.0.2
radius-server key key1
tacacs-server host 172.0.0.1 key key2

The broadcast keyword causes “start” and “stop” accounting records for network connection calls having DNIS number 7777 to be sent simultaneously to server 10.0.0.1 in the group isp and to server 172.0.0.1 in the group isp_customer. If server 10.0.0.1 is unavailable, failover to server 10.0.0.2 occurs. If server 172.0.0.1 is unavailable, no failover occurs because backup servers are not configured for the group isp_customer.

Example: AAA Session MIB

The following example shows how to set up the AAA session MIB feature to disconnect authenticated client connections for PPP users:

aaa new-model
aaa authentication ppp default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius
aaa session-mib disconnect

Additional References for Configuring Accounting

The following sections provide references related to the Configuring Accounting feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• CISCO-AAA-SESSION-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS XE software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Feature Information for Configuring Accounting

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 22: Feature Information for Configuring Accounting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Feature Information for Configuring Accounting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Session MIB</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The AAA session MIB feature allows customers to monitor and terminate their authenticated client connections using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Accounting</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>Connection accounting provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server, such as Telnet, local-area transport (LAT), TN3270, packet assembler/disassembler (PAD), and rlogin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Interim Accounting</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>AAA interim accounting allows accounting records to be sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report, or on a periodic basis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Local Authentication and Authorization

How to Configure Local Authentication and Authorization

Configuring the Switch for Local Authentication and Authorization

You can configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the switch to implement AAA in local mode. The switch then handles authentication and authorization. No accounting is available in this configuration.

**Note**
To secure the switch for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the switch with the `ip http authentication aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the switch for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

Follow these steps to configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the switch to implement AAA in local mode:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa authentication login default local`
5. `aaa authorization exec default local`
6. `aaa authorization network default local`
7. `username name [privilege level] [password encryption-type password]`
8. `end`
9. `show running-config`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authentication login default local</td>
<td>Sets the login authentication to use the local username database. The default keyword applies the local user database authentication to all ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> aaa authorization exec default local</td>
<td>Configures user AAA authorization, check the local database, and allow the user to run an EXEC shell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default local</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> aaa authorization network default local</td>
<td>Configures user AAA authorization for all network-related service requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization network default local</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> username name [privilege level] {password encryption-type password}</td>
<td>Enters the local database, and establishes a username-based authentication system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# username your_user_name privilege 1 password 7 secret567</td>
<td>Repeat this command for each user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For name, specify the user ID as one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) For level, specify the privilege level the user has after gaining access. The range is 0 to 15. Level 15 gives privileged EXEC mode access. Level 0 gives user EXEC mode access.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For encryption-type, enter 0 to specify that an unencrypted password follows. Enter 7 to specify that a hidden password follows.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For password, specify the password the user must enter to gain access to the switch. The password must be from 1 to 25 characters, can contain embedded spaces, and must be the last option specified in the username command.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 8**

**end**

*Example:*

Device(config)# end

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 9**

**show running-config**

*Example:*

Device# show running-config

Verifies your entries.

**Step 10**

**copy running-config startup-config**

*Example:*

Device# copy running-config startup-config

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

**Monitoring Local Authentication and Authorization**

To display Local Authentication and Authorization configuration, use the `show running-config` privileged EXEC command.
Additional References

Error Message Decoder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To help you research and resolve system error messages in this release, use the Error Message Decoder tool.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi">https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Local Authentication and Authorization

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Authentication and Authorization</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>This feature was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 8

Configuring TACACS+

- Prerequisites for TACACS+, on page 125
- Information About Controlling Switch Access with TACACS+, on page 126
- How to Configure Switch Access with TACACS+, on page 130
- Monitoring TACACS+, on page 137
- Additional References For Switch Access with TACACS+, on page 138
- Feature Information for TACACS+, on page 138

Prerequisites for TACACS+

The following are the prerequisites for set up and configuration of switch access with TACACS+ (must be performed in the order presented):

1. Configure the switches with the TACACS+ server addresses.
2. Set an authentication key.
3. Configure the key from Step 2 on the TACACS+ servers.
4. Enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).
5. Create a login authentication method list.
6. Apply the list to the terminal lines.
7. Create an authorization and accounting method list.

The following are the prerequisites for controlling switch access with TACACS+:

- You must have access to a configured TACACS+ server to configure TACACS+ features on your switch. Also, you must have access to TACACS+ services maintained in a database on a TACACS+ daemon typically running on a LINUX or Windows workstation.
- You need a system running the TACACS+ daemon software to use TACACS+ on your switch.
- To use TACACS+, it must be enabled.
- Authorization must be enabled on the switch to be used.
- Users must first successfully complete TACACS+ authentication before proceeding to TACACS+ authorization.
• To use any of the AAA commands listed in this section or elsewhere, you must first enable AAA with the `aaa new-model` command.

• At a minimum, you must identify the host or hosts maintaining the TACACS+ daemon and define the method lists for TACACS+ authentication. You can optionally define method lists for TACACS+ authorization and accounting.

• The method list defines the types of authentication to be performed and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific port before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which, by coincidence, is named `default`). The default method list is automatically applied to all ports except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

• Use TACACS+ for privileged EXEC access authorization if authentication was performed by using TACACS+.

• Use the local database if authentication was not performed by using TACACS+.

Information About Controlling Switch Access with TACACS+

TACACS+ and Switch Access

This section describes TACACS+. TACACS+ provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over the authentication and authorization processes. It is facilitated through authentication, authorization, accounting (AAA) and can be enabled only through AAA commands.

TACACS+ Overview

TACACS+ is a security application that provides centralized validation of users attempting to gain access to your switch.

TACACS+ provides for separate and modular authentication, authorization, and accounting facilities. TACACS+ allows for a single access control server (the TACACS+ daemon) to provide each service—authentication, authorization, and accounting—individually. Each service can be tied into its own database to take advantage of other services available on that server or on the network, depending on the capabilities of the daemon.

The goal of TACACS+ is to provide a method for managing multiple network access points from a single management service. Your switch can be a network access server along with other Cisco routers and access servers.
TACACS+, administered through the AAA security services, can provide these services:

- **Authentication**—Provides complete control of authentication through login and password dialog, challenge and response, and messaging support.

  The authentication facility can conduct a dialog with the user (for example, after a username and password are provided, to challenge a user with several questions, such as home address, mother’s maiden name, service type, and social security number). The TACACS+ authentication service can also send messages to user screens. For example, a message could notify users that their passwords must be changed because of the company’s password aging policy.

- **Authorization**—Provides fine-grained control over user capabilities for the duration of the user’s session, including but not limited to setting autocommands, access control, session duration, or protocol support. You can also enforce restrictions on what commands a user can execute with the TACACS+ authorization feature.

- **Accounting**—Collects and sends information used for billing, auditing, and reporting to the TACACS+ daemon. Network managers can use the accounting facility to track user activity for a security audit or to provide information for user billing. Accounting records include user identities, start and stop times, executed commands (such as PPP), number of packets, and number of bytes.

The TACACS+ protocol provides authentication between the switch and the TACACS+ daemon, and it ensures confidentiality because all protocol exchanges between the switch and the TACACS+ daemon are encrypted.

**TACACS+ Operation**

When a user attempts a simple ASCII login by authenticating to a switch using TACACS+, this process occurs:

1. When the connection is established, the switch contacts the TACACS+ daemon to obtain a username prompt to show to the user. The user enters a username, and the switch then contacts the TACACS+
daemon to obtain a password prompt. The switch displays the password prompt to the user, the user enters a password, and the password is then sent to the TACACS+ daemon.

TACACS+ allows a dialog between the daemon and the user until the daemon receives enough information to authenticate the user. The daemon prompts for a username and password combination, but can include other items, such as the user’s mother’s maiden name.

2. The switch eventually receives one of these responses from the TACACS+ daemon:
   - **ACCEPT**—The user is authenticated and service can begin. If the switch is configured to require authorization, authorization begins at this time.
   - **REJECT**—The user is not authenticated. The user can be denied access or is prompted to retry the login sequence, depending on the TACACS+ daemon.
   - **ERROR**—An error occurred at some time during authentication with the daemon or in the network connection between the daemon and the switch. If an ERROR response is received, the switch typically tries to use an alternative method for authenticating the user.
   - **CONTINUE**—The user is prompted for additional authentication information.

   After authentication, the user undergoes an additional authorization phase if authorization has been enabled on the switch. Users must first successfully complete TACACS+ authentication before proceeding to TACACS+ authorization.

3. If TACACS+ authorization is required, the TACACS+ daemon is again contacted, and it returns an ACCEPT or REJECT authorization response. If an ACCEPT response is returned, the response contains data in the form of attributes that direct the EXEC or NETWORK session for that user and the services that the user can access:
   - Telnet, Secure Shell (SSH), rlogin, or privileged EXEC services
   - Connection parameters, including the host or client IP address, access list, and user timeouts

### Method List

A method list defines the sequence and methods to be used to authenticate, to authorize, or to keep accounts on a user. You can use method lists to designate one or more security protocols to be used, thus ensuring a backup system if the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate, to authorize, or to keep accounts on users; if that method does not respond, the software selects the next method in the list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed method or the method list is exhausted.

If a method list is configured under VTY lines, the corresponding method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows how to configure a method list under a VTY line:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config)# authorization commands 15 auth1
```

The following example shows how to configure a method list in AAA:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 auth1 group tacacs+
```
If no method list is configured under VTY lines, the default method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows a VTY configuration without a method list:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
```

The following example shows how to configure the default method list:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 default group tacacs+
```

## TACACS+ Configuration Options

You can configure the switch to use a single server or AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication. You can group servers to select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. The server group is used with a global server-host list and contains the list of IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

### TACACS+ Login Authentication

A method list describes the sequence and authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. You can designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate users; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next authentication method in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method or until all defined methods are exhausted. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user access—the authentication process stops, and no other authentication methods are attempted.

### TACACS+ Authorization for Privileged EXEC Access and Network Services

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the switch uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

### TACACS+ Accounting

The AAA accounting feature tracks the services that users are accessing and the amount of network resources that they are consuming. When AAA accounting is enabled, the switch reports user activity to the TACACS+ security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. This data can then be analyzed for network management, client billing, or auditing.

### Default TACACS+ Configuration

TACACS+ and AAA are disabled by default.
To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure TACACS+ through a network management application. When enabled, TACACS+ can authenticate users accessing the switch through the CLI.

**Note**

Although TACACS+ configuration is performed through the CLI, the TACACS+ server authenticates HTTP connections that have been configured with a privilege level of 15.

### How to Configure Switch Access with TACACS+

This section describes how to configure your switch to support TACACS+.

### Identifying the TACACS+ Server Host and Setting the Authentication Key

Follow these steps to identify the TACACS+ server host and set the authentication key:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `tacacs server server-name`
4. `address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address`
5. `exit`
6. `aaa new-model`
7. `aaa group server tacacs+ group-name`
8. `server ip-address`
9. `end`
10. `show running-config`
11. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tacacs server server-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# tacacs server yourserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>address {ipv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-server-tacacs)# address ipv4 10.0.1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-server-tacacs)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+ group-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ your_server_group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>server ip-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# server 10.1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>show running-config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# show running-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose | Command or Action | Example |
--- | --- | --- |
Step 11 | copy running-config startup-config | Device# copy running-config startup-config |

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

**Configuring TACACS+ Login Authentication**

Follow these steps to configure TACACS+ login authentication:

**Before you begin**

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports.

**Note**

To secure the for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the with the `ip http authentication aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

For more information about the `ip http authentication` command, see the *Cisco IOS Security Command Reference, Release 12.4*.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa authentication login \{default | list-name\} method1 [method2...]
5. line [console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]
6. login authentication \{default | list-name\}
7. end
8. show running-config
9. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

Device# enable
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2**
configure terminal
Example:
Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**
aaa new-model
Example:
Device(config)# aaa new-model | Enables AAA. |
| **Step 4**
aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]  
Example:
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default tacacs+ local | Creates a login authentication method list.
- To create a default list that is used when a named list is *not* specified in the `login authentication` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods that are to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports.
- For `list-name`, specify a character string to name the list you are creating.
- For `method1...`, specify the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails.
Select one of these methods:
- `enable`—Use the enable password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define an enable password by using the `enable password` global configuration command.
- `group tacacs+`—Uses TACACS+ authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must configure the TACACS+ server.
- `line`—Use the line password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define a line password. Use the `password password` line configuration command.
- `local`—Use the local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database. Use the `username password` global configuration command.
- `local-case`—Use a case-sensitive local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database by using the `username name password` global configuration command. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> line [console</td>
<td>tty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# line 2 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> login authentication {default</td>
<td>list-name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-line)# login authentication default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-line)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring TACACS+ Authorization for Privileged EXEC Access and Network Services

You can use the **aaa authorization** global configuration command with the **tacacs+** keyword to set parameters that restrict a user’s network access to privileged EXEC mode.

**Note**

Authorization is bypassed for authenticated users who log in through the CLI even if authorization has been configured.

Follow these steps to specify TACACS+ authorization for privileged EXEC access and network services:
### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa authorization network tacacs+
4. aaa authorization exec tacacs+
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable                          | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  **Example:**  
  Device> enable |
| **Step 2** configure terminal              | Enters global configuration mode.  
  **Example:**  
  Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** aaa authorization network tacacs+ | Configures the switch for user TACACS+ authorization for all network-related service requests.  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# aaa authorization network tacacs+ |
| **Step 4** aaa authorization exec tacacs+   | Configures the switch for user TACACS+ authorization if the user has privileged EXEC access.  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# aaa authorization exec tacacs+  
  The **exec** keyword might return user profile information (such as **autocommand** information). |
| **Step 5** end                              | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# end |
| **Step 6** show running-config             | Verifies your entries.  
  **Example:**  
  Device# show running-config |
## Starting TACACS+ Accounting

Follow these steps to start TACACS+ Accounting:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa accounting network start-stop tacacs+`
4. `aaa accounting exec start-stop tacacs+`
5. `end`
6. `show running-config`
7. `copy running-config startup-config`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>aaa accounting network start-stop tacacs+</code></td>
<td>Enables TACACS+ accounting for all network-related service requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device(config)# aaa accounting network start-stop tacacs+</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <code>aaa accounting exec start-stop tacacs+</code></td>
<td>Enables TACACS+ accounting to send a start-record accounting notice at the beginning of a privileged EXEC process and a stop-record at the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device(config)# aaa accounting exec start-stop</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

- **Example:**
  ```
  Device(config)# end
  ```

**Step 6**

- **Example:**
  ```
  Device# show running-config
  ```

**Step 7**

- **Example:**
  ```
  Device# copy running-config startup-config
  ```

**What to do next**

To establish a session with a router if the AAA server is unreachable, use the `aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command. It guarantees system accounting as the first record, which is the default condition. In some situations, users might be prevented from starting a session on the console or terminal connection until after the system reloads, which can take more than 3 minutes.

To establish a console or Telnet session with the router if the AAA server is unreachable when the router reloads, use the `no aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command.

**Establishing a Session with a Router if the AAA Server is Unreachable**

To establishing a session with a router if the AAA server is unreachable, use the `aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command. It guarantees system accounting as the first record, which is the default condition. In some situations, users might be prevented from starting a session on the console or terminal connection until after the system reloads, which can take more than 3 minutes.

To establish a console or Telnet session with the router if the AAA server is unreachable when the router reloads, use the `no aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command.

**Monitoring TACACS+**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show tacacs</td>
<td>Displays TACACS+ server statistics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional References For Switch Access with TACACS+

### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA configuration</td>
<td>Configuring Local Authentication and Authorization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature Information for TACACS+

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Table 25: Feature Information for TACACS+

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TACACS+</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>TACACS+ provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over authentication and authorization processes. TACACS+ is facilitated through AAA and can be enabled only through AAA commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring TACACS+

Feature Information for TACACS+
Configuring RADIUS

- Prerequisites for Configuring RADIUS, on page 141
- Restrictions for Configuring RADIUS, on page 142
- Information about RADIUS, on page 142
- How to Configure RADIUS, on page 164
- Monitoring CoA Functionality, on page 180
- Feature Information for RADIUS, on page 181

Prerequisites for Configuring RADIUS

This section lists the prerequisites for controlling Device access with RADIUS.

General:

- RADIUS and Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) must be enabled to use any of the configuration commands in this chapter.
- RADIUS is facilitated through AAA and can be enabled only through AAA commands.
- Use the `aaa new-model` global configuration command to enable AAA.
- Use the `aaa authentication` global configuration command to define method lists for RADIUS authentication.
- Use `line` and `interface` commands to enable the defined method lists to be used.
- At a minimum, you must identify the host or hosts that run the RADIUS server software and define the method lists for RADIUS authentication. You can optionally define method lists for RADIUS authorization and accounting.
- You should have access to and should configure a RADIUS server before configuring RADIUS features on your Device.
- The RADIUS host is normally a multiuser system running RADIUS server software from Cisco (Cisco Secure Access Control Server Version 3.0), Livingston, Merit, Microsoft, or another software provider. For more information, see the RADIUS server documentation.
- To use the Change-of-Authorization (CoA) interface, a session must already exist on the switch. CoA can be used to identify a session and enforce a disconnect request. The update affects only the specified session.
For RADIUS operation:

- Users must first successfully complete RADIUS authentication before proceeding to RADIUS authorization, if it is enabled.

### Restrictions for Configuring RADIUS

This topic covers restrictions for controlling Device access with RADIUS.

**General:**

- To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure RADIUS through a network management application.

RADIUS is not suitable in the following network security situations:

- Multiprotocol access environments. RADIUS does not support AppleTalk Remote Access (ARA), NetBIOS Frame Control Protocol (NBFCP), NetWare Asynchronous Services Interface (NASI), or X.25 PAD connections.

- Switch-to-switch or router-to-router situations. RADIUS does not provide two-way authentication. RADIUS can be used to authenticate from one device to a non-Cisco device if the non-Cisco device requires authentication.

- Networks using a variety of services. RADIUS generally binds a user to one service model.

### Information about RADIUS

#### RADIUS and Switch Access

This section describes how to enable and configure RADIUS. RADIUS provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over the authentication and authorization processes.

#### RADIUS Overview

RADIUS is a distributed client/server system that secures networks against unauthorized access. RADIUS clients run on supported Cisco routers and switches. Clients send authentication requests to a central RADIUS server, which contains all user authentication and network service access information.

Use RADIUS in these network environments that require access security:

- Networks with multiple-vendor access servers, each supporting RADIUS. For example, access servers from several vendors use a single RADIUS server-based security database. In an IP-based network with multiple vendors’ access servers, dial-in users are authenticated through a RADIUS server that has been customized to work with the Kerberos security system.

- Turnkey network security environments in which applications support the RADIUS protocol, such as in an access environment that uses a **smart card** access control system. In one case, RADIUS has been used with Enigma’s security cards to validates users and to grant access to network resources.
• Networks already using RADIUS. You can add a Cisco Device containing a RADIUS client to the network. This might be the first step when you make a transition to a TACACS+ server. See Figure: Transitioning from RADIUS to TACACS+ Services below.

• Network in which the user must only access a single service. Using RADIUS, you can control user access to a single host, to a single utility such as Telnet, or to the network through a protocol such as IEEE 802.1x. For more information about this protocol, see Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication chapter.

• Networks that require resource accounting. You can use RADIUS accounting independently of RADIUS authentication or authorization. The RADIUS accounting functions allow data to be sent at the start and end of services, showing the amount of resources (such as time, packets, bytes, and so forth) used during the session. An Internet service provider might use a freeware-based version of RADIUS access control and accounting software to meet special security and billing needs.

Figure 10: Transitioning from RADIUS to TACACS+ Services

RADIUS Operation

When a user attempts to log in and authenticate to a Device that is access controlled by a RADIUS server, these events occur:

1. The user is prompted to enter a username and password.
2. The username and encrypted password are sent over the network to the RADIUS server.
3. The user receives one of the following responses from the RADIUS server:
   • ACCEPT—The user is authenticated.
   • REJECT—The user is either not authenticated and is prompted to re-enter the username and password, or access is denied.
   • CHALLENGE—A challenge requires additional data from the user.
   • CHALLENGE PASSWORD—A response requests the user to select a new password.

The ACCEPT or REJECT response is bundled with additional data that is used for privileged EXEC or network authorization. The additional data included with the ACCEPT or REJECT packets includes these items:
RADIUS Change of Authorization

The RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) provides a mechanism to change the attributes of an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) session after it is authenticated. When a policy changes for a user or user group in AAA, administrators can send RADIUS CoA packets from the AAA server such as a Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) to reinitialize authentication and apply the new policy. This section provides an overview of the RADIUS interface including available primitives and how they are used during a CoA.

- Change-of-Authorization Requests
- CoA Request Response Code
- CoA Request Commands
- Session Reauthentication
- Stacking Guidelines for Session Termination

A standard RADIUS interface is typically used in a pulled model where the request originates from a network attached device and the response come from the queried servers. Catalyst support the RADIUS CoA extensions defined in RFC 5176 that are typically used in a pushed model and allow for the dynamic reconfiguring of sessions from external AAA or policy servers.

The supports these per-session CoA requests:

- Session reauthentication
- Session termination
- Session termination with port shutdown
- Session termination with port bounce

This feature is integrated with Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) 5.1.

The RADIUS interface is enabled by default on Catalyst. However, some basic configuration is required for the following attributes:

- Security and Password—refer to the “Preventing Unauthorized Access to Your Switch” section in this guide.
- Accounting—refer to the “Starting RADIUS Accounting” section in the Configuring Switch-Based Authentication chapter in this guide.

Cisco IOS software supports the RADIUS CoA extensions defined in RFC 5176 that are typically used in a push model to allow the dynamic reconfiguring of sessions from external AAA or policy servers. Per-session CoA requests are supported for session identification, session termination, host reauthentication, port shutdown, and port bounce. This model comprises one request (CoA-Request) and two possible response codes:

- CoA acknowledgement (ACK) [CoA-ACK]
- CoA nonacknowledgement (NAK) [CoA-NAK]
The request is initiated from a CoA client (typically a AAA or policy server) and directed to the device that acts as a listener.

The table below shows the RADIUS CoA commands and vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) supported by Identity-Based Networking Services. All CoA commands must include the session identifier between the device and the CoA client.

**Table 26: RADIUS CoA Commands Supported by Identity-Based Networking Services**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CoA Command</th>
<th>Cisco VSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate service</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=activate-service&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:service-name=&lt;service-name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:precedence=&lt;precedence-number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:activation-mode=replace-all&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate service</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=deactivate-service&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:service-name=&lt;service-name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce host port</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=bounce-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable host port</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=disable-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session query</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=session-query&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session reauthenticate</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=reauthenticate&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:reauthenticate-type=last&quot; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:reauthenticate-type=rerun&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session terminate</td>
<td>This is a standard disconnect request and does not require a VSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface template</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;interface-template-name=&lt;interfacetemplate&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Change-of-Authorization Requests**

Change of Authorization (CoA) requests, as described in RFC 5176, are used in a push model to allow for session identification, host reauthentication, and session termination. The model is comprised of one request (CoA-Request) and two possible response codes:

- CoA acknowledgment (ACK) [CoA-ACK]
- CoA non-acknowledgment (NAK) [CoA-NAK]

The request is initiated from a CoA client (typically a RADIUS or policy server) and directed to the switch that acts as a listener.

**RFC 5176 Compliance**

The Disconnect Request message, which is also referred to as Packet of Disconnect (POD), is supported by the switch for session termination.
This table shows the IETF attributes are supported for this feature.

**Table 27: Supported IETF Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Acct-Session-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Message-Authenticator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Error-Cause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table shows the possible values for the Error-Cause attribute.

**Table 28: Error-Cause Values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Residual Session Context Removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Invalid EAP Packet (Ignored)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Unsupported Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Missing Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>NAS Identification Mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Invalid Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Unsupported Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Unsupported Extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407</td>
<td>Invalid Attribute Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Administratively Prohibited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
<td>Request Not Routable (Proxy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
<td>Session Context Not Found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504</td>
<td>Session Context Not Removable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505</td>
<td>Other Proxy Processing Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>506</td>
<td>Resources Unavailable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>Request Initiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
<td>Multiple Session Selection Unsupported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CoA Request Response Code

The CoA Request response code can be used to convey a command to the switch.

The packet format for a CoA Request Response code as defined in RFC 5176 consists of the following fields: Code, Identifier, Length, Authenticator, and Attributes in the Type:Length:Value (TLV) format. The Attributes field is used to carry Cisco vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

Session Identification

For disconnect and CoA requests targeted at a particular session, the switch locates the session based on one or more of the following attributes:

- Acct-Session-Id (IETF attribute #44)
- Audit-Session-Id (Cisco VSA)
- Calling-Station-Id (IETF attribute #31 which contains the host MAC address)
- IPv6 Attributes, which can be one of the following:
  - Framed-Ipv6-Prefix (IETF attribute #97) and Framed-Interface-Id (IETF attribute #96), which together create a full IPv6 address per RFC 3162
  - Framed-Ipv6-Address
- Plain IP Address (IETF attribute #8)

Unless all session identification attributes included in the CoA message match the session, the switch returns a Disconnect-NAK or CoA-NAK with the “Invalid Attribute Value” error-code attribute.

If more than one session identification attribute is included in the message, all the attributes must match the session or the switch returns a Disconnect-negative acknowledgment (NAK) or CoA-NAK with the error code “Invalid Attribute Value.”

The packet format for a CoA Request code as defined in RFC 5176 consists of the fields: Code, Identifier, Length, Authenticator, and Attributes in Type-Length:Value (TLV) format.

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
| Code | Identifier | Length |
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
| Authenticator |
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
| Attributes ... |
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
```

The attributes field is used to carry Cisco vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

For CoA requests targeted at a particular enforcement policy, the device returns a CoA-NAK with the error code “Invalid Attribute Value” if any of the above session identification attributes are included in the message.
CoA ACK Response Code

If the authorization state is changed successfully, a positive acknowledgment (ACK) is sent. The attributes returned within CoA ACK will vary based on the CoA Request and are discussed in individual CoA Commands.

CoA NAK Response Code

A negative acknowledgment (NAK) indicates a failure to change the authorization state and can include attributes that indicate the reason for the failure. Use `show` commands to verify a successful CoA.

CoA Request Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Cisco VSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reauthenticate host</td>
<td><code>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=reauthenticate&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate session</td>
<td>This is a standard disconnect request that does not require a VSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce host port</td>
<td><code>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=bounce-host-port&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable host port</td>
<td><code>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=disable-host-port&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All CoA commands must include the session identifier between the `@` and the CoA client.

Session Reauthentication

The AAA server typically generates a session reauthentication request when a host with an unknown identity or posture joins the network and is associated with a restricted access authorization profile (such as a guest VLAN). A reauthentication request allows the host to be placed in the appropriate authorization group when its credentials are known.

To initiate session authentication, the AAA server sends a standard CoA-Request message which contains a Cisco VSA in this form: `Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=reauthenticate"` and one or more session identification attributes.

The current session state determines the switch response to the message. If the session is currently authenticated by IEEE 802.1x, the switch responds by sending an EAPoL (Extensible Authentication Protocol over Lan) -RequestId message to the server.

If the session is currently authenticated by MAC authentication bypass (MAB), the switch sends an access-request to the server, passing the same identity attributes used for the initial successful authentication.

If session authentication is in progress when the switch receives the command, the switch terminates the process, and restarts the authentication sequence, starting with the method configured to be attempted first.

If the session is not yet authorized, or is authorized via guest VLAN, or critical VLAN, or similar policies, the reauthentication message restarts the access control methods, beginning with the method configured to be attempted first. The current authorization of the session is maintained until the reauthentication leads to a different authorization result.

Session Reauthentication in a Switch Stack

When a switch stack receives a session reauthentication message:
• It checkpoints the need for a re-authentication before returning an acknowledgment (ACK).
• It initiates reauthentication for the appropriate session.
• If authentication completes with either success or failure, the signal that triggered the reauthentication is removed from the stack member.
• If the stack master fails before authentication completes, reauthentication is initiated after stack master switch-over based on the original command (which is subsequently removed).
• If the stack master fails before sending an ACK, the new stack master treats the re-transmitted command as a new command.

Session Termination

There are three types of CoA requests that can trigger session termination. A CoA Disconnect-Request terminates the session, without disabling the host port. This command causes re-initialization of the authenticator state machine for the specified host, but does not restrict that host access to the network.

To restrict a host’s access to the network, use a CoA Request with the Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port" VSA. This command is useful when a host is known to be causing problems on the network, and you need to immediately block network access for the host. When you want to restore network access on the port, re-enable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism.

When a device with no supplicant, such as a printer, needs to acquire a new IP address (for example, after a VLAN change), terminate the session on the host port with port-bounce (temporarily disable and then re-enable the port).

CoA Disconnect-Request

This command is a standard Disconnect-Request. If the session cannot be located, the switch returns a Disconnect-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the switch terminates the session. After the session has been completely removed, the switch returns a Disconnect-ACK.

If the switch fails-over to a standby switch before returning a Disconnect-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active switch when the request is re-sent from the client. If the session is not found following re-sending, a Disconnect-ACK is sent with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute.

CoA Request: Disable Host Port

The RADIUS server CoA disable port command administratively shuts down the authentication port that is hosting a session, resulting in session termination. This command is useful when a host is known to cause problems on the network and network access needs to be immediately blocked for the host. To restore network access on the port, re-enable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism. This command is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that has this new vendor-specific attribute (VSA):

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes described in the “Session Identification” section. If the session cannot be located, the switch returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the switch disables the hosting port and returns a CoA-ACK message.

If the switch fails before returning a CoA-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active switch when the request is re-sent from the client. If the switch fails after returning a CoA-ACK message to the client but before the operation has completed, the operation is restarted on the new active switch.
A Disconnect-Request failure following command re-sending could be the result of either a successful session termination before change-over (if the Disconnect-ACK was not sent) or a session termination by other means (for example, a link failure) that occurred after the original command was issued and before the standby switch became active.

CoA Request: Bounce-Port

A RADIUS server CoA bounce port sent from a RADIUS server can cause a link flap on an authentication port, which triggers DHCP renegotiation from one or more hosts connected to this port. This incident can occur when there is a VLAN change and the endpoint is a device (such as a printer) that does not have a mechanism to detect a change on this authentication port. The CoA bounce port is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that contains the following VSA:

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=bounce-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes. If the session cannot be located, the switch returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the switch disables the hosting port for a period of 10 seconds, re-enables it (port-bounce), and returns a CoA-ACK.

If the switch fails before returning a CoA-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active switch when the request is re-sent from the client. If the switch fails after returning a CoA-ACK message to the client but before the operation has completed, the operation is re-started on the new active switch.

Stacking Guidelines for Session Termination

No special handling is required for CoA Disconnect-Request messages in a switch stack.

Stacking Guidelines for CoA-Request Bounce-Port

Because the **bounce-port** command is targeted at a session, not a port, if the session is not found, the command cannot be executed.

When the Auth Manager command handler on the stack master receives a valid **bounce-port** command, it checkpoints the following information before returning a CoA-ACK message:

- the need for a port-bounce
- the port-id (found in the local session context)

The switch initiates a port-bounce (disables the port for 10 seconds, then re-enables it).

If the port-bounce is successful, the signal that triggered the port-bounce is removed from the standby stack master.

If the stack master fails before the port-bounce completes, a port-bounce is initiated after stack master change-over based on the original command (which is subsequently removed).

If the stack master fails before sending a CoA-ACK message, the new stack master treats the re-sent command as a new command.
Stacking Guidelines for CoA-Request Disable-Port

Because the disable-port command is targeted at a session, not a port, if the session is not found, the command cannot be executed.

When the Auth Manager command handler on the stack master receives a valid disable-port command, it verifies this information before returning a CoA-ACK message:

- the need for a port-disable
- the port-id (found in the local session context)

The switch attempts to disable the port.

If the port-disable operation is successful, the signal that triggered the port-disable is removed from the standby stack master.

If the stack master fails before the port-disable operation completes, the port is disabled after stack master change-over based on the original command (which is subsequently removed).

If the stack master fails before sending a CoA-ACK message, the new stack master treats the re-sent command as a new command.

Default RADIUS Configuration

RADIUS and AAA are disabled by default.

To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure RADIUS through a network management application. When enabled, RADIUS can authenticate users accessing the switch through the CLI.

RADIUS Server Host

Switch-to-RADIUS-server communication involves several components:

- Hostname or IP address
- Authentication destination port
- Accounting destination port
- Key string
- Timeout period
- Retransmission value

You identify RADIUS security servers by their hostname or IP address, hostname and specific UDP port numbers, or their IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and the UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. This unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address.

If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, accounting—the second host entry configured acts as a fail-over backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the %RADIUS-4-RADIUS_DEAD message appears, and then the switch tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order that they are configured.)
A RADIUS server and the switch use a shared secret text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. To configure RADIUS to use the AAA security commands, you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and a secret text (key) string that it shares with the switch.

The timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values can be configured globally for all RADIUS servers, on a per-server basis, or in some combination of global and per-server settings.

**RADIUS Login Authentication**

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports. The method list defines the types of authentication to be performed and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific port before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports except those that have a named method list explicitly defined.

A method list describes the sequence and authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. You can designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate users; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next authentication method in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method or until all defined methods are exhausted. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local user name database responds by denying the user access—the authentication process stops, and no other authentication methods are attempted.

**AAA Server Groups**

You can configure the switch to use AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication. You select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. The server group is used with a global server-host list, which lists the IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server if each entry has a unique identifier (the combination of the IP address and UDP port number), allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. This unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If you configure two different host entries on the same RADIUS server for the same service, (for example, accounting), the second configured host entry acts as a fail-over backup to the first one. If the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order in which they are configured.)

**AAA Authorization**

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the switch uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

**RADIUS Accounting**

The AAA accounting feature tracks the services that users are using and the amount of network resources that they are consuming. When you enable AAA accounting, the switch reports user activity to the RADIUS
security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. You can then analyze the data for network management, client billing, or auditing.

**Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes**

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the switch and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) allow vendors to support their own extended attributes not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option by using the format recommended in the specification. Cisco’s vendor-ID is 9, and the supported option has vendor-type 1, which is named `cisco-avpair`. The value is a string with this format:

```
protocol : attribute sep value *
```

*Protocol* is a value of the Cisco protocol attribute for a particular type of authorization. *Attribute* and *value* are an appropriate attribute-value (AV) pair defined in the Cisco TACACS+ specification, and *sep* is = for mandatory attributes and is * for optional attributes. The full set of features available for TACACS+ authorization can then be used for RADIUS.

For example, the following AV pair causes Cisco’s “multiple named IP address pools” feature to be activated during IP authorization (during PPP’s Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP) address assignment):

```
cisco-avpair= "ip:addr-pool=first"
```

If you insert an “*”, the AV pair “ip:addr-pool=first” becomes optional. Note that any AV pair can be made optional:

```
cisco-avpair= "ip:addr-pool*first"
```

The following example shows how to cause a user logging in from a network access server to have immediate access to EXEC commands:

```
cisco-avpair= "shell:priv-lvl=15"
```

Other vendors have their own unique vendor-IDs, options, and associated VSAs. For more information about vendor-IDs and VSAs, see RFC 2138, “Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS).”

Attribute 26 contains the following three elements:

- Type
- Length
- String (also known as data)
  - Vendor-Id
  - Vendor-Type
  - Vendor-Length
  - Vendor-Data

The figure below shows the packet format for a VSA encapsulated “behind” attribute 26.
It is up to the vendor to specify the format of their VSA. The Attribute-Specific field (also known as Vendor-Data) is dependent on the vendor's definition of that attribute.

The table below describes significant fields listed in the Vendor-Specific RADIUS IETF Attributes table (second table below), which lists supported vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (IETF attribute 26).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>All attributes listed in the following table are extensions of IETF attribute 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor-Specific Command Codes</td>
<td>A defined code used to identify a particular vendor. Code 9 defines Cisco VSAs, 311 defines Microsoft VSAs, and 529 defines Ascend VSAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>The attribute ID number. This number is much like the ID numbers of IETF attributes, except it is a &quot;second layer&quot; ID number encapsulated behind attribute 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>The ASCII string name of the attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the attribute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Response</td>
<td>Contains the response value provided by a PPP MS-CHAP user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets. This attribute is identical to the PPP CHAP Identifier. (RFC 2548)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Challenge</td>
<td>Contains the challenge sent by a network access server to an MS-CHAP user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets. (RFC 2548)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VPDN Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-cm-local-window-size</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum receive window size for L2TP control messages. This value is advertised to the peer during tunnel establishment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-drop-out-of-order</td>
<td>Respects sequence numbers on data packets by dropping those that are received out of order. This does not ensure that sequence numbers will be sent on data packets, just how to handle them if they are received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-hello-interval</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds for the hello keepalive interval. Hello packets are sent when no data has been sent on a tunnel for the number of seconds configured here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-hidden-avp</td>
<td>When enabled, sensitive AVPs in L2TP control messages are scrambled or hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-nosession-timeout</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds that a tunnel will stay active with no sessions before timing out and shutting down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>tunnel-tos-reflect</td>
<td>Copies the IP ToS field from the IP header of each payload packet to the IP header of the tunnel packet for packets entering the tunnel at the LNS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-tunnel-authen</td>
<td>If this attribute is set, it performs L2TP tunnel authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-tunnel-password</td>
<td>Shared secret used for L2TP tunnel authentication and AVP hiding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-udp-checksum</td>
<td>This is an authorization attribute and defines whether L2TP should perform UDP checksums for data packets. Valid values are “yes” and “no.” The default is no.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Store and Forward Fax Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fax-Account-Id-Origin</td>
<td>Indicates the account ID origin as defined by system administrator for the <code>mando aaa receive-id</code> or the <code>mando aaa send-id</code> commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fax-Msg-Id=</td>
<td>Indicates a unique fax message identification number assigned by Store and Forward Fax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Fax-Pages</td>
<td>Indicates the number of pages transmitted or received during this fax session. This page count includes cover pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Fax-Coverpage-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not a cover page was generated by the off-ramp gateway for this fax session. True indicates that a cover page was generated; false means that a cover page was not generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Fax-Modem-Time</td>
<td>Indicates the amount of time in seconds the modem sent fax data (x) and the amount of time in seconds of the total fax session (y), which includes both fax-mail and PSTN time, in the form x/y. For example, 10/15 means that the transfer time took 10 seconds, and the total fax session took 15 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Fax-Connect-Speed</td>
<td>Indicates the modem speed at which this fax-mail was initially transmitted or received. Possible values are 1200, 4800, 9600, and 14400.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Fax-Recipient-Count</td>
<td>Indicates the number of recipients for this fax transmission. Until e-mail servers support Session mode, the number should be 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Fax-Process-Abort-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates that the fax session was aborted or successful. True means that the session was aborted; false means that the session was successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Fax-Dsn-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the address to which DSNs will be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fax-Dsn-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not DSN has been enabled. True indicates that DSN has been enabled; false means that DSN has not been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Fax-Mdn-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the address to which MDNs will be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Fax-Mdn-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not message delivery notification (MDN) has been enabled. True indicates that MDN had been enabled; false means that MDN had not been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Fax-Auth-Status</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not authentication for this fax session was successful. Possible values for this field are success, failed, bypassed, or unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Email-Server-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the IP address of the e-mail server handling the on-ramp fax-mail message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Email-Server-Ack-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates that the on-ramp gateway has received a positive acknowledgment from the e-mail server accepting the fax-mail message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Gateway-Id</td>
<td>Indicates the name of the gateway that processed the fax session. The name appears in the following format: hostname.domain-name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Call-Type</td>
<td>Describes the type of fax activity: fax receive or fax send.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Port-Used</td>
<td>Indicates the slot/port number of the Cisco AS5300 used to either transmit or receive this fax-mail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Abort-Cause</td>
<td>If the fax session aborts, indicates the system component that signaled the abort. Examples of system components that could trigger an abort are FAP (Fax Application Process), TIFF (the TIFF reader or the TIFF writer), fax-mail client, fax-mail server, ESMTP client, or ESMTP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H323 Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Remote-Gateway-ID (h323-remote-address)</td>
<td>Indicates the IP address of the remote gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Connection-ID (h323-conf-id)</td>
<td>Identifies the conference ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Setup-Time (h323-setup-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the setup time for this connection in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and Zulu time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Call-Origin (h323-call-origin)</td>
<td>Indicates the origin of the call relative to the gateway. Possible values are originating and terminating (answer).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Call-Type (h323-call-type)</td>
<td>Indicates call leg type. Possible values are telephony and VoIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Connect-Time (h323-connect-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the connection time for this call leg in UTC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Disconnect-Time (h323-disconnect-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the time this call leg was disconnected in UTC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Disconnect-Cause (h323-disconnect-cause)</td>
<td>Specifies the reason a connection was taken offline per Q.931 specification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Voice-Quality (h323-voice-quality)</td>
<td>Specifies the impairment factor (ICPIF) affecting voice quality for a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Gateway-ID (h323-gw-id)</td>
<td>Indicates the name of the underlying gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Large Scale Dialout Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>callback-dialstring</td>
<td>Defines a dialing string to be used for callback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>data-service</td>
<td>No description available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>dial-number</td>
<td>Defines the number to dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>force-56</td>
<td>Determines whether the network access server uses only the 56 K portion of a channel, even when all 64 K appear to be available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>map-class</td>
<td>Allows the user profile to reference information configured in a map class of the same name on the network access server that dials out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>send-auth</td>
<td>Defines the protocol to use (PAP or CHAP) for username-password authentication following CLID authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 26     | 9                             | 1               | send-name  | PPP name authentication. To apply for PAP, do not configure the **ppp pap send-name password** command on the interface. For PAP, “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used as the PAP username and PAP password for outbound authentication. For CHAP, “preauth:send-name” will be used not only for outbound authentication, but also for inbound authentication. For a CHAP inbound case, the NAS will use the name defined in “preauth:send-name” in the challenge packet to the caller box.  

**Note** The send-name attribute has changed over time: Initially, it performed the functions now provided by both the send-name and remote-name attributes. Because the remote-name attribute has been added, the send-name attribute is restricted to its current behavior. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>send-secret</td>
<td>PPP password authentication. The vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used as the PAP username and PAP password for outbound authentication. For a CHAP outbound case, both “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used in the response packet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 26     | 9                           | 1               | remote-name | Provides the name of the remote host for use in large-scale dial-out. Dialer checks that the large-scale dial-out remote name matches the authenticated name, to protect against accidental user RADIUS misconfiguration. (For example, dialing a valid phone number but connecting to the wrong device.) |

Miscellaneous Attributes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cisco-NAS-Port</td>
<td>Specifies additional vendor specific attribute (VSA) information for NAS-Port accounting. To specify additional NAS-Port information in the form of an Attribute-Value Pair (AVPair) string, use the <code>radius-server vsa send</code> global configuration command. <strong>Note</strong> This VSA is typically used in Accounting, but may also be used in Authentication (Access-Request) packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min-links</td>
<td>Sets the minimum number of links for MLP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>proxyacl#&lt;n&gt;</td>
<td>Allows users to configure the downloadable user profiles (dynamic ACLs) by using the authentication proxy feature so that users can have the configured authorization to permit traffic going through the configured interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Carries the authentication information needed by the home agent to authenticate a mobile node during registration. The information is in the same syntax as the `ip mobile secure host <addr>` configuration command. Basically it contains the rest of the configuration command that follows that string, verbatim. It provides the Security Parameter Index (SPI), key, authentication algorithm, authentication mode, and replay protection timestamp range.

**Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication**

Although an IETF draft standard for RADIUS specifies a method for communicating vendor-proprietary information between the switch and the RADIUS server, some vendors have extended the RADIUS attribute set in a unique way. Cisco IOS software supports a subset of vendor-proprietary RADIUS attributes.

As mentioned earlier, to configure RADIUS (whether vendor-proprietary or IETF draft-compliant), you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and the secret text string it shares with the switch. You specify the RADIUS host and secret text string by using the `radius server` global configuration commands.

**How to Configure RADIUS**

**Identifying the RADIUS Server Host**

To apply these settings globally to all RADIUS servers communicating with the Device, use the three unique global configuration commands: `radius-server timeout`, `radius-server retransmit`, and `key string`.

You can configure the Device to use AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication. For more information, see Related Topics below.

You also need to configure some settings on the RADIUS server. These settings include the IP address of the Device and the key string to be shared by both the server and the Device. For more information, see the RADIUS server documentation.

Follow these steps to configure per-server RADIUS server communication.
Before you begin

If you configure both global and per-server functions (timeout, retransmission, and key commands) on the device, the per-server timer, retransmission, and key value commands override global timer, retransmission, and key value commands. For information on configuring these settings on all RADIUS servers, see Related Topics below.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. radius server server name
4. address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address { auth-port port number | acct-port port number}
5. key string
6. retransmit value
7. timeout seconds
8. exit
9. end
10. show running-config
11. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>radius server server name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# radius server rsim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>address {ipv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.2.2.12 auth-port 1612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the RADIUS server parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For <strong>auth-port</strong> port-number, specify the UDP destination port for authentication requests. The default is 1645. The range is 0 to 65536.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For <strong>acct-port</strong> port-number, specify the UDP destination port for authentication requests. The default is 1646.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring RADIUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>key string</code></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> For <code>key string</code>, specify the authentication and encryption key used between the Device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. <strong>Note</strong>: The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server. Always configure the key as the last item in the <code>radius server</code> command. Leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the key are used. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks are part of the key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>retransmit value</code></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent when the server is not responding or responding slowly. The range is 1 to 100. This setting overrides the <code>radius-server retransmit</code> global configuration command setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>timeout seconds</code></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> Specifies the time interval that the Device waits for the RADIUS server to reply before sending a request again. The range is 1 to 1000. This setting overrides the <code>radius-server timeout</code> global configuration command setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring RADIUS Login Authentication

Follow these steps to configure RADIUS login authentication:

Before you begin

To secure the device for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the device with the `ip http authentication aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the device for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]
5. `line [console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number]
6. `login authentication {default | list-name}
7. `end`
8. `show running-config`
9. `copy running-config startup-config`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code> Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code> Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code> Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>`aaa authentication login {default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication login default</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| local             | • For list-name, specify a character string to name the list you are creating.  
• For method1,..., specify the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails.  
Select one of these methods:  
• enable—Use the enable password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define an enable password by using the enable password global configuration command.  
• group radius—Use RADIUS authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must configure the RADIUS server.  
• line—Use the line password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define a line password. Use the password password line configuration command.  
• local—Use the local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database. Use the username name password global configuration command.  
• local-case—Use a case-sensitive local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database by using the username password global configuration command.  
• none—Do not use any authentication for login. |

**Step 5**

Enters line configuration mode, and configure the lines to which you want to apply the authentication list.

Example:

```
Device(config)# line 1 4
```

**Step 6**

Applies the authentication list to a line or set of lines.

• If you specify default, use the default list created with the aaa authentication login command.  
• For list-name, specify the list created with the aaa authentication login command.
Defining AAA Server Groups

You use the `server group` server configuration command to associate a particular server with a defined group server. You can either identify the server by its IP address or identify multiple host instances or entries by using the optional `auth-port` and `acct-port` keywords.

Follow these steps to define AAA server groups:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `radius server name`
4. `address {ipv4 | ipv6} {ip-address | hostname} auth-port port-number acct-port port-number`
5. `key string`
6. `end`
7. `show running-config`
8. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> <code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> <code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Defining AAA Server Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> radius server name</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning and enters RADIUS server configuration mode. The device also supports RADIUS for IPv6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# radius server ISE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} {ip-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> key string</td>
<td>Specifies the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the device and the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits RADIUS server configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-radius-server)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring RADIUS Authorization for User Privileged Access and Network Services

Note

Authorization is bypassed for authenticated users who log in through the CLI even if authorization has been configured.

Follow these steps to configure RADIUS authorization for user privileged access and network services:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa authorization network radius
4. aaa authorization exec radius
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa authorization network radius</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization network radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authorization exec radius</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization if the user has privileged EXEC access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The exec keyword might return user profile information (such as autocommand information).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization exec radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 5**  
  end  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.             |
| **Step 6**  
  show running-config  
  Example:  
  Device# show running-config | Verifies your entries.                       |
| **Step 7**  
  copy running-config startup-config  
  Example:  
  Device# copy running-config startup-config | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

**What to do next**

You can use the `aaa authorization` global configuration command with the `radius` keyword to set parameters that restrict a user’s network access to privileged EXEC mode.

The `aaa authorization exec radius local` command sets these authorization parameters:

- Use RADIUS for privileged EXEC access authorization if authentication was performed by using RADIUS.
- Use the local database if authentication was not performed by using RADIUS.

**Starting RADIUS Accounting**

Follow these steps to start RADIUS accounting:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. aaa accounting network start-stop radius  
4. aaa accounting exec start-stop radius  
5. end  
6. show running-config  
7. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**  
  enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.               |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables RADIUS accounting for all network-related service requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting network start-stop radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting network start-stop radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Enables RADIUS accounting to send a start-record accounting notice at the beginning of a privileged EXEC process and a stop-record at the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting exec start-stop radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting exec start-stop radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring Settings for All RADIUS Servers**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure settings for all RADIUS servers:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** radius-server key string | Specifies the shared secret text string used between the switch and all RADIUS servers. |
| Example:                           | Note: The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server. Leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the key are used. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks are part of the key. |
| Device(config)# radius-server key your_server_key | |
| Device(config)# key your_server_key | |

| **Step 3** radius-server retransmit retries | Specifies the number of times the switch sends each RADIUS request to the server before giving up. The default is 3; the range 1 to 1000. |
| Example: | |
| Device(config)# radius-server retransmit 5 | |

| **Step 4** radius-server timeout seconds | Specifies the number of seconds a switch waits for a reply to a RADIUS request before resending the request. The default is 5 seconds; the range is 1 to 1000. |
| Example: | |
| Device(config)# radius-server timeout 3 | |

| **Step 5** radius-server deadtime minutes | When a RADIUS server is not responding to authentication requests, this command specifies a time to stop the request on that server. This avoids the wait for the request to timeout before trying the next configured server. The default is 0; the range is 1 to 1440 minutes. |
| Example: | |
| Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 0 | |

<p>| <strong>Step 6</strong> end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| Example: | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server vsa send [accounting</td>
<td>authentication]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `radius-server vsa send accounting` | - (Optional) Use the `accounting` keyword to limit the set of recognized vendor-specific attributes to only accounting attributes.  
- (Optional) Use the `authentication` keyword to limit the set of recognized vendor-specific attributes to only authentication attributes.  
If you enter this command without keywords, both accounting and authentication vendor-specific attributes are used. |

### Step 4

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

- Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Step 5

**Example:**

```
Device# show running-config
```

- Verifies your entries.

### Step 6

**Example:**

```
Device# copy running-config startup-config
```

- (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

**Configuring the Device for Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication**

Follow these steps to configure the device to use vendor-proprietary RADIUS server communication:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `radius server server name`
4. `address { ipv4 | ipv6 } ip address`
5. `non-standard`
6. `key string`
7. `exit`
8. `end`
9. `show running-config`
10. `copy running-config startup-config`
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> enable |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | radius server server name | Specifies the RADIUS server.  
Example:  
Device(config)# radius server rsim |
| Step 4 | address { ipv4 | ipv6 } ip address | (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.  
Example:  
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 172.24.25.10 |
| Step 5 | non-standard | Identifies that the RADIUS server using a vendor-proprietary implementation of RADIUS.  
Example:  
Device(config-radius-server)# non-standard |
| Step 6 | key string | Specifies the shared secret text string used between the device and the vendor-proprietary RADIUS server. The device and the RADIUS server use this text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses.  
Example:  
Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123 |
| Step 7 | exit | Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device(config-radius-server)# exit |
| Step 8 | end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device(config-radius-server)# end |
Configuring CoA on the Device

Follow these steps to configure CoA on a device. This procedure is required.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa server radius dynamic-author`
5. `client {ip-address | name} [vrf vrfname] [server-key string]`
6. `server-key [0 | 7] string`
7. `port port-number`
8. `auth-type {any | all | session-key}`
9. `ignore session-key`
10. `ignore server-key`
11. `authentication command bounce-port ignore`
12. `authentication command disable-port ignore`
13. `end`
14. `show running-config`
15. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>aaa new-model&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>aaa server radius dynamic-author&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>client {ip-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>server-key [0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>port port-number&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-sg-radius)# port 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>auth-type {any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ignore session-key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ignore server-key&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-sg-radius)# ignore server-key</td>
<td>For more information about the ignore command, see the Cisco IOS Intelligent Services Gateway Command Reference on Cisco.com.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 11**

**authentication command bounce-port ignore**

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device(config-sg-radius)# authentication command bounce-port ignore
```

(Optional) Configures the device to ignore a CoA request to temporarily disable the port hosting a session. The purpose of temporarily disabling the port is to trigger a DHCP renegotiation from the host when a VLAN change occurs and there is no supplicant on the endpoint to detect the change.

**Step 12**

**authentication command disable-port ignore**

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device(config-sg-radius)# authentication command disable-port ignore
```

(Optional) Configures the device to ignore a nonstandard command requesting that the port hosting a session be administratively shut down. Shutting down the port results in termination of the session.

Use standard CLI or SNMP commands to re-enable the port.

**Step 13**

**end**

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 14**

**show running-config**

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device# show running-config
```

Verifies your entries.

**Step 15**

**copy running-config startup-config**

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device# copy running-config startup-config
```

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

### Monitoring CoA Functionality

**Table 32: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show aaa attributes protocol radius</td>
<td>Displays AAA attributes of RADIUS commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 33: Global Troubleshooting Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>debug radius</td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting RADIUS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug aaa coa</td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting CoA processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug aaa pod</td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting POD packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug aaa subsys</td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting POD packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug cmdhd [detail</td>
<td>error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For detailed information about the fields in these displays, see the command reference for this release.

Feature Information for RADIUS

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 34: Feature Information for RADIUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>The Auto Identity feature provides a set of built-in policies at the global configuration and interface configuration modes. This feature is available only in the Class-Based Policy Language (CPL) control policy-equivalent new-style mode. The following commands was introduced or modified: source-template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 10

RADIUS Server Load Balancing

The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature distributes authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication and accounting transactions across RADIUS servers in a server group. These servers can share the AAA transaction load and thereby respond faster to incoming requests.

This module describes the RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature.

- Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 183
- Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 183
- Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 184
- How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 186
- Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 188
- Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 193
- Feature Information for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 194

Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) must be configured on the RADIUS server.
- AAA RADIUS server groups must be configured.
- RADIUS must be configured for functions such as authentication, accounting, or static route download.

Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Incoming RADIUS requests, such as Packet of Disconnect (POD) requests, are not supported.
- Load balancing is not supported on proxy RADIUS servers and for private server groups.
Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing

RADIUS Server Load Balancing Overview

Load balancing distributes batches of transactions to RADIUS servers within a server group. Load balancing assigns each batch of transactions to the server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions in its queue. The process of assigning a batch of transactions is as follows:

1. The first transaction is received for a new batch.
2. All server transaction queues are checked.
3. The server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions is identified.
4. The identified server is assigned the next batch of transactions.

The batch size is a user-configured parameter. Changes in the batch size may impact CPU load and network throughput. As batch size increases, CPU load decreases and network throughput increases. However, if a large batch size is used, all available server resources may not be fully utilized. As batch size decreases, CPU load increases and network throughput decreases.

---

Note

There is no set number for large or small batch sizes. A batch with more than 50 transactions is considered large and a batch with fewer than 25 transactions is considered small.

---

Note

If a server group contains ten or more servers, we recommend that you set a high batch size to reduce CPU load.

Transaction Load Balancing Across RADIUS Server Groups

You can configure load balancing either per-named RADIUS server group or for the global RADIUS server group. The load balancing server group must be referred to as “radius” in the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) method lists. All public servers that are part of the RADIUS server group are then load balanced.

You can configure authentication and accounting to use the same RADIUS server or different servers. In some cases, the same server can be used for preauthentication, authentication, or accounting transactions for a session. The preferred server, which is an internal setting and is set as the default, informs AAA to use the same server for the start and stop record for a session regardless of the server cost. When using the preferred server setting, ensure that the server that is used for the initial transaction (for example, authentication), the preferred server, is part of any other server group that is used for a subsequent transaction (for example, accounting).

The preferred server is not used if one of the following criteria is true:

- The load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server command is used.
- The preferred server is dead.
• The preferred server is in quarantine.
• The want server flag has been set, overriding the preferred server setting.

The want server flag, an internal setting, is used when the same server must be used for all stages of a multistage transaction regardless of the server cost. If the want server is not available, the transaction fails.

You can use the **load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server** command if you have either of the following configurations:

• Dedicated authentication server and a separate dedicated accounting server
• Network where you can track all call record statistics and call record details, including start and stop records and records that are stored on separate servers

If you have a configuration where authentication servers are a superset of accounting servers, the preferred server is not used.

---

**RADIUS Server Status and Automated Testing**

The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature considers the server status when assigning batches. Transaction batches are sent only to live servers. We recommend that you test the status of all RADIUS load-balanced servers, including low usage servers (for example, backup servers).

Transactions are not sent to a server that is marked dead. A server is marked dead until its timer expires, at which time it moves to quarantine state. A server is in quarantine until it is verified alive by the RADIUS automated tester functionality.

To determine if a server is alive and available to process transactions, the RADIUS automated tester sends a request periodically to the server for a test user ID. If the server returns an Access-Reject message, the server is alive; otherwise the server is either dead or quarantined.

A transaction sent to an unresponsive server is failed over to the next available server before the unresponsive server is marked dead. We recommend that you use the retry reorder mode for failed transactions.

When using the RADIUS automated tester, verify that the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) servers are responding to the test packets that are sent by the network access server (NAS). If the servers are not configured correctly, packets may be dropped and the server erroneously marked dead.

⚠️ **Caution**

We recommend that you use a test user that is not defined on the RADIUS server for the RADIUS server automated testing to protect against security issues that may arise if the test user is not correctly configured.

📝 **Note**

Use the **test aaa group** command to check load-balancing transactions.
How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing

Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa group server radius group-name
4. server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]
5. load-balance method least-outstanding [batch-size number] [ignore-preferred-server]
6. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enters server group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server radius group-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa group server radius rad-sg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device (config-sg-radius)server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Enables the least-outstanding load balancing for a named server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load-balance method least-outstanding [batch-size number] [ignore-preferred-server]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-sg-radius)# load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Exits server group configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-sg)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Troubleshooting RADIUS Server Load Balancing

After configuring the RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature, you can monitor the idle timer, dead timer, and load balancing server selection or verify the server status by using a manual test command.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Use the `debug aaa test` command to determine when an idle timer or dead timer has expired, when test packets are sent, the status of the server, or to verify the server state.
2. Use the `debug aaa sg-server selection` command to determine the server that is selected for load balancing.
3. Use the `test aaa group` command to manually verify the RADIUS load-balanced server status.

**DETAILED STEPS**

### Step 1

Use the `debug aaa test` command to determine when an idle timer or dead timer has expired, when test packets are sent, the status of the server, or to verify the server state.

The idle timer is used to check the server status and is updated with or without any incoming requests. Monitoring the idle timer helps to determine if there are nonresponsive servers and to keep the RADIUS server status updated to efficiently utilize available resources. For instance, an updated idle timer would help ensure that incoming requests are sent to servers that are alive.

The dead timer is used either to determine that a server is dead or to update a dead server’s status appropriately.

Monitoring server selection helps to determine how often the server selection changes. Server selection is effective in analyzing if there are any bottlenecks, a large number of queued requests, or if only specific servers are processing incoming requests.

The following sample output from the `debug aaa test` command shows when the idle timer expired:

**Example:**

```
Device# debug aaa test

Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) quarantined.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Sending test request(s) to server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Sending 1 Access-Requests, 1 Accounting-Requests in current batch.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST (Req#: 1): Sending test AAA Accounting-Request.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST (Req#: 1): Sending test AAA Accounting-Request.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Necessary responses received from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) marked ALIVE. Idle timer set for 60 sec(s).
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) removed from quarantine.
```

### Step 2

Use the `debug aaa sg-server selection` command to determine the server that is selected for load balancing.

The following sample output from the `debug aaa sg-server selection` command shows five access requests being sent to a server group with a batch size of three:

**Example:**

```
Device# debug aaa sg-server selection

Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
```
Step 3

Use the test aaa group command to manually verify the RADIUS load-balanced server status.

The following sample output shows the response from a load-balanced RADIUS server that is alive when the username “test” does not match a user profile. The server is verified alive when it issues an Access-Reject response to an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) packet generated using the test aaa group command.

Example:

```
Device# test aaa group SG1 test lab new-code
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE(00000000):Orig. component type = INVALID
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE(00000000): dropping service type, "radius-server attribute 6 on-for-login-auth" is off
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Config NAS IP: 192.0.2.4
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): sending
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE: Best Local IP-Address 192.0.2.141 for Radius-Server 192.0.2.176
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Send Access-Request to 192.0.2.176:1645 id 1645/1, len 50
00:06:07: RADIUS: authenticator CA DB F4 9B 7B 66 C8 A9 - D1 99 4E 8E A4 46 99 B4
00:06:07: RADIUS: User-Password [2] 18 *
00:06:07: RADIUS: User-Name [1] 6 "test"
00:06:07: RADIUS: NAS-IP-Address [4] 6 192.0.2.141
00:06:07: RADIUS: Received from id 1645/1 192.0.2.176:1645, Access-Reject, len 44
00:06:07: RADIUS: authenticator 2F 69 84 3E F0 4E F1 62 - AB B8 75 5B 38 82 49 C3
00:06:07: RADIUS: Reply-Message [18] 24
00:06:07: RADIUS: 41 75 74 68 65 6E 74 69 63 61 74 69 6F 6E 20 66 [Authentication f]
00:06:07: RADIUS: 61 69 6C 75 72 65 [failure]
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Received from id 1645/1
00:06:07: RADIUS/DECODE: Reply-Message fragments, 22, total 22 bytes
```

Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

Example: Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group

The following examples show load balancing enabled for a named RADIUS server group. These examples are shown in three parts: the current configuration of the RADIUS command output, debug output, and authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server status information.

The following sample output shows the relevant RADIUS configuration:

```
Device# show running-config
  aaa group server radius server-group1
```
server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096
server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2015 acct-port 2016
load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 5

aaa authentication ppp default group server-group1
aaa accounting network default start-stop group server-group1

Device(config-sg-radius)# load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 30

The lines in the current configuration of the preceding RADIUS command output are defined as follows:

- The `aaa group server radius` command shows the configuration of a server group with two member servers.

- The `load-balance` command enables load balancing for global RADIUS server groups with the batch size specified.

- The `aaa authentication ppp` command authenticates all PPP users using RADIUS.

- The `aaa accounting` command enables sending of all accounting requests to the AAA server when the client is authenticated and then disconnected using the `start-stop` keyword.

The show debug sample output below shows the selection of the preferred server and the processing of requests for the preceding configuration:

Device# show debug

*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002C):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002E):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002E):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002F):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(00000030):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
used as preferred server
server.
used as preferred server
server.

The following sample output from the show aaa servers command shows the AAA server status for the
named RADIUS server group configuration:

The sample output shows the status of two RADIUS servers. Both servers are alive, and no requests have
been processed since the counters were cleared 0 minutes ago.

Device# show aaa servers

RADIUS: id 8, priority 1, host 192.0.2.238, auth-port 2095, acct-port 2096
  State: current UP, duration 3781s, previous duration 0s
  Deadtime total 0s, count 0
  Quarantined: No
  Authen: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Author: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Account: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Elapsed time since counters last cleared: 0m
RADIUS: id 9, priority 2, host 192.0.2.238, auth-port 2015, acct-port 2016
  State: current UP, duration 3781s, previous duration 0s
  Deadtime total 0s, count 0
  Quarantined: No
  Authen: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Author: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Account: request 0, timeouts 0
    Response: unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction: success 0, failure 0
  Elapsed time since counters last cleared: 0m

Example: Monitoring Idle Timer

The following example shows idle timer and related server state for load balancing enabled for a named
RADIUS server group. The current configuration of the RADIUS command output and debug command
output are also displayed.
The following sample output shows the relevant RADIUS configuration:

```
Device# show running-config | include radius

aaa group server radius server-group1
radius-server host 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096 test username junk1 idle-time
1 key cisco
radius-server host 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2015 acct-port 2016 test username junk1 idle-time
1 key cisco
radius-server load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 5
```

The lines in the current configuration of the preceding RADIUS command output are defined as follows:

- The `aaa group server radius` command shows the configuration of a server group.
- The `radius-server host` command defines the IP address of the RADIUS server host with authorization and accounting ports specified and the authentication and encryption key identified.
- The `radius-server load-balance` command enables load balancing for the RADIUS server with the batch size specified.

The `show debug` sample output below shows test requests being sent to servers. The response to the test request sent to the server is received, the server is removed from quarantine as appropriate, the server is marked alive, and then the idle timer is reset.

```
Device# show debug

*Feb 28 13:52:20.835:AAA/SG/TEST:Sending test request(s) to server (192.0.2.238:2015,2016)
*Feb 28 13:52:20.835:AAA/SG/TEST:Sending 1 Access-Requests, 1 Accounting-Requests in current
  batch.
*Feb 28 13:52:22.651:AAA/SG/TEST:Necessary responses received from server
  (192.0.2.238:2015,2016)
  set for 60 secs(s).
```

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with the Same Authentication and Authorization Server

The following example shows an authentication server group and an authorization server group that use the same servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

```
aaa group server radius authentication-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
aaa group server radius accounting-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
```

When a preferred server is selected for a session, all transactions for that session will continue to use the original preferred server. The servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 are load balanced based on sessions rather than transactions.
Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Different Authentication and Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

aaa group server radius authentication-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
aaa group server radius accounting-group
  server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
  server 209.165.201.2 key radkey4

The authentication server group and the accounting server group do not share any common servers. A preferred server is never found for accounting transactions; therefore, authentication and accounting servers are load-balanced based on transactions. Start and stop records are sent to the same server for a session.

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Overlapping Authentication and Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1 and an accounting server group that uses servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

aaa group server radius authentication-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
  server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
aaa group server radius accounting-group
  server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
  server 209.165.201.2 key radkey4

If all servers have equal transaction processing capability, one-third of all authentication transactions are directed toward the server 209.165.201.1. Therefore, one-third of all accounting transactions are also directed toward the server 209.165.201.1. The remaining two-third of accounting transactions are load balanced equally between servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. The server 209.165.201.1 receives fewer authentication transactions because the server 209.165.201.1 has outstanding accounting transactions.

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Subset of Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

aaa group server radius authentication-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
aaa group server radius accounting-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
  server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
One-half of all authentication transactions are sent to the server 209.165.200.225 and the other half to the server 209.165.200.226. Servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 are preferred servers for authentication and accounting transaction. Therefore, there is an equal distribution of authentication and accounting transactions across servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. The server 209.165.201.1 is relatively unused.

**Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Superset of Authorization Servers**

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

```
aaa group server radius authentication-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
  server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
aaa group server radius accounting-group
  server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
  server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
```

Initially, one-third of authentication transactions are assigned to each server in the authorization server group. As accounting transactions are generated for more sessions, accounting transactions are sent to servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 because the preferred server flag is on. As servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 begin to process more transactions, authentication transactions will start to be sent to server 209.165.201.1. Transaction requests authenticated by server 209.165.201.1 do not have any preferred server setting and are split between servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226, which negates the use of the preferred server flag. This configuration should be used cautiously.

**Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing**

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>• Security Command Reference: Commands A to C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Security Command Reference: Commands D to L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Security Command Reference: Commands M to R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Security Command Reference: Commands S to Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA and RADIUS</td>
<td>Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA server groups and RADIUS configuration</td>
<td>“Configuring RADIUS” module in the RADIUS Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failover retry reorder mode</td>
<td>“RADIUS Server Reorder on Failure” module in the RADIUS Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature Information for RADIUS Server Load Balancing**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS Server Load Balancing</td>
<td></td>
<td>The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature distributes authentication, authorization, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>accounting (AAA) authentication and accounting transactions across servers in a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>server group. These servers can share the AAA transaction load and thereby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>respond faster to incoming requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following commands were introduced or modified: <code>debug aaa sg-server selection</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>debug aaa test</code>, <code>load-balance (server-group)</code>, <code>radius-server host</code>, <code>radius-server</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>load-balance</code>, and <code>test aaa group</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Releases</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS Server Load Balancing</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature distributes authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication and accounting transactions across servers in a server group. These servers can share the AAA transaction load and thereby respond faster to incoming requests. This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Device Sensor

The Device Sensor feature is used to gather raw endpoint data from network devices using protocols such as Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), and DHCP. The endpoint data that is gathered is made available to registered clients in the context of an access session.

- Restrictions for Device Sensor, on page 197
- Information About Device Sensor, on page 197
- How to Configure Device Sensor, on page 199
- Configuration Examples for Device Sensor, on page 207
- Additional References for Device Sensor, on page 208
- Feature Information for Device Sensor, on page 208

Restrictions for Device Sensor

- Only Cisco Discovery Protocol, LLDP, DHCP, MDNS, SIP, and H323 protocols are supported.
- The session limit for profiling ports is 32.
- The length of one Type-Length-Value (TLV) must not be more than 1024 and the total length of TLVs (combined length of TLVs) of all protocols must not be more than 4096.
- The sensor profiles devices that are only one hop away.
- The Device Sensor feature is enabled by default, but cannot be disabled. Disabling device classifier using **no device classifier** command in global configuration mode does not disable device sensor. This is because device sensor is independent of IP device tracking and device classifier.

Information About Device Sensor

Device Sensor

The device sensor is used to gather raw endpoint data from network devices. The endpoint information that is gathered helps in completing the profiling capability of devices. Profiling is the determination of the endpoint type based on information gleaned from various protocol packets from an endpoint during its connection to a network.
The profiling capability consists of two parts:

- Collector—Gathers endpoint data from network devices.
- Analyzer—Processes the data and determines the type of device.

The device sensor represents the embedded collector functionality. The illustration below shows the Cisco sensor in the context of the profiling system and also features other possible clients of the sensor.

A device with sensor capability gathers endpoint information from network devices using protocols such as Cisco Discovery Protocol, LLDP, and DHCP, subject to statically configured filters, and makes this information available to its registered clients in the context of an access session. An access session represents an endpoint’s connection to the network device.

The device sensor has internal and external clients. The internal clients include components such as the embedded Device Classifier (local analyzer), ATM switch processor (ASP), MSI-Proxy, and EnergyWise (EW). The external client, that is the Identity Services Engine (ISE) analyzer, will use RADIUS accounting to receive additional endpoint data.

Client notifications and accounting messages containing profiling data along with the session events and other session-related data, such as the MAC address and the ingress port, are generated and sent to the internal and external clients (ISE). By default, for each supported peer protocol, client notifications and accounting events are only generated where an incoming packet includes a TLV that has not previously been received in the context of a given session. You can enable client notifications and accounting events for all TLV changes, where either a new TLV has been received or a previously received TLV has been received with a different value using CLI commands.
The device sensor’s port security protects the switch from consuming memory and crashing during deliberate or unintentional denial-of-service (DoS) type attacks. The sensor limits the maximum device monitoring sessions to 32 per port (access ports and trunk ports). In case of lack of activity from hosts, the age session time is 12 hours.

How to Configure Device Sensor

The device sensor is enabled by default.

The following tasks are applicable only if you want to configure the sensor based on your specific requirements.

If you do not perform these configuration tasks, then the following TLVs are included by default:

- Cisco Discovery Protocol filter—second-port-status-type and powernet-event-type (type 28 and 29).
- LLDP filter—organizationally-specific (type 127).
- DHCP filter—message-type (type 53).

Enabling Accounting Augmentation

Perform this task to add device sensor protocol data to accounting records.

Before you begin

For the sensor protocol data to be added to the accounting messages, you must enable session accounting by using the following standard authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA), and RADIUS configuration commands:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)#aaa new-model
Device(config)#aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius
Device(config)#radius-server host [hostname | ip-address] [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string]
Device(config)#radius-server vsa send accounting

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. device-sensor accounting
4. end
Creating a Cisco Discovery Protocol Filter

Perform this task to create a Cisco Discovery Protocol filter containing a list of TLVs that can be included or excluded in the device sensor output.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. device-sensor filter-list cdp list  tlv-list-name
4. tlv { name tlv-name  |  number tlv-number }
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 device-sensor accounting</td>
<td>Enables the addition of sensor protocol data to accounting records and also enables the generation of additional accounting events when new sensor data is detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# device-sensor accounting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Creating an LLDP Filter

Perform this task to create an LLDP filter containing a list of TLVs that can be included or excluded in the device sensor output.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. `device-sensor filter-list lldp list tlv-list-name`
4. `tlv { name tlv-name | number tlv-number }`
5. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `Device# configure terminal` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| `Step 1 enable` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| `Example: Device> enable` | |
| `Step 2 configure terminal` | |
| `Example: Device# configure terminal` | |

---

### Device Sensor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Creates a TLV list and enters CDP sensor configuration mode, where you can configure individual TLVs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>device-sensor filter-list cdp list tlv-list-name</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device(config)# device-sensor filter-list cdp list cdp-list</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 4** `tlv { name tlv-name | number tlv-number }` | Adds individual Cisco Discovery Protocol TLVs to the TLV list.  
• You can delete the TLV list without individually removing TLVs from the list by using the **no device-sensor filter-list cdp list tlv-list-name** command. |
| **Example:** `Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# tlv number 10` | |
| **Step 5** `end` | Exits CDP sensor configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** `Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# end` | |
**Creating a DHCP Filter**

Perform this task to create a DHCP filter containing a list of options that can be included or excluded in the device sensor output.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `device-sensor filter-list dhcp list option-list-name`
4. `option { name option-name | number option-number }
5. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Applying a Protocol Filter to the Sensor Output

Perform this task to apply a Cisco Discovery Protocol, LLDP, or DHCP filter to the sensor output. Session notifications are sent to internal sensor clients and accounting requests.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `device-sensor filter-spec {cdp | dhcp | lldp} {exclude {all | list list-name} | include list list-name}`
4. `end`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> `device-sensor filter-spec {cdp</td>
<td>dhcp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# device-sensor filter-spec cdp
  include list list1
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <code>cdp</code>—Applies a Cisco Discovery Protocol TLV filter list to the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>lldp</code>—Applies an LLDP TLV filter list to the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>dhcp</code>—Applies a DHCP TLV filter list to the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>exclude</code>—Specifies the TLVs that must be excluded from the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>include</code>—Specifies the TLVs that must be included from the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>all</code>—Disables all notifications for the associated protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>list list-name</code>—Specifies the protocol TLV filter list name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Summary Steps

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **device-sensor notify all-changes**
4. **end**

### Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Tracking TLV Changes

Perform this task to enable client notifications and accounting events for all TLV changes. By default, for each supported peer protocol, client notifications and accounting events will only be generated where an incoming packet includes a TLV that has not previously been received in the context of a given session.

### Summary Steps

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **device-sensor notify all-changes**
4. **end**
Verifying the Device Sensor Configuration

Perform this task to verify the sensor cache entries for all devices.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **show device-sensor cache mac** `mac-address`  
3. **show device-sensor cache all**

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1

**enable**

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

Device> enable

Step 2

**show device-sensor cache mac** `mac-address`

Displays sensor cache entries (the list of protocol TLVs or options received from a device) for a specific device.

**Example:**

Device# show device-sensor cache mac 0024.14dc.df4d

Device: 0024.14dc.df4d on port GigabitEthernet1/0/24

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proto</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Len</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cdp</td>
<td>26:</td>
<td>power-available-type</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>00 1A 00 10 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 FF FF FF FF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Step 3

**show device-sensor cache all**

Displays sensor cache entries for all devices.

**Example:**

Device# show device-sensor cache all

Device: 001c.0f74.8480 on port GigabitEthernet2/1

```
Proto Type:Name Len Value
cdp 22:mgmt-address-type 17 00 16 00 11 00 00 00 01 01 01 CC 00 04 09 1B 65 0E
cdp 11:duplex-type 5 00 0B 00 05 01
```

Troubleshooting Tips

After you have configured AAA Dead-Server Detection, you should verify your configuration using the **show running-config** command. This verification is especially important if you have used the **no** form of the **radius-server dead-criteria** command. The output of the **show running-config** command must show the same values in the “Dead Criteria Details” field that you configured using the **radius-server dead-criteria** command.
Configuration Examples for Device Sensor

Examples: Configuring the Device Sensor

The following example shows how to create a Cisco Discovery Protocol filter containing a list of TLVs:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device-sensor filter-list cdp list cdp-list
Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# tlv name address-type
Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# tlv name device-name
Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# tlv number 34
Device(config-sensor-cdplist)# end
```

The following example shows how to create an LLDP filter containing a list of TLVs:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device-sensor filter-list lldp list lldp-list
Device(config-sensor-lldplist)# tlv name chassis-id
Device(config-sensor-lldplist)# tlv name management-address
Device(config-sensor-lldplist)# tlv number 28
Device(config-sensor-lldplist)# end
```

The following example shows how to create a DHCP filter containing a list of options:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device-sensor filter-list dhcp list dhcp-list
Device(config-sensor-dhcpplist)# option name address-type
Device(config-sensor-dhcpplist)# option name device-name
Device(config-sensor-dhcpplist)# option number 34
Device(config-sensor-dhcpplist)# end
```

The following example shows how to apply a Cisco Discovery Protocol TLV filter list to the device sensor output:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device-sensor filter-spec cdp include cdp-list1
Device(config)
Device(config-sensor-lldplist)# end)
```

The following example shows how to enable client notifications and accounting events for all TLV changes:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device-sensor notify all-changes
Device(config)# end
```
Additional References for Device Sensor

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Device Sensor

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device Sensor</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The Device Sensor feature is used to gather raw endpoint data from network devices using protocols such as Cisco Discovery Protocol, Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), and DHCP. The endpoint data that is gathered is made available to registered clients in the context of an access session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HTTP Gleaning

The HTTP Gleaning feature allows the device sensor to extract the HTTP packet type, length, value (TLV) to derive information about the type of the end device.

- Information About HTTP Gleaning, on page 209
- How to Configure HTTP Gleaning, on page 210
- Additional References for HTTP Gleaning, on page 211
- Feature Information for HTTP Gleaning, on page 212

Information About HTTP Gleaning

HTTP Gleaning Overview

The device sensor is used to gather endpoint data from network devices. The endpoint information helps to complete the profiling capability of devices. Profiling is the process of determining the endpoint type based on the information gleaned from various protocol packets from an endpoint during its connection to a network. The HTTP Gleaning feature allows the device sensor to extract the HTTP packet type, length, value (TLV) to get information about the type of the end device.

User-Agent is one such TLV that contains information such as end-device operating system details and the browser used for the operation. This information is gleaned by the device sensor. The device classifier can use this information to ascertain the device type.

HTTP User-Agent requires the following functionalities to support HTTP gleaning.

- HTTP packet handler
- HTTP packet header parser
- HTTP TLV gleaner (DSensor shim)

Device sensors use filters to include or exclude specific TLVs to be stored by the device sensor cache. The filter configuration is a two-step process.

1. Creating a protocol filter list.
2. Applying the protocol filter list to the filter specification.
The protocol filter list is a protocol-specific list that stores the list of TLVs that are configured as part of this list. You can configure any number of filter lists for a single protocol.

HTTP supports only one type of TLV. Hence, a filter list does not exist. HTTP gleaning is enabled by default. To stop the processing of HTTP TLVs by the device sensor, use the `device-sensor filter-spec http` command.

## How to Configure HTTP Gleaning

### Configuring the Device Sensor Filter Specification for the HTTP TLV

#### Before you begin

By default, the device sensor gleans the HTTP packets that are received from the client. However, the user can explicitly exclude the HTTP type, length, value (TLV) from gleaning.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. `device-sensor filter-spec http exclude all`
4. end

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>device-sensor filter-spec http exclude all</code></td>
<td>Specifies that all TLVs should be excluded from the device sensor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# device-sensor filter-spec http exclude all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verifying HTTP Gleaning

The following is sample output from the `show device-sensor cache [all | interface | mac]` command. The output shows that the HTTP TLVs are gleaned by the device sensor.

Device# show device-sensor cache all

Device: c8e0.eb17.0b6f on port Capwap0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proto</th>
<th>Type:Name</th>
<th>Len Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HTTP</td>
<td>1:user-agent</td>
<td>83 01 51 4D 6F 7A 69 6C 61 2F 35 2E 30 20 28 4D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>61 63 69 6E 74 6F 73 68 3B 20 49 6E 74 65 6C 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4D 61 63 20 4F 53 20 58 20 31 30 2E 38 3B 20 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3A 32 35 2E 30 29 20 47 65 63 6F 2F 32 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31 30 30 31 30 32 31 20 46 69 72 65 66 6F 78 2F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>35 2E 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>54:server-identifier</td>
<td>6 36 04 C0 A8 0A 01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>50:requested-address</td>
<td>6 32 04 C0 A8 0A 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>0:</td>
<td>8 00 06 44 AD D9 03 3B 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>255:end</td>
<td>2 FF 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>12:host-name</td>
<td>14 0C 0C 73 70 72 61 73 61 64 73 2D 6D 61 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>61:client-identifier</td>
<td>9 3D 07 01 C8 EB 17 0B 6F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>57:max-message-size</td>
<td>4 39 02 05 DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>55:parameter-request-list</td>
<td>11 37 09 01 03 06 0F 77 5F FC 2C 2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>53:message-type</td>
<td>3 35 01 03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table describes the significant fields shown in the display:

Table 37: show device-sensor cache all Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proto</td>
<td>Name of the protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type:Name</td>
<td>Type and name of the type, length, value (TLV) .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Len</td>
<td>Length of the TLV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Value of the TLV in hexadecimal format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional References for HTTP Gleaning

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>[Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for HTTP Gleaning

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 38: Feature Information for HTTP Gleaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Gleaning</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The HTTP Gleaning feature allows the device sensor to extract the HTTP packet type, length, value (TLV) to derive information about the type of the end device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 13

Configuring Kerberos

- Prerequisites for Controlling Switch Access with Kerberos, on page 213
- Information about Kerberos, on page 213
- How to Configure Kerberos, on page 217
- Monitoring the Kerberos Configuration, on page 217
- Additional References, on page 217
- Feature Information for Kerberos, on page 218

Prerequisites for Controlling Switch Access with Kerberos

The following are the prerequisites for controlling switch access with Kerberos.

- So that remote users can authenticate to network services, you must configure the hosts and the KDC in the Kerberos realm to communicate and mutually authenticate users and network services. To do this, you must identify them to each other. You add entries for the hosts to the Kerberos database on the KDC and add KEYTAB files generated by the KDC to all hosts in the Kerberos realm. You also create entries for the users in the KDC database.

- A Kerberos server can be a switch that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate users by using the Kerberos protocol.

When you add or create entries for the hosts and users, follow these guidelines:

- The Kerberos principal name must be in all lowercase characters.
- The Kerberos instance name must be in all lowercase characters.
- The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.

Information about Kerberos

This section provides Kerberos information.
Kerberos and Switch Access

This section describes how to enable and configure the Kerberos security system, which authenticates requests for network resources by using a trusted third party.

In the Kerberos configuration examples, the trusted third party can be any switch that supports Kerberos, that is configured as a network security server, and that can authenticate users by using the Kerberos protocol.

Kerberos Overview

Kerberos is a secret-key network authentication protocol, which was developed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). It uses the Data Encryption Standard (DES) cryptographic algorithm for encryption and authentication and authenticates requests for network resources. Kerberos uses the concept of a trusted third party to perform secure verification of users and services. This trusted third party is called the key distribution center (KDC).

Kerberos verifies that users are who they claim to be and the network services that they use are what the services claim to be. To do this, a KDC or trusted Kerberos server issues tickets to users. These tickets, which have a limited life span, are stored in user credential caches. The Kerberos server uses the tickets instead of user names and passwords to authenticate users and network services.

A Kerberos server can be any switch that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate users by using the Kerberos protocol.

The Kerberos credential scheme uses a process called single logon. This process authenticates a user once and then allows secure authentication (without encrypting another password) wherever that user credential is accepted.

This software release supports Kerberos 5, which allows organizations that are already using Kerberos 5 to use the same Kerberos authentication database on the KDC that they are already using on their other network hosts (such as UNIX servers and PCs).

Kerberos supports these network services:

- Telnet
- rlogin
- rsh

This table lists the common Kerberos-related terms and definitions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>A process by which a user or service identifies itself to another service. For example, a client can authenticate to a switch or a switch can authenticate to another switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization</td>
<td>A means by which the switch identifies what privileges the user has in a network or on the switch and what actions the user can perform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credential</td>
<td>A general term that refers to authentication tickets, such as TGTs and service credentials. Kerberos credentials verify the identity of a user or service. If a network service decides to trust the Kerberos server that issued a ticket, it can be used in place of re-entering a username and password. Credentials have a default life span of eight hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instance</td>
<td>An authorization level label for Kerberos principals. Most Kerberos principals are of the form <code>user@REALM</code> (for example, <a href="mailto:smith@EXAMPLE.COM">smith@EXAMPLE.COM</a>). A Kerberos principal with a Kerberos instance has the form <code>user/instance@REALM</code> (for example, smith/admin@EXAMPLE.COM). The Kerberos instance can be used to specify the authorization level for the user if authentication is successful. The server of each network service might implement and enforce the authorization mappings of Kerberos instances but is not required to do so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos principal and instance names must be in all lowercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDC</td>
<td>Key distribution center that consists of a Kerberos server and database program that is running on a network host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberized</td>
<td>A term that describes applications and services that have been modified to support the Kerberos credential infrastructure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos realm</td>
<td>A domain consisting of users, hosts, and network services that are registered to a Kerberos server. The Kerberos server is trusted to verify the identity of a user or network service to another user or network service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos server</td>
<td>A daemon that is running on a network host. Users and network services register their identity with the Kerberos server. Network services query the Kerberos server to authenticate to other network services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYTAB</td>
<td>A password that a network service shares with the KDC. In Kerberos 5 and later Kerberos versions, the network service authenticates an encrypted service credential by using the KEYTAB to decrypt it. In Kerberos versions earlier than Kerberos 5, KEYTAB is referred to as SRVTAB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal</td>
<td>Also known as a Kerberos identity, this is who you are or what a service is according to the Kerberos server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos principal name must be in all lowercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service credential</td>
<td>A credential for a network service. When issued from the KDC, this credential is encrypted with the password shared by the network service and the KDC. The password is also shared with the user TGT.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kerberos Operation

A Kerberos server can be a device that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate remote users by using the Kerberos protocol. Although you can customize Kerberos in a number of ways, remote users attempting to access network services must pass through three layers of security before they can access network services.

To authenticate to network services by using a device as a Kerberos server, remote users must follow these steps:

Authenticating to a Boundary Switch

This section describes the first layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user must first authenticate to the boundary switch. This process then occurs:

1. The user opens an un-Kerberized Telnet connection to the boundary switch.
2. The switch prompts the user for a username and password.
3. The switch requests a TGT from the KDC for this user.
4. The KDC sends an encrypted TGT that includes the user identity to the switch.
5. The switch attempts to decrypt the TGT by using the password that the user entered.
   • If the decryption is successful, the user is authenticated to the switch.
   • If the decryption is not successful, the user repeats Step 2 either by re-entering the username and password (noting if Caps Lock or Num Lock is on or off) or by entering a different username and password.

A remote user who initiates a un-Kerberized Telnet session and authenticates to a boundary switch is inside the firewall, but the user must still authenticate directly to the KDC before getting access to the network services. The user must authenticate to the KDC because the TGT that the KDC issues is stored on the switch and cannot be used for additional authentication until the user logs on to the switch.

Obtaining a TGT from a KDC

This section describes the second layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user must now authenticate to a KDC and obtain a TGT from the KDC to access network services.
For instructions about how to authenticate to a KDC, see the “Obtaining a TGT from a KDC” section in the “Security Server Protocols” chapter of the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide, Release 12.4.

Authenticating to Network Services

This section describes the third layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user with a TGT must now authenticate to the network services in a Kerberos realm.

For instructions about how to authenticate to a network service, see the “Authenticating to Network Services” section in the “Security Server Protocols” chapter of the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide, Release 12.4.

How to Configure Kerberos

To set up a Kerberos-authenticated server-client system, follow these steps:

- Configure the KDC by using Kerberos commands.
- Configure the switch to use the Kerberos protocol.

Monitoring the Kerberos Configuration

To display the Kerberos configuration, use the following commands:

- `show running-config`
- `show kerberos creds`: Lists the credentials in a current user’s credentials cache.
- `clear kerberos creds`: Destroys all credentials in a current user’s credentials cache, including those forwarded.

Additional References

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos Commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Error Message Decoder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To help you research and resolve system error messages in this release, use the Error Message Decoder tool.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi">https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Kerberos

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature. Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>Kerberos is a secret-key network authentication protocol, which was developed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). It uses the Data Encryption Standard (DES) cryptographic algorithm for encryption and authentication and authenticates requests for network resources. Kerberos uses the concept of a trusted third party to perform secure verification of users and services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 14

MACsec Encryption

- Restrictions for MACsec Encryption, on page 219
- MACsec Encryption Overview, on page 219
- How to Configure MACsec Encryption, on page 227
- Configuring Examples for MACsec Encryption, on page 251

Restrictions for MACsec Encryption

- MKA policy can only be applied to the port members. You cannot apply MKA policy to a port-channel.
- Promiscuous Private VLAN (PVLAN) ports are not supported.
- WAN MACsec is not supported on Layer 3 VPNs. L3VPNs forward or tunnel packets, based on the IP header and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance at the provider edge (PE) device. WAN MACsec encrypts the IP header, and it is decrypted only by the remote PE device. As a result, WAN cannot forward packets based on the IP header. WAN MACsec can only be carried in an Layer 2 VPN (L2VPN) network.
- The MACSec Cipher announcement is not supported for MACsec XPN Ciphers.
- Certificated based MACSec (EAP-TLS) is not supported if the access-session mode is configured as open.

MACsec Encryption Overview

MACsec is the IEEE 802.1AE standard for authenticating and encrypting packets between two MACsec-capable devices. Catalyst switches support 802.1AE encryption with MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) on downlink ports for encryption between the switch and host device. The switch also supports MACsec encryption for switch-to-switch (inter-network device) security using both Cisco TrustSec Network Device Admission Control (NDAC), Security Association Protocol (SAP) and MKA-based key exchange protocol. Link layer security can include both packet authentication between switches and MACsec encryption between switches (encryption is optional). Link layer security is supported on SAP-based MACsec.

Table 41: MACsec Support on Switch Ports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Connections</th>
<th>MACsec Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Downlink Ports</td>
<td>Switch-to-Host</td>
<td>MACsec MKA Encryption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Media Access Control Security and MACsec Key Agreement

MACsec, defined in 802.1AE, provides MAC-layer encryption over wired networks by using out-of-band methods for encryption keying. The MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) Protocol provides the required session keys and manages the required encryption keys. MKA and MACsec are implemented after successful authentication using the 802.1x Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP-TLS) or Pre Shared Key (PSK) framework.

A switch using MACsec accepts either MACsec or non-MACsec frames, depending on the policy associated with the MKA peer. MACsec frames are encrypted and protected with an integrity check value (ICV). When the switch receives frames from the MKA peer, it decrypts them and calculates the correct ICV by using session keys provided by MKA. The switch compares that ICV to the ICV within the frame. If they are not identical, the frame is dropped. The switch also encrypts and adds an ICV to any frames sent over the secured port (the access point used to provide the secure MAC service to a MKA peer) using the current session key.

The MKA Protocol manages the encryption keys used by the underlying MACsec protocol. The basic requirements of MKA are defined in 802.1x-REV. The MKA Protocol extends 802.1x to allow peer discovery with confirmation of mutual authentication and sharing of MACsec secret keys to protect data exchanged by the peers.

Starting with Cisco IOS XE 16.12.1 release, support for MKA with high availability has been introduced. The high availability feature enables a pair of route processors to act as backup for each other. With high availability support for MKA if there is an active RP failure, the stand-by RP takes over existing MKA sessions in a minimally-disruptive switchover.

The EAP framework implements MKA as a newly defined EAP-over-LAN (EAPOL) packet. EAP authentication produces a master session key (MSK) shared by both partners in the data exchange. Entering the EAP session ID generates a secure connectivity association key name (CKN). The switch acts as the authenticator for both uplink and downlink; and acts as the key server for downlink. It generates a random secure association key (SAK), which is sent to the client partner. The client is never a key server and can only interact with a single MKA entity, the key server. After key derivation and generation, the switch sends periodic transports to the partner at a default interval of 2 seconds.

The packet body in an EAPOL Protocol Data Unit (PDU) is referred to as a MACsec Key Agreement PDU (MKPDU). MKA sessions and participants are deleted when the MKA lifetime (6 seconds) passes with no MKPDU received from a participant. For example, if a MKA peer disconnects, the participant on the switch continues to operate MKA until 6 seconds have elapsed after the last MKPDU is received from the MKA peer.
Integrity check value (ICV) indicator in MKPDU is optional. ICV is not optional when the traffic is encrypted.

**MKA Policies**

You apply a defined MKA policy to an interface to enable MKA on the interface. Removing the MKA policy disables MKA on that interface. You can configure these options:

- Policy name, not to exceed 16 ASCII characters.
- Confidentiality (encryption) offset of 0, 30, or 50 bytes for each physical interface

**Virtual Ports**

Use virtual ports for multiple secured connectivity associations on a single physical port. Each connectivity association (pair) represents a virtual port. In uplink, you can have only one virtual port per physical port. In downlink, you can have a maximum of two virtual ports per physical port, of which one virtual port can be part of a data VLAN; the other must externally tag its packets for the voice VLAN. You cannot simultaneously host secured and unsecured sessions in the same VLAN on the same port. Because of this limitation, 802.1x multiple authentication mode is not supported.

The exception to this limitation is in multiple-host mode when the first MACsec supplicant is successfully authenticated and connected to a hub that is connected to the switch. A non-MACsec host connected to the hub can send traffic without authentication because it is in multiple-host mode. We do not recommend using multi-host mode because after the first successful client, authentication is not required for other clients.

Virtual ports represent an arbitrary identifier for a connectivity association and have no meaning outside the MKA Protocol. A virtual port corresponds to a separate logical port ID. Valid port IDs for a virtual port are 0x0002 to 0xFFFF. Each virtual port receives a unique secure channel identifier (SCI) based on the MAC address of the physical interface concatenated with a 16-bit port ID.

**MKA Statistics**

Some MKA counters are aggregated globally, while others are updated both globally and per session. You can also obtain information about the status of MKA sessions. See Example: Displaying MKA Statistics, on page 267 for further information.

**Key Lifetime and Hitless Key Rollover**

A MACsec key chain can have multiple pre-shared keys (PSK) each configured with a key id and an optional lifetime. A key lifetime specifies at which time the key expires. In the absence of a lifetime configuration, the default lifetime is unlimited. When a lifetime is configured, MKA rolls over to the next configured pre-shared key in the key chain after the lifetime is expired. Time zone of the key can be local or UTC. Default time zone is UTC.

You can Key rolls over to the next key within the same key chain by configuring a second key in the key chain and configuring a lifetime for the first key. When the lifetime of the first key expires, it automatically rolls over to the next key in the list. If the same key is configured on both sides of the link at the same time, then the key rollover is hitless, that is, key rolls over without traffic interruption.
The lifetime of the keys need to be overlapped in order to achieve hitless key rollover.

MACsec and Stacking

A switch stack master running MACsec maintains the configuration files that show which ports on a member switch support MACsec. The stack master performs these functions:

- Processes secure channel and secure association creation and removal.
- Sends secure association service requests to the stack members.
- Processes packet number and replay-window information from local or remote ports and notifies the key management protocol.
- Sends MACsec initialization requests with the globally configured options to new switches that are added to the stack.
- Sends any per-port configuration to the member switches.

A member switch performs these functions:

- Processes MACsec initialization requests from the stack master.
- Processes MACsec service requests sent by the stack master.
- Sends information about local ports to the stack master.

MACsec, MKA and 802.1x Host Modes

You can use MACsec and the MKA Protocol with 802.1x single-host mode, multi-host mode, or Multi-Domain Authentication (MDA) mode. Multiple authentication mode is not supported.

Single-Host Mode

The figure shows how a single EAP authenticated session is secured by MACsec by using MKA

![Figure 12: MACsec in Single-Host Mode with a Secured Data Session](image)

Multiple Host Mode

In standard (not 802.1x REV) 802.1x multiple-host mode, a port is open or closed based on a single authentication. If one user, the primary secured client services client host, is authenticated, the same level of network access is provided to any host connected to the same port. If a secondary host is a MACsec supplicant, it cannot be authenticated and traffic would not flow. A secondary host that is a non-MACsec host can send traffic to the network without authentication because it is in multiple-host mode. The figure shows MACsec in Standard Multiple-Host Unsecure Mode.
In standard (not 802.1x REV) 802.1x multiple-domain mode, a port is open or closed based on a single authentication. If the primary user, a PC on data domain, is authenticated, the same level of network access is provided to any domain connected to the same port. If a secondary user is a MACsec supplicant, it cannot be authenticated and traffic would no flow. A secondary user, an IP phone on voice domain, that is a non-MACsec host, can send traffic to the network without authentication because it is in multiple-domain mode.

**Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption**

Using IEE 802.1X Port-based Authentication with Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP-TLS), you can configure MACsec MKA between device uplink ports. EAP-TLS allows mutual authentication and obtains an MSK (master session key) from which the connectivity association key (CAK) is derived for MKA operations. Device certificates are carried, using EAP-TLS, for authentication to the AAA server.

**Prerequisites for MACsec Encryption**

**Prerequisites for Certificate-Based MACsec**

- Ensure that you have a Certificate Authority (CA) server configured for your network.
- Generate a CA certificate.
- Ensure that you have configured Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Release 2.0.
• Ensure that both the participating devices, the CA server, and Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) are synchronized using Network Time Protocol (NTP). If time is not synchronized on all your devices, certificates will not be validated.

• Ensure that 802.1x authentication and AAA are configured on your device.

MKA MACsec Must Secure Policy

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, must-secure support is enabled on both the ingress and the egress. Must-secure is supported for MKA and SAP. With must-secure enabled, only EAPoL traffic will not be encrypted. The rest of the traffic will be encrypted. Unencrypted packets are dropped.

Note

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, should-secure was supported for MKA and SAP. With should-secure enabled, if the peer is configured for MACsec, the data traffic is encrypted, otherwise it is sent in clear text.

MACsec Extended Packet Numbering (XPN)

Every MACsec frame contains a 32-bit packet number (PN), and it is unique for a given Security Association Key (SAK). Upon PN exhaustion (after reaching 75% of $2^{31}$ - 1), SAK rekey takes place to refresh the data plane keys. For high capacity links such as 40 Gb/s, PN exhausts within a few seconds, and frequent SAK rekey to the control plane is required. When XPN is used, the PN of the MACsec frame is a 64-bit value, after reaching 75% of $2^{63}$ - 1, it will require several years to exhaust the PN; this ensures that frequent SAK rekey does not happen on high speed links. The XPN feature in MKA/MACsec eliminates the need for frequent SAK rekey that may occur in high capacity links. XPN is a mandatory requirement for FIPS/CC compliance on high speed links such as 40 Gb/s, 100 Gb/s, and so on.

Note

MACsec XPN is supported only on the uplink ports.

The following rekey is possible in XPN:

• **Volume-based Rekey**—To ensure that frequent SAK rekey does not happen, you can configure XPN using the GCM-AES-XPN-128 or GCM-AES-XPN-256 cipher suites under the defined MKA policy; these cipher suites allow more than $2^{32}$ frames to be protected with a single SAK. XPN supports a 64-bit value for the PN. The MACsec frame contains only the lowest 32 bits and the most significant 32 bits would be maintained by the peer itself, both the sending and the receiving peers. The most significant 32 bits of the PN is incremented at the receiving end when the MSB (most significant bits) of LAPN (lowest acceptable packet number) for the respective peer is set, and the MSB of the PN value received in the MACsec frame is 0. Thus, both the sending and the receiving peer maintain the same PN value without changing the MACsec frame structure.

• **Time-based Rekey**—To set the SAK rekey manually, timer-based rekey is supported where you have the provision to start re-keying SAK at a given interval. Use the `sak rekey interval time-interval` command in MKA policy configuration mode to configure the SAK rekey interval for a defined MKA policy applied to the interface.
MKA/MACsec for Port Channel

MKA/MACsec can be configured on the port members of a port channel. MKA/MACsec is agnostic to the port channel since the MKA session is established between the port members of a port channel.

Note
Etherchannel links that are formed as part of the port channel can either be congruent or disparate i.e. the links can either be MACsec-secured or non-MACsec-secured. MKA session between the port members is established even if a port member on one side of the port channel is not configured with MACsec.

It is recommended that you enable MKA/MACsec on all the member ports for better security of the port channel.

MACsec Cipher Announcement

Cipher Announcement allows the supplicant and the authenticator to announce their respective MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities to each other. Both, the supplicant and the authenticator, calculate the largest common supported MACsec Cipher Suite and use the same as the keying material for the MKA session.

Note
Only the MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities which are configured in the MKA policy are announced from the authenticator to the supplicant.

There are two types of EAPoL Announcements:
- Unsecured Announcements (EAPoL PDUs) : Unsecured announcements are EAPoL announcements carrying MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities in an unsecured manner. These announcements are used to decide the width of the key used for MKA session prior to authentication.
- Secure Announcements (MKPDUs) : Secure announcements revalidate the MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities which were shared previously through unsecure announcements.

Once the session is authenticated, peer capabilities which were received through EAPoL announcements are revalidated with the secure announcements. If there is a mismatch in the capabilities, the MKA session tears down.

Limitations for MACsec Cipher Announcement

- MACsec Cipher Announcement is supported only on the downlink ports.
- If MACsec Cipher Suite Capabilities get changed in an active policy at the authenticator, the updated capabilities are not take into effect until a shutdown/no shutdown is performed on the interface. If you do not disable and restart the interface, EAPoL Announcement continues to announce the older capabilities.
- The MKA session between the supplicant and the authenticator does not tear down even if the MACsec Cipher Suite Capabilities configured on both do not result in a common cipher suite.
Cisco TrustSec Overview

The table below lists the TrustSec features to be eventually implemented on TrustSec-enabled Cisco switches. Successive general availability releases of TrustSec will expand the number of switches supported and the number of TrustSec features supported per switch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TrustSec Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>802.1AE Tagging (MACsec)</td>
<td>Protocol for IEEE 802.1AE-based wire-rate hop-to-hop Layer 2 encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Between MACsec-capable devices, packets are encrypted on egress from the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transmitting device, decrypted on ingress to the receiving device, and in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the clear within the devices. This feature is only available between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TrustSec hardware-capable devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Admission Control (EAC)</td>
<td>EAC is an authentication process for an endpoint user or a device connecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to the TrustSec domain. Usually EAC takes place at the access level switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Successful authentication and authorization in the EAC process results in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Security Group Tag assignment for the user or device. Currently EAC can be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>802.1X, MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB), and Web Authentication Proxy (WebAuth).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Device Admission Control (NDAC)</td>
<td>NDAC is an authentication process where each network device in the TrustSec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>domain can verify the credentials and trustworthiness of its peer device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NDAC utilizes an authentication framework based on IEEE 802.1X port-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authentication and uses EAP-FAST as its EAP method. Successful authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and authorization in NDAC process results in Security Association Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>negotiation for IEEE 802.1AE encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Association Protocol (SAP)</td>
<td>After NDAC authentication, the Security Association Protocol (SAP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>automatically negotiates keys and the cipher suite for subsequent MACSec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>link encryption between TrustSec peers. SAP is defined in IEEE 802.11i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Group Tag (SGT)</td>
<td>An SGT is a 16-bit single label indicating the security classification of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a source in the TrustSec domain. It is appended to an Ethernet frame or an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IP packet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cisco TrustSec Feature | Description
--- | ---
SGT Exchange Protocol (SXP) | Security Group Tag Exchange Protocol (SXP). With SXP, devices that are not TrustSec-hardware-capable can receive SGT attributes for authenticated users and devices from the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) or the Cisco Secure Access Control System (ACS). The devices can then forward a sourceIP-to-SGT binding to a TrustSec-hardware-capable device will tag the source traffic for SGACL enforcement.

When both ends of a link support 802.1AE MACsec, SAP negotiation occurs. An EAPOL-key exchange occurs between the supplicant and the authenticator to negotiate a cipher suite, exchange security parameters, and manage keys. Successful completion of these tasks results in the establishment of a security association (SA).

Depending on your software version and licensing and link hardware support, SAP negotiation can use one of these modes of operation:

- Galois Counter Mode (GCM)—authentication and encryption
- GCM authentication (GMAC)—GCM authentication, no encryption
- No Encapsulation—no encapsulation (clear text)
- Null—encapsulation, no authentication or encryption

### How to Configure MACsec Encryption

#### Configuring MKA and MACsec

By default, MACsec is disabled. No MKA policies are configured.

#### Configuring an MKA Policy

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. mka policy policy-name
4. key-server priority
5. include-icv-indicator
6. macsec-cipher-suite {gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256}
7. confidentiality-offset Offset-value
8. end
9. show mka policy
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**        | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
| *enable*          |  
| **Example:**      | • Enter your password if prompted.  
| *Device> enable*  |         |
| **Step 2**        | Enters global configuration mode.  
| *configure terminal* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device# configure terminal* | |
| **Step 3**        | Identifies an MKA policy, and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.  
| *mka policy policy-name* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy* | |
| **Note**          | The default MACsec cipher suite in the MKA policy will always be "GCM-AES-128". If the device supports both "GCM-AES-128" and "GCM-AES-256" ciphers, it is highly recommended to define and use a user defined MKA policy to include both 128 and 256 bits ciphers or only 256 bits cipher, as may be required.  
| **Step 4**        | Configures MKA key server options and sets the priority (between 0-255).  
| *key-server priority* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200* | |
| **Note**          | When value of key server priority is set to 255, the peer cannot become the key server. The key server priority value is valid only for MKA PSK; and not for MKA EAPTLS.  
| **Step 5**        | Enables the ICV indicator in MKPDU. Use the no form of this command to disable the ICV indicator — no include-icv-indicator.  
| *include-icv-indicator* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device(config-mka-policy)# include-icv-indicator* | |
| **Step 6**        | Configures cipher suite for deriving SAK with 128-bit or 256-bit encryption.  
| *macsec-cipher-suite {gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256}* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128* | |
| **Step 7**        | Set the confidentiality (encryption) offset for each physical interface  
| *confidentiality-offset Offset-value* | |
| **Example:**      | |
| *Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0* | |
| **Note**          | Offset value can be 0, 30 or 50. If you are using Anyconnect on the client, it is recommended to use Offset 0. |
### Configuring MACsec on an Interface

Follow these steps to configure MACsec on an interface with one MACsec session for voice and one for data:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface type number`
4. `switchport access vlan vlan-id`
5. `switchport mode access`
6. `macsec`
7. `authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan vlan-id`
8. `authentication host-mode multi-domain`
9. `authentication linksec policy must-secure`
10. `authentication port-control auto`
11. `authentication periodic`
12. `authentication timer reauthenticate`
13. `authentication violation protect`
14. `mka policy policy-name`
15. `dot1x pae authenticator`
16. `spanning-tree portfast`
17. `end`
18. `show authentication session interface interface-id details`
19. `show macsec interface interface-id`
20. `show mka sessions`

**DETAILS STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | `enable`          | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
|      | Example: `Device> enable` |  
|      |                   | • Enter the password if prompted.  
| 2    | `configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode.  
<p>|      | Example:          |         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface type number</td>
<td>Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport access vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Configures the access VLAN for the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>Configures the interface as an access port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> macsec</td>
<td>Enables 802.1ae MACsec on the interface. The macsec command enables MKA MACsec on switch-to-host links (downlink ports) only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# macsec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the switch processes authentication link-security failures resulting from unrecognized user credentials by authorizing a restricted VLAN on the port after a failed authentication attempt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> authentication host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td>Configures authentication manager mode on the port to allow both a host and a voice device to be authenticated on the 802.1x-authorized port. If not configured, the default host mode is single.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> authentication linksec policy must-secure</td>
<td>Sets the LinkSec security policy to secure the session with MACsec if the peer is available. If not set, the default is should secure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication linksec policy must-secure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> authentication port-control auto</td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port. The port changes to the authorized or unauthorized state based on the authentication exchange between the switch and the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> authentication periodic</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables or disables re-authentication for this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication periodic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>authentication timer reauthenticate&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>authentication violation protect&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication violation protect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>mka policy <em>policy-name</em>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>dot1x pae authenticator&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>spanning-tree portfast&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>end&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>show authentication session interface <em>interface-id</em> details&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# show authentication session interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>show macsec interface <em>interface-id</em>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# show macsec interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>show mka sessions&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# show mka sessions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Configuring MKA MACsec using PSK

## Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `key chain key-chain-name macsec`
4. `key hex-string`
5. `cryptographic-algorithm {gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256}`
6. `key-string {0[6|7]pwd-string | pwd-string}`
7. `lifetime local [start timestamp {hh:mm:ss | day | month | year} | duration seconds | end timestamp {hh:mm:ss | day | month | year}]`
8. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>key chain key-chain-name macsec</code></td>
<td>Configures a key chain and enters the key chain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>key chain keychain1 macsec</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>key hex-string</code></td>
<td>Configures a unique identifier for each key in the keychain and enters the keychain's key configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-key-chain)# <code>key 1000</code></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> For 128-bit encryption, use any value between 1 and 32 hex digit key-string. For 256-bit encryption, use 64 hex digit key-string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>`cryptographic-algorithm {gcm-aes-128</td>
<td>gcm-aes-256}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-key-chain)# <code>cryptographic-algorithm gcm-aes-128</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>`key-string {0[6</td>
<td>7]pwd-string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-key-chain)# <code>key-string 12345678901234567890123456789012</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring MACsec MKA on an Interface using PSK

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface type number
4. macsec network-link
5. mka policy policy-name
6. mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain name
7. macsec replay-protection window-size frame number
8. end

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>interface type number</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>macsec network-link</td>
<td>Enables MACsec on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# macsec network-link</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 5** mka policy *policy-name*  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy | Configures an MKA policy. |
| **Step 6** mka pre-shared-key key-chain *key-chain name*  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name | Configures an MKA pre-shared-key key-chain name.  
**Note** The MKA pre-shared key can be configured on either physical interface or sub-interfaces and not on both. |
| **Step 7** macsec replay-protection window-size *frame number*  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# macsec replay-protection window-size 10 | Sets the MACsec window size for replay protection. |
| **Step 8** end  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

**What to do next**

It is not recommended to change the MKA policy on an interface with MKA PSK configured when the session is running. However, if a change is required, you must reconfigure the policy as follows:

1. Disable the existing session by removing macsec network-link configuration on each of the participating node using the `no macsec network-link` command
2. Configure the MKA policy on the interface on each of the participating node using the `mka policy *policy-name*` command.
3. Enable the new session on each of the participating node by using the `macsec network-link` command.

**Configuring Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption**

To configure MACsec with MKA on point-to-point links, perform these tasks:

- Configure Certificate Enrollment
  - Generate Key Pairs
  - Configure SCEP Enrollment
  - Configure Certificates Manually
- Configure an Authentication Policy
- Configure EAP-TLS Profiles and IEEE 802.1x Credentials
- Configure MKA MACsec using EAP-TLS on Interfaces
Generating Key Pairs

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa label <em>label-name</em> general-keys modulus <em>size</em></td>
<td>Generates a RSA key pair for signing and encryption. You can also assign a label to each key pair using the label keyword. The label is referenced by the trustpoint that uses the key pair. If you do not assign a label, the key pair is automatically labeled &lt;Default-RSA-Key&gt;. If you do not use additional keywords this command generates one general purpose RSA key pair. If the modulus is not specified, the default key modulus of 1024 is used. You can specify other modulus sizes with the modulus keyword.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa label <em>general-keys</em> modulus 2048</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>show authentication session interface <em>interface-id</em></td>
<td>Verifies the authorized session security status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show authentication session interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Enrollment using SCEP

Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) is a Cisco-developed enrollment protocol that uses HTTP to communicate with the certificate authority (CA) or registration authority (RA). SCEP is the most commonly used method for sending and receiving requests and certificates.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>crypto pki trustpoint server name</code></td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint ka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>enrollment url url name pem</code></td>
<td>Specifies the URL of the CA on which your device should send certificate requests. An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80. The pem keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://url:80">http://url:80</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>rsakeypair label</code></td>
<td>Specifies which key pair to associate with the certificate. Note: The rsakeypair name must match the trust-point name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair exampleCAkeys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>serial-number none</code></td>
<td>The none keyword specifies that a serial number will not be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>ip-address none</code></td>
<td>The none keyword specifies that no IP address should be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><code>revocation-check crl</code></td>
<td>Specifies CRL as the method to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><code>auto-enroll percent regenerate</code></td>
<td>Enables auto-enrollment, allowing the client to automatically request a rollover certificate from the CA. If auto-enrollment is not enabled, the client must be manually re-enrolled in your PKI upon certificate expiration. By default, only the Domain Name System (DNS) name of the device is included in the certificate. Use the percent argument to specify that a new certificate will be requested after the percentage of the lifetime of the current certificate is reached. Use the regenerate keyword to generate a new key for the certificate even if a named key already exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# auto-enroll 90 regenerate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose

Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
 | If the key pair being rolled over is exportable, the new key pair will also be exportable. The following comment will appear in the trustpoint configuration to indicate whether the key pair is exportable: 

“!RSA key pair associated with trustpoint is exportable.”

It is recommended that a new key pair be generated for security reasons.

**Step 10**

**exit**

**Example:**

Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit

Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

**Step 11**

**crypto pki authenticate name**

**Example:**

Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate myca

Retrieves the CA certificate and authenticates it.

**Step 12**

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 13**

**show crypto pki certificate trustpoint name**

**Example:**

Device# show crypto pki certificate ka

Displays information about the certificate for the trust point.

---

**Configuring Enrollment Manually**

If your CA does not support SCEP or if a network connection between the router and CA is not possible. Perform the following task to set up manual certificate enrollment:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3**

**crypto pki trustpoint server name**

**Example:**

Device# crypto pki trustpoint ka

Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 4** enrollment url *url-name*  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url  
http://url:80 | Specifies the URL of the CA on which your device should send certificate requests. An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80. The pem keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request. |
| **Step 5** rsakeypair *label*  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair exampleCAkeys | Specifies which key pair to associate with the certificate. |
| **Step 6** serial-number none  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none | Specifies that serial numbers will not be included in the certificate request. |
| **Step 7** ip-address none  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none | The none keyword specifies that no IP address should be included in the certificate request. |
| **Step 8** revocation-check crl  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl | Specifies CRL as the method to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked. |
| **Step 9** exit  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit | Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 10** crypto pki authenticate *name*  
Example:  
Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate myca | Retrieves the CA certificate and authenticates it. |
| **Step 11** crypto pki enroll *name*  
Example:  
Device(config)# crypto pki enroll myca | Generates certificate request and displays the request for copying and pasting into the certificate server. Enter enrollment information when you are prompted. For example, specify whether to include the device FQDN and IP address in the certificate request. You are also given the choice about displaying the certificate request to the console terminal. The base-64 encoded certificate with or without PEM headers as requested is displayed. |
| **Step 12** crypto pki import *name certificate*  
Example: | Imports a certificate via TFTP at the console terminal, which retrieves the granted certificate. |
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto pki import myca certificate</code></td>
<td>The device attempts to retrieve the granted certificate via TFTP using the same filename used to send the request, except the extension is changed from “.req” to “.crt”. For usage key certificates, the extensions “-sign.crt” and “-encr.crt” are used. The device parses the received files, verifies the certificates, and inserts the certificates into the internal certificate database on the switch. <strong>Note</strong> Some CAs ignore the usage key information in the certificate request and issue general purpose usage certificates. If your CA ignores the usage key information in the certificate request, only import the general purpose certificate. The router will not use one of the two key pairs generated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 13

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Step 14

**Example:**

```
Device# show crypto pki certificate ka
```

Displays information about the certificate for the trust point.

---

### Applying the 802.1x MACsec MKA Configuration on Interfaces

To apply MACsec MKA using EAP-TLS to interfaces, perform the following task:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  ```
  enable
  ```
  **Example:**
  ```
  Device> enable
  ```
  Enables privileged EXEC mode.
  ```
  • Enter your password if prompted.
  |
| **Step 2**
  ```
  configure terminal
  ```
  **Example:**
  ```
  Device# configure terminal
  ```
  Enters global configuration mode.
| **Step 3**
  ```
  interface type number
  ```
  **Example:**
  ```
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/2/1
  ```
  Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>macsec network-link</td>
<td>Enables MACsec on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# macsec network-link</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>authentication periodic</td>
<td>Enables reauthentication for this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# authentication periodic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>authentication timer reauthenticate interval</td>
<td>Sets the reauthentication interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>access-session host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td>Allows hosts to gain access to the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# access-session host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>access-session closed</td>
<td>Prevents preauthentication access on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# access-session closed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>access-session port-control auto</td>
<td>Sets the authorization state of a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# access-session port-control auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>dot1x pae both</td>
<td>Configures the port as an 802.1X port access entity (PAE) supplicant and authenticator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# dot1x pae both</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>dot1x credentials profile</td>
<td>Assigns a 802.1x credentials profile to the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# dot1x credentials profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>show macsec interface</td>
<td>Displays MACsec details for the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# show macsec interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Configuring MACsec XPN

## Configuring an MKA Policy for XPN

Follow these steps to configure XPN in an MKA policy:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `mka policy policy-name`
4. `macsec-cipher-suite { gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256 | gcm-aes-xpn-128 | gcm-aes-xpn-256}`
5. `sak-rekey interval time-interval`
6. `end`

## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>mka policy policy-name</code></td>
<td>Identifies an MKA policy, and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>mka policy mka_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The default MACsec cipher suite in the MKA policy will always be &quot;GCM-AES-128&quot;. If the device supports both &quot;GCM-AES-128&quot; and &quot;GCM-AES-256&quot; ciphers, it is highly recommended to define and use a user defined MKA policy to include both 128 and 256 bits ciphers or only 256 bits cipher, as may be required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-mka-policy)# <code>macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-xpn-256</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>sak-rekey interval time-interval</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the SAK rekey interval (in seconds). The range is from 30 to 65535, and the default value is 0. The SAK rekey timer does not start by default until it is configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-mka-policy)# <code>sak-rekey interval 50</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Applying the XPN MKA Policy to an Interface

To apply the XPN MKA policy to an interface, perform the following task:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 interface interface-name</td>
<td>Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 mka policy policy-name</td>
<td>Applies the XPN MKA protocol policy to the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# mka policy mka-xpn-policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring MKA/MACsec for Port Channel

Configuring MKA/MACsec for Port Channel using PSK

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. macsec network-link
5. `mka policy policy-name`
6. `mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name`
7. `macsec replay-protection window-size frame number`
8. `channel-group channel-group-number mode {auto | desirable} | {active | passive} | {on}`
9. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
* Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Example:** | Device> `enable` |
| **Step 2** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:** | Device# `configure terminal` |
| **Step 3** | `interface interface-id` | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `interface gigabitethernet 1/0/3` |
| **Step 4** | `macsec network-link` | Enables MACsec on the interface. Supports layer 2 and layer 3 port channels. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `macsec network-link` |
| **Step 5** | `mka policy policy-name` | Configures an MKA policy. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `mka policy mka_policy` |
| **Step 6** | `mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name` | Configures an MKA pre-shared-key key-chain name. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name` |
| **Note** | The MKA pre-shared key can be configured on either physical interface or sub-interfaces and not on both. |
| **Step 7** | `macsec replay-protection window-size frame number` | Sets the MACsec window size for replay protection. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `macsec replay-protection window-size 0` |
| **Step 8** | `channel-group channel-group-number mode {auto | desirable} | {active | passive} | {on}` | Configures the port in a channel group and sets the mode. |
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `channel-group 3 mode auto active on` |
| **Note** | You cannot configure ports in a channel group without configuring MACsec on the interface.  
You must configure the commands in Step 3, 4, 5 and 6 before this step. |
### Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 2 EtherChannels

To create a port channel interface for a Layer 2 EtherChannel, perform this task:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface port-channel channel-group-number

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The channel-number range is from 1 to 4096. The port channel associated with this channel group is automatically created if the port channel does not already exist. For mode, select one of the following keywords:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>auto</strong> — Enables PAgP only if a PAgP device is detected. This places the port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to PAgP packets it receives but does not start PAgP packet negotiation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>desirable</strong> — Unconditionally enables PAgP. This places the port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending PAgP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>on</strong> — Forces the port to channel without PAgP or LACP. In the on mode, an EtherChannel exists only when a port group in the on mode is connected to another port group in the on mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>active</strong> — Enables LACP only if a LACP device is detected. It places the port into an active negotiating state in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending LACP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>passive</strong> — Enables LACP on the port and places it into a passive negotiating state in which the port responds to LACP packets that it receives, but does not start LACP packet negotiation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Step 9**  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# cend  

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
4. switchport
5. switchport mode {access | trunk}
6. end

DETAILLED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface port-channel channel-group-number</td>
<td>Creates the port channel interface, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface port-channel 1</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Use the no form of this command to delete the port channel interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport</td>
<td>Switches an interface that is in Layer 3 mode into Layer 2 mode for Layer 2 configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport mode {access</td>
<td>trunk}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 3 EtherChannels

To create a port channel interface for a Layer 3 EtherChannel, perform this task:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. no switchport
5. ip address ip-address subnet-mask
6. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> no switchport</td>
<td>Switches an interface that is in Layer 2 mode into Layer 3 mode for Layer 3 configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: no switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# no switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> ip address ip-address subnet-mask</td>
<td>Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the EtherChannel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: ip address 10.2.2.3 255.255.255.254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.2.2.3 255.255.255.254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement

#### Configuring an MKA Policy for Secure Announcement

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. mka policy policy-name
4. key-server priority
5. send-secure-announcements
6. macsec-cipher-suite {gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256}
7. end
8. show mka policy
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> mka policy <em>policy-name</em></td>
<td>Identifies an MKA policy, and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The default MACsec cipher suite in the MKA policy will always be &quot;GCM-AES-128&quot;. If the device supports both &quot;GCM-AES-128&quot; and &quot;GCM-AES-256&quot; ciphers, it is highly recommended to define and use a user defined MKA policy to include both 128 and 256 bits ciphers or only 256 bits cipher, as may be required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> key-server <em>priority</em></td>
<td>Configures MKA key server options and set priority (between 0-255).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When value of key server priority is set to 255, the peer cannot become the key server. The key server priority value is valid only for MKA PSK; and not for MKA EAP TLS.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> send-secure-announcements</td>
<td>Enables sending of secure announcements. Use the no form of the command to disable sending of secure announcements. By default, secure announcements are disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# send-secure-announcements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> macsec-cipher-suite {*gcm-aes-128</td>
<td>gcm-aes-256*}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits MKA policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> show mka policy</td>
<td>Displays MKA policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show mka policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Secure Announcement Globally (Across all the MKA Policies)

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements
4. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements</td>
<td>Enables sending of secure announcements in MKPDUs across MKA policies. By default, secure announcements are disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring EAPoL Announcements on an Interface

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. eapol announcement
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 interface interface-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 eapol announcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring Cisco TrustSec MACsec

### Configuring Cisco TrustSec Switch-to-Switch Link Security in Manual Mode

**Before you begin**

When manually configuring Cisco TrustSec on an interface, consider these usage guidelines and restrictions:

- If no SAP parameters are defined, Cisco TrustSec encapsulation or encryption is not performed.
- If you select GCM as the SAP operating mode, you must have a MACsec Encryption software license from Cisco. If you select GCM without the required license, the interface is forced to a link-down state.
- These protection levels are supported when you configure SAP pairwise master key (sap pmk):
  - SAP is not configured—no protection.
  - `sap mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac no-encap`—protection desirable but not mandatory.
  - `sap mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac`—confidentiality preferred and integrity required. The protection is selected by the supplicant according to supplicant preference.
  - `sap mode-list gmac`—integrity only.
  - `sap mode-list gcm-encrypt`—confidentiality required.
  - `sap mode-list gmac gcm-encrypt`—integrity required and preferred, confidentiality optional.
- Before changing the configuration from MKA to Cisco TrustSec SAP and vice versa, we recommend that you remove the interface configuration.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to manually configure Cisco TrustSec on an interface to another Cisco TrustSec device:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>eapol announcement</code></td>
<td>Enables EAPoL announcements. Use the <code>no</code> form of the command to disable EAPoL announcements. By default, EAPoL announcements are disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# <code>eapol announcement</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. cts manual
4. sap pmk key [mode-list mode1 [mode2 [mode3 [mode4]]]]
5. no propagate sgt
6. exit
7. end
8. show cts interface [interface-id | brief | summary]
9. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>interface interface-id</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Switch(config)# interface tengigabitethernet 1/1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>cts manual</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Switch(config-if)# cts manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>sap pmk key [mode-list mode1 [mode2 [mode3 [mode4]]]]</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Switch(config-if-cts-manual)# sap pmk 1234abcdef mode-list gcm-encrypt no-encap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Optional) Configures the SAP pairwise master key (PMK) and operation mode. SAP is disabled by default in Cisco TrustSec manual mode.

- **key**—A hexadecimal value with an even number of characters and a maximum length of 32 characters.

The SAP operation mode options:

- **gcm-encrypt**—Authentication and encryption
  - **Note** Select this mode for MACsec authentication and encryption if your software license supports MACsec encryption.

- **gmac**—Authentication, no encryption

- **no-encap**—No encapsulation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 5** no propagate sgt  
**Example:**  
Switch(config-if-cts-manual)# no propagate sgt | Use the no form of this command when the peer is incapable of processing a SGT. The no propagate sgt command prevents the interface from transmitting the SGT to the peer. |
| **Step 6** exit  
**Example:**  
Switch(config-if-cts-manual)# exit | Exits Cisco TrustSec 802.1x interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 7** end  
**Example:**  
Switch(config-if)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 8** show cts interface [interface-id | brief | summary] | (Optional) Verify the configuration by displaying TrustSec-related interface characteristics. |
| **Step 9** copy running-config startup-config  
**Example:**  
Device# copy running-config startup-config | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

### Configuring Examples for MACsec Encryption

#### Example: Configuring MKA and MACsec

This example shows how to create an MKA policy:

```
Device> enable  
Device# configure terminal  
Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy  
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200  
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128  
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 30  
Device(config-mka-policy)# end
```

This example shows how to configure MACsec on an interface:

```
Device> enable  
Device# configure terminal  
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1  
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1  
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access  
Device(config-if)# macsec  
Device(config-if)# authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan 1  
Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-domain  
Device(config-if)# authentication linksec policy must-secure  
Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto  
Device(config-if)# authentication periodic  
Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate  
Device(config-if)# authentication violation protect
```
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA using PSK.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain keychain1 macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-keychain-key)# cryptographic-algorithm gcm-aes-128
Device(config-keychain-key)# key-string 12345678901234567890123456789012
Device(config-keychain-key)# lifetime local 12:12:00 July 28 2016 12:19:00 July 28 2016
Device(config-keychain-key)# end

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA on an interface using PSK.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0
Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name
Device(config-if)# macsec replay-protection window-size 10
Device(config-if)# end

Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using EAP-TLS

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA using EAP-TLS:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# authentication periodic
Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate interval
Device(config-if)# access-session host-mode multi-domain
Device(config-if)# access-session closed
Device(config-if)# access-session port-control auto
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae both
Device(config-if)# dot1x credentials profile
Device(config-if)# dot1x supplicant eap profile profile_eap_tls
Device(config-if)# end

Example: Configuring MACsec XPN

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA XPN policy.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka policy mka-xpn-policy
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-xpn-256
Device(config-mka-policy)# end

This example shows how to apply MACsec MKA XPN policy to an interface.
Device> **enable**  
Device# **configure terminal**  
Device(config)# **interface Fo 1/0/1**  
Device(config-if)# **mka policy mka-xpn-policy**  
Device(config-if)# **end**

The following is a sample output of the **show mka sessions details** command with 128-bit XPN Cipher Suite configured.

Device# **show mka sessions details**

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID...........
CAK Name (CKN)........... 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89572
EAP Role................ NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite........ AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)....... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE000000001 (1)
Old SAK Status........... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time.......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name.......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection.......... NO
Replay Protection......... YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C20001000003 (GCM-AES-XPN-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers........... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
The following is sample output of the `show mka sessions details` command with 256-bit XPN Cipher Suite configured.

```
Device# show mka sessions details

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID.........
CAK Name (CKN).........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89572
EAP Role................ NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN.............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)........ D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status............. FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN)............ FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name........... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility........ 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C20001000004 (GCM-AES-XPN-256)
```
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK

Etherchannel Mode — Static/On

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode on:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain KC macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-key-chain)# cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac
Device(config-key-chain)# key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45
Device(config-key-chain)# exit
Device(config)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode on
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode on
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# end
```

Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

```
Flags:  D - down      P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby  (LACP only)
        R - Layer3      S - Layer2
        U - in use       f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        u - unsuitable for bundling
        w - waiting to be aggregated
        d - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

Group  Port-channel  Protocol  Ports

----------------------------------------------
 2       Po2 (RU)    -       Te1/0/1 (P)  Te1/0/2 (P)
```

**Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration**

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2
Device> **enable**  
Device# **configure terminal**  
Device(config)# **interface port-channel 2**  
Device(config-if)# **no switchport**  
Device(config-if)# **ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0**  
Device(config-if)# **no shutdown**  
Device(config-if)# **end**

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

Flags:  
D - down  
P - bundled in port-channel  
I - stand-alone  
s - suspended  
H - Hot-standby  
(LACP only)  
R - Layer3  
S - Layer2  
U - in use  
f - failed to allocate aggregator  
M - not in use, minimum links not met  
u - unsuitable for bundling  
w - waiting to be aggregated  
d - default port  
A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1  
Number of aggregators: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Port-channel</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Po2(RU)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Tel/0/1(P)  Tel/0/2(P)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Etherchannel Mode — LACP**

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode as LACP.

Device> **enable**  
Device# **configure terminal**  
Device(config)# **key chain KC macsec**  
Device(config-key-chain)# **key 1000**  
Device(config-key-chain)# **cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac**  
Device(config-key-chain)# **key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45**  
Device(config-key-chain)# **exit**  
Device(config)# **mka policy POLICY**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# **key-server priority 0**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# **macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# **confidentiality-offset 0**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# **exit**  
Device(config)# **interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1**  
Device(config-if)# **channel-group 2 mode active**  
Device(config-if)# **macsec network-link**  
Device(config-if)# **mka policy POLICY**  
Device(config-if)# **mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC**  
Device(config-if)# **exit**  
Device(config)# **interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2**
Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

Flags:  D - down  P - bundled in port-channel
I - stand-alone  s - suspended
H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
R - Layer3  S - Layer2
U - in use  f - failed to allocate aggregator
M - not in use, minimum links not met
u - unsuitable for bundling
w - waiting to be aggregated
d - default port
A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end
Device(config-if)#

The following is sample output from the show etherchannel summary command:

Flags: D - down        P - bundled in port-channel
       I - stand-alone s - suspended
       H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
       R - Layer3      S - Layer2
       U - in use      f - failed to allocate aggregator
       M - not in use, minimum links not met
       u - unsuitable for bundling
       w - waiting to be aggregated
       d - default port
       A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

Group      Port-channel  Protocol Ports
---------+----------------+-----------+-----------------------------------------------
        2           Po2(RU)     LACP   Tel/1/1(P)  Tel/1/2(P)

Etherchannel Mode — PAgP

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode as PAgP:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain KC macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-key-chain)# cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac
Device(config-key-chain)# key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45
Device(config-key-chain)# exit
Device(config)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK

```
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# end
```

Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end
```

Device 2

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end
```

The following shows a sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command.

Flags: D - down P - bundled in port-channel
I - stand-alone s - suspended
H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
R - Layer3 S - Layer2
U - in use f - failed to allocate aggregator
M - not in use, minimum links not met
u - unsuitable for bundling
w - waiting to be aggregated
d - default port
A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

```
2    Po2(SU)     PAgP    Te1/1/1(P)    Te1/1/2(P)
```

Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the **show etherchannel summary** command:

**Flags:**
- D - down
- P - bundled in port-channel
- I - stand-alone
- S - suspended
- H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
- R - Layer3
- S - Layer2
- U - in use
- F - failed to allocate aggregator
- M - not in use, minimum links not met
- U - unsuitable for bundling
- W - waiting to be aggregated
- D - default port
- A - formed by Auto LAG

| Number of channel-groups in use: 1 |
| Number of aggregators: 1 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Port-channel</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Po2(RU)</td>
<td>PAgP</td>
<td>Te1/1/1(P) Te1/1/2(P)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Displaying Active MKA Sessions**

The following shows all the active MKA sessions.

Device# show mka sessions interface Te1/0/1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Te1/0/1</td>
<td>00a3.d144.3364/0025</td>
<td>POLICY</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Example: Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement

This example shows how to configure MKA policy for Secure Announcement:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server 2
Device(config-mka-policy)# send-secure-announcements
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128 confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# end

This example shows how to configure Secure Announcement globally:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements
Device(config)# end

This example shows how to configure EAPoL Announcements on an interface:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# eapol announcement
Device(config-if)# end

The following is a sample output for `show running-config interface interface-name` command with EAPoL announcement enabled.

Device# show running-config interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1

```
switchport mode access
macsec
  access-session host-mode multi-host
  access-session closed
  access-session port-control auto
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 10
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
dot1x timeout supp-timeout 10
dot1x supplicant eap profile peap
eapol announcement
spanning-tree portfast
service-policy type control subscriber Dot1X
```

The following is a sample output of the `show mka sessions interface interface-name detail` command with secure announcement disabled.

Device# show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 detail

```
MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
=====================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec
```
Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID.........
CAK Name (CKN).......... 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)..... 89567
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)------- D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status........... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN.............. 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time.......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name.......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection.......... NO
Replay Protection.......... YES
Replay Window Size........ 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C20001000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability......... 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers......... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89555</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Dormant Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
The following is sample output of the `show mka sessions details` command with secure announcement disabled.

```
Device# show mka sessions details

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name............ GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID.......... 
CAK Name (CKN)............ 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)..... 89572
EAP Role.................... NA
Key Server................. YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............... 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)........ D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status............ FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN)............ FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time............ 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name......... p2
Key Server Priority..... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite........ 0080C200010000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired.......... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers........ 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89560</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
The following is sample output of the `show mka policy policy-name detail` command with secure announcement disabled.

```
Device# show mka policy p2 detail
MKA Policy Configuration ("p2")
-----------------------------
MKA Policy Name ........... p2
Key Server Priority .... 2
Confidentiality Offset .... 0
Send Secure Announcement .. DISABLED
Cipher Suite(s) .......... GCM-AES-128

Applied Interfaces...
   GigabitEthernet1/0/1
```

**Examples : Cisco TrustSec Switch-to-Switch Link Security**

This example shows the configuration necessary for a seed and non-seed device for Cisco TrustSec switch-to-switch security. You must configure the AAA and RADIUS for link security. In this example, ACS-1 through ACS-3 can be any server names and cts-radius is the Cisco TrustSec server.

**Seed Device Configuration:**

```
Switch(config)# aaa new-model
Switch(config)# radius server ACS-1
Switch(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.5.120.12 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Switch(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco123
Switch(config-radius-server)# exit
Switch(config)# radius server ACS-2
Switch(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.5.120.14 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Switch(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco123
Switch(config-radius-server)# exit
Switch(config)# radius server ACS-3
Switch(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.5.120.15 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Switch(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco123
Switch(config-radius-server)# exit
Switch(config)# aaa group server radius cts-radius
Switch(config-sg-radius)# server name ACS-1
Switch(config-sg-radius)# server name ACS-2
Switch(config-sg-radius)# server name ACS-3
Switch(config-sg-radius)# exit
```
**Examples : Cisco TrustSec Switch-to-Switch Link Security**

```
Switch(config)#aaa authentication login default none
Switch(config)#aaa authentication dot1x default group cts-radius
Switch(config)#aaa authorization network cts-radius group cts-radius
Switch(config)#aaa session-id common
Switch(config)#cts authorization list cts-radius
Switch(config)#dot1x system-auth-control
Switch(config)#interface gi1/1/2
Switch(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
Switch(config-if)#cts dot1x
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#sap mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#exit
Switch(config-if)#exit
Switch(config)#interface gi1/1/4
Switch(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
Switch(config-if)#cts manual
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#sap pmk 033445AABBCCDDEEFF mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#no propagate sgt
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#exit
Switch(config-if)#exit
Switch(config)#radius-server vsa send authentication
Switch(config)#end
Switch(config)#cts credentials id cts-36 password trustsec123

Non-Seed Device:

Switch(config)#aaa new-model
Switch(config)#aaa session-id common
Switch(config)#dot1x system-auth-control
Switch(config)#interface gi1/1/2
Switch(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
Switch(config-if)#shutdown
Switch(config-if)#cts dot1x
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#sap mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#exit
Switch(config-if)#exit
Switch(config)#interface gi1/1/4
Switch(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
Switch(config-if)#shutdown
Switch(config-if)#cts manual
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#sap pmk 033445AABBCCDDEEFF mode-list gcm-encrypt gmac
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#no propagate sgt
Switch(config-if-cts-dot1x)#exit
Switch(config-if)#exit
Switch(config)#radius-server vsa send authentication
Switch(config)#end
Switch(config)#cts credentials id cts-72 password trustsec123
```

This example shows how to configure Cisco TrustSec authentication in manual mode on an interface:
Example: Displaying MKA Statistics

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions` command.

```
Device# show mka sessions

Total MKA Sessions....... 1
  Secured Sessions... 1
  Pending Sessions... 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Key-Server</th>
<th>Port-ID</th>
<th>Peer-RxSCI</th>
<th>MACsec-Peers</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>CKN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>204c.9e85.e6e4/002b p2</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>43 c800.8459.e764/002a 1</td>
<td>Secured</td>
<td>0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions interface interface-name` command.

```
Device# show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1

Summary of All Currently Active MKA Sessions on Interface GigabitEthernet1/0/1...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Key-Server</th>
<th>Port-ID</th>
<th>Peer-RxSCI</th>
<th>MACsec-Peers</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>CKN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>204c.9e85.e6e4/002b p2</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>43 c800.8459.e764/002a 1</td>
<td>Secured</td>
<td>0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions interface interface-name detail` command.

```
Device# show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 detail

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
====================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............ 204c.9e85.e6e4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.e6e4
Example: Displaying MKA Statistics

MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID........
CAK Name (CKN)...........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89567
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............ 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)........ D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status............ FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN.............. 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time.......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name.......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility........ 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite........ 0080C20001000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired.......... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers............ 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D0D77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89555</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Dormant Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The following is sample output from the show mka sessions details command:

Device# show mka sessions details
MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID..........
CAK Name (CKN).......... 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89572
EAP Role................... NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status....... Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............ 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)....... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status........... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time.......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name.......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility........ 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite.......... 0080C20010000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers......... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89560</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Dormant Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The following is sample output from the `show mka policy` command:

```
Device# show mka policy

MKA Policy Summary...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy Interfaces Name</th>
<th>Policy Name</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Protect</th>
<th>Protect</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Cipher Suite(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>DEFAULT POLICY</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GCM-AES-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GCM-AES-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GCM-AES-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka policy policy-name` command:

```
Device# show mka policy p2

MKA Policy Summary...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy Interfaces Name</th>
<th>Policy Name</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Protect</th>
<th>Protect</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Cipher Suite(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GCM-AES-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka policy policy-name detail` command:

```
Device# show mka policy p2 detail

MKA Policy Configuration ("p2")
=================================
MKA Policy Name........ p2
Key Server Priority.... 2
Confidentiality Offset. 0
Send Secure Announcement..DISABLED
Cipher Suite(s)........ GCM-AES-128

Applied Interfaces...
  GigabitEthernet1/0/1
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka statistics interface interface-name` command:

```
Device# show mka statistics interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```
MKA Statistics for Session
===================================
Reauthentication Attempts.. 0

CA Statistics
   Pairwise CAKs Derived... 0
   Pairwise CAK Rekeys..... 0
   Group CAKs Generated.... 0
   Group CAKs Received..... 0

SA Statistics
   SAKs Generated........... 1
   SAKs Rekeyed............. 0
   SAKs Received........... 0
   SAK Responses Received.. 1

MKPDU Statistics
   MKPDUs Validated & Rx... 89585
     "Distributed SAK".. 0
     "Distributed CAK".. 0
   MKPDUs Transmitted...... 89596
     "Distributed SAK".. 1
     "Distributed CAK".. 0

The following is sample output from the show mka summary command:

Device# show mka summary

Total MKA Sessions....... 1
 Secured Sessions... 1
 Pending Sessions... 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Key-Server</th>
<th>Port-ID</th>
<th>Peer-RxSCI</th>
<th>MACsec-Peers</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>CKN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>204c.9e85.ede4/002b p2</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a 1</td>
<td>Secured</td>
<td>0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MKA Global Statistics
===================================
MKA Session Totals
   Secured.................... 1
   Reauthentication Attempts.. 0

   Deleted (Secured)......... 0
   Keepalive Timeouts........ 0
Example: Displaying MKA Statistics

CA Statistics
    Pairwise CAKs Derived...... 0
    Pairwise CAK Rekeys........ 0
    Group CAKs Generated....... 0
    Group CAKs Received....... 0

SA Statistics
    SAKs Generated............. 1
    SAKs Rekeyed............... 0
    SAKs Received............... 0
    SAK Responses Received..... 1

MKPDU Statistics
    MKPDUs Validated & Rx...... 89589
        "Distributed SAK"...... 0
        "Distributed CAK"..... 0
    MKPDUs Transmitted......... 89600
        "Distributed SAK"..... 1
        "Distributed CAK"..... 0

MKA Error Counter Totals
========================
Session Failures
    Bring-up Failures............ 0
    Reauthentication Failures.... 0
    Duplicate Auth-Mgr Handle.... 0

SAK Failures
    SAK Generation............... 0
    Hash Key Generation.......... 0
    SAK Encryption/Wrap.......... 0
    SAK Decryption/Unwrap........ 0
    SAK Cipher Mismatch.......... 0

CA Failures
    Group CAK Generation......... 0
    Group CAK Encryption/Wrap.... 0
    Group CAK Decryption/Unwrap.. 0
    Pairwise CAK Derivation....... 0
    CKN Derivation............... 0
    ICK Derivation............... 0
    KEK Derivation............... 0
    Invalid Peer MACsec Capability... 0

MACsec Failures
    Rx SC Creation............... 0
    Tx SC Creation............... 0
    Rx SA Installation........... 0
    Tx SA Installation........... 0

MKPDU Failures

MACsec Encryption
MACsec Encryption

Example: Displaying MKA Statistics

MKPDU Tx......................... 0
MKPDU Rx Validation.............. 0
MKPDU Rx Bad Peer MN............. 0
MKPDU Rx Non-recent Peerlist MN.. 0
Example: Displaying MKA Statistics
CHAPTER 15

Configuring Secure Shell

The Secure Shell (SSH) feature is an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement to the Berkeley r-tools. The protocol secures sessions using standard cryptographic mechanisms, and the application can be used similarly to the Berkeley rexec and rsh tools. Two versions of SSH are available: SSH Version 1 and SSH Version 2. Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only. For information about SSH Version 2, see the “Secure Shell Version 2 Support” feature module.

- Prerequisites for Configuring SSH, on page 275
- Restrictions for Configuring SSH, on page 276
- Information About Secure Shell (SSH), on page 276
- How to Configure SSH, on page 277
- Configuration Examples for SSH, on page 279
- Additional References, on page 280
- Feature Information for Configuring Secure Shell, on page 281

Prerequisites for Configuring SSH

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

- Download the required image on the device. The Secure Shell (SSH) server requires an IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image; the SSH client requires an IPsec (DES or 3DES) encryption software image.) For information about downloading a software image, see the Loading and Managing System Images Configuration Guide.

- Configure a hostname and host domain for your device by using the hostname and ip domain-name commands in global configuration mode.

- Generate a Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) key pair for your device. This key pair automatically enables SSH and remote authentication when the crypto key generate rsa command is entered in global configuration mode.

Note

To delete the RSA key pair, use the crypto key zeroize rsa global configuration command. Once you delete the RSA key pair, you automatically disable the SSH server.
• Configure user authentication for local or remote access. You can configure authentication with or without authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA). For more information, see the Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Configuration Guide.

Restrictions for Configuring SSH

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

• The Secure Shell (SSH) server and SSH client are supported on Data Encryption Standard (DES) (56-bit) and 3DES (168-bit) data encryption software images only. In DES software images, DES is the only encryption algorithm available. In 3DES software images, both DES and 3DES encryption algorithms are available.

• Execution shell is the only application supported.

• The login banner is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1. It is supported in Secure Shell Version 2.

Information About Secure Shell (SSH)

SSH Server

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

The Secure Shell (SSH) Server feature enables an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco device. This connection provides functionality that is similar to that of an inbound Telnet connection. Before SSH, security was limited to Telnet security. SSH allows a strong encryption to be used with the Cisco software authentication. The SSH server in Cisco software works with publicly and commercially available SSH clients.

SSH Integrated Client

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

The Secure Shell (SSH) Integrated Client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides functionality similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for secure communication over an unsecured network.
The SSH client in Cisco software works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of Data Encryption Standard (DES), 3DES, and password authentication. User authentication is performed like that in the Telnet session to the device. The user authentication mechanisms supported for SSH are RADIUS, TACACS+, and the use of locally stored usernames and passwords.

**Note**
The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

### RSA Authentication Support

Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) authentication available in Secure Shell (SSH) clients is not supported on the SSH server for Cisco software by default. For more information about RSA authentication support, see the “Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using RSA Pairs” section of the “Secure Shell Version 2 Support” module.

### How to Configure SSH

#### Configuring an SSH Server

**Note**
Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip ssh {time-out seconds | authentication-retries integer}
4. ip ssh rekey {time time | volume volume}
5. exit
6. show ip ssh

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Secure Shell

**Purpose**
Configures Secure Shell (SSH) control parameters.

**Command or Action**
```
ip ssh {time-out seconds | authentication-retries integer}
```

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# ip ssh time-out 30
```

**Note**
This command can also be used to establish the number of password prompts provided to the user. The number is the lower of the following two values:

- Value proposed by the client using the `ssh -o numberofpasswordprompt` command.
- Value configured on the device using the `ip ssh authentication-retries integer` command, plus one.

**Step 4**
```
ip ssh rekey {time time | volume volume}
```

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# ip ssh rekey time 108
```

**Step 5**
```
exit
```

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# exit
```

**Step 6**
```
show ip ssh
```

**Example:**
```
Device# show ip ssh
```

### Invoking an SSH Client

**Note**
Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

Perform this task to invoke the Secure Shell (SSH) client. The SSH client runs in user EXEC mode and has no specific configuration tasks.

**SUMMARY STEPS**
1. `enable`
2. `ssh -l username -vrf vrf-name ip-address`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  * enable* | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  * Enter your password if prompted.* |
Step 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>Invokes the SSH client to connect to an IP host or address in the specified virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
Device# ssh -l user1 -vrf vrf1 192.0.2.1
```

---

### Configuration Examples for SSH

#### Example: Configuring an SSH Server

- **Note**
  - Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.
  - The following is an example of the Secure Shell (SSH) control parameters configured for the server. In this example, the timeout interval of 30 seconds has been specified. This timeout interval is used during the SSH negotiation phase.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh timeout 30
Device(config)# end
```

#### Example: Invoking an SSH Client

- **Note**
  - Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.
  - In the following example, the Secure Shell (SSH) client has been invoked to connect to IP address 192.0.2.1 in the specified virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ssh -l user1 -vrf vrf1 192.0.2.1
Device(config)# end
```

#### Example: Verifying SSH

- **Note**
  - Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.
To verify that the Secure Shell (SSH) server is enabled and to display the version and configuration data for your SSH connection, use the `show ip ssh` command. The following example shows that SSH is enabled:

```markdown
Device# show ip ssh
SSH Enabled - version 1.5
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3
```

The following example shows that SSH is disabled:

```markdown
Device# show ip ssh
%SSH has not been enabled
```

To verify the status of your SSH server connections, use the `show ssh` command. The following example shows the SSH server connections on the device when SSH is enabled:

```markdown
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Encryption State Username
0 1.5 3DES Session Started guest
```

The following example shows that SSH is disabled:

```markdown
Device# show ssh
%No SSH server connections running.
```

### Additional References

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA)</td>
<td>Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPsec</td>
<td>“IPsec and Quality of Service” module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH Version 2</td>
<td>“Secure Shell Version 2 Support” module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloading a software image</td>
<td>Loading and Managing System Images Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature Information for Configuring Secure Shell

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 42: Feature Information for Configuring Secure Shell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Shell</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The Secure Shell (SSH) feature is an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement to the Berkeley r-tools. The protocol secures sessions using standard cryptographic mechanisms, and the application can be used similarly to the Berkeley rexec and rsh tools. This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 16

Secure Shell Version 2 Support

The Secure Shell Version 2 Support feature allows you to configure Secure Shell (SSH) Version 2. (SSH Version 1 support was implemented in an earlier Cisco software release.) SSH runs on top of a reliable transport layer and provides strong authentication and encryption capabilities. The only reliable transport that is defined for SSH is TCP. SSH provides a means to securely access and securely execute commands on another computer over a network. The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature that is provided with SSH allows for the secure transfer of files.

- Prerequisites for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 283
- Restrictions for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 284
- Information About Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 284
- How to Configure Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 287
- Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 301
- Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 306
- Feature Information for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 307

Prerequisites for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

- Before configuring SSH, ensure that the required image is loaded on your device. The SSH server requires you to have a k9 (Triple Data Encryption Standard [3DES]) software image depending on your release.
- You have to use a SSH remote device that supports SSH Version 2 and connect to a Cisco device.
- SCP relies on authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) to function correctly. Therefore, AAA must be configured on the device to enable the secure copy protocol on the SSH Server.

Note

The SSH Version 2 server and the SSH Version 2 client are supported on your Cisco software, depending on your release. (The SSH client runs both the SSH Version 1 protocol and the SSH Version 2 protocol. The SSH client is supported in both k8 and k9 images depending on your release.)

For more information about downloading a software image, refer to the Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide.
Restrictions for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

- Secure Shell (SSH) servers and SSH clients are supported in Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) software images.
- Execution Shell, remote command execution, and Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) are the only applications supported.
- Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) key generation is an SSH server-side requirement. Devices that act as SSH clients need not generate RSA keys.
- The RSA key pair size must be greater than or equal to 768 bits.
- The following features are not supported:
  - Port forwarding
  - Compression

Information About Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Secure Shell Version 2


The configuration for the SSH Version 2 server is similar to the configuration for SSH Version 1. The `ip ssh version` command defines the SSH version to be configured. If you do not configure this command, SSH by default runs in compatibility mode; that is, both SSH Version 1 and SSH Version 2 connections are honored.

Note

SSH Version 1 is a protocol that has never been defined in a standard. If you do not want your device to fall back to the undefined protocol (Version 1), you should use the `ip ssh version` command and specify Version 2.

The `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command enables an SSH connection using the Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) keys that you have configured. Previously, SSH was linked to the first RSA keys that were generated (that is, SSH was enabled when the first RSA key pair was generated). This behavior still exists, but by using the `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command, you can overcome this behavior. If you configure the `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command with a key pair name, SSH is enabled if the key pair exists or SSH will be enabled if the key pair is generated later. If you use this command to enable SSH, you are not forced to configure a hostname and a domain name, which was required in SSH Version 1 of the Cisco software.

Note

The login banner is supported in SSH Version 2, but it is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1.
Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements

The SSH Version 2 Enhancements feature includes a number of additional capabilities such as supporting Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF)-Aware SSH, SSH debug enhancements, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) group exchange support.

The VRF-Aware SSH feature is supported depending on your release.

The Cisco SSH implementation has traditionally used 768-bit modulus, but with an increasing need for higher key sizes to accommodate DH Group 14 (2048 bits) and Group 16 (4096 bits) cryptographic applications, a message exchange between the client and the server to establish the favored DH group becomes necessary. The `ip ssh dh min size` command configures the modulus size on the SSH server. In addition to this, the `ssh` command was extended to add VRF awareness to the SSH client-side functionality through which the VRF instance name in the client is provided with the IP address to look up the correct routing table and establish a connection.

Debugging was enhanced by modifying SSH debug commands. The `debug ip ssh` command was extended to simplify the debugging process. Before the simplification of the debugging process, this command printed all debug messages related to SSH regardless of what was specifically required. The behavior still exists, but if you configure the `debug ip ssh` command with a keyword, messages are limited to information specified by the keyword.

Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements for RSA Keys

Cisco SSH Version 2 supports keyboard-interactive and password-based authentication methods. The SSH Version 2 Enhancements for RSA Keys feature also supports RSA-based public key authentication for the client and the server.

User authentication—RSA-based user authentication uses a private/public key pair associated with each user for authentication. The user must generate a private/public key pair on the client and configure a public key on the Cisco SSH server to complete the authentication.

An SSH user trying to establish credentials provides an encrypted signature using the private key. The signature and the user’s public key are sent to the SSH server for authentication. The SSH server computes a hash over the public key provided by the user. The hash is used to determine if the server has a matching entry. If a match is found, an RSA-based message verification is performed using the public key. Hence, the user is authenticated or denied access based on the encrypted signature.

Server authentication—While establishing an SSH session, the Cisco SSH client authenticates the SSH server by using the server host keys available during the key exchange phase. SSH server keys are used to identify the SSH server. These keys are created at the time of enabling SSH and must be configured on the client.

For server authentication, the Cisco SSH client must assign a host key for each server. When the client tries to establish an SSH session with a server, the client receives the signature of the server as part of the key exchange message. If the strict host key checking flag is enabled on the client, the client checks if it has the host key entry corresponding to the server. If a match is found, the client tries to validate the signature by using the server host key. If the server is successfully authenticated, the session establishment continues; otherwise, it is terminated and displays a “Server Authentication Failed” message.
Storing public keys on a server uses memory; therefore, the number of public keys configurable on an SSH server is restricted to ten users, with a maximum of two public keys per user.

Note

RSA-based user authentication is supported by the Cisco server, but Cisco clients cannot propose public key as an authentication method. If the Cisco server receives a request from an open SSH client for RSA-based authentication, the server accepts the authentication request.

Note

For server authentication, configure the RSA public key of the server manually and configure the `ip ssh stricthostkeycheck` command on the Cisco SSH client.

SNMP Trap Generation

Depending on your release, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps are generated automatically when an SSH session terminates if the traps have been enabled and SNMP debugging has been enabled. For information about enabling SNMP traps, see the “Configuring SNMP Support” module in the SNMP Configuration Guide.

Note

When you configure the `snmp-server host` command, the IP address must be the address of the PC that has the SSH (telnet) client and that has IP connectivity to the SSH server.

You must also enable SNMP debugging using the `debug snmp packet` command to display the traps. The trap information includes information such as the number of bytes sent and the protocol that was used for the SSH session.

SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication

The SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication feature, also known as Generic Message Authentication for SSH, is a method that can be used to implement different types of authentication mechanisms. Basically, any currently supported authentication method that requires only user input can be performed with this feature. The feature is automatically enabled.

The following methods are supported:

- Password
- SecurID and hardware tokens printing a number or a string in response to a challenge sent by the server
- Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM)
- S/KEY (and other One-Time-Pads)
How to Configure Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using a Hostname and Domain Name

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. hostname name
4. ip domain-name name
5. crypto key generate rsa
6. ip ssh [time-out seconds | authentication-retries integer]
7. ip ssh version [1 | 2]
8. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> hostname name</td>
<td>Configures a hostname for your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# hostname cisco7200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip domain-name name</td>
<td>Configures a domain name for your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> cisco7200(config)# ip domain-name example.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> cisco7200(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ip ssh [time-out seconds</td>
<td>authentication-retries integer]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Secure Shell Version 2 Support

### Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using RSA Key Pairs

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip ssh rsa keypair-name keypair-name`
4. `crypto key generate rsa usage-keys label key-label modulus modulus-size`
5. `ip ssh [time-out seconds | authentication-retries integer]`
6. `ip ssh version 2`
7. `exit`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip ssh rsa keypair-name keypair-name</td>
<td>Specifies the RSA key pair to be used for SSH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# ip ssh rsa keypair-name sshkeys</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> A Cisco device can have many RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> crypto key generate rsa usage-keys label key-label modulus modulus-size</td>
<td>Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa usage-keys label sshkeys modulus 768
```

**Purpose**
- For SSH Version 2, the modulus size must be at least 768 bits.

**Note** To delete the RSA key pair, use the `crypto key zeroize rsa` command. When you delete the RSA key pair, you automatically disable the SSH server.

### Step 5

**ip ssh [time-out seconds | authentication-retries integer]**

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# ip ssh time-out 12
```

**Purpose**
- Configures SSH control variables on your device.

### Step 6

**ip ssh version 2**

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# ip ssh version 2
```

**Purpose**
- Specifies the version of SSH to be run on the device.

### Step 7

**exit**

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# exit
```

**Purpose**
- Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

---

# Configuring the Cisco SSH Server to Perform RSA-Based User Authentication

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. hostname name
4. ip domain-name name
5. crypto key generate rsa
6. ip ssh pubkey-chain
7. username username
8. key-string
9. key-hash key-type key-name
10. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>hostname name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the hostname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# hostname host1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>ip domain-name name</code></td>
<td>Defines a default domain name that the Cisco software uses to complete unqualified hostnames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(config)# ip domain-name name1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>crypto key generate rsa</code></td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(config)# crypto key generate rsa</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>ip ssh pubkey-chain</code></td>
<td>Configures SSH-RSA keys for user and server authentication on the SSH server and enters public-key configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(config)# ip ssh pubkey-chain</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>• The user authentication is successful if the RSA public key stored on the server is verified with the public or the private key pair stored on the client.</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>username username</code></td>
<td>Configures the SSH username and enters public-key user configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey)# username user1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><code>key-string</code></td>
<td>Specifies the RSA public key of the remote peer and enters public-key data configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-user)# key-string</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> You can obtain the public key value from an open SSH client; that is, from the <code>.ssh/id_rsa.pub</code> file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><code>key-hash key-type key-name</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the SSH key type and version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# key-hash ssh-rsa key1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>• The key type must be ssh-rsa for the configuration of private public key pairs.</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>• This step is optional only if the key-string command is configured.</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>• You must configure either the key-string command or the key-hash command.</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose

You can use a hashing software to compute the hash of the public key string, or you can also copy the hash value from another Cisco device. Entering the public key data using the `key-string` command is the preferred way to enter the public key data for the first time.

Note

Exits public-key data configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

• Use `no hostname` command to return to the default host.

**Example:**

Step 10

```
end
```

**Example:**

```
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# end
```

---

### Configuring the Cisco IOS SSH Client to Perform RSA-Based Server Authentication

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `hostname name`
4. `ip domain-name name`
5. `crypto key generate rsa`
6. `ip ssh pubkey-chain`
7. `server server-name`
8. `key-string`
9. `exit`
10. `key-hash key-type key-name`
11. `end`
12. `configure terminal`
13. `ip ssh stricthostkeycheck`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> hostname name</td>
<td>Specifies the hostname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# hostname host1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip domain-name name</td>
<td>Defines a default domain name that the Cisco software uses to complete unqualified hostnames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(config)# ip domain-name name1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ip ssh pubkey-chain</td>
<td>Configures SSH-RSA keys for user and server authentication on the SSH server and enters public-key configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(config)# ip ssh pubkey-chain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> server server-name</td>
<td>Enables the SSH server for public-key authentication on the device and enters public-key server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey)# server server1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> key-string</td>
<td>Specifies the RSA public-key of the remote peer and enters public key data configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# key-string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits public-key data configuration mode and enters public-key server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> key-hash key-type key-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the SSH key type and version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# key-hash ssh-rsa key1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device

#### Step 11

**Command or Action:** `end`

**Example:**

```bash
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# end
```

**Purpose:** Exits public-key server configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

#### Step 12

**Command or Action:** `configure terminal`

**Example:**

```bash
host1# configure terminal
```

**Purpose:** Enters global configuration mode.

#### Step 13

**Command or Action:** `ip ssh stricthostkeycheck`

**Example:**

```bash
host1(config)# ip ssh stricthostkeycheck
```

**Purpose:** Ensures that server authentication takes place.

- The connection is terminated in case of a failure.
- Use `no hostname` command to return to the default host.

---

### Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device

#### Note

The device with which you want to connect must support a Secure Shell (SSH) server that has an encryption algorithm that is supported in Cisco software. Also, you need not enable your device. SSH can be run in disabled mode.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `ssh [-v {1 | 2}] [-c {aes128-ctr | aes192-ctr | aes256-ctr | aes128-cbc | 3des | aes192-cbc | aes256-cbc}]
   | -l user-id | -l user-id:vrf-name number ip-address ip-address | -l user-id:rotary number ip-address
   | -m {hmac-md5-128 | hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-160 | hmac-sha1-96} | -o numberofpasswordprompts n | -p port-num] {ip-addr | hostname} [command | -vrf]

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** `ssh [-v {1 | 2}] [-c {aes128-ctr | aes192-ctr | aes256-ctr | aes128-cbc | 3des | aes192-cbc | aes256-cbc}]
   | -l user-id | -l user-id:vrf-name number ip-address ip-address | -l user-id:rotary number ip-address | -m {hmac-md5-128 | hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-160 | hmac-sha1-96} | -o numberofpasswordprompts n | -p port-num] {ip-addr | hostname} [command | -vrf]` | Starts an encrypted session with a remote networking device. |
Enabling Secure Copy Protocol on the SSH Server

Note

The following task configures the server-side functionality for SCP. This task shows a typical configuration that allows the device to securely copy files from a remote workstation.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa authentication login default local
5. aaa authorization exec default local
6. username name privilege privilege-level password password
7. ip ssh time-out seconds
8. ip ssh authentication-retries integer
9. ip scp server enable
10. exit
11. debug ip scp

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Sets AAA authentication at login to use the local username database for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authentication login default local</td>
<td>Sets the parameters that restrict user access to a network, runs the authorization to determine if the user ID is allowed to run an EXEC shell, and specifies that the system must use the local database for authorization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local | |
| **Step 5** aaa authorization exec default local | Establishes a username-based authentication system, and specifies the username, privilege level, and an unencrypted password. |
| **Note** The minimum value for the privilege-level argument is 15. A privilege level of less than 15 results in the connection closing. |
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# username samplename privilege 15 password password1 | |
| **Step 6** ip ssh time-out seconds | Sets the time interval (in seconds) that the device waits for the SSH client to respond. |
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# ip ssh time-out 120 | |
| **Step 7** ip ssh authentication-retries integer | Sets the number of authentication attempts after which the interface is reset. |
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# ip ssh authentication-retries 3 | |
| **Step 8** ip scp server enable | Enables the device to securely copy files from a remote workstation. |
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# ip scp server enable | |
| **Step 9** exit | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** 
Device(config)# exit | |
| **Step 10** debug ip scp | (Optional) Provides diagnostic information about SCP authentication problems. |
| **Example:** 
Device# debug ip scp | |
Verifying the Status of the Secure Shell Connection

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. show ssh
3. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ssh</td>
<td>Displays the status of SSH server connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show ssh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits privileged EXEC mode and returns to user EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following sample output from the `show ssh` command displays status of various SSH Version 1 and Version 2 connections for Version 1 and Version 2 connections:

```
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Encryption State Username
0 1.5 3DES Session started lab
```

The following sample output from the `show ssh` command displays status of various SSH Version 1 and Version 2 connections for a Version 2 connection with no Version 1 connection:

```
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Mode Encryption Hmac State Username
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Verifying the Secure Shell Status

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. show ip ssh
3. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> show ip ssh</td>
<td>Displays the version and configuration data for SSH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show ip ssh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits privileged EXEC mode and returns to user EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for Version 1 and Version 2 connections:

```
Device# show ip ssh
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Encryption</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Username</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3DES</td>
<td>Session started</td>
<td>lab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

%No SSHv1 server connections running.
%No SSHv2 server connections running.
Device# `show ip ssh`

SSH Enabled - version 1.99
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for a Version 2 connection with no Version 1 connection:

Device# `show ip ssh`

SSH Enabled - version 2.0
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for a Version 1 connection with no Version 2 connection:

Device# `show ip ssh`

3d06h: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
SSH Enabled - version 1.5
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3

---

Monitoring and Maintaining Secure Shell Version 2

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. debug ip ssh
3. debug snmp packet

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug ip ssh</code></td>
<td>Enables debugging of SSH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>debug ip ssh</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug snmp packet</code></td>
<td>Enables debugging of every SNMP packet sent or received by the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# debug snmp packet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

The following sample output from the `debug ip ssh` command shows the connection is an SSH Version 2 connection:

```
Device# debug ip ssh

00:33:55: SSH1: starting SSH control process
00:33:55: SSH1: sent protocol version id SSH-1.99=Cisco-1.25
00:33:55: SSH1: protocol version id is - SSH-2.0-OpenSSH_2.5.2p2
00:33:55: SSH2 1: send: len 280 (includes padlen 4)
00:33:55: SSH2 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT sent
00:33:55: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 536 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: packet len 632
00:33:55: SSH2 1: partial packet 8, need 624, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 96 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2 1: partial packet 8, need 624, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: padlen 11
00:33:55: SSH2 1: received packet type 20
00:33:55: SSH2 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT received
00:33:55: SSH2: kex: client->server aes128-cbc hmac-md5 none
00:33:55: SSH2: kex: server->client aes128-cbc hmac-md5 none
00:33:55: SSH2 1: expecting SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT
00:33:55: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 144 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: packet len 144
00:33:55: SSH2 1: partial packet 8, need 136, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: padlen 5
00:33:55: SSH2 1: received packet type 30
00:33:55: SSH2 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT received
00:33:55: SSH2 1: signature length 111
00:33:55: SSH2 1: send: len 384 (includes padlen 7)
00:33:55: SSH2 1: kex_derive_keys complete
00:33:55: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 10)
00:33:55: SSH2 1: newkeys: mode 1
00:33:55: SSH2 1: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS sent
00:33:55: SSH2 1: waiting for SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS
00:33:55: SSH2 1: ssh_received: 16 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: packet len 16
00:33:55: SSH2 1: partial packet 8, need 8, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2 1: input: padlen 10
00:33:55: SSH2 1: newkeys: mode 0
00:33:55: SSH2 1: received packet type 2100:33:55: SSH2 1: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS received
00:33:56: SSH2 1: ssh_received: 48 bytes received
00:33:56: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:33:56: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:33:56: SSH2 1: MAC #3 ok
00:33:56: SSH2 1: input: padlen 10
00:33:56: SSH2 1: received packet type 5
00:33:56: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 10)
00:33:56: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #3
00:33:56: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:33:56: SSH2 1: input: packet len 48
00:33:56: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 32, maclen 16
00:33:56: SSH2 1: MAC #4 ok
00:33:56: SSH2 1: input: padlen 9
00:33:56: SSH2 1: received packet type 50
```
Secure Shell Version 2 Support

00:33:56: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 13)
00:33:56: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #4
00:34:04: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 160 bytes received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 64
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 48, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #5 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 13
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 50
00:34:04: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 10)
00:34:04: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #5
00:34:04: SSH2 1: authentication successful for lab
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 64
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 48, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #6 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 6
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 2
00:34:04: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 48
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 32, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #7 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 19
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 90
00:34:04: SSH2 1: channel open request
00:34:04: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 10)
00:34:04: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #6
00:34:04: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 192 bytes received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 64
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 48, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #8 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 13
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 98
00:34:04: SSH2 1: pty-reg request
00:34:04: SSH2 1: setting TTY - requested: height 24, width 80; set: height 24, width 80
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 96
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 80, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #9 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 11
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 98
00:34:04: SSH2 1: x11-reg request
00:34:04: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #10 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 12
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 98
00:34:04: SSH2 1: shell request
00:34:04: SSH2 1: shell message received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: starting shell for vty
00:34:04: SSH2 1: send: len 48 (includes padlen 18)
00:34:04: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #7
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #11 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:07: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #8
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #12 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:07: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #9
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #13 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:07: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #10
00:34:08: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:08: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:08: SSH2 1: MAC #14 ok
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:08: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #11
00:34:08: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:08: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:08: SSH2 1: MAC #15 ok
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:08: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 16)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #12
00:34:08: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:08: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:08: SSH2 1: MAC #16 ok
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:08: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 48 (includes padlen 18)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #13
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 6)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #14
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 6)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #15
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #16
00:34:08: SSH1: Session terminated normally

Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 1

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh version 1
ip ssh version 2

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 2

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh version 2

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Versions 1 and 2

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# no ip ssh version
Example: Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device

Device# ssh -v 2 -c aes256-cbc -m hmac-sha1-160 -l shaship 10.76.82.24

Example: Configuring Server-Side SCP

The following example shows how to configure the server-side functionality for SCP. This example also configures AAA authentication and authorization on the device. This example uses a locally defined username and password.

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default local
Device(config)# username samplename privilege 15 password password1
Device(config)# ip ssh time-out 120
Device(config)# ip ssh authentication-retries 3
Device(config)# ip scp server enable

Example: Setting an SNMP Trap

The following example shows that an SNMP trap is set. The trap notification is generated automatically when the SSH session terminates. In the example, a.b.c.d is the IP address of the SSH client. For an example of SNMP trap debug output, see the Example: SNMP Debugging, on page 304 section.

snmp-server
snmp-server host a.b.c.d public tty

Examples: SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication

Example: Enabling Client-Side Debugs

The following example shows that the client-side debugs are turned on, and the maximum number of prompts is six (three for the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method and three for the password authentication method).

Password:
Password:
Password:
Password:
Password:
Password: cisco123
Last login: Tue Dec 6 13:15:21 2005 from 10.76.248.213
user1@courier:~> exit
logout
[Connection to 10.76.248.200 closed by foreign host]
Device1# debug ip ssh client
SSH Client debugging is on
Device1# ssh -l lab 10.1.1.3
Example: Enabling ChPass with a Blank Password Change

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled, and a blank password change is accomplished using the SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication method. A TACACS+ access control server (ACS) is used as the back-end AAA server.

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3

Password: cisco
Old Password: cisco
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123

Device2> exit

[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]

Example: Enabling ChPass and Changing the Password on First Login

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled and TACACS+ ACS is used as the back-end server. The password is changed on the first login using the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method.

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3

Password: cisco
Your password has expired.
Enter a new one now.
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123

Device2> exit

[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3

Password: cisco
Example: Enabling ChPass and Expiring the Password After Three Logins

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled and TACACS+ ACS is used as the back-end AAA server. The password expires after three logins using the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method.

Device# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2> exit
[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]
Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2> exit
Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2> exit
[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]
Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Your password has expired.
Enter a new one now.
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123
Device2>

Example: SNMP Debugging

The following is sample output from the debug snmp packet command. The output provides SNMP trap information for an SSH session.

Device1# debug snmp packet
SNMP packet debugging is on
Device1# ssh -l lab 10.0.0.2
Password:
Device2# exit

[Connection to 10.0.0.2 closed by foreign host]

Device1#

*Jul 18 10:18:42.619: SNMP: Queuing packet to 10.0.0.2
*Jul 18 10:18:42.619: SNMP: V1 Trap, ent cisco, addr 10.0.0.1, gentrap 6, spectrap 1
local.9.3.1.1.2.1 = 6
tcpConnEntry.1.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 4
ltcpConnEntry.5.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1015
ltcpConnEntry.1.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1056
ltcpConnEntry.2.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1392
local.9.2.1.18.2 - lab
*Jul 18 10:18:42.879: SNMP: Packet sent via UDP to 10.0.0.2

Device1#

**Examples: SSH Debugging Enhancements**

The following is sample output from the `debug ip ssh detail` command. The output provides debugging information about the SSH protocol and channel requests.

Device# debug ip ssh detail

00:04:22: SSH0: starting SSH control process
00:04:22: SSH0: sent protocol version id SSH-1.99-Cisco-1.25
00:04:22: SSH0: protocol version id is - SSH-1.99-Cisco-1.25
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT sent
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT received
00:04:22: SSH2 0: expecting SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT received
00:04:22: SSH2 0: kex_derive_keys complete
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS sent
00:04:22: SSH2 0: waiting for SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS received
00:04:24: SSH2 0: authentication successful for lab
00:04:24: SSH2 0: channel open request
00:04:24: SSH2 0: pty-reg request
00:04:24: SSH2 0: setting TTY - requested: height 24, width 80; set: height 24, width 80
00:04:24: SSH2 0: shell request
00:04:24: SSH2 0: shell message received
00:04:24: SSH2 0: starting shell for vty
00:04:38: SSH0: Session terminated normally

The following is sample output from the `debug ip ssh packet` command. The output provides debugging information about the SSH packet.

Device# debug ip ssh packet

00:05:43: SSH2 0: send:packet of length 280 (length also includes padlen of 4)
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: total packet length of 280 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size)8 bytes, needed 272 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size)8 bytes, needed 272 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size)8 bytes, needed 272 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size)8 bytes, needed 272 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 24 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 272 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: padlength 4 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: total packet length of 144 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 136 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 136 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 16 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 136 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 136 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: padlength 6 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: signature length 143
00:05:43: SSH2 0: send: packet of length 448 (length also includes padlen of 7)
00:05:43: SSH2 0: send: packet of length 16 (length also includes padlen of 10)
00:05:43: SSH2 0: newkeys: mode 1
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 16 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: total packet length of 16 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 8 bytes, needed 8 bytes, maclen 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: padlength 10 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: newkeys: mode 0
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 52 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: total packet length of 32 bytes
00:05:43: SSH2 0: partial packet length(block size) 16 bytes, needed 16 bytes, maclen 20
00:05:43: SSH2 0: MAC compared for #3: ok

Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Security Configuration Guide: Securing User Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostname and host domain configuration tasks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure shell configuration tasks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloading a software image</td>
<td>Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration fundamentals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPsec configuration tasks</td>
<td>Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP traps configuration tasks</td>
<td>SNMP Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IETF Secure Shell Version 2 Draft Standards</td>
<td>Internet Engineering Task Force website</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 43: Feature Information for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Shell Version 2 Support</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
<td>The Secure Shell Version 2 Support feature allows you to configure Secure Shell (SSH) Version 2 (SSH Version 1 support was implemented in an earlier Cisco IOS software release). SSH runs on top of a reliable transport layer and provides strong authentication and encryption capabilities. SSH version 2 also supports AES counter-based encryption mode. This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SSH Support Over IPv6

Secure Shell (SSH) provides support for IPv6 addresses that enable a Cisco device to accept and establish secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.

- Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 309
- Information About SSH Support over IPv6, on page 309
- How to Enable SSH Support over IPv6, on page 310
- Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 311
- Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 311
- Feature Information for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 312

Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6

- An IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image is loaded on your device. IPv6 transport for the SSH server and SSH client requires an IPsec encryption software image.
- A hostname and host domain are configured for your device.
- A Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair, which automatically enables SSH, is generated for your device.
- A user authentication mechanism for local or remote access is configured on your device.
- To authenticate SSH clients, configure TACACS+ or RADIUS over an IPv4 transport and then connect to an SSH server over an IPv6 transport.

The basic restrictions for SSH over an IPv4 transport apply to SSH over an IPv6 transport. The use of locally stored usernames and passwords is the only user authentication mechanism supported by SSH over an IPv6 transport. TACACS+ and RADIUS user authentication mechanisms are not supported over an IPv6 transport.

Information About SSH Support over IPv6

SSH over an IPv6 Transport

Secure shell (SSH) SSH in IPv6 functions the same and offers the same benefits as SSH in IPv4. The SSH server feature enables an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco device, and the SSH
How to Enable SSH Support over IPv6

Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device

This task is optional. If you do not configure SSH parameters, then the default values will be used.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip ssh [timeout seconds | authentication-retries integer]
4. exit
5. ssh [-v {1 | 2} | c {3des | aes128-cbc | aes192-cbc | aes256-cbc} | -l userid | -l userid:vrfname number ip-address ip-address | -l userid:rotary number ip-address | -m {hmac-md5 | hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1 | hmac-sha1-96} | -o numberofpasswordprompts n | -p port-num] {ip-addr | hostname} [command | -vrf]

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip ssh [timeout seconds</td>
<td>authentication-retries integer]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# IP ssh timeout 100 authentication-retries 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6

Example: Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device

```bash
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh
Device(config)# exit
Device# ssh -l userid1 2001:db8:2222:1044::72
```

Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFCs for IPv6</td>
<td>IPv6 RFCs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for SSH Support over IPv6

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSH Support over IPv6</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>SSH provides support for IPv6 addresses that enable a Cisco device to accept and establish secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature uses the X.509v3 digital certificates in server and user authentication at the secure shell (SSH) server side.

This module describes how to configure server and user certificate profiles for a digital certificate.

Prerequisites for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

- The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature introduces the `ip ssh server algorithm authentication` command to replace the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command. If you use the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command, the following deprecation message is displayed.

  Warning: SSH command accepted but this CLI will be deprecated soon. Please move to new CLI “ip ssh server algorithm authentication”. Please configure “default ip ssh server authenticate user” to make CLI ineffective.

  - Use the `default ip ssh server authenticate user` command to remove the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command from effect. The IOS secure shell (SSH) server then starts using the `ip ssh server algorithm authentication` command.

Restrictions for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

- The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature implementation is applicable only on the IOS secure shell (SSH) server side.

- IOS SSH server supports only the x509v3-ssh-rsa algorithm based certificate for server and user authentication on the IOS SSH server side.
Information About X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides information about digital certificates, and server and user authentication.

Digital Certificates

The validity of the authentication depends upon the strength of the linkage between the public signing key and the identity of the signer. Digital certificates in the X.509v3 format (RFC5280) are used to provide identity management. A chain of signatures by a trusted root certification authority and its intermediate certificate authorities binds a given public signing key to a given digital identity.

Public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint helps manage the digital certificates. The association between the certificate and the trustpoint helps track the certificate. The trustpoint contains information about the certificate authority (CA), different identity parameters, and the digital certificate. Multiple trustpoints can be created to associate with different certificates.

Server and User Authentication using X.509v3

For server authentication, the IOS secure shell (SSH) server sends its own certificate to the SSH client for verification. This server certificate is associated with the trustpoint configured in the server certificate profile (ssh-server-cert-profile-server configuration mode).

For user authentication, the SSH client sends the user's certificate to the IOS SSH server for verification. The SSH server validates the incoming user certificate using public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoints configured in the server certificate profile (ssh-server-cert-profile-user configuration mode).

By default, certificate-based authentication is enabled for server and user at the IOS SSH server end.

How to Configure X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides information about how to configure X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication.

Configuring IOS SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication

To configure IOS SSH server to use digital certificates for server authentication, perform this procedure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring IOS SSH Server to Verify User's Digital Certificate for User Authentication

To configure IOS SSH Server to use digital certificates for user authentication, perform this procedure:

**Command or Action**

| Device# configure terminal |

**Purpose**

Defines the order of host key algorithms. Only the configured algorithm is negotiated with the secure shell (SSH) client.

**Note**

The IOS SSH server must have at least one configured host key algorithm:

- ssh-rsa – public key based authentication
- x509v3-ssh-rsa – certificate-based authentication

**Step 3**

**ip ssh server algorithm hostkey {x509v3-ssh-rsa [ssh-rsa] | ssh-rsa [x509v3-ssh-rsa]}
Example:**

Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm hostkey x509v3-ssh-rsa

**Step 4**

**ip ssh server certificate profile**

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile

**Step 5**

**server**

**Example:**

Device(ssh-server-cert-profile)# server

**Step 6**

**trustpoint sign PKI-trustpoint-name**

**Example:**

Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-server)# trustpoint sign trust1

**Step 7**

**ocsp-response include**

**Example:**

Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-server)# ocsp-response include

(Optional) Sends the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) response or OCSP stapling along with the server certificate.

**Note**

By default the “no” form of this command is configured and no OCSP response is sent along with the server certificate.

**Step 8**

**end**

**Example:**

Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-server)# end

Exits SSH server certificate profile server configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.
## X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

### Configuring IOS SSH Server to Verify User’s Digital Certificate for User Authentication

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip ssh server algorithm authentication {publickey</td>
<td>keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm authentication publickey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The IOS SSH server must have at least one configured user authentication algorithm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> To use the certificate method for user authentication, the publickey keyword must be configured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The ip ssh server algorithm authentication command replaces the ip ssh server authenticate user command.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip ssh server algorithm publickey {x509v3-ssh-rsa [ssh-rsa]</td>
<td>ssh-rsa [x509v3-ssh-rsa]}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm publickey x509v3-ssh-rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The IOS SSH client must have at least one configured public key algorithm:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ssh-rsa – public-key-based authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• x509v3-ssh-rsa – certificate-based authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> ip ssh server certificate profile</td>
<td>Configures server certificate profile and user certificate profile and enters SSH certificate profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> user</td>
<td>Configures user certificate profile and enters SSH server certificate profile user configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ssh-server-cert-profile)# user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> trustpoint verify PKI-trustpoint-name</td>
<td>Configures the public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint that is used to verify the incoming user certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# trustpoint verify trust2</td>
<td>Configure multiple trustpoints by executing the same command multiple times. A maximum of 10 trustpoints can be configured.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 8**

**ocsp-response required**

**Example:**
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# ocsp-response required

(Optional) Mandates the presence of the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) response with the incoming user certificate.

**Note**
By default the “no” form of this command is configured and the user certificate is accepted without an OCSP response.

**Step 9**

**end**

**Example:**
Devicessh-server-cert-profile-user)# end

Exits SSH server certificate profile user configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

---

**Verifying Configuration for Server and User Authentication Using Digital Certificates**

To verify configuration for server and user Authentication using digital certificates, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** show ip ssh | Displays the currently configured authentication methods. To confirm the use of certificate-based authentication, ensure that the x509v3-ssh-rsa algorithm is the configured host key algorithm. |
| **Example:** Device# show ip ssh | |
| | SSH Enabled - version 1.99 |
| | Authentication methods:publickey,keyboard-interactive,password |
| | Authentication Publickey Algorithms:x509v3-ssh-rsa,ssh-rsa |
| | Hostkey Algorithms:x509v3-ssh-rsa,ssh-rsa |
| | Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3 |
| | Minimum expected Diffie Hellman key size : 1024 bits |
Configuration Examples for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides examples for user and server authentication using digital certificates.

Example: Configuring IOS SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication

This example shows how to configure IOS SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm hostkey x509v3-ssh-rsa
Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile)# server
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-server)# trustpoint sign trust1
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-server)# exit

Example: Configuring IOS SSH Server to Verify User's Digital Certificate for User Authentication

This example shows how to configure IOS SSH server to verify user's digital certificate for user authentication.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm authentication publickey
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm publickey x509v3-ssh-rsa
Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile)# user
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# trustpoint verify trust2
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# end
Additional References for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands A to C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands D to L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands M to R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands S to Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH authentication</td>
<td>“Secure Shell-Configuring User Authentication Methods” chapter in Secure Shell Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint</td>
<td>“Configuring and Managing a Cisco IOS Certificate Server for PKI Deployment” chapter in Public Key Infrastructure Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 45: Feature Information for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature uses the X.509v3 digital certificates in server and user authentication at the SSH server side.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Secure Copy

The Secure Copy (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configurations or device image files. SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and protocol that provide a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools suite (Berkeley university’s own set of networking applications). This document provides the procedure to configure a Cisco device for SCP server-side functionality.

• Prerequisites for Secure Copy, on page 321
• Information About Secure Copy, on page 321
• How to Configure Secure Copy, on page 322
• Configuration Examples for Secure Copy, on page 323
• Additional References, on page 324
• Feature Information for Secure Copy, on page 324

Prerequisites for Secure Copy

• Before enabling Secure Copy (SCP), you must correctly configure Secure Shell (SSH), authentication, and authorization on the device.

• Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the device must have a Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair.

Information About Secure Copy

How Secure Copy Works

The behavior of Secure Copy (SCP) is similar to that of remote copy (RCP), which comes from the Berkeley r-tools suite (Berkeley university’s own set of networking applications), except that SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH) for security. In addition, SCP requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so that the device can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level.

SCP allows a user only with a privilege level of 15 to copy any file that exists in the Cisco IOS File System (IFS) to and from a device by using the copy command. An authorized administrator may also perform this action from a workstation.
How to Configure Secure Copy

Configuring Secure Copy

To configure a Cisco device for Secure Copy (SCP) server-side functionality, perform the following steps.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **aaa new-model**
4. **aaa authentication login** `{default | list-name} method1 [ method2... ]`
5. **username** *name* [*privilege level*] **password** *encryption-type* **encrypted-password**
6. **ip scp server enable**
7. **exit**
8. **show running-config**
9. **debug ip scp**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.  &lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Sets AAA authentication at login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authentication login `{default</td>
<td>list-name} method1 [ method2... ]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+</td>
<td>Establishes a username-based authentication system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> username name [privilege level] password encryption-type encrypted-password</td>
<td>Note: You may omit this step if a network-based authentication mechanism, such as TACACS+ or RADIUS, has been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# username superuser privilege 2 password 0 superpassword</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ip scp server enable</td>
<td>Enables SCP server-side functionality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip scp server enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the SCP server-side functionality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> debug ip scp</td>
<td>(Optional) Troubleshoots SCP authentication problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# debug ip scp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Configuration Examples for Secure Copy

### Example: Secure Copy Configuration Using Local Authentication

The following example shows how to configure the server-side functionality of Secure Copy (SCP). This example uses a locally defined username and password.

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default local
Device(config)# username user1 privilege 15 password 0 lab
Device(config)# ip scp server enable
Device(config)# exit
Device# show running-config
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches) 323
Example: SCP Server-Side Configuration Using Network-Based Authentication

The following example shows how to configure the server-side functionality of SCP using a network-based authentication mechanism:

```plaintext
! AAA authentication and authorization must be configured properly for SCP to work.
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+

! SSH must be configured and functioning properly.
ip ssh time-out 120
ip ssh authentication-retries 3
ip scp server enable
```

Additional References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Shell Version 1 and 2 support</td>
<td>Secure Shell Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication and authorization commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands A to C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring authentication and authorization</td>
<td>Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Secure Copy

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 46: Feature Information for Secure Copy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Copy</td>
<td></td>
<td>The Secure Copy (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configurations or device image files. SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and protocol that provide a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools suite. The following commands were introduced or modified: <strong>debug ip scp, ip scp server enable</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Copy</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The Secure Copy (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configurations or device image files. SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and protocol that provide a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools suite. This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Information about Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Secure HTTP Servers and Clients Overview

On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet. HTTP with SSL encryption provides a secure connection to allow such functions as configuring a switch from a Web browser. Cisco's implementation of the secure HTTP server and secure HTTP client uses an implementation of SSL Version 3.0 with application-layer encryption. HTTP over SSL is abbreviated as HTTPS; the URL of a secure connection begins with https:// instead of http://.

SSL evolved into Transport Layer Security (TLS) in 1999, but is still used in this particular context.

The primary role of the HTTP secure server (the switch) is to listen for HTTPS requests on a designated port (the default HTTPS port is 443) and pass the request to the HTTP 1.1 Web server. The HTTP 1.1 server processes requests and passes responses (pages) back to the HTTP secure server, which, in turn, responds to the original request.

The primary role of the HTTP secure client (the web browser) is to respond to Cisco IOS application requests for HTTPS User Agent services, perform HTTPS User Agent services for the application, and pass the response back to the application.

Certificate Authority Trustpoints

Certificate authorities (CAs) manage certificate requests and issue certificates to participating network devices. These services provide centralized security key and certificate management for the participating devices. Specific CA servers are referred to as trustpoints.
When a connection attempt is made, the HTTPS server provides a secure connection by issuing a certified X.509v3 certificate, obtained from a specified CA trustpoint, to the client. The client (usually a Web browser), in turn, has a public key that allows it to authenticate the certificate.

For secure HTTP connections, we highly recommend that you configure a CA trustpoint. If a CA trustpoint is not configured for the device running the HTTPS server, the server certifies itself and generates the needed RSA key pair. Because a self-certified (self-signed) certificate does not provide adequate security, the connecting client generates a notification that the certificate is self-certified, and the user has the opportunity to accept or reject the connection. This option is useful for internal network topologies (such as testing).

If you do not configure a CA trustpoint, when you enable a secure HTTP connection, either a temporary or a persistent self-signed certificate for the secure HTTPS server (or client) is automatically generated.

- If the switch is not configured with a hostname and a domain name, a temporary self-signed certificate is generated. If the switch reboots, any temporary self-signed certificate is lost, and a new temporary new self-signed certificate is assigned.

- If the switch has been configured with a host and domain name, a persistent self-signed certificate is generated. This certificate remains active if you reboot the switch or if you disable the secure HTTP server so that it will be there the next time you re-enable a secure HTTP connection.

---

**Note**

The certificate authorities and trustpoints must be configured on each device individually. Copying them from other devices makes them invalid on the switch.

When a new certificate is enrolled, the new configuration change is not applied to the HTTPS server until the server is restarted. You can restart the server using either the CLI or by physical reboot. On restarting the server, the switch starts using the new certificate.

If a self-signed certificate has been generated, this information is included in the output of the `show running-config` privileged EXEC command. This is a partial sample output from that command displaying a self-signed certificate.

```
Device# show running-config
Building configuration...
<output truncated>
crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-3080755072
  enrollment selfsigned
  subject-name cn=IOS-Self-Signed-Certificate-3080755072
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair TP-self-signed-3080755072
!
crypto ca certificate chain TP-self-signed-3080755072
  certificate self-signed 01
    3082029F 30820208 A0030201 02020101 020D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 04050030
    59312F30 2D060355 04031326 494F532D 53656C66 2D536967 6E65642D 43657274
    69666963 6174652D 33303830 37353530 72406400 24E66486 7F0D0109
    02161743 45322D33 3535302D 31332E73 756D6D30 342D3335 3530301E 170D3933
    30333031 30303030 35395A17 0D323030 31330130 30303030 305A3059 312F302D
<output truncated>
```
You can remove this self-signed certificate by disabling the secure HTTP server and entering the `no crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-30890755072` global configuration command. If you later re-enable a secure HTTP server, a new self-signed certificate is generated.

The values that follow `TP self-signed` depend on the serial number of the device.

You can use an optional command (`ip http secure-client-auth`) to allow the HTTPS server to request an X.509v3 certificate from the client. Authenticating the client provides more security than server authentication by itself.

**CipherSuites**

A CipherSuite specifies the encryption algorithm and the digest algorithm to use on a SSL connection. When connecting to the HTTPS server, the client Web browser offers a list of supported CipherSuites, and the client and server negotiate the best encryption algorithm to use from those on the list that are supported by both. For example, Netscape Communicator 4.76 supports U.S. security with RSA Public Key Cryptography, MD2, MD5, RC2-CBC, RC4, DES-CBC, and DES-EDE3-CBC.

For the best possible encryption, you should use a client browser that supports 128-bit encryption, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5.5 (or later) or Netscape Communicator Version 4.76 (or later). The `SSL_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA` CipherSuite provides less security than the other CipherSuites, as it does not offer 128-bit encryption.

The more secure and more complex CipherSuites require slightly more processing time. This list defines the CipherSuites supported by the switch and ranks them from fastest to slowest in terms of router processing load (speed):

1. `SSL_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA`—RSA key exchange (RSA Public Key Cryptography) with DES-CBC for message encryption and SHA for message digest
2. `SSL_RSA_WITH_NULL_SHA` key exchange with NULL for message encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
3. `SSL_RSA_WITH_NULL_MD5` key exchange with NULL for message encryption and MD5 for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
4. `SSL_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5`—RSA key exchange with RC4 128-bit encryption and MD5 for message digest
5. `SSL_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA`—RSA key exchange with RC4 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest
6. `SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA`—RSA key exchange with 3DES and DES-EDE3-CBC for message encryption and SHA for message digest
7. `SSL_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA`—RSA key exchange with AES 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
8. `SSL_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA`—RSA key exchange with AES 256-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
9. `SSL_RSA_WITH_DHE_AES_128_CBC_SHA`—RSA key exchange with AES 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
10. **SSL_RSA_WITH_DHE_AES_256_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with AES 256-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).

---

**Note**

The latest versions of Chrome do not support the four original cipher suites, thus disallowing access to both web GUI and guest portals.

RSA (in conjunction with the specified encryption and digest algorithm combinations) is used for both key generation and authentication on SSL connections. This usage is independent of whether or not a CA trustpoint is configured.

### Default SSL Configuration

- The standard HTTP server is enabled.
- SSL is enabled.
- No CA trustpoints are configured.
- No self-signed certificates are generated.

### SSL Configuration Guidelines

When SSL is used in a switch cluster, the SSL session terminates at the cluster commander. Cluster member switches must run standard HTTP.

Before you configure a CA trustpoint, you should ensure that the system clock is set. If the clock is not set, the certificate is rejected due to an incorrect date.

In a switch stack, the SSL session terminates at the stack master.

### How to Configure Secure Socket Layer HTTP

#### Configuring a CA Trustpoint

For secure HTTP connections, we recommend that you configure an official CA trustpoint. A CA trustpoint is more secure than a self-signed certificate.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a CA Trustpoint:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. hostname hostname
3. ip domain-name domain-name
4. crypto key generate rsa
5. crypto ca trustpoint name
6. enrollment url url
**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hostname <code>hostname</code></td>
<td>Specifies the hostname of the switch (required only if you have not previously configured a hostname). The hostname is required for security keys and certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# hostname your_hostname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ip domain-name <code>domain-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the IP domain name of the switch (required only if you have not previously configured an IP domain name). The domain name is required for security keys and certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip domain-name your_domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>(Optional) Generates an RSA key pair. RSA key pairs are required before you can obtain a certificate for the switch. RSA key pairs are generated automatically. You can use this command to regenerate the keys, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint <code>name</code></td>
<td>Specifies a local configuration name for the CA trustpoint and enter CA trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto ca trustpoint your_trustpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>enrollment url <code>url</code></td>
<td>Specifies the URL to which the switch should send certificate requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>http://your_server:80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

| Step 7 | enrollment http-proxy **host-name** **port-number**  
| Example:  
| Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment http-proxy your_host 49 | (Optional) Configures the switch to obtain certificates from the CA through an HTTP proxy server.  
| • For **host-name**, specify the proxy server used to get the CA.  
| • For **port-number**, specify the port number used to access the CA. |
| Step 8 | **crl query** **url**  
| Example:  
| Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl query ldap://your_host:49 | Configures the switch to request a certificate revocation list (CRL) to ensure that the certificate of the peer has not been revoked. |
| Step 9 | **primary** **name**  
| Example:  
| Device(ca-trustpoint)# primary your_trustpoint | (Optional) Specifies that the trustpoint should be used as the primary (default) trustpoint for CA requests.  
| • For **name**, specify the trustpoint that you just configured. |
| Step 10 | **exit**  
| Example:  
| Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit | Exits CA trustpoint configuration mode and return to global configuration mode. |
| Step 11 | **crypto ca authentication** **name**  
| Example:  
| Device(config)# crypto ca authentication your_trustpoint | Authenticates the CA by getting the public key of the CA. Use the same name used in Step 5. |
| Step 12 | **crypto ca enroll** **name**  
| Example:  
| Device(config)# crypto ca enroll your_trustpoint | Obtains the certificate from the specified CA trustpoint. This command requests a signed certificate for each RSA key pair. |
| Step 13 | **end**  
| Example:  
| Device(config)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Configuring the Secure HTTP Server

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a secure HTTP server:
Before you begin

If you are using a certificate authority for certification, you should use the previous procedure to configure the CA trustpoint on the switch before enabling the HTTP server. If you have not configured a CA trustpoint, a self-signed certificate is generated the first time that you enable the secure HTTP server. After you have configured the server, you can configure options (path, access list to apply, maximum number of connections, or timeout policy) that apply to both standard and secure HTTP servers.

To verify the secure HTTP connection by using a Web browser, enter https://URL, where the URL is the IP address or hostname of the server switch. If you configure a port other than the default port, you must also specify the port number after the URL. For example:

Note

AES256_SHA2 is not supported.

https://209.165.129:1026

or

https://host.domain.com:1026

The existing `ip http access-class access-list-number` command for specifying the access-list (Only IPv4 ACLs) is going to be deprecated. You can still use this command to specify an access list to allow access to the HTTP server. Two new commands have been introduced to enable support for specifying IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs. These are `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name | access-list-number` for specifying IPv4 ACLs and `ip http access-class ipv6 access-list-name` for specifying IPv6 ACLs. We recommend using the new CLI to avoid receiving warning messages.

Note the following considerations for specifying access-lists:

- If you specify an access-list that does not exist, the configuration takes place but you receive the below warning message:

  ACL being attached does not exist, please configure it

- If you use the `ip http access-class` command for specifying an access-list for the HTTP server, the below warning message appears:

  This CLI will be deprecated soon, Please use new CLI ip http access-class ipv4/ipv6 <access-list-name>| <access-list-number>

- If you use `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name | access-list-number` or `ip http access-class ipv6 access-list-name`, and an access-list was already configured using `ip http access-class`, the below warning message appears:

  Removing ip http access-class <access-list-number>

`ip http access-class access-list-number` and `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` share the same functionality. Each command overrides the configuration of the previous command. The following combinations between the configuration of the two commands explain the effect on the running configuration:

- If `ip http access-class access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` command, the configuration of `ip http access-class`
access-list-number will be removed and the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` will be added to the running configuration.

- If `ip http access-class access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` command, the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be removed and the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` will be added to the running configuration.

- If `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class access-list-name`, the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be removed from configuration and the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-name` will be added to the running configuration.

- If `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class access-list-number`, the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` will be removed from the configuration and the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be added to the running configuration.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `show ip http server status`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip http secure-server`
4. `ip http secure-port port-number`
5. `ip http secure-ciphersuite {3des-ede-cbc-sha [rc4-128-md5] [rc4-128-sha] [des-cbc-sha]}
6. `ip http secure-client-auth`
7. `ip http secure-trustpoint name`
8. `ip http path path-name`
9. `ip http access-class access-list-number`
10. `ip http access-class {ipv4 {access-list-number | access-list-name} | ipv6 {access-list-name}}`
11. `ip http max-connections value`
12. `ip http timeout-policy idle seconds life seconds requests value`
13. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>show ip http server status</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the status of the HTTP server to determine if the secure HTTP server feature is supported in the software. You should see one of these lines in the output:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# show ip http server status</code></td>
<td>HTTP secure server capability: Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HTTP secure server capability: Not present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 2    | `configure terminal`  
Example:  
Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| 3    | `ip http secure-server`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http secure-server | Enables the HTTPS server if it has been disabled. The HTTPS server is enabled by default. |
| 4    | `ip http secure-port port-number`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http secure-port 443 | (Optional) Specifies the port number to be used for the HTTPS server. The default port number is 443. Valid options are 443 or any number in the range 1025 to 65535. |
| 5    | `ip http secure-ciphersuite`  
{[3des-ede-cbc-sha]  
[rc4-128-md5]  
[rc4-128-sha]  
[des-cbc-sha]}  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http secure-ciphersuite rc4-128-md5 | (Optional) Specifies the CipherSuites (encryption algorithms) to be used for encryption over the HTTPS connection. If you do not have a reason to specify a particularly CipherSuite, you should allow the server and client to negotiate a CipherSuite that they both support. This is the default. |
| 6    | `ip http secure-client-auth`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http secure-client-auth | (Optional) Configures the HTTP server to request an X.509v3 certificate from the client for authentication during the connection process. The default is for the client to request a certificate from the server, but the server does not attempt to authenticate the client. |
| 7    | `ip http secure-trustpoint name`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http secure-trustpoint your_trustpoint | Specifies the CA trustpoint to use to get an X.509v3 security certificate and to authenticate the client certificate connection.  
Note: Use of this command assumes you have already configured a CA trustpoint according to the previous procedure. |
| 8    | `ip http path path-name`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http path /your_server:80 | (Optional) Sets a base HTTP path for HTML files. The path specifies the location of the HTTP server files on the local system (usually located in system flash memory). |
| 9    | `ip http access-class access-list-number`  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip http access-class  
| (Optional) Specifies an access list to use to allow access to the HTTP server. |
### Configuring the Secure HTTP Client

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a secure HTTP client:

**Before you begin**

The standard HTTP client and secure HTTP client are always enabled. A certificate authority is required for secure HTTP client certification. This procedure assumes that you have previously configured a CA trustpoint on the switch. If a CA trustpoint is not configured and the remote HTTPS server requires client authentication, connections to the secure HTTP client fail.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. ip http client secure-trustpoint name
3. ip http client secure-ciphersuite \{[3des-ede-cbc-sha] [rc4-128-md5] [rc4-128-sha] [des-cbc-sha]\}
4. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>ip http client secure-trustpoint name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# ip http client secure-trustpoint your_trustpoint</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the CA trustpoint to be used if the remote HTTP server requests client authentication. Using this command assumes that you have already configured a CA trustpoint by using the previous procedure. The command is optional if client authentication is not needed or if a primary trustpoint has been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip http client secure-ciphersuite {[3des-ede-cbc-sha] [rc4-128-md5] [rc4-128-sha] [des-cbc-sha]}&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# ip http client secure-ciphersuite rc4-128-md5</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the CipherSuites (encryption algorithms) to be used for encryption over the HTTPS connection. If you do not have a reason to specify a particular CipherSuite, you should allow the server and client to negotiate a CipherSuite that they both support. This is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>end&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitoring Secure HTTP Server and Client Status

To monitor the SSL secure server and client status, use the privileged EXEC commands in the following table.

Table 47: Commands for Displaying the SSL Secure Server and Client Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show ip http client secure status</td>
<td>Shows the HTTP secure client configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip http server secure status</td>
<td>Shows the HTTP secure server configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td>Shows the generated self-signed certificate for secure HTTP connections.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional References for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certification Authority</td>
<td>Configuring Certification Authority Interoperability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 48: Feature Information for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Socket Layer HTTP</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>Cisco's implementation of the secure HTTP server and secure HTTP client uses an implementation of SSL Version 3.0 with application-layer encryption. On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 21

Configuring TCP Keepalive Timer

The TCP Keepalive Timer feature introduces the capability to identify dead connections between multiple routing devices. This module explains how to configure TCP Keepalive Timer in a network.

• Restrictions for TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 341
• Information About TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 341
• How to Configure TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 342
• Configuration Example for TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 343
• Additional References for TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 343
• Feature Information for TCP Keepalive Timer, on page 344

Restrictions for TCP Keepalive Timer

The TCP Keepalive timer parameters can be configured only on vty and TTY applications.

Information About TCP Keepalive Timer

TCP Keepalive Timer

The TCP Keepalive Timer feature provides a mechanism to identify dead connections.

When a TCP connection on a routing device is idle for too long, the device sends a TCP keepalive packet to the peer with only the Acknowledgment (ACK) flag turned on. If a response packet (a TCP ACK packet) is not received after the device sends a specific number of probes, the connection is considered dead and the device initiating the probes frees resources used by the TCP connection.

The following parameters are used to configure TCP keepalive:

• TCP Keepalive idle time: The value of this parameter indicates the time for which a TCP connection can be idle before the connection initiates keepalive probes.

• TCP Keepalive retries: The value of this parameter is the number of unacknowledged probes that a device can send before declaring the connection as dead and tearing it down.

• TCP Keepalive interval: The time between subsequent probe retries.
How to Configure TCP Keepalive Timer

Configuring Keepalive Parameters

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip tcp keepalive interval seconds
4. ip tcp keepalive retries number-of-retries
5. end
6. show running-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enables global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip tcp keepalive interval seconds</td>
<td>Configures the keepalive interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# ip tcp keepalive interval 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ip tcp keepalive retries number-of-retries</td>
<td>Configures the number of unacknowledged probes that can be sent before declaring the connection as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# ip tcp keepalive retries 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Example for TCP Keepalive Timer

Example: Configuring Keepalive Parameters

The following example shows how to configure TCP keepalive parameters.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip tcp keepalive interval 2
Device(config)# ip tcp keepalive retries 5
Device(config)# end
```

The following is a sample output of the `show running-config` command:

```
Device# show running-config
ip tcp keepalive retries 5
ip tcp keepalive interval 2
```

Additional References for TCP Keepalive Timer

### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 793</td>
<td>Transmission Control Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 1191</td>
<td>Path MTU discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 1323</td>
<td>TCP Extensions for High Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2018</td>
<td>TCP Selective Acknowledgment Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2581</td>
<td>TCP Congestion Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3168</td>
<td>The Addition of Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) to IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3782</td>
<td>The NewReno Modification to TCP’s Fast Recovery Algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 4022</td>
<td>Management Information Base for the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for TCP Keepalive Timer

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 49: Feature Information for TCP Keepalive Timer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCP Keepalive Timer</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The TCP Keepalive Timer feature introduces the capability to identify dead connections between multiple routing devices. The following command was introduced or modified by this feature: ip tcp keepalive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 22

IPv4 ACLs

- Information about Network Security with ACLs, on page 345
- Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists, on page 345
- Understanding Network Security with ACLs, on page 347
- Supported ACLs, on page 347
- ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic, on page 350
- ACLs and Switch Stacks, on page 351
- Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs, on page 352
- Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs, on page 356
- VLAN Map Configuration Guidelines, on page 356
- VLAN Maps with Router ACLs, on page 357
- Time Ranges for ACLs, on page 358
- IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations, on page 358
- Information about Network Security with ACLs, on page 359
- How to Configure ACLs, on page 359
- Monitoring IPv4 ACLs, on page 379
- Configuration Examples for ACLs, on page 380
- IPv4 ACL Configuration Examples, on page 381
- Configuration Examples for ACLs and VLAN Maps, on page 387
- Configuration Examples for Using VLAN Maps in Your Network, on page 389
- Configuration Examples for ACLs, on page 391
- Feature Information for IPv4 ACLs, on page 391

Information about Network Security with ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using access control lists (ACLs), which in commands and tables are also referred to as access lists.

Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists

General Network Security

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:
* Not all commands that accept a numbered ACL accept a named ACL. ACLs for packet filters and route filters on interfaces can use a name. VLAN maps also accept a name.

* A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.

* Though visible in the command-line help strings, `appletalk` is not supported as a matching condition for the `deny` and `permit` MAC access-list configuration mode commands.

* ACL wildcard is not supported in downstream client policy.

**IPv4 ACL Network Interfaces**

The following restrictions apply to IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces:

* When controlling access to an interface, you can use a named or numbered ACL.

* If you apply an ACL to a Layer 2 interface that is a member of a VLAN, the Layer 2 (port) ACL takes precedence over an input Layer 3 ACL applied to the VLAN interface or a VLAN map applied to the VLAN.

* If you apply an ACL to a Layer 3 interface and routing is not enabled on the switch, the ACL only filters packets that are intended for the CPU, such as SNMP, Telnet, or web traffic.

* If the `preauth_ipv4_acl` ACL is configured to filter packets, the ACL is removed after authentication.

* You do not have to enable routing to apply ACLs to Layer 2 interfaces.

**MAC ACLs on a Layer 2 Interface**

After you create a MAC ACL, you can apply it to a Layer 2 interface to filter non-IP traffic coming in that interface. When you apply the MAC ACL, consider these guidelines:

* You can apply no more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to the same Layer 2 interface. The IP access list filters only IP packets, and the MAC access list filters non-IP packets.

* A Layer 2 interface can have only one MAC access list. If you apply a MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface that has a MAC ACL configured, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.

---

**Note**

The `mac access-group` interface configuration command is only valid when applied to a physical Layer 2 interface. You cannot use the command on EtherChannel port channels.

**IP Access List Entry Sequence Numbering**

* This feature does not support dynamic, reflexive, or firewall access lists.
Understanding Network Security with ACLs

ACL Overview

Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through a router or switch and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces. An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets. When a packet is received on an interface, the switch compares the fields in the packet against any applied ACLs to verify that the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded, based on the criteria specified in the access lists. One by one, it tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match decides whether the switch accepts or rejects the packets. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of conditions in the list is critical. If no conditions match, the switch rejects the packet. If there are no restrictions, the switch forwards the packet; otherwise, the switch drops the packet. The switch can use ACLs on all packets it forwards.

You configure access lists on a router or Layer 3 switch to provide basic security for your network. If you do not configure ACLs, all packets passing through the switch could be allowed onto all parts of the network. You can use ACLs to control which hosts can access different parts of a network or to decide which types of traffic are forwarded or blocked at router interfaces. For example, you can allow e-mail traffic to be forwarded but not Telnet traffic.

Access Control Entries

An ACL contains an ordered list of access control entries (ACEs). Each ACE specifies permit or deny and a set of conditions the packet must satisfy in order to match the ACE. The meaning of permit or deny depends on the context in which the ACL is used.

ACL Supported Types

The switch supports IP ACLs and Ethernet (MAC) ACLs:

- IP ACLs filter IPv4 traffic, including TCP, User Datagram Protocol (UDP), Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), and Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP).
- Ethernet ACLs filter non-IP traffic.

This switch also supports quality of service (QoS) classification ACLs.

Supported ACLs

The switch supports three types of ACLs to filter traffic:

- Port ACLs access-control traffic entering a Layer 2 interface. You can apply port ACLs to a Layer 2 interface in each direction to each access list type — IPv4 and MAC.
- Router ACLs access-control routed traffic between VLANs and are applied to Layer 3 interfaces in a specific direction (inbound or outbound).
• VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps are applied only to Layer 2 VLANs and impact bridged traffic only. You can use VLAN maps to filter traffic between devices in the same VLAN. VLAN maps are configured to provide access control based on Layer 3 addresses for IPv4. Unsupported protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses using Ethernet ACEs. After a VLAN map is applied to a VLAN, all packets (routed or bridged) entering the VLAN are checked against the VLAN map. Packets can either enter the VLAN through a switch port or through a routed port after being routed.

**ACL Precedence**

When VLAN maps, Port ACLs, and router ACLs are configured on the same switch, the filtering precedence, from greatest to least for ingress traffic is port ACL, VLAN map, and then router ACL. For egress traffic, the filtering precedence is router ACL, VLAN map, and then port ACL.

The following examples describe simple use cases:

• When both an input port ACL and a VLAN map are applied, incoming packets received on ports with a port ACL applied are filtered by the port ACL. Other packets are filtered by the VLAN map

• When an input router ACL and input port ACL exist in a switch virtual interface (SVI), incoming packets received on ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.

• When an output router ACL and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.

• When a VLAN map, input router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.

• When a VLAN map, output router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.

**Port ACLs**

Port ACLs are ACLs that are applied to Layer 2 interfaces on a switch. Port ACLs are supported on physical interfaces and on EtherChannel interfaces. Port ACLs can be applied to the interface in inbound direction. The following access lists are supported:

• Standard IP access lists using source addresses

• Extended IP access lists using source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information

• MAC extended access lists using source and destination MAC addresses and optional protocol type information

The switch examines ACLs on an interface and permits or denies packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL. In this way, ACLs control access to a network or to part of a network.
Figure 14: Using ACLs to Control Traffic in a Network

This is an example of using port ACLs to control access to a network when all workstations are in the same VLAN. ACLs applied at the Layer 2 input would allow Host A to access the Human Resources network, but prevent Host B from accessing the same network. Port ACLs can only be applied to Layer 2 interfaces in the inbound direction.

When you apply a port ACL to a trunk port, the ACL filters traffic on all VLANs present on the trunk port. When you apply a port ACL to a port with voice VLAN, the ACL filters traffic on both data and voice VLANs.

With port ACLs, you can filter IP traffic by using IP access lists and non-IP traffic by using MAC addresses. You can filter both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface by applying both an IP access list and a MAC access list to the interface.

Note

You cannot apply more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface. If an IP access list or MAC access list is already configured on a Layer 2 interface and you apply a new IP access list or MAC access list to the interface, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.

Router ACLs

You can apply router ACLs on switch virtual interfaces (SVIs), which are Layer 3 interfaces to VLANs; on physical Layer 3 interfaces; and on Layer 3 EtherChannel interfaces. You apply router ACLs on interfaces for specific directions (inbound or outbound). You can apply one router ACL in each direction on an interface.

The switch supports these access lists for IPv4 traffic:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information for matching operations.

As with port ACLs, the switch examines ACLs associated with features configured on a given interface. As packets enter the switch on an interface, ACLs associated with all inbound features configured on that interface are examined. After packets are routed and before they are forwarded to the next hop, all ACLs associated with outbound features configured on the egress interface are examined.
ACLs permit or deny packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL, and can be used to control access to a network or to part of a network.

**VLAN Maps**

VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps are used to control the network traffic within a VLAN. You can apply VLAN maps to all packets that are bridged within a VLAN in the switch or switch stack. VLANs are strictly for the security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VLANs are not defined by direction (ingress or egress).

All non-IP protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses and Ethertype using MAC VLAN maps. (IP traffic is not access-controlled by MAC VLAN maps.) You can enforce VLAN maps only on packets going through the switch; you cannot enforce VLAN maps on traffic between hosts on a hub or on another switch that is connected to this switch.

With VLAN maps, forwarding of packets is permitted or denied, based on the action specified in the map.

*Figure 15: Using VLAN Maps to Control Traffic*

This figure shows how a VLAN map is applied to prevent a specific type of traffic from Host A in VLAN 10 from being forwarded. You can apply only one VLAN map to a VLAN.

**ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic**

IP packets can be fragmented as they cross the network. When this happens, only the fragment containing the beginning of the packet contains the Layer 4 information, such as TCP or UDP port numbers, ICMP type and code, and so on. All other fragments are missing this information.

Some access control entries (ACEs) do not check Layer 4 information and therefore can be applied to all packet fragments. ACEs that do test Layer 4 information cannot be applied in the standard manner to most of the fragments in a fragmented IP packet. When the fragment contains no Layer 4 information and the ACE tests some Layer 4 information, the matching rules are modified:

- Permit ACEs that check the Layer 3 information in the fragment (including protocol type, such as TCP, UDP, and so on) are considered to match the fragment regardless of what the missing Layer 4 information might have been.

  **Note** For TCP ACEs with L4 Ops, the fragmented packets will be dropped per RFC 1858.

- Deny ACEs that check Layer 4 information never match a fragment unless the fragment contains Layer 4 information.
ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic Examples

Consider access list 102, configured with these commands, applied to three fragmented packets:

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.1 eq smtp
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any host 10.1.1.2 eq telnet
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.2
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any any
```

In the first and second ACEs in the examples, the `eq` keyword after the destination address means to test for the TCP-destination-port well-known numbers equaling Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Telnet, respectively.

- Packet A is a TCP packet from host 10.2.2.2, port 65000, going to host 10.1.1.1 on the SMTP port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the first ACE (a permit) as if it were a complete packet because all Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments also match the first ACE, even though they do not contain the SMTP port information, because the first ACE only checks Layer 3 information when applied to fragments. The information in this example is that the packet is TCP and that the destination is 10.1.1.1.

- Packet B is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.2 on the Telnet port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the second ACE (a deny) because all Layer 3 and Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments in the packet do not match the second ACE because they are missing Layer 4 information. Instead, they match the third ACE (a permit).

Because the first fragment was denied, host 10.1.1.2 cannot reassemble a complete packet, so packet B is effectively denied. However, the later fragments that are permitted will consume bandwidth on the network and resources of host 10.1.1.2 as it tries to reassemble the packet.

- Fragmented packet C is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.3, port ftp. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the fourth ACE (a deny). All other fragments also match the fourth ACE because that ACE does not check any Layer 4 information and because Layer 3 information in all fragments shows that they are being sent to host 10.1.1.3, and the earlier permit ACEs were checking different hosts.

## ACLs and Switch Stacks

ACL support is the same for a switch stack as for a standalone switch. ACL configuration information is propagated to all switches in the stack. All switches in the stack, including the active switch, process the information and program their hardware.

### Active Switch and ACL Functions

The active switch performs these ACL functions:

- It processes the ACL configuration and propagates the information to all stack members.
- It distributes the ACL information to any switch that joins the stack.
Stack Member and ACL Functions

Stack members perform these ACL functions:

• They receive the ACL information from the active switch and program their hardware.
• A stack member configured as a standby switch, performs the functions of the active switch in the event the active switch fails.

Active Switch Failure and ACLs

Both the active and standby switches have the ACL information. When the active switch fails, the standby takes over. The new active switch distributes the ACL information to all stack members.

Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs

This section describes IP ACLs.

An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions. One by one, the switch tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match determines whether the switch accepts or rejects the packet. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of the conditions is critical. If no conditions match, the switch denies the packet.

The software supports these types of ACLs or access lists for IPv4:

• Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
• Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol-type information for finer granularity of control.

IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features

Configuring IPv4 ACLs on the switch is the same as configuring IPv4 ACLs on other Cisco switches and routers.

The following ACL-related features are not supported:

• Non-IP protocol ACLs
• IP accounting
• Reflexive ACLs and dynamic ACLs are not supported.
### Access List Numbers

The number you use to denote your ACL shows the type of access list that you are creating.

This lists the access-list number and corresponding access list type and shows whether or not they are supported in the switch. The switch supports IPv4 standard and extended access lists, numbers 1 to 199 and 1300 to 2699.

**Table 50: Access List Numbers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access List Number</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–99</td>
<td>IP standard access list</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–199</td>
<td>IP extended access list</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200–299</td>
<td>Protocol type-code access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300–399</td>
<td>DECnet access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400–499</td>
<td>XNS standard access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500–599</td>
<td>XNS extended access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600–699</td>
<td>AppleTalk access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700–799</td>
<td>48-bit MAC address access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800–899</td>
<td>IPX standard access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900–999</td>
<td>IPX extended access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000–1099</td>
<td>IPX SAP access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1100–1199</td>
<td>Extended 48-bit MAC address access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200–1299</td>
<td>IPX summary address access list</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300–1999</td>
<td>IP standard access list (expanded range)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000–2699</td>
<td>IP extended access list (expanded range)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to numbered standard and extended ACLs, you can also create standard and extended named IP ACLs by using the supported numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99; the name of an extended IP ACL can be 100 to 199. The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.
Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs

When creating an ACL, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for all packets that it did not find a match for before reaching the end. With standard access lists, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address ACL specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

The switch always rewrites the order of standard access lists so that entries with host matches and entries with matches having a don't care mask of 0.0.0.0 are moved to the top of the list, above any entries with non-zero don't care masks. Therefore, in show command output and in the configuration file, the ACEs do not necessarily appear in the order in which they were entered.

After creating a numbered standard IPv4 ACL, you can apply it to, to terminal lines, or to interfaces.

Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs

Although standard ACLs use only source addresses for matching, you can use extended ACL source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol type information for finer granularity of control. When you are creating ACEs in numbered extended access lists, remember that after you create the ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot reorder the list or selectively add or remove ACEs from a numbered list.

The switch does not support dynamic or reflexive access lists. It also does not support filtering based on the type of service (ToS) minimize-monetary-cost bit.

Some protocols also have specific parameters and keywords that apply to that protocol.

You can define an extended TCP, UDP, ICMP, IGMP, or other IP ACL. The switch also supports these IP protocols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ICMP echo-reply cannot be filtered. All other ICMP codes or types can be filtered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These IP protocols are supported:

- Authentication Header Protocol (ahp)
- Encapsulation Security Payload (esp)
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (eigrp)
- generic routing encapsulation (gre)
- Internet Control Message Protocol (icmp)
- Internet Group Management Protocol (igmp)
- any Interior Protocol (ip)
- IP in IP tunneling (ipinip)
- KA9Q NOS-compatible IP over IP tunneling (nos)
- Open Shortest Path First routing (ospf)
- Payload Compression Protocol (pcp)
- Protocol-Independent Multicast (pim)
Named IPv4 ACLs

You can identify IPv4 ACLs with an alphanumeric string (a name) rather than a number. You can use named ACLs to configure more IPv4 access lists in a router than if you were to use numbered access lists. If you identify your access list with a name rather than a number, the mode and command syntax are slightly different. However, not all commands that use IP access lists accept a named access list.

Note
The name you give to a standard or extended ACL can also be a number in the supported range of access list numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99 and . The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.

Consider these guidelines before configuring named ACLs:

- Numbered ACLs are also available.
- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.

ACL Logging

The switch software can provide logging messages about packets permitted or denied by a standard IP access list. That is, any packet that matches the ACL causes an informational logging message about the packet to be sent to the console. The level of messages logged to the console is controlled by the `logging console` commands controlling the syslog messages.

Note
ACL logging is only supported for RACL.

Note
Because routing is done in hardware and logging is done in software, if a large number of packets match a `permit` or `deny` ACE containing a `log` keyword, the software might not be able to match the hardware processing rate, and not all packets will be logged.

The first packet that triggers the ACL causes a logging message right away, and subsequent packets are collected over 5-minute intervals before they appear or logged. The logging message includes the access list number, whether the packet was permitted or denied, the source IP address of the packet, and the number of packets from that source permitted or denied in the prior 5-minute interval.
The logging facility might drop some logging message packets if there are too many to be handled or if there is more than one logging message to be handled in 1 second. This behavior prevents the router from crashing due to too many logging packets. Therefore, the logging facility should not be used as a billing tool or an accurate source of the number of matches to an access list.

**Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs**

ACL processing is performed in hardware. If the hardware reaches its capacity to store ACL configurations, all packets on that interface are dropped.

**Note**

If an ACL configuration cannot be implemented in hardware due to an out-of-resource condition on a switch or stack member, then only the traffic in that VLAN arriving on that switch is affected.

For router ACLs, other factors can cause packets to be sent to the CPU:

- Using the `log` keyword
- Generating ICMP unreachable messages

When you enter the `show ip access-lists` privileged EXEC command, the match count displayed does not account for packets that are access controlled in hardware. Use the `show platform software fed switch {switch_num | active | standby} acl counters hardware` privileged EXEC command to obtain some basic hardware ACL statistics for switched and routed packets.

Router ACLs function as follows:

- The hardware controls permit and deny actions of standard and extended ACLs (input and output) for security access control.
- If `log` has not been specified, the flows that match a `deny` statement in a security ACL are dropped by the hardware if `ip unreachables` is disabled. The flows matching a `permit` statement are switched in hardware.
- Adding the `log` keyword to an ACE in a router ACL causes a copy of the packet to be sent to the CPU for logging only. If the ACE is a `permit` statement, the packet is still switched and routed in hardware.

**VLAN Map Configuration Guidelines**

VLAN maps are the only way to control filtering within a VLAN. VLAN maps have no direction. To filter traffic in a specific direction by using a VLAN map, you need to include an ACL with specific source or destination addresses. If there is a match clause for that type of packet (IP or MAC) in the VLAN map, the default action is to drop the packet if the packet does not match any of the entries within the map. If there is no match clause for that type of packet, the default is to forward the packet.

The following are the VLAN map configuration guidelines:
• If there is no ACL configured to deny traffic on an interface and no VLAN map is configured, all traffic is permitted.

• Each VLAN map consists of a series of entries. The order of entries in an VLAN map is important. A packet that comes into the switch is tested against the first entry in the VLAN map. If it matches, the action specified for that part of the VLAN map is taken. If there is no match, the packet is tested against the next entry in the map.

• If the VLAN map has at least one match clause for the type of packet (IP or MAC) and the packet does not match any of these match clauses, the default is to drop the packet. If there is no match clause for that type of packet in the VLAN map, the default is to forward the packet.

• Logging is not supported for VLAN maps.

• When a switch has an IP access list or MAC access list applied to a Layer 2 interface, and you apply a VLAN map to a VLAN that the port belongs to, the port ACL takes precedence over the VLAN map.

• If a VLAN map configuration cannot be applied in hardware, all packets in that VLAN are dropped.

VLAN Maps with Router ACLs

To access control both bridged and routed traffic, you can use VLAN maps only or a combination of router ACLs and VLAN maps. You can define router ACLs on both input and output routed VLAN interfaces, and you can define a VLAN map to access control the bridged traffic.

If a packet flow matches a VLAN-map deny clause in the ACL, regardless of the router ACL configuration, the packet flow is denied.

Note

When you use router ACLs with VLAN maps, packets that require logging on the router ACLs are not logged if they are denied by a VLAN map.

If the VLAN map has a match clause for the type of packet (IP or MAC) and the packet does not match the type, the default is to drop the packet. If there is no match clause in the VLAN map, and no action specified, the packet is forwarded if it does not match any VLAN map entry.

VLAN Maps and Router ACL Configuration Guidelines

These guidelines are for configurations where you need to have a router ACL and a VLAN map on the same VLAN. These guidelines do not apply to configurations where you are mapping router ACLs and VLAN maps on different VLANs.

If you must configure a router ACL and a VLAN map on the same VLAN, use these guidelines for both router ACL and VLAN map configuration:

• You can configure only one VLAN map and one router ACL in each direction (input/output) on a VLAN interface.

• Whenever possible, try to write the ACL with all entries having a single action except for the final, default action of the other type. That is, write the ACL using one of these two forms:

  permit... permit... permit... deny ip any any
or

deny... deny... deny... permit ip any any

- To define multiple actions in an ACL (permit, deny), group each action type together to reduce the number of entries.

- Avoid including Layer 4 information in an ACL; adding this information complicates the merging process. The best merge results are obtained if the ACLs are filtered based on IP addresses (source and destination) and not on the full flow (source IP address, destination IP address, protocol, and protocol ports). It is also helpful to use don't care bits in the IP address, whenever possible.

If you need to specify the full-flow mode and the ACL contains both IP ACEs and TCP/UDP/ICMP ACEs with Layer 4 information, put the Layer 4 ACEs at the end of the list. This gives priority to the filtering of traffic based on IP addresses.

Time Ranges for ACLs

You can selectively apply extended ACLs based on the time of day and the week by using the **time-range** global configuration command. First, define a time-range name and set the times and the dates or the days of the week in the time range. Then enter the time-range name when applying an ACL to set restrictions to the access list. You can use the time range to define when the permit or deny statements in the ACL are in effect, for example, during a specified time period or on specified days of the week. The **time-range** keyword and argument are referenced in the named and numbered extended ACL task tables.

These are some benefits of using time ranges:

- You have more control over permitting or denying a user access to resources, such as an application (identified by an IP address/mask pair and a port number).

- You can control logging messages. ACL entries can be set to log traffic only at certain times of the day. Therefore, you can simply deny access without needing to analyze many logs generated during peak hours.

Time-based access lists trigger CPU activity because the new configuration of the access list must be merged with other features and the combined configuration loaded into the hardware memory. For this reason, you should be careful not to have several access lists configured to take effect in close succession (within a small number of minutes of each other.)

**Note**

The time range relies on the switch system clock; therefore, you need a reliable clock source. We recommend that you use Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize the switch clock.

IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations

When you apply the **ip access-group** interface configuration command to a Layer 3 interface (an SVI, a Layer 3 EtherChannel, or a routed port), the interface must have been configured with an IP address. Layer 3 access groups filter packets that are routed or are received by Layer 3 processes on the CPU. They do not affect packets bridged within a VLAN.
For inbound ACLs, after receiving a packet, the switch checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the switch continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the switch discards the packet.

For outbound ACLs, after receiving and routing a packet to a controlled interface, the switch checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the switch sends the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the switch discards the packet.

By default, the input interface sends ICMP Unreachable messages whenever a packet is discarded, regardless of whether the packet was discarded because of an ACL on the input interface or because of an ACL on the output interface. ICMP Unreachables are normally limited to no more than one every one-half second per input interface, but this can be changed by using the `ip icmp rate-limit unreachable` global configuration command.

When you apply an undefined ACL to an interface, the switch acts as if the ACL has not been applied to the interface and permits all packets. Remember this behavior if you use undefined ACLs for network security.

**Information about Network Security with ACLs**

This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using access control lists (ACLs), which in commands and tables are also referred to as access lists.

**How to Configure ACLs**

**Configuring IPv4 ACLs**

These are the steps to use IP ACLs on the switch:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Create an ACL by specifying an access list number or name and the access conditions.
2. Apply the ACL to interfaces or terminal lines. You can also apply standard and extended IP ACLs to VLAN maps.

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Create an ACL by specifying an access list number or name and the access conditions.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Apply the ACL to interfaces or terminal lines. You can also apply standard and extended IP ACLs to VLAN maps.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Creating a Numbered Standard ACL**

Follow these steps to create a numbered standard ACL:
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. `access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} source source-wildcard ]`
4. end
5. show running-config
6. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> `access-list access-list-number {deny</td>
<td>permit} source source-wildcard ]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# access-list 2 deny your_host</code></td>
<td>The <code>access-list-number</code> is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999. Enter <code>deny</code> or <code>permit</code> to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched. The <code>source</code> is the source address of the network or host from which the packet is being sent specified as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The keyword <code>any</code> as an abbreviation for <code>source</code> and <code>source-wildcard</code> of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The keyword <code>host</code> as an abbreviation for <code>source</code> and <code>source-wildcard</code> of source 0.0.0.0. (Optional) The <code>source-wildcard</code> applies wildcard bits to the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Creating a Numbered Extended ACL

Follow these steps to create a numbered extended ACL:

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]
3. **access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} tcp source source-wildcard [operator port] destination destination-wildcard [established] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]
4. **access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} udp source source-wildcard [operator port] destination destination-wildcard [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]
5. **access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} icmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [icmp-type | [icmp-type icmp-code] | [icmp-message]] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]
6. **access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} igmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [igmp-type] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]
7. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Device# configure terminal | **Purpose**
| **Step 2** access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp] | Defines an extended IPv4 access list and the access conditions. The *access-list-number* is a decimal number from 100 to 199 or 2000 to 2699. Enter *deny* or *permit* to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched. For *protocol*, enter the name or number of an IP protocol: ahp, eigrp, esp, gre, icmp, igmp, igrp, ip, ipinip, nos, ospf, pcp, pim, tcp, or udp, or an integer in the range 0 to 255 representing an IP protocol number. To match any Internet protocol (including ICMP, TCP, and UDP), use the keyword *ip*. **Note**: This step includes options for most IP protocols. For additional specific parameters for TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IGMP, see the following steps. The *source* is the number of the network or host from which the packet is sent. The *source-wildcard* applies wildcard bits to the source. The *destination* is the network or host number to which the packet is sent. The *destination-wildcard* applies wildcard bits to the destination. Source, source-wildcard, destination, and destination-wildcard can be specified as: • The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format. • The keyword *any* for 0.0.0.0–255.255.255.255 (any host). • The keyword *host* for a single host 0.0.0.0. The other keywords are optional and have these meanings: • *precedence*—Enter to match packets with a precedence level specified as a number from 0 to 7 or by name: *routine* (0), *priority* (1), *immediate* (2), *flash* (3), *flash-override* (4), *critical* (5), *internet* (6), *network* (7). • *fragments*—Enter to check non-initial fragments. • *tos*—Enter to match by type of service level, specified by a number from 0 to 15 or a name: *normal* (0), |
| Device(config)# access-list 101 permit ip host 10.1.1.2 any precedence 0 tos 0 log | |

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
### IPv4 ACLs

#### Creating a Numbered Extended ACL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>access-list</code> <code>access-list-number</code> `{deny</td>
<td>permit} tcp<code> </code>source source-wildcard [operator port] destination destination-wildcard [operator port] [established] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp] [flag]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>time-range</strong>—Specify the time-range name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>dscp</strong>—Enter to match packets with the DSCP value specified by a number from 0 to 63, or use the question mark (?) to see a list of available values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If you enter a <strong>dscp</strong> value, you cannot enter <strong>tos</strong> or <strong>precedence</strong>. You can enter both a <strong>tos</strong> and a <strong>precedence</strong> value with no <strong>dscp</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3**

Example:

```
Device(config)# access-list 101 permit tcp any any eq 500
```

Defines an extended TCP access list and the access conditions.

The parameters are the same as those described for an extended IPv4 ACL, with these exceptions:

(Optional) Enter an `operator` and `port` to compare source (if positioned after `source source-wildcard`) or destination (if positioned after `destination destination-wildcard`) port. Possible operators include `eq` (equal), `gt` (greater than), `lt` (less than), `neq` (not equal), and `range` (inclusive range). Operators require a port number (range requires two port numbers separated by a space).

Enter the `port` number as a decimal number (from 0 to 65535) or the name of a TCP port. Use only TCP port numbers or names when filtering TCP.

The other optional keywords have these meanings:

• **established**—Enter to match an established connection. This has the same function as matching on the `ack` or `rst` flag.

• **flag**—Enter one of these flags to match by the specified TCP header bits: `ack` (acknowledge), `fin` (finish), `psh` (push), `rst` (reset), `syn` (synchronize), or `urg` (urgent).

**Step 4**

Example:

```
Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any eq 100
```

(Optional) Defines an extended UDP access list and the access conditions.

The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP except that the `[operator [port]]` port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the `flag` and `established` keywords are not valid for UDP.
### Purpose
 definestheextendedICMPaccesslistandtheaccess 
conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> access-list access-list-number {deny</td>
<td>permit} icmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [icmp-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <em>icmp-type</em>—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <em>icmp-code</em>—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <em>icmp-message</em>—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit icmp any any 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 6** access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} igmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [igmp-type] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp] | (Optional) Defines an extended IGMP access list and the access conditions. The IGMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with this optional parameter. |
| • *igmp-type*—To match IGMP message type, enter a number from 0 to 15, or enter the message name: dvmrp, host-query, host-report, pim, or trace. |
| **Example:** |
| Device(config)# access-list 101 permit igmp any any 14 | |

| **Step 7** end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** |
| Device(config)# end | |

## Creating Named Standard ACLs

Follow these steps to create a standard ACL using names:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip access-list standard name
4. Use one of the following:
   • *deny* {source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} [log]
   • *permit* {source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} [log]
5. end
### IPv4 ACLs

6. show running-config
7. copy running-config

#### Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;Example: &lt;br&gt;Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: &lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip access-list standard name&lt;br&gt;Example: &lt;br&gt;Device(config)# ip access-list standard 20</td>
<td>Defines a standard IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode.&lt;br&gt;The name can be a number from 1 to 99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>Use one of the following:&lt;br&gt;• deny {source [source-wildcard]</td>
<td>host source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end&lt;br&gt;Example: &lt;br&gt;Device(config-std-nacl)# end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>show running-config&lt;br&gt;Example:</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating Extended Named ACLs

Follow these steps to create an extended ACL using names:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip access-list extended name
4. {deny | permit} protocol {source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} {destination [destination-wildcard] | host destination | any} [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [established] [log] [time-range time-range-name]
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 ip access-list extended name</td>
<td>Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The name can be a number from 100 to 199.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip access-list extended 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 4** {deny | permit} protocol [source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} {destination [destination-wildcard] | host destination | any} [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [established] [log] [time-range time-range-name] | In access-list configuration mode, specify the conditions allowed or denied. Use the log keyword to get access list logging messages, including violations.  
  - host source—A source and source wildcard of source 0.0.0.0.  
  - host destination—A destination and destination wildcard of destination 0.0.0.0.  
  - any—A source and source wildcard or destination and destination wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. |
| Example:                                                                         | Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 0 any any                                                                                                                                                    |
| **Step 5** end                                                                     | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example:                                                                         | Device(config-ext-nacl)# end                                                                                                                                                    |
| **Step 6** show running-config                                                   | Verifies your entries.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Example:                                                                         | Device# show running-config                                                                                                                                                    |
| **Step 7** copy running-config startup-config                                     | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.                                                                                                                                 |
| Example:                                                                         | Device# copy running-config startup-config                                                                                                                                             |

When you are creating extended ACLs, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for everything if it did not find a match before reaching the end. For standard ACLs, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address access list specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

After you create an ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot selectively add ACL entries to a specific ACL. However, you can use no permit and no deny access-list configuration mode commands to remove entries from a named ACL.

Being able to selectively remove lines from a named ACL is one reason you might use named ACLs instead of numbered ACLs.

**What to do next**

After creating a named ACL, you can apply it to interfaces or to VLANs.

**Configuring Time Ranges for ACLs**

Follow these steps to configure a time-range parameter for an ACL:
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. time-range time-range-name
4. Use one of the following:
   - **absolute** [start time date] [end time date]
   - **periodic** day-of-the-week hh:mm to [day-of-the-week] hh:mm
   - **periodic** {weekdays | weekend | daily} hh:mm to hh:mm
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> time-range time-range-name</td>
<td>Assigns a meaningful name (for example, workhours) to the time range to be created, and enter time-range configuration mode. The name cannot contain a space or quotation mark and must begin with a letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# time-range workhours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> Use one of the following:</td>
<td>Specifies when the function it will be applied to is operational.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>absolute</strong> [start time date] [end time date]</td>
<td>• You can use only one <strong>absolute</strong> statement in the time range. If you configure more than one absolute statement, only the one configured last is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>periodic</strong> day-of-the-week hh:mm to [day-of-the-week] hh:mm</td>
<td>• You can enter multiple <strong>periodic</strong> statements. For example, you could configure different hours for weekdays and weekends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>periodic</strong> {weekdays</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-time-range)# absolute start 00:00 1 Jan 2006 end 23:59 1 Jan 2006</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-time-range)# periodic weekdays 8:00 to 12:00</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to do next

Repeat the steps if you have multiple items that you want in effect at different times.

### Applying an IPv4 ACL to a Terminal Line

You can use numbered ACLs to control access to one or more terminal lines. You cannot apply named ACLs to lines. You must set identical restrictions on all the virtual terminal lines because a user can attempt to connect to any of them.

Follow these steps to restrict incoming and outgoing connections between a virtual terminal line and the addresses in an ACL:

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. line [console | vty] line-number
4. access-class access-list-number {in | out}
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config
**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>enable</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Identifies a specific line to configure, and enter in-line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`line [console</td>
<td>vty] line-number`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>line console 0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Restricts incoming and outgoing connections between a particular virtual terminal line (into a device) and the addresses in an access list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`access-class access-list-number {in</td>
<td>out}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# <code>access-class 10 in</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# <code>end</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>show running-config</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface

This section describes how to apply IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to control access to an interface:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. ip access-group {access-list-number | name} {in | out}
4. end
5. show running-config
6. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Identifies a specific interface for configuration, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Controls access to the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip access-group {access-list-number</td>
<td>name} {in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Displays the access list configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Creating Named MAC Extended ACLs

You can filter non-IPv4 traffic on a VLAN or on a Layer 2 interface by using MAC addresses and named MAC extended ACLs. The procedure is similar to that of configuring other extended named ACLs.

Follow these steps to create a named MAC extended ACL:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. mac access-list extended name
4. {deny | permit} {any | host source MAC address | source MAC address mask} {any | host destination MAC address | destination MAC address mask} [type mask | isap lsap mask | aarp | amber | dec-spanning | decnet-iv | diagnostic | dsm | etype-6000 | etype-8042 | lat | lavc-sca | mop-console | mop-dump | msdos | mumps | netbios | vines-echo | vines-ip | xns-idp | 0-65535] [cos cos]
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mac access-list extended name</td>
<td>Defines an extended MAC access list using a name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# mac access-list extended mac1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{deny</td>
<td>permit} {any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Device# copy running-config startup-config
Applying a MAC ACL to a Layer 2 Interface

Follow these steps to apply a MAC access list to control access to a Layer 2 interface:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id

---

**Command or Action**

- *mask* | *aarp* | *amber* | *dec-spanning* | *decnet-iv* | *diagnostic*
- *dsm* | *etype-6000* | *etype-8042* | *lat* | *lavc-sca*
- *mop-console* | *mop-dump* | *msdos* | *mumps* | *netbios* | *vines-echo* | *vines-ip* | *xns-idp* | *0-65535* | *[cos cos]*

**Purpose**

and *any* destination MAC address, destination MAC address with a mask, or a specific destination MAC address.

(Optional) You can also enter these options:

- *type mask*—An arbitrary EtherType number of a packet with Ethernet II or SNAP encapsulation in decimal, hexadecimal, or octal with optional mask of *don’t care* bits applied to the EtherType before testing for a match.
- *lsap lsap mask*—An LSAP number of a packet with IEEE 802.2 encapsulation in decimal, hexadecimal, or octal with optional mask of *don’t care* bits.
- *aarp* | *amber* | *dec-spanning* | *decnet-iv* | *diagnostic* | *dsm* | *etype-6000* | *etype-8042* | *lat* | *lavc-sca* | *mop-console* | *mop-dump* | *msdos* | *mumps* | *netbios* | *vines-echo* | *vines-ip* | *xns-idp*—A non-IP protocol.
- *cos cos*—An IEEE 802.1Q cost of service number from 0 to 7 used to set priority.

---

**Step 5**

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config-ext-macl)# *end*

**Returns to privileged EXEC mode.**

**Step 6**

**show running-config**

**Example:**

Device# *show running-config*

**Verifies your entries.**

**Step 7**

**copy running-config startup-config**

**Example:**

Device# *copy running-config startup-config*

**(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.**

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Identifies a specific interface, and enter interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical Layer 2 interface (port ACL).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> mac access-group {name} {in}</td>
<td>Controls access to the specified interface by using the MAC access list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Port ACLs are supported in the inbound directions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# mac access-group mac1 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> show mac access-group [interface interface-id]</td>
<td>Displays the MAC access list applied to the interface or all Layer 2 interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show mac access-group interface gigabitethernet1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 8

**copy running-config startup-config**

*(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.*

**Example:**

Device# copy running-config startup-config

After receiving a packet, the switch checks it against the inbound ACL. If the ACL permits it, the switch continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the switch discards it. When you apply an undefined ACL to an interface, the switch acts as if the ACL has not been applied and permits all packets. Remember this behavior if you use undefined ACLs for network security.

## Configuring VLAN Maps

To create a VLAN map and apply it to one or more VLANs, perform these steps:

### Before you begin

Create the standard or extended IPv4 ACLs or named MAC extended ACLs that you want to apply to the VLAN.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `vlan access-map name [number]`
2. `match {ip | mac} address {name | number} [name | number]`
3. Enter one of the following commands to specify an IP packet or a non-IP packet (with only a known MAC address) and to match the packet against one or more ACLs (standard or extended):
   - `action { forward }`
     - Device(config-access-map)# action forward
   - `action { drop }`
     - Device(config-access-map)# action drop
4. `vlan filter mapname vlan-list list`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** vlan access-map name [number] | Creates a VLAN map, and give it a name and (optionally) a number. The number is the sequence number of the entry within the map.  
When you create VLAN maps with the same name, numbers are assigned sequentially in increments of 10. When modifying or deleting maps, you can enter the number of the map entry that you want to modify or delete.  
VLAN maps do not use the specific permit or deny keywords. To deny a packet by using VLAN maps, create an ACL that would match the packet, and set the action to drop. A permit in the ACL counts as a match. A deny in the ACL means no match.  
Entering this command changes to access-map configuration mode. |
| Example: Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20 |
| **Step 2** match {ip | mac} address {name | number} [name | number] | Match the packet (using either the IP or MAC address) against one or more standard or extended access lists. Note that packets are only matched against access lists of the correct protocol type. IP packets are matched against standard or extended IP access lists. Non-IP packets are only matched against named MAC extended access lists.  
**Note** If the VLAN map is configured with a match clause for a type of packet (IP or MAC) and the map action is drop, all packets that match the type are dropped. If the VLAN map has no match clause, and the configured action is drop, all IP and Layer 2 packets are dropped. |
| Example: Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip2 |
| **Step 3** Enter one of the following commands to specify an IP packet or a non-IP packet (with only a known MAC address) and to match the packet against one or more ACLs (standard or extended):  
• action { forward}  
Device(config-access-map)# action forward  
• action { drop}  
Device(config-access-map)# action drop | Sets the action for the map entry. |
| **Step 4** vlan filter mapname vlan-list list | Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs. |
| Example: | |
Creating a VLAN Map

Each VLAN map consists of an ordered series of entries. Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to create, add to, or delete a VLAN map entry:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. vlan access-map name [number]
3. match {ip | mac} address {name | number} [name | number]
4. action {drop | forward}
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>vlan access-map name [number]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Creates a VLAN map, and give it a name and (optionally) a number. The number is the sequence number of the entry within the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you create VLAN maps with the same name, numbers are assigned sequentially in increments of 10. When modifying or deleting maps, you can enter the number of the map entry that you want to modify or delete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VLAN maps do not use the specific permit or deny keywords. To deny a packet by using VLAN maps, create an ACL that would match the packet, and set the action to drop. A permit in the ACL counts as a match. A deny in the ACL means no match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entering this command changes to access-map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>match {ip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Match the packet (using either the IP or MAC address) against one or more standard or extended access lists. Note that packets are only matched against access lists of the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN

To apply a VLAN map to one or more VLANs, perform these steps.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `vlan filter mapname vlan-list list`
4. `end`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### IPv4 ACLs: Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip2</code></td>
<td>correct protocol type. IP packets are matched against standard or extended IP access lists. Non-IP packets are only matched against named MAC extended access lists.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 4** `action {drop | forward}` | (Optional) Sets the action for the map entry. The default is to forward. |
| `Example:`                       |                                              |
| `Device(config-access-map)# action forward` |                                              |

| **Step 5** `end` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| `Example:`       |                                              |
| `Device(config-access-map)# end` |                                              |

| **Step 6** `show running-config` | Displays the access list configuration. |
| `Example:`                      |                                              |
| `Device# show running-config`  |                                              |

| **Step 7** `copy running-config startup-config` | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |
| `Example:`                                    |                                              |
| `Device# copy running-config startup-config` |                                              |
### Monitoring IPv4 ACLs

You can monitor IPv4 ACLs by displaying the ACLs that are configured on the switch, and displaying the ACLs that have been applied to interfaces and VLANs.

When you use the `ip access-group` interface configuration command to apply ACLs to a Layer 2 or 3 interface, you can display the access groups on the interface. You can also display the MAC ACLs applied to a Layer 2 interface. You can use the privileged EXEC commands as described in this table to display this information.

#### Table 51: Commands for Displaying Access Lists and Access Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`show access-lists [number</td>
<td>name]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`show ip access-lists [number</td>
<td>name]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Displays detailed configuration and status of an interface. If IP is enabled on the interface and ACLs have been applied by using the <code>ip access-group</code> interface configuration command, the access groups are included in the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config [interface interface-id]</code></td>
<td>Displays the contents of the configuration file for the switch or the specified interface, including all configured MAC and IP access lists and which access groups are applied to an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show mac access-group [interface interface-id]</code></td>
<td>Displays MAC access lists applied to all Layer 2 interfaces or the specified Layer 2 interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Examples for ACLs

Examples: Using Time Ranges with ACLs

This example shows how to verify after you configure time ranges for *workhours* and to configure January 1, 2006, as a company holiday.

```
Device# show time-range
Time-range entry: new_year_day_2003 (inactive)
    Absolute start 00:00 01 January 2006 end 23:59 01 January 2006
Time-range entry: workhours (inactive)
    Periodic weekdays 8:00 to 12:00
    Periodic weekdays 13:00 to 17:00
```

To apply a time range, enter the time-range name in an extended ACL that can implement time ranges. This example shows how to create and verify extended access list 188 that denies TCP traffic from any source to any destination during the defined holiday times and permits all TCP traffic during work hours.

```
Device(config)# access-list 188 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006
Device(config)# access-list 188 permit tcp any any time-range workhours
Device(config)# end
Device# show access-lists
Extended IP access list 188
  10 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006 (inactive)
  20 permit tcp any any time-range workhours (inactive)
```

This example uses named ACLs to permit and deny the same traffic.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended deny_access
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# ip access-list extended may_access
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any time-range workhours
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device# show ip access-lists
Extended IP access list lpip_default
  10 permit ip any any
Extended IP access list deny_access
  10 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006 (inactive)
Extended IP access list may_access
  10 permit tcp any any time-range workhours (inactive)
```

Examples: Including Comments in ACLs

You can use the `remark` keyword to include comments (remarks) about entries in any IP standard or extended ACL. The remarks make the ACL easier for you to understand and scan. Each remark line is limited to 100 characters.

The remark can go before or after a permit or deny statement. You should be consistent about where you put the remark so that it is clear which remark describes which permit or deny statement. For example, it would
be confusing to have some remarks before the associated permit or deny statements and some remarks after the associated statements.

To include a comment for IP numbered standard or extended ACLs, use the access-list access-list number remark remark global configuration command. To remove the remark, use the no form of this command.

In this example, the workstation that belongs to Jones is allowed access, and the workstation that belongs to Smith is not allowed access:

```
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Permit only Jones workstation through
Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 171.69.2.88
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Do not allow Smith through
Device(config)# access-list 1 deny 171.69.3.13
```

For an entry in a named IP ACL, use the remark access-list configuration command. To remove the remark, use the no form of this command.

In this example, the Jones subnet is not allowed to use outbound Telnet:

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended telnetting
Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark Do not allow Jones subnet to telnet out
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp host 171.69.2.88 any eq telnet
```

### IPv4 ACL Configuration Examples

#### ACLs in a Small Networked Office

*Figure 16: Using Router ACLs to Control Traffic*

This shows a small networked office environment with routed Port 2 connected to Server A, containing benefits and other information that all employees can access, and routed Port 1 connected to Server B, containing
confidential payroll data. All users can access Server A, but Server B has restricted access.

Use router ACLs to do this in one of two ways:

• Create a standard ACL, and filter traffic coming to the server from Port 1.
• Create an extended ACL, and filter traffic coming from the server into Port 1.

**Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office**

This example uses a standard ACL to filter traffic coming into Server B from a port, permitting traffic only from Accounting’s source addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic coming out of routed Port 1 from the specified source address.

```
Device(config)# access-list 6 permit 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# end
Device(config)# how access-lists
Standard IP access list 6
   10 permit 172.20.128.64, wildcard bits 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 6 out
```

This example uses an extended ACL to filter traffic coming from Server B into a port, permitting traffic from any source address (in this case Server B) to only the Accounting destination addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic going into routed Port 1, permitting it to go only to the specified destination addresses. Note that with extended ACLs, you must enter the protocol (IP) before the source and destination information.

```
Device(config)# access-list 106 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# end
Device(config)# show access-lists
```
Extended IP access list 106
10 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 106 in

Example: Numbered ACLs

In this example, network 36.0.0.0 is a Class A network whose second octet specifies a subnet; that is, its subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. The third and fourth octets of a network 36.0.0.0 address specify a particular host. Using access list 2, the switch accepts one address on subnet 48 and reject all others on that subnet. The last line of the list shows that the switch accepts addresses on all other network 36.0.0.0 subnets. The ACL is applied to packets entering a port.

Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 36.48.0.3
Device(config)# access-list 2 deny 36.48.0.0 0.0.255.255
Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 36.0.0.0 0.255.255.255
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in

Examples: Extended ACLs

In this example, the first line permits any incoming TCP connections with destination ports greater than 1023. The second line permits incoming TCP connections to the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) port of host 128.88.1.2. The third line permits incoming ICMP messages for error feedback.

Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 gt 1023
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 128.88.1.2 eq 25
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit icmp any any
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in

In this example, suppose that you have a network connected to the Internet, and you want any host on the network to be able to form TCP connections to any host on the Internet. However, you do not want IP hosts to be able to form TCP connections to hosts on your network, except to the mail (SMTP) port of a dedicated mail host.

SMTP uses TCP port 25 on one end of the connection and a random port number on the other end. The same port numbers are used throughout the life of the connection. Mail packets coming in from the Internet have a destination port of 25. Because the secure system of the network always accepts mail connections on port 25, the incoming are separately controlled.

Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 23
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 25
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in

In this example, the network is a Class B network with the address 128.88.0.0, and the mail host address is 128.88.1.2. The established keyword is used only for the TCP to show an established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set, which show that the packet belongs to an existing connection. Gigabit Ethernet interface 1 on stack member 1 is the interface that connects the router to the Internet.
Examples: Named ACLs

Creating named standard and extended ACLs

This example creates a standard ACL named internet_filter and an extended ACL named marketing_group. The internet_filter ACL allows all traffic from the source address 1.2.3.4.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list standard Internet_filter
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 1.2.3.4
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

The marketing_group ACL allows any TCP Telnet traffic to the destination address and wildcard 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 and denies any other TCP traffic. It permits ICMP traffic, denies UDP traffic from any source to the destination address range 171.69.0.0 through 179.69.255.255 with a destination port less than 1024, denies any other IP traffic, and provides a log of the result.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended marketing_group
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq telnet
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny udp any 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 lt 1024
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip any any log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

The Internet_filter ACL is applied to outgoing traffic and the marketing_group ACL is applied to incoming traffic on a Layer 3 port.

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet3/0/2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 2.0.5.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip access-group Internet_filter out
Device(config-if)# ip access-group marketing_group in
```

Deleting individual ACEs from named ACLs

This example shows how you can delete individual ACEs from the named access list border-list:

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended border-list
Device(config-ext-nacl)# no permit ip host 10.1.1.3 any
```

Examples: Time Range Applied to an IP ACL

This example denies HTTP traffic on IP on Monday through Friday between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m (18:00). The example allows UDP traffic only on Saturday and Sunday from noon to 8:00 p.m. (20:00).
Examples: Configuring Commented IP ACL Entries

In this example of a numbered ACL, the workstation that belongs to Jones is allowed access, and the workstation that belongs to Smith is not allowed access:

Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Permit only Jones workstation through
Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 171.69.2.88
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Do not allow Smith workstation through
Device(config)# access-list 1 deny 171.69.3.13

In this example of a numbered ACL, the Winter and Smith workstations are not allowed to browse the web:

Device(config)# access-list 100 remark Do not allow Winter to browse the web
Device(config)# access-list 100 deny host 171.69.3.85 any eq www
Device(config)# access-list 100 remark Do not allow Smith to browse the web
Device(config)# access-list 100 deny host 171.69.3.13 any eq www

In this example of a named ACL, the Jones subnet is not allowed access:

Device(config)# ip access-list standard prevention
Device(config-std-nacl)# remark Do not allow Jones subnet through
Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255

In this example of a named ACL, the Jones subnet is not allowed to use outbound Telnet:

Device(config)# ip access-list extended telnetting
Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark Do not allow Jones subnet to telnet out
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 any eq telnet

Examples: ACL Logging

Two variations of logging are supported on router ACLs. The log keyword sends an informational logging message to the console about the packet that matches the entry; the log-input keyword includes the input interface in the log entry.

In this example, standard named access list stanl denies traffic from 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255, allows traffic from all other sources, and includes the log keyword.
Device(config)# ip access-list standard stan1
Device(config-standard-nacl)# deny 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 log
Device(config-standard-nacl)# permit any log
Device(config-standard-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group stan1 in
Device(config-if)# end
Device# show logging
Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 flushes, 0 overruns)
  Console logging: level debugging, 37 messages logged
  Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged
  Buffer logging: level debugging, 37 messages logged
  File logging: disabled
  Trap logging: level debugging, 39 message lines logged
Log Buffer (4096 bytes):
00:00:48: NTP: authentication delay calculation problems
<output truncated>
00:09:34:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 permitted 0.0.0.0 1 packet
00:09:59:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 denied 10.1.1.15 1 packet
00:10:11:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 permitted 0.0.0.0 1 packet
This example is a named extended access list ext1 that permits ICMP packets from any source to 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 and denies all UDP packets.

Device(config)# ip access-list extended ext1
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit icmp any 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny udp any any log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# ip access-group ext1 in
This is an example of a log for an extended ACL:
01:24:23:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 permitted icmp 10.1.1.15 -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 1 packet
01:25:14:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 permitted icmp 10.1.1.15 -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 7 packets
01:26:12:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 denied udp 0.0.0.0(0) -> 255.255.255.255(0), 1 packet
01:31:33:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 denied udp 0.0.0.0(0) -> 255.255.255.255(0), 8 packets
Note that all logging entries for IP ACLs start with %SEC-6-IPACCESSLOG with minor variations in format depending on the kind of ACL and the access entry that has been matched.
This is an example of an output message when the log-input keyword is entered:
00:04:21:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list inputlog permitted icmp 10.1.1.10 (Vlan1 0001.42ef.a400) -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 1 packet
A log message for the same sort of packet using the log keyword does not include the input interface information:
Configuration Examples for ACLs and VLAN Maps

Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Deny a Packet

This example shows how to create an ACL and a VLAN map to deny a packet. In the first map, any packets that match the ip1 ACL (TCP packets) would be dropped. You first create the ip1 ACL to permit any TCP packet and no other packets. Because there is a match clause for IP packets in the VLAN map, the default action is to drop any IP packet that does not match any of the match clauses.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended ip1
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip1
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
```

Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Permit a Packet

This example shows how to create a VLAN map to permit a packet. ACL ip2 permits UDP packets and any packets that match the ip2 ACL are forwarded. In this map, any IP packets that did not match any of the previous ACLs (that is, packets that are not TCP packets or UDP packets) would get dropped.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended ip2
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit udp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip2
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
```

Example: Default Action of Dropping IP Packets and Forwarding MAC Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for IP packets and a default action of forward for MAC packets. Used with standard ACL 101 and extended named access lists `igmp-match` and `tcp-match`, the map will have the following results:

- Forward all UDP packets
- Drop all IGMP packets
- Forward all TCP packets
- Drop all other IP packets
- Forward all non-IP packets

```
Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any
```
Example: Default Action of Dropping MAC Packets and Forwarding IP Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for MAC packets and a default action of forward for IP packets. Used with MAC extended access lists good-hosts and good-protocols, the map will have the following results:

- Forward MAC packets from hosts 0000.0c00.0111 and 0000.0c00.0211
- Forward MAC packets with decnet-iv or vines-ip protocols
- Drop all other non-IP packets
- Forward all IP packets

Example: Default Action of Dropping All Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for all packets (IP and non-IP). Used with access lists tcp-match and good-hosts from Examples 2 and 3, the map will have the following results:

- Forward all TCP packets
- Forward MAC packets from hosts 0000.0c00.0111 and 0000.0c00.0211
- Drop all other IP packets
- Drop all other MAC packets
Configuration Examples for Using VLAN Maps in Your Network

Example: Wiring Closet Configuration

Figure 17: Wiring Closet Configuration

In a wiring closet configuration, routing might not be enabled on the switch. In this configuration, the switch can still support a VLAN map and a QoS classification ACL. Assume that Host X and Host Y are in different VLANs and are connected to wiring closet switches A and C. Traffic from Host X to Host Y is eventually being routed by Switch B, a Layer 3 switch with routing enabled. Traffic from Host X to Host Y can be access-controlled at the traffic entry point.

Switch A.

If you do not want HTTP traffic switched from Host X to Host Y, you can configure a VLAN map on Switch A to drop all HTTP traffic from Host X (IP address 10.1.1.32) to Host Y (IP address 10.1.1.34) at Switch A and not bridge it to Switch B.

First, define the IP access list http that permits (matches) any TCP traffic on the HTTP port.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended http
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp host 10.1.1.32 host 10.1.1.34 eq www
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

Next, create VLAN access map map2 so that traffic that matches the http access list is dropped and all other IP traffic is forwarded.

```
Device(config)# vlan access-map map2 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address http
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# ip access-list extended match_all
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```
Example: Restricting Access to a Server on Another VLAN

You can restrict access to a server on another VLAN. For example, server 10.1.1.100 in VLAN 10 needs to have access denied to these hosts:

- Hosts in subnet 10.1.2.0/8 in VLAN 20 should not have access.
- Hosts 10.1.1.4 and 10.1.1.8 in VLAN 10 should not have access.

Example: Denying Access to a Server on Another VLAN

This example shows how to deny access to a server on another VLAN by creating the VLAN map SERVER1 that denies access to hosts in subnet 10.1.2.0/8, host 10.1.1.4, and host 10.1.1.8 and permits other IP traffic. The final step is to apply the map SERVER1 to VLAN 10.

Define the IP ACL that will match the correct packets.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended SERVER1_ACL
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip 10.1.2.0 0.0.0.255 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 10.1.1.4 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 10.1.1.8 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

Define a VLAN map using this ACL that will drop IP packets that match SERVER1_ACL and forward IP packets that do not match the ACL.
Device(config)# vlan access-map SERVER1_MAP
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address SERVER1_ACL
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config)# vlan access-map SERVER1_MAP 20
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit

Apply the VLAN map to VLAN 10.

Device(config)# vlan filter SERVER1_MAP vlan-list 10

Configuration Examples for ACLs

Feature Information for IPv4 ACLs

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 ACLs</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using ACLs. Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through a router or switch and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IPv6 ACLs Overview

You can filter IP Version 6 (IPv6) traffic by creating IPv6 access control lists (ACLs) and applying them to interfaces similar to how you create and apply IP Version 4 (IPv4) named ACLs. You can also create and apply input router ACLs to filter Layer 3 management traffic when the switch is running IP base and LAN base feature sets.

A switch supports three types of IPv6 ACLs:

- IPv6 router ACLs are supported on outbound or inbound traffic on Layer 3 interfaces, which can be routed ports, switch virtual interfaces (SVIs), or Layer 3 EtherChannels. IPv6 router ACLs apply only to IPv6 packets that are routed.

- IPv6 port ACLs are supported on outbound and inbound Layer 2 interfaces. IPv6 port ACLs are applied to all IPv6 packets entering the interface.

- VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps access-control all packets in a VLAN. You can use VLAN maps to filter traffic between devices in the same VLAN. ACL VLAN maps are applied on L2 VLANs. VLAN maps are configured to provide access control based on Layer 3 addresses for IPv6. Unsupported protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses using Ethernet ACEs. After a VLAN map is applied to a VLAN, all packets entering the VLAN are checked against the VLAN map.

The switch supports VLAN ACLs (VLAN maps) for IPv6 traffic.

You can apply both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs to an interface. As with IPv4 ACLs, IPv6 port ACLs take precedence over router ACLs.
Switch Stacks and IPv6 ACLs

The active switch supports IPv6 ACLs in hardware and distributes the IPv6 ACLs to the stack members.

If a standby switch takes over as the active switch, it distributes the ACL configuration to all stack members. The member switches sync up the configuration distributed by the new active switch and flush out entries that are not required.

When an ACL is modified, attached to, or detached from an interface, the active switch distributes the change to all stack members.

ACL Precedence

When VLAN maps, Port ACLs, and router ACLs are configured on the same switch, the filtering precedence, from greatest to least for ingress traffic is port ACL, VLAN map, and then router ACL. For egress traffic, the filtering precedence is router ACL, VLAN map, and then port ACL.

The following examples describe simple use cases:

• When both an input port ACL and a VLAN map are applied, incoming packets received on ports with a port ACL applied are filtered by the port ACL. Other packets are filtered by the VLAN map
• When an input router ACL and input port ACL exist in a switch virtual interface (SVI), incoming packets received on ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
• When an output router ACL and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
• When a VLAN map, input router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.
• When a VLAN map, output router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.

VLAN Maps

VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps are used to control network traffic within a VLAN. You can apply VLAN maps to all packets that are bridged within a VLAN in the switch or switch stack. VACLs are strictly for security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VACLs are not defined by direction (ingress or egress).

All non-IP protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses and Ethertype using MAC VLAN maps. (IP traffic is not access controlled by MAC VLAN maps.) You can enforce VLAN maps only on packets going through the switch; you cannot enforce VLAN maps on traffic between hosts on a hub or on another switch connected to this switch.

With VLAN maps, forwarding of packets is permitted or denied, based on the action specified in the map.
This figure shows how a VLAN map is applied to prevent a specific type of traffic from Host A in VLAN 10 from being forwarded. You can apply only one VLAN map to a VLAN.

Interactions with Other Features and Switches

- If an IPv6 router ACL is configured to deny a packet, the packet is not routed. A copy of the packet is sent to the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) queue to generate an ICMP unreachable message for the frame.

- If a bridged frame is to be dropped due to a port ACL, the frame is not bridged.

- You can create both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs on a switch or switch stack, and you can apply both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs to the same interface. Each ACL must have a unique name; an error message appears if you try to use a name that is already configured.

You use different commands to create IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs and to attach IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs to the same Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface. If you use the wrong command to attach an ACL (for example, an IPv4 command to attach an IPv6 ACL), you receive an error message.

- You cannot use MAC ACLs to filter IPv6 frames. MAC ACLs can only filter non-IP frames.

- If the hardware memory is full, packets are dropped on the interface and an unload error message is logged.

Restrictions for IPv6 ACLs

With IPv4, you can configure standard and extended numbered IP ACLs, named IP ACLs, and MAC ACLs. IPv6 supports only named ACLs.

The switch supports most Cisco IOS-supported IPv6 ACLs with some exceptions:

- The switch does not support matching on these keywords: `routing header`, and `undetermined-transport`.

- The switch does not support reflexive ACLs (the `reflect` keyword).

- This release supports port ACLs, router ACLs and VLAN ACLs (VLAN maps) for IPv6.

- The switch does not apply MAC-based ACLs on IPv6 frames.

- When configuring an ACL, there is no restriction on keywords entered in the ACL, regardless of whether or not they are supported on the platform. When you apply the ACL to an interface that requires hardware forwarding (physical ports or SVIs), the switch checks to determine whether or not the ACL can be supported on the interface. If not, attaching the ACL is rejected.
If an ACL is applied to an interface and you attempt to add an access control entry (ACE) with an unsupported keyword, the switch does not allow the ACE to be added to the ACL that is currently attached to the interface.

IPv6 ACLs on the switch have these characteristics:

- Fragmented frames (the fragments keyword as in IPv4) are supported
- The same statistics supported in IPv4 are supported for IPv6 ACLs.
- If the switch runs out of hardware space, the packets associated with the ACL are dropped on the interface.
- Logging is supported for router ACLs, but not for port ACLs.
- The switch supports IPv6 address-matching for a full range of prefix-lengths.

Default Configuration for IPv6 ACLs

The default IPv6 ACL configuration is as follows:

```
Switch# show access-lists preauth_ipv6_acl
IPv6 access list preauth_ipv6_acl (per-user)
permit udp any any eq domain sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq domain sequence 20
permit icmp any any nd-ns sequence 30
permit icmp any any nd-na sequence 40
permit icmp any any router-solicitation sequence 50
permit icmp any any router-advertisement sequence 60
permit icmp any any redirect sequence 70
permit udp any eq 547 any eq 546 sequence 80
permit udp any eq 546 any eq 547 sequence 90
deny ipv6 any any sequence 100
```

Configuring IPv6 ACLs

To filter IPv6 traffic, perform this procedure:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ipv6 access-list list-name
4. {deny | permit} protocol {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host source-ipv6-address { [ operator [port-number]] | destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host destination-ipv6-address [operator [port-number]] [dscp value] [fragments] [log] [log-input][sequence value] [time-range name]
5. {deny | permit} tcp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host source-ipv6-address [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host destination-ipv6-address [operator [port-number]] [ack] [dscp value] [established] [fin] [log] [log-input] [neq |port | protocol]] [psh] [range [port | protocol]] [rst] [sequence value] [syn] [time-range name] [urg]
6. {deny | permit} udp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host source-ipv6-address [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any} host destination-ipv6-address [operator
IPv6 ACLs

Configuring IPv6 ACLs

```
7. (deny | permit) icmp [source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address] [operator [port-number]] [destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address] [operator [port-number]] [icmp-type [icmp-code] | icmp-message] [dscp value] [log] [log-input] [sequence value] [time-range name]
```

8. end

9. show ipv6 access-list

10. show running-config

11. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: Device> enable

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

- Enter your password if prompted.

| **Step 2** | configure terminal |
Example: Device# configure terminal

Enters global configuration mode.

| **Step 3** | ipv6 access-list list-name |
Example: Device(config)# ipv6 access-list example_acl_list

Defines an IPv6 ACL name, and enters IPv6 access list configuration mode.

| **Step 4** | (deny | permit) protocol [source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address] [operator [port-number]] [destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address] [operator [port-number]] [dscp value] [fragments] [log] [log-input] [sequence value] [time-range name] |

Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched. These are the conditions:

- For protocol, enter the name or number of an IP: ahp, esp, icmp, ipv6, pcp, stcp, tcp, or udp, or an integer in the range 0 to 255 representing an IPv6 protocol number.

- The source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length or destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length is the source or destination IPv6 network or class of networks for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal and using 16-bit values between colons (see RFC 2373).

- Enter any as an abbreviation for the IPv6 prefix ::/0.

- For host source-ipv6-address or destination-ipv6-address, enter the source or destination IPv6 host address for which to set deny conditions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) For operator, specify an operand that compares the source or destination ports of the specified protocol. Operands are <code>lt</code> (less than), <code>gt</code> (greater than), <code>eq</code> (equal), <code>neq</code> (not equal), and <code>range</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the operator follows the <code>source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> argument, it must match the source port. If the operator follows the <code>destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> argument, it must match the destination port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) The <code>port-number</code> is a decimal number from 0 to 65535 or the name of a TCP or UDP port. You can use TCP port names only when filtering TCP. You can use UDP port names only when filtering UDP.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <code>dscp</code> value to match a differentiated services code point value against the traffic class value in the Traffic Class field of each IPv6 packet header. The acceptable range is from 0 to 63.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <code>fragments</code> to check noninitial fragments. This keyword is visible only if the protocol is ipv6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <code>log</code> to cause an logging message to be sent to the console about the packet that matches the entry. Enter <code>log-input</code> to include the input interface in the log entry. Logging is supported only for router ACLs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <code>sequence</code> value to specify the sequence number for the access list statement. The acceptable range is from 1 to 4,294,967,295.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <code>time-range</code> name to specify the time range that applies to the deny or permit statement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 5

```plaintext
{deny | permit} tcp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] [ack] [dscp value] [established] [fin] [log] [log-input] [neq [port | protocol]] [psh] [range [port | protocol]] [rst] [sequence value] [syn] [time-range name] [urg]
```

(Optional) Define a TCP access list and the access conditions.

Enter `tcp` for Transmission Control Protocol. The parameters are the same as those described in Step 3a, with these additional optional parameters:

- `established`: An established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• fin: Finished bit set; no more data from sender.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• neq { port [protocol]}: Matches only packets that are not on a given port number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• psh—Push function bit set.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• range { port [protocol]}: Matches only packets in the port number range.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• rst: Reset bit set.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• syn: Synchronize bit set.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• urg: Urgent pointer bit set.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 6**

```
{deny | permit} udp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address} [dscp value] [log] [log-input] [neq {port | protocol}] [range {port | protocol}] [sequence value] [time-range name]
```

(Optional) Define a UDP access list and the access conditions.

Enter `udp` for the User Datagram Protocol. The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP, except that the `[operator [port]]` port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the established parameter is not valid for UDP.

**Step 7**

```
{deny | permit} icmp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] [icmp-type [icmp-code] | icmp-message] [dscp value] [log] [log-input] [sequence value] [time-range name]
```

(Optional) Define an ICMP access list and the access conditions.

Enter `icmp` for Internet Control Message Protocol. The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in Step 1, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings:

- `icmp-type`: Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255.
- `icmp-code`: Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255.
- `icmp-message`: Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name. To see a list of ICMP message type names and code names, use the ? key or see command reference for this release.

**Step 8**

```
end
```

Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 9**

```
show ipv6 access-list
```

Verify the access list configuration.

**Step 10**

```
show running-config
```

Verifies your entries.

**Example:**

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Attaching IPv6 ACLs to an Interface

You can apply an ACL to outbound or inbound traffic on Layer 3 interfaces, or to inbound traffic on Layer 2 interfaces. You can also apply ACLs only to inbound management traffic on Layer 3 interfaces.

Follow these steps to control access to an interface.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `no switchport`
5. `ipv6 address ipv6-address`
6. `ipv6 traffic-filter access-list-name {in | out}`
7. `end`
8. `show running-config`
9. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code> Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code> Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code> Identify a Layer 2 interface (for port ACLs) or Layer 3 interface (for router ACLs) on which to apply an access list, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <em>no switchport</em></td>
<td>If applying a router ACL, this changes the interface from Layer 2 mode (the default) to Layer 3 mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> <em>ipv6 address ipv6-address</em></td>
<td>Configure an IPv6 address on a Layer 3 interface (for router ACLs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> *ipv6 traffic-filter access-list-name {in</td>
<td>out}*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> <em>end</em></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> <em>show running-config</em></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> <em>copy running-config startup-config</em></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring a VLAN Map

To create a VLAN map and apply it to one or more VLANs, perform these steps:

**Before you begin**

Create the IPv6 ACL that you want to apply to the VLAN.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. *enable*
2. *configure terminal*
3. *vlan access-map name [number]*
4. *match {ip | ipv6 | mac} address {name | number} [name | number]*
5. Enter one of the following commands to specify an IP packet or a non-IP packet (with only a known MAC address) and to match the packet against one or more ACLs:
   - *action { forward}*
     
     Device(config-access-map)# action forward
   - *action { drop}*

---

*IPv6 ACLs*
Device(config-access-map)# action drop

6. `vlan filter mapname vlan-list list`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>vlan access-map name [number]</code></td>
<td>Creates a VLAN map, and give it a name and (optionally) a number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The number is the sequence number of the entry within the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When you create VLAN maps with the same name, numbers are assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sequentially in increments of 10. When modifying or deleting maps,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you can enter the number of the map entry that you want to modify or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>delete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VLAN maps do not use the specific permit or deny keywords. To deny a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>packet by using VLAN maps, create an ACL that would match the packet,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and set the action to drop. A permit in the ACL counts as a match. A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deny in the ACL means no match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Entering this command changes to access-map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>`match {ip</td>
<td>ipv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>number]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-access-map)# match ipv6 address ip_net</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Match the packet against one or more access lists. Note that packets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>are only matched against access lists of the correct protocol type. IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>packets are matched against IP access lists. Non-IP packets are only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>matched against named MAC access lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If the VLAN map is configured with a match clause for a type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>of packet (IP or MAC) and the map action is drop, all packets that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>match the type are dropped. If the VLAN map has no match clause, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the configured action is drop, all IP and Layer 2 packets are dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the action for the map entry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN

To apply a VLAN map to one or more VLANs, perform these steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. vlan filter mapname vlan-list list
3. end
4. show running-config
5. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>vlan filter mapname vlan-list list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan filter map 1 vlan-list 20-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs. The list can be a single VLAN ID (22), a consecutive list (10-22), or a string of VLAN IDs (12, 22, 30). Spaces around the comma and hyphen are optional.
Monitoring IPv6 ACLs

You can display information about all configured access lists, all IPv6 access lists, or a specific access list by using one or more of the privileged EXEC commands shown in the table below:

Table 53: show ACL commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show access-lists</td>
<td>Displays all access lists configured on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ipv6 access-list [access-list-name]</td>
<td>Displays all configured IPv6 access lists or the access list specified by name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show vlan access-map [map-name]</td>
<td>Displays VLAN access map configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show vlan filter [access-map access-map</td>
<td>vlan vlan-id]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an example of the output from the show access-lists privileged EXEC command. The output shows all access lists that are configured on the switch or switch stack.

Switch # show access-lists
Extended IP access list hello
  10 permit ip any any
IPv6 access list ipv6
  permit ipv6 any any any sequence 10

This is an example of the output from the show ipv6 access-list privileged EXEC command. The output shows only IPv6 access lists configured on the switch or switch stack.

Switch# show ipv6 access-list
IPv6 access list inbound
  permit tcp any any eq bgp (8 matches) sequence 10
  permit tcp any any eq telnet (15 matches) sequence 20
  permit udp any any sequence 30
IPv6 access list outbound
   deny udp any any sequence 10
   deny tcp any any eq telnet sequence 20

This is an example of the output from the show vlan access-map privileged EXEC command. The output shows VLAN access map information.

Switch# show vlan access-map
Vlan access-map "m1" 10
   Match clauses:
      ipv6 address: ip2
   Action: drop

Feature Information for IPv6 ACLs

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 ACLs</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>You can filter IPv6 traffic by creating IPv6 ACLs and applying them to interfaces similar to how you create and apply IPv4 named ACLs. You can also create and apply input router ACLs to filter Layer 3 management traffic when the switch is running IP base and LAN base feature sets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Downloadable ACLs</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IPv6 Downloadable ACL (dACL) is supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information About DHCP

DHCP Server

The DHCP server assigns IP addresses from specified address pools on a switch or router to DHCP clients and manages them. If the DHCP server cannot give the DHCP client the requested configuration parameters from its database, it forwards the request to one or more secondary DHCP servers defined by the network administrator. The switch can act as a DHCP server.

DHCP Relay Agent

A DHCP relay agent is a Layer 3 device that forwards DHCP packets between clients and servers. Relay agents forward requests and replies between clients and servers when they are not on the same physical subnet. Relay agent forwarding is different from the normal Layer 2 forwarding, in which IP datagrams are switched transparently between networks. Relay agents receive DHCP messages and generate new DHCP messages to send on output interfaces.

DHCP Snooping

DHCP snooping is a DHCP security feature that provides network security by filtering untrusted DHCP messages and by building and maintaining a DHCP snooping binding database, also referred to as a DHCP snooping binding table.

DHCP snooping acts like a firewall between untrusted hosts and DHCP servers. You use DHCP snooping to differentiate between untrusted interfaces connected to the end user and trusted interfaces connected to the DHCP server or another switch.
For DHCP snooping to function properly, all DHCP servers must be connected to the switch through trusted interfaces.

An untrusted DHCP message is a message that is received through an untrusted interface. By default, the switch considers all interfaces untrusted. So, the switch must be configured to trust some interfaces to use DHCP Snooping. When you use DHCP snooping in a service-provider environment, an untrusted message is sent from a device that is not in the service-provider network, such as a customer’s switch. Messages from unknown devices are untrusted because they can be sources of traffic attacks.

The DHCP snooping binding database has the MAC address, the IP address, the lease time, the binding type, the VLAN number, and the interface information that corresponds to the local untrusted interfaces of a switch. It does not have information regarding hosts interconnected with a trusted interface.

In a service-provider network, an example of an interface you might configure as trusted is one connected to a port on a device in the same network. An example of an untrusted interface is one that is connected to an untrusted interface in the network or to an interface on a device that is not in the network.

When a switch receives a packet on an untrusted interface and the interface belongs to a VLAN in which DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch compares the source MAC address and the DHCP client hardware address. If the addresses match (the default), the switch forwards the packet. If the addresses do not match, the switch drops the packet.

The switch drops a DHCP packet when one of these situations occurs:

- A packet from a DHCP server, such as a DHCPOFFER, DHCPACK, DHCPNAK, or DHCPLEASEQUERY packet, is received from outside the network or firewall.
- A packet is received on an untrusted interface, and the source MAC address and the DHCP client hardware address do not match.
- The switch receives a DHCPRELEASE or DHCPDECLINE broadcast message that has a MAC address in the DHCP snooping binding database, but the interface information in the binding database does not match the interface on which the message was received.
- A DHCP relay agent forwards a DHCP packet that includes a relay-agent IP address that is not 0.0.0.0, or the relay agent forwards a packet that includes option-82 information to an untrusted port.

If the switch is an aggregation switch supporting DHCP snooping and is connected to an edge switch that is inserting DHCP option-82 information, the switch drops packets with option-82 information when packets are received on an untrusted interface. If DHCP snooping is enabled and packets are received on a trusted port, the aggregation switch does not learn the DHCP snooping bindings for connected devices and cannot build a complete DHCP snooping binding database.

When an aggregation switch can be connected to an edge switch through an untrusted interface and you enter the `ip dhcp snooping information option allow-untrusted` global configuration command, the aggregation switch accepts packets with option-82 information from the edge switch. The aggregation switch learns the bindings for hosts connected through an untrusted switch interface. The DHCP security features, such as dynamic ARP inspection or IP source guard, can still be enabled on the aggregation switch while the switch receives packets with option-82 information on untrusted input interfaces to which hosts are connected. The port on the edge switch that connects to the aggregation switch must be configured as a trusted interface.
Option-82 Data Insertion

In residential, metropolitan Ethernet-access environments, DHCP can centrally manage the IP address assignments for a large number of subscribers. When the DHCP option-82 feature is enabled on the switch, a subscriber device is identified by the switch port through which it connects to the network (in addition to its MAC address). Multiple hosts on the subscriber LAN can be connected to the same port on the access switch and are uniquely identified.

The DHCP option-82 feature is supported only when DHCP snooping is globally enabled on the VLANs to which subscriber devices using option-82 are assigned.

The following illustration shows a metropolitan Ethernet network in which a centralized DHCP server assigns IP addresses to subscribers connected to the switch at the access layer. Because the DHCP clients and their associated DHCP server do not reside on the same IP network or subnet, a DHCP relay agent (the Catalyst switch) is configured with a helper address to enable broadcast forwarding and to transfer DHCP messages between the clients and the server.

Figure 20: DHCP Relay Agent in a Metropolitan Ethernet Network

When you enable the DHCP snooping information option 82 on the switch, the following sequence of events occurs:

- The host (DHCP client) generates a DHCP request and broadcasts it on the network.
- When the switch receives the DHCP request, it adds the option-82 information in the packet. By default, the remote-ID suboption is the switch MAC address, and the circuit-ID suboption is the port identifier, `vlan-mod-port`, from which the packet is received. You can configure the remote ID and circuit ID.
- If the IP address of the relay agent is configured, the switch adds this IP address in the DHCP packet.
- The switch forwards the DHCP request that includes the option-82 field to the DHCP server.
- The DHCP server receives the packet. If the server is option-82-capable, it can use the remote ID, the circuit ID, or both to assign IP addresses and implement policies, such as restricting the number of IP addresses that can be assigned to a single remote ID or circuit ID. Then the DHCP server echoes the option-82 field in the DHCP reply.
- The DHCP server unicasts the reply to the switch if the request was relayed to the server by the switch. The switch verifies that it originally inserted the option-82 data by inspecting the remote ID and possibly the circuit ID fields. The switch removes the option-82 field and forwards the packet to the switch port that connects to the DHCP client that sent the DHCP request.
In the default suboption configuration, when the described sequence of events occurs, the values in these fields do not change (see the illustration, *Suboption Packet Formats*):

- Circuit-ID suboption fields
  - Suboption type
  - Length of the suboption type
  - Circuit-ID type
  - Length of the circuit-ID type
- Remote-ID suboption fields
  - Suboption type
  - Length of the suboption type
  - Remote-ID type
  - Length of the remote-ID type

In the port field of the circuit ID suboption, the port numbers start at 3. For example, on a switch with 24 10/100/1000 ports and four small form-factor pluggable (SFP) module slots, port 3 is the Gigabit Ethernet 1/0/1 port, port 4 is the Gigabit Ethernet 1/0/2 port, and so forth. Port 27 is the SFP module slot Gigabit Ethernet1/0/25, and so forth.

The illustration, *Suboption Packet Formats*, shows the packet formats for the remote-ID suboption and the circuit-ID suboption when the default suboption configuration is used. For the circuit-ID suboption, the module number corresponds to the switch number in the stack. The switch uses the packet formats when you globally enable DHCP snooping and enter the `ip dhcp snooping information option format remote-id` global configuration command.

*Figure 21: Suboption Packet Formats*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit ID Suboption Frame Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suboption type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote ID Suboption Frame Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suboption type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The illustration, *User-Configured Suboption Packet Formats*, shows the packet formats for user-configured remote-ID and circuit-ID suboptions. The switch uses these packet formats when DHCP snooping is globally enabled and when the `ip dhcp snooping information option format remote-id` global configuration command.
and the `ip dhcp snooping vlan information option format-type circuit-id string` interface configuration command are entered.

The values for these fields in the packets change from the default values when you configure the remote-ID and circuit-ID suboptions:

- **Circuit-ID suboption fields**
  - The circuit-ID type is 1.
  - The length values are variable, depending on the length of the string that you configure.

- **Remote-ID suboption fields**
  - The remote-ID type is 1.
  - The length values are variable, depending on the length of the string that you configure.

*Figure 22: User-Configured Suboption Packet Formats*

**Circuit ID Suboption Frame Format (for user-configured string):**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption Type</th>
<th>Circuit ID Type</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 N+2</td>
<td>1 N</td>
<td>ASCII Circuit ID string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

1 byte 1 byte 1 byte 1 byte N bytes (N = 3-63)

**Remote ID Suboption Frame Format (for user-configured string):**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption Type</th>
<th>Remote ID Type</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 N+2</td>
<td>1 N</td>
<td>ASCII Remote ID string or hostname</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

1 byte 1 byte 1 byte 1 byte N bytes (N = 1-63)

---

**Cisco IOS DHCP Server Database**

During the DHCP-based autoconfiguration process, the designated DHCP server uses the Cisco IOS DHCP server database. It has IP addresses, address bindings, and configuration parameters, such as the boot file.

An address binding is a mapping between an IP address and a MAC address of a host in the Cisco IOS DHCP server database. You can manually assign the client IP address, or the DHCP server can allocate an IP address from a DHCP address pool. For more information about manual and automatic address bindings, see the “Configuring DHCP” chapter of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*.

For procedures to enable and configure the Cisco IOS DHCP server database, see the “DHCP Configuration Task List” section in the “Configuring DHCP” chapter of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*. 
DHCP Snooping Binding Database

When DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch uses the DHCP snooping binding database to store information about untrusted interfaces. The database can have up to 64,000 bindings.

Each database entry (binding) has an IP address, an associated MAC address, the lease time (in hexadecimal format), the interface to which the binding applies, and the VLAN to which the interface belongs. The database agent stores the bindings in a file at a configured location. At the end of each entry is a checksum that accounts for all the bytes from the start of the file through all the bytes associated with the entry. Each entry is 72 bytes, followed by a space and then the checksum value.

To keep the bindings when the switch reloads, you must use the DHCP snooping database agent. If the agent is disabled, dynamic ARP inspection or IP source guard is enabled, and the DHCP snooping binding database has dynamic bindings, the switch loses its connectivity. If the agent is disabled and only DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch does not lose its connectivity, but DHCP snooping might not prevent DHCP spoofing attacks.

When reloading, the switch reads the binding file to build the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch updates the file when the database changes.

When a switch learns of new bindings or when it loses bindings, the switch immediately updates the entries in the database. The switch also updates the entries in the binding file. The frequency at which the file is updated is based on a configurable delay, and the updates are batched. If the file is not updated in a specified time (set by the write-delay and abort-timeout values), the update stops.

This is the format of the file with bindings:

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<entry-1> <checksum-1>
<entry-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
<entry-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

Each entry in the file is tagged with a checksum value that the switch uses to verify the entries when it reads the file. The initial-checksum entry on the first line distinguishes entries associated with the latest file update from entries associated with a previous file update.

This is an example of a binding file:

```
2bb4c2a1
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
192.1.168.1 3 0003.47d8.c91f 2BB6488E Gi1/0/4 21ae5fbb
192.1.168.3 3 0003.44d6.c52f 2BB648EB Gi1/0/4 1bdb223f
192.1.168.2 3 0003.47d9.c8f1 2BB648AB Gi1/0/4 584a38f0
END
```

When the switch starts and the calculated checksum value equals the stored checksum value, the switch reads entries from the binding file and adds the bindings to its DHCP snooping binding database. The switch ignores an entry when one of these situations occurs:
• The switch reads the entry and the calculated checksum value does not equal the stored checksum value. The entry and the ones following it are ignored.

• An entry has an expired lease time (the switch might not remove a binding entry when the lease time expires).

• The interface in the entry no longer exists on the system.

• The interface is a routed interface or a DHCP snooping-trusted interface.

DHCP Snooping and Switch Stacks

DHCP snooping is managed on the stack master. When a new switch joins the stack, the switch receives the DHCP snooping configuration from the stack master. When a member leaves the stack, all DHCP snooping address bindings associated with the switch age out.

All snooping statistics are generated on the stack master. If a new stack master is elected, the statistics counters reset.

When a stack merge occurs, all DHCP snooping bindings in the stack master are lost if it is no longer the stack master. With a stack partition, the existing stack master is unchanged, and the bindings belonging to the partitioned switches age out. The new master of the partitioned stack begins processing the new incoming DHCP packets.

How to Configure DHCP Features

Default DHCP Snooping Configuration

Table 55: Default DHCP Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP server</td>
<td>Enabled in Cisco IOS software, requires configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP relay agent</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP packet forwarding address</td>
<td>None configured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the relay agent information</td>
<td>Enabled (invalid messages are dropped)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP relay agent forwarding policy</td>
<td>Replace the existing relay agent information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping enabled globally</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping information option</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping option to accept packets on untrusted input interfaces</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping limit rate</td>
<td>None configured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Default Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping trust</td>
<td>Untrusted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping VLAN</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping MAC address verification</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS DHCP server binding database</td>
<td>Enabled in Cisco IOS software, requires configuration. The switch gets network addresses and configuration parameters only from a device configured as a DHCP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP snooping binding database agent</td>
<td>Enabled in Cisco IOS software, requires configuration. This feature is operational only when a destination is configured.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 The switch responds to DHCP requests only if it is configured as a DHCP server.
7 The switch relays DHCP packets only if the IP address of the DHCP server is configured on the SVI of the DHCP client.
8 Use this feature when the switch is an aggregation switch that receives packets with option-82 information from an edge switch.

**DHCP Snooping Configuration Guidelines**

- If a switch port is connected to a DHCP server, configure a port as trusted by entering the `ip dhcp snooping trust interface` configuration command.
- If a switch port is connected to a DHCP client, configure a port as untrusted by entering the `no ip dhcp snooping trust` interface configuration command.
- You can display DHCP snooping statistics by entering the `show ip dhcp snooping statistics` user EXEC command, and you can clear the snooping statistics counters by entering the `clear ip dhcp snooping statistics` privileged EXEC command.

**Configuring the DHCP Server**

The switch can act as a DHCP server.

For procedures to configure the switch as a DHCP server, see the “Configuring DHCP” section of the “IP addressing and Services” section of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*.

**DHCP Server and Switch Stacks**

The DHCP binding database is managed on the stack master. When a new stack master is assigned, the new master downloads the saved binding database from the TFTP server. When a switchover happens, the new active stack master will use its database file that has been synced from the old active stack master using the SSO function. The IP addresses associated with the lost bindings are released. You should configure an automatic backup by using the `ip dhcp database url [timeout seconds | write-delay seconds]` global configuration command.
## Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent

Follow these steps to enable the DHCP relay agent on the switch:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `service dhcp`
4. `end`
5. `show running-config`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>service dhcp</code></td>
<td>Enables the DHCP server and relay agent on your switch. By default, this feature is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# service dhcp</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifying the Packet Forwarding Address

If the DHCP server and the DHCP clients are on different networks or subnets, you must configure the switch with the `ip helper-address address` interface configuration command. The general rule is to configure the command on the Layer 3 interface closest to the client. The address used in the `ip helper-address` command can be a specific DHCP server IP address, or it can be the network address if other DHCP servers are on the destination network segment. Using the network address enables any DHCP server to respond to requests.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to specify the packet forwarding address:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface vlan vlan-id`
4. `ip address ip-address subnet-mask`
5. `ip helper-address address`
6. `end`
7. Use one of the following:
   - `interface range port-range`
   - `interface interface-id`
8. `switchport mode access`
9. `switchport access vlan vlan-id`
10. `end`
11. `show running-config`
12. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Specifying the Packet Forwarding Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interface vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Creates a switch virtual interface by entering a VLAN ID, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ip address ip-address subnet-mask</td>
<td>Configures the interface with an IP address and an IP subnet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 192.108.1.27 255.255.255.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ip helper-address address</td>
<td>Specifies the DHCP packet forwarding address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 172.16.1.2</td>
<td>The helper address can be a specific DHCP server address, or it can be the network address if other DHCP servers are on the destination network segment. Using the network address enables other servers to respond to DHCP requests. If you have multiple servers, you can configure one helper address for each server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use one of the following:</td>
<td>Configures multiple physical ports that are connected to the DHCP clients, and enter interface range configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• interface range port-range</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• interface interface-id</td>
<td>Configures a single physical port that is connected to the DHCP client, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switchport mode access</td>
<td>Defines the VLAN membership mode for the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 9</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switchport access vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Assigns the ports to the same VLAN as configured in Step 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Prerequisites for Configuring DHCP Snooping and Option 82

The prerequisites for DHCP Snooping and Option 82 are as follows:

- You must globally enable DHCP snooping on the switch.

- Before globally enabling DHCP snooping on the switch, make sure that the devices acting as the DHCP server and the DHCP relay agent are configured and enabled.

- If you want the switch to respond to DHCP requests, it must be configured as a DHCP server.

- Before configuring the DHCP snooping information option on your switch, be sure to configure the device that is acting as the DHCP server. You must specify the IP addresses that the DHCP server can assign or exclude, or you must configure DHCP options for these devices.

- For DHCP snooping to function properly, all DHCP servers must be connected to the switch through trusted interfaces. In a service-provider network, a trusted interface is connected to a port on a device in the same network.

- You must configure the switch to use the Cisco IOS DHCP server binding database to use it for DHCP snooping.

- To use the DHCP snooping option of accepting packets on untrusted inputs, the switch must be an aggregation switch that receives packets with option-82 information from an edge switch.

- The following prerequisites apply to DHCP snooping binding database configuration:
  - You must configure a destination on the DHCP snooping binding database to use the switch for DHCP snooping.
  - Because both NVRAM and the flash memory have limited storage capacity, we recommend that you store the binding file on a TFTP server.
  - For network-based URLs (such as TFTP and FTP), you must create an empty file at the configured URL before the switch can write bindings to the binding file at that URL. See the documentation.
for your TFTP server to determine whether you must first create an empty file on the server; some TFTP servers cannot be configured this way.

- To ensure that the lease time in the database is accurate, we recommend that you enable and configure Network Time Protocol (NTP).
- If NTP is configured, the switch writes binding changes to the binding file only when the switch system clock is synchronized with NTP.

- Before configuring the DHCP relay agent on your switch, make sure to configure the device that is acting as the DHCP server. You must specify the IP addresses that the DHCP server can assign or exclude, configure DHCP options for devices, or set up the DHCP database agent.
- If you want the switch to relay DHCP packets, the IP address of the DHCP server must be configured on the switch virtual interface (SVI) of the DHCP client.
- If a switch port is connected to a DHCP server, configure a port as trusted by entering the `ip dhcp snooping trust interface` configuration command.
- If a switch port is connected to a DHCP client, configure a port as untrusted by entering the `no ip dhcp snooping trust` interface configuration command.

### Enabling the Cisco IOS DHCP Server Database

For procedures to enable and configure the Cisco IOS DHCP server database, see the “DHCP Configuration Task List” section in the “Configuring DHCP” chapter of the Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4

### Monitoring DHCP Snooping Information

**Table 56: Commands for Displaying DHCP Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping</code></td>
<td>Displays the DHCP snooping configuration for a switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping binding</code></td>
<td>Displays only the dynamically configured bindings in the DHCP snooping binding database, also referred to as a binding table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping database</code></td>
<td>Displays the DHCP snooping binding database status and statistics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping statistics</code></td>
<td>Displays the DHCP snooping statistics in summary or detail form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip source binding</code></td>
<td>Display the dynamically and statically configured bindings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If DHCP snooping is enabled and an interface changes to the down state, the switch does not delete the statically configured bindings.

Configuring DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation

DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation

DHCP server port-based address allocation is a feature that enables DHCP to maintain the same IP address on an Ethernet switch port regardless of the attached device client identifier or client hardware address.

When Ethernet switches are deployed in the network, they offer connectivity to the directly connected devices. In some environments, such as on a factory floor, if a device fails, the replacement device must be working immediately in the existing network. With the current DHCP implementation, there is no guarantee that DHCP would offer the same IP address to the replacement device. Control, monitoring, and other software expect a stable IP address associated with each device. If a device is replaced, the address assignment should remain stable even though the DHCP client has changed.

When configured, the DHCP server port-based address allocation feature ensures that the same IP address is always offered to the same connected port even as the client identifier or client hardware address changes in the DHCP messages received on that port. The DHCP protocol recognizes DHCP clients by the client identifier option in the DHCP packet. Clients that do not include the client identifier option are identified by the client hardware address. When you configure this feature, the port name of the interface overrides the client identifier or hardware address and the actual point of connection, the switch port, becomes the client identifier.

In all cases, by connecting the Ethernet cable to the same port, the same IP address is allocated through DHCP to the attached device.

The DHCP server port-based address allocation feature is only supported on a Cisco IOS DHCP server and not a third-party server.

Default Port-Based Address Allocation Configuration

By default, DHCP server port-based address allocation is disabled.

Port-Based Address Allocation Configuration Guidelines

• By default, DHCP server port-based address allocation is disabled.

• To restrict assignments from the DHCP pool to preconfigured reservations (unreserved addresses are not offered to the client and other clients are not served by the pool), you can enter the reserved-only DHCP pool configuration command.

Enabling the DHCP Snooping Binding Database Agent

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable and configure the DHCP snooping binding database agent on the switch:
### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ip dhcp snooping database** `{flash[number]:(|ftp://user:password@host:)|ftp://user:password@host:|http://(username:password@)host:|host-ip|directory:image-name.tar|rcp://user@host:|tftp://host:}`
4. **ip dhcp snooping database timeout** `seconds`
5. **ip dhcp snooping database write-delay** `seconds`
6. **end**
7. **ip dhcp snooping binding** `mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id expiry seconds`
8. **show ip dhcp snooping database** `[detail]`
9. **show running-config**
10. **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>ip dhcp snooping database</strong> `{flash[number]:(</td>
<td>ftp://user:password@host:)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• `flash[number]:(</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping database tftp://10.90.90.90/snooping-rp2</td>
<td>(Optional) Use the <code>number</code> parameter to specify the stack member number of the stack master. The range for <code>number</code> is 1 to 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>ip dhcp snooping database timeout</strong> <code>seconds</code></td>
<td>Specifies (in seconds) how long to wait for the database transfer process to finish before stopping the process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping database timeout 300</strong></td>
<td>The default is 300 seconds. The range is 0 to 86400. Use 0 to define an infinite duration, which means to continue trying the transfer indefinitely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>ip dhcp snooping database write-delay <em>seconds</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping database write-delay 15</td>
<td>Specifies the duration for which the transfer should be delayed after the binding database changes. The range is from 15 to 86400 seconds. The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>ip dhcp snooping binding <em>mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id expiry seconds</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# ip dhcp snooping binding 0001.1234.1234 vlan 1 172.20.50.5 interface gi1/1 expiry 1000</td>
<td>(Optional) Adds binding entries to the DHCP snooping binding database. The <em>vlan-id</em> range is from 1 to 4904. The <em>seconds</em> range is from 1 to 4294967295. Enter this command for each entry that you add. Use this command when you are testing or debugging the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>show ip dhcp snooping database [detail]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# show ip dhcp snooping database detail</td>
<td>Displays the status and statistics of the DHCP snooping binding database agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Enabling DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation

Follow these steps to globally enable port-based address allocation and to automatically generate a subscriber identifier on an interface.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. configure terminal
3. ip dhcp use subscriber-id client-id
4. ip dhcp subscriber-id interface-name
5. interface interface-id
6. ip dhcp server use subscriber-id client-id
7. end
8. show running-config
9. copy running-config startup-config

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip dhcp use subscriber-id client-id</td>
<td>Configures the DHCP server to globally use the subscriber identifier as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>the client identifier on all incoming DHCP messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip dhcp use subscriber-id client-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ip dhcp subscriber-id interface-name</td>
<td>Automatically generates a subscriber identifier based on the short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>name of the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip dhcp subscriber-id interface-name</td>
<td>A subscriber identifier configured on a specific interface takes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>precedence over this command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>ip dhcp server use subscriber-id client-id</td>
<td>Configures the DHCP server to use the subscriber identifier as the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>client identifier on all incoming DHCP messages on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip dhcp server use subscriber-id client-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### What to do next

After enabling DHCP port-based address allocation on the switch, use the `ip dhcp pool` global configuration command to preassign IP addresses and to associate them to clients.

### Monitoring DHCP Server Port-Based Address Allocation

#### Table 57: Commands for Displaying DHCP Port-Based Address Allocation Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface interface id</code></td>
<td>Displays the status and configuration of a specific interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp pool</code></td>
<td>Displays the DHCP address pools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip dhcp binding</code></td>
<td>Displays address bindings on the Cisco IOS DHCP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature Information for DHCP

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Table 58: Feature Information for DHCP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>DHCP provides configuration parameters to Internet hosts. DHCP consists of two components: a protocol for delivering host-specific configuration parameters from a DHCP Server to a host and a mechanism for allocating network addresses to hosts. DHCP is built on a client/server model, where designated DHCP Server hosts allocate network addresses and deliver configuration parameters to dynamically configured hosts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Client Option 12</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The DHCP Client Option 12 feature specifies the hostname of the client. While acquiring an IP address for an interface from the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, if the client device receives the DHCP Hostname option inside the response, the hostname from that option is set. DHCP is used by DHCP clients to obtain configuration information for operation in an IP network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 25

DHCP Options Support

The Cisco DHCP Options Support module describes the Option 82 Remote ID, Option 82 Circuit ID suboptions, and Option 12.

- Restrictions for DHCP Options Support, on page 427
- DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID and Remote ID Overview, on page 427
- How to Configure DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID and Remote ID, on page 428
- Configuration Examples for DHCP Options Support, on page 431
- Additional References for DHCP Options Support, on page 431
- Feature Information for DHCP Options Support, on page 432

Restrictions for DHCP Options Support

When DHCP snooping is configured on a primary VLAN, you cannot configure snooping with different settings on any of its secondary VLANs. You must configure DHCP snooping for all associated VLANs on the primary VLAN. If DHCP snooping is not configured on the primary VLAN and you try to configure it on the secondary VLAN, for example, VLAN 200, this message appears:

```
2w5d:%DHCP_SNOOPING-4-DHCP_SNOOPING_PVLAN_WARNING:DHCP Snooping configuration may not take effect on secondary vlan 200. DHCP Snooping configuration on secondary vlan is derived from its primary vlan.
```

You can use the `show ip dhcp snooping` command to display all VLANs, both primary and secondary, that have DHCP snooping enabled.

DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID and Remote ID Overview

The DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID and Remote ID feature enhances validation security by allowing you to determine what information is provided in the Option 82 Remote ID and Option 82 Circuit ID suboptions.

You can enable DHCP snooping on private VLANs. When DHCP snooping is enabled, the configuration is propagated to both a primary VLAN and its associated secondary VLANs. When DHCP snooping is enabled on a primary VLAN, it is also enabled on its secondary VLANs.

The figure below shows the packet format used when DHCP snooping is globally enabled and the `ip dhcp snooping information option` global configuration command is entered with the Circuit ID suboption.
How to Configure DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID and Remote ID

Configuring DHCP Snooping on Private VLANs

Perform these tasks to configure DHCP snooping on private primary and secondary VLANs:

- Configure a private, primary VLAN.
- Associate with it an isolated VLAN.
- Create an SVI interface for the primary VLAN, and associate it with the appropriate loopback IP and helper address.
- Enable DHCP snooping on the primary VLAN, which also enables it on the associated VLAN.

Note

You must also configure a server to assign the IP address, a DHCP pool, and a relay route so that snooping can be effective.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. vlan vlan-id
4. private-vlan primary
5. `private-vlan association secondary-vlan-list`
6. `exit`
7. `vlan vlan_ID`
8. `private-vlan isolated`
9. `exit`
10. `interface vlan primary-vlan_id`
11. `ip unnumbered loopback`
12. `private-vlan mapping [secondary-vlan-list | add secondary-vlan-list | remove secondary-vlan-list]`
13. `exit`
14. `ip dhcp snooping vlan primary-vlan_id`
15. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
<p>| Example: | Device&gt; enable | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | <code>configure terminal</code> | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Example: | Device# configure terminal | |
| Step 3 | <code>vlan vlan-id</code> | Enters VLAN configuration mode for the named private VLAN. |
| Example: | Device(config)# vlan 70 | |
| Step 4 | <code>private-vlan primary</code> | Designates the VLAN as the primary private VLAN. |
| Example: | Device(config-vlan)# private-vlan primary | |
| Step 5 | <code>private-vlan association secondary-vlan-list</code> | Configures private VLANs (PVLANs) and the association between a PVLAN and a secondary VLAN. |
| Example: | Device(config-vlan)# private-vlan association 7 | |
| Step 6 | <code>exit</code> | Exits VLAN configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode. |
| Example: | Device(config-vlan)# exit | |
| Step 7 | <code>vlan vlan_ID</code> | Enters VLAN configuration mode for the named private VLAN. |
| Example: | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# vlan 7</td>
<td>• In this example, the associated secondary VLAN is vlan 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> private-vlan isolated</td>
<td>Designates the VLAN as an isolated private VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-vlan)# private-vlan isolated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits VLAN configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-vlan)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> interface vlan primary-vlan_id</td>
<td>Creates a dynamic Switch Virtual Interface (SVI) on the primary VLAN, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface vlan 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> ip unnumbered loopback</td>
<td>Specifies IP unnumbered loopback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered loopback1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> private-vlan mapping [secondary-vlan-list</td>
<td>Creates a mapping between the primary and the secondary VLANs so that they share the same primary VLAN SVI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# private-vlan mapping 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong> ip dhcp snooping vlan primary-vlan_id</td>
<td>Enables DHCP snooping on the primary and associated VLANs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 15</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuration Examples for DHCP Options Support

### Example: Mapping Private-VLAN Associations

The following interface configuration example shows how to map the private-VLAN associations. The user-configurable circuit ID “aabb11” is inserted on the secondary VLAN, vlan 7.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config-if)# interface GigabitEthernet 9/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 70 7
Device(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host
Device(config-if)# no mls qos trust
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 7 information option format-type circuit-id string aabb11
Device(config)# end
```

The following example shows how to define a DHCP class “C1” and specify the hex string of the corresponding class at the server by using the hex string that matches the circuit-ID value entered in the interface configuration example. That is, the hex string `00000000000000000000000000000006616162623131` mask `ffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffff0000000000000` matches the circuit ID aabb11.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp class C1
Device(config-dhcp-class)# relay agent information
Device(config-dhcp-class-information)# relay-information hex
00000000000000000000000000000006616162623131
mask fffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffff0000000000000
Device(config-dhcp-class-information)# end
```

### Additional References for DHCP Options Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/support">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for DHCP Options Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

### Table 59: Feature Information for DHCP Options Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Client Option 12</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The DHCP Client Option 12 feature specifies the hostname of the client. While</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>acquiring an IP address for an interface from the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(DHCP) server, if the client device receives the DHCP Hostname option inside the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>response, the hostname from that option is set. DHCP is used by DHCP clients to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>obtain configuration information for operation in an IP network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Option 82 Configurable Circuit ID</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>Provides naming choices in the Option 82 Remote ID and Option 82 Circuit ID suboptions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 26

DHCP Client Option 12

• Information About DHCP Options Support, on page 433
• Additional References, on page 433
• Feature Information for DHCP Client Option 12, on page 434

Information About DHCP Options Support

Additional References

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.</td>
<td>Command Reference, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFCs</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2131</td>
<td>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 2132</td>
<td>DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Technical Assistance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature Information for DHCP Client Option 12**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 60: Feature Information for DHCP Client Option 12**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Client Option 12</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The DHCP Client Option 12 feature specifies the hostname of the client. While acquiring an IP address for an interface from the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, if the client device receives the DHCP Hostname option inside the response, the hostname from that option is set. DHCP is used by DHCP clients to obtain configuration information for operation in an IP network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 27

DHCP Gleaning

This document describes the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Gleaning feature.

- Prerequisites for DHCP Gleaning, on page 435
- Information About DHCP Gleaning, on page 435
- How to Configure DHCP Gleaning, on page 436
- Configuration Examples for DHCP Gleaning, on page 438
- Additional References for Device Sensor, on page 438
- Feature Information for DHCP Gleaning, on page 438

Prerequisites for DHCP Gleaning

- Ensure that the interface to be configured is a Layer 2 interface.

- Ensure that global snooping is enabled.

Information About DHCP Gleaning

Overview of DHCP Gleaning

Gleaning helps extract location information from Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) messages when messages are forwarded by a DHCP relay agent; the process is a completely passive snooping functionality that neither blocks nor modifies DHCP packets. Additionally, gleaning helps to differentiate an untrusted device port that is connected to an end user from a trusted port connected to a DHCP server.

DHCP gleaning is a read-only DHCP snooping functionality that allows components to register and glean only DHCP version 4 packets. When you enable DHCP gleaning, it does a read-only snooping on all active interfaces on which DHCP snooping is disabled. You can add a secondary VLAN to a private VLAN. When add a secondary VLAN to a private VLAN, ensure that gleaning is enabled on the secondary VLAN, even though snooping is disabled on the primary VLAN. By default, the gleaning functionality is disabled. However, when you enable a device sensor, DHCP gleaning is automatically enabled.
DHCP Snooping

Dynamic Host Configuring Protocol (DHCP) snooping is a security feature that acts like a firewall between untrusted hosts and trusted DHCP servers. The DHCP snooping feature performs the following activities:

- Validates DHCP messages received from untrusted sources and filters out invalid messages.
- Rate-limits DHCP traffic from trusted and untrusted sources.
- Builds and maintains the DHCP snooping binding database, which contains information about untrusted hosts with leased IP addresses.
- Utilizes the DHCP snooping binding database to validate subsequent requests from untrusted hosts.

Other security features, such as dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection (DAI), also use information stored in the DHCP snooping binding database.

DHCP snooping is enabled on a per-VLAN basis. By default, the feature is inactive on all VLANs. You can enable the feature on a single VLAN or on a range of VLANs.

How to Configure DHCP Gleaning

Configuring an Interface as a Trusted or an Untrusted Source for DHCP Gleaning

You can enable or disable DHCP gleaning on a device. You can configure an interface as a trusted or untrusted source of DHCP messages. Verify that no DHCP packets are dropped when DHCP gleaning is enabled on an untrusted interface or on a device port.

Note

By default, DHCP gleaning is disabled.

You can configure DHCP trust on the following types of interfaces:

- Layer 2 Ethernet interfaces
- Layer 2 port-channel interfaces

Note

By default, all interfaces are untrusted.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip dhcp snooping glean
4. interface type number
5. [no] ip dhcp snooping trust
6. end
7. `show ip dhcp snooping statistics`
8. `show ip dhcp snooping`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>ip dhcp snooping glean</code></td>
<td>Enables DHCP gleaning on an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping glean</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>interface type number</code></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode, where <code>type number</code> is the Layer 2 Ethernet interface which you want to configure as trusted or untrusted for DHCP snooping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>[no] ip dhcp snooping trust</code></td>
<td>Configures the interface as a trusted interface for DHCP snooping. The <code>no</code> option configures the port as an untrusted interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping trust</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping statistics</code></td>
<td>Displays packets that were dropped on the device port configured as an untrusted interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# show ip dhcp snooping statistics</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><code>show ip dhcp snooping</code></td>
<td>Displays DHCP snooping configuration information, including information about DHCP gleaning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# show ip dhcp snooping</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Examples for DHCP Gleaning

Example: Configuring an Interface as a Trusted or an Untrusted Source for DHCP Gleaning

This example shows how to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) gleaning and configure an interface as a trusted interface:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping glean
Device(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping trust
Device(config-if)# end
```

Additional References for Device Sensor

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for DHCP Gleaning

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Table 61: Feature Information for DHCP Gleaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Gleaning</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>DHCP gleaning is a read-only DHCP snooping functionality that allows components to register and glean only DHCP version 4 packets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 28

DHCPv6 Options Support

This module describes the CAPWAP Access Controller DHCPv6 Option (DHCPv6 Option 52), DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option, and DNS Search List features.

CAPWAP is a standard, interoperable protocol that enables a controller to manage a collection of wireless access points.

RFC 6939 defines a mechanism to allow first-hop DHCPv6 relay agents (relay agents that are connected to the same link as the client) to provide the client's link-layer address in DHCPv6 messages being sent towards the server. This feature is enabled by default, when DHCP relay is configured.

DNS Search List (DNSSL) is a list of Domain Name System (DNS) suffix domain names used by IPv6 hosts when they perform DNS query searches for short, unqualified domain names.

- Information About DHCPv6 Options Support, on page 441
- How to Configure DHCPv6 Options Support, on page 443
- Configuration Examples for DHCPv6 Options Support, on page 445
- Verifying DHCPv6 Options Support, on page 446
- Feature Information for DHCPv6 Options Support, on page 447

Information About DHCPv6 Options Support

CAPWAP Access Controller DHCPv6 Option

The Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) protocol allows lightweight access points to use DHCPv6 to discover a wireless controller to which it can connect. CAPWAP is a standard, interoperable protocol that enables a controller to manage a collection of wireless access points.

Wireless access points use the DHCPv6 option 52 (RFC 5417) to supply the IPv6 management interface addresses of the primary, secondary, and tertiary wireless controllers.

Both stateless and stateful DHCPv6 addressing modes are supported. In stateless mode, access points obtain IPv6 address using the Stateless Address AutoConfiguration (SLAAC), while additional network information (not obtained from router advertisements) is obtained from a DHCPv6 server. In stateful mode, access points obtain both IPv6 addressing and additional network information exclusively from the DHCPv6 server. In both modes, a DHCPv6 server is required to provide option 52 if Wireless Controller discovery using DHCPv6 is required.
When the MAX_PACKET_SIZE exceeds 15, and option 52 is configured, the DHCPv6 server does not send DHCP packets.

**DNS Search List Option**

DNS Search List (DNSSL) is a list of Domain Name System (DNS) suffix domain names used by IPv6 hosts when they perform DNS query searches for short, unqualified domain names. The DNSSL option contains one or more domain names. All domain names share the same lifetime value, which is the maximum time in seconds over which this DNSSL may be used. If different lifetime values are required, multiple DNSSL options can be used. There can be a maximum of 5 DNSSLs.

DHCP messages with long DNSSL names are discarded by the device.

**Note**

If DNS information is available from multiple Router Advertisements (RAs) and/or from DHCP, the host must maintain an ordered list of this DNS information.

RFC 6106 specifies IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) options to allow IPv6 routers to advertise a DNS Search List (DNSSL) to IPv6 hosts for an enhanced DNS configuration.

The DNS lifetime range should be between the maximum RA interval and twice the maximum RA interval, as displayed in the following example:

\[(\text{max ra interval}) \leq \text{dns lifetime} \leq (2*(\text{max ra interval}))\]

The maximum RA interval can have a value between 4 and 1800 seconds (the default is 240 seconds). The following example shows an out-of-range lifetime:

Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra dns search list sss.com 3600
! Lifetime configured out of range for the interface that has the default maximum RA interval.

**DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option**

Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1 supports DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option (RFC 6939). It defines an optional mechanism and the related DHCPv6 option to allow first-hop DHCPv6 relay agents (relay agents that are connected to the same link as the client) to provide the client's link-layer address in DHCPv6 messages that are sent towards the server.

The Client Link-Layer Address option is only exchanged between relay agents and servers. DHCPv6 clients are not aware of the use of the Client Link-Layer Address option. The DHCPv6 client must not send the Client Link-Layer Address option, and must ignore the Client Link-Layer Address option if received.

Each DHCPv6 client and server is identified by a DHCP unique identifier (DUID). The DUID is carried in the client identifier and server identifier options. The DUID is unique across all DHCP clients and servers, and it is stable for any specific client or server. DHCPv6 uses DUIDs based on link-layer addresses for both the client and server identifier. The device uses the MAC address from the lowest-numbered interface to form the DUID. The network interface is assumed to be permanently attached to the device.
DHCPv6 Relay Agent

A DHCPv6 relay agent, which may reside on a client link, is used to relay messages between the client and the server. The DHCPv6 relay agent operation is transparent to the client. The DHCPv6 client locates a DHCPv6 server using a reserved, link-scoped multicast address. For direct communication between the DHCPv6 client and the DHCPv6 server, both of them must be attached to the same link. However, in some situations where ease of management, economy, or scalability is a concern, it is desirable to allow a DHCPv6 client to send messages to a DHCPv6 server that is not connected to the same link. IPv6 enable is required for IPv6 DHCP relay, even if the IPv6 address is configured.

How to Configure DHCPv6 Options Support

Configuring CAPWAP Access Points

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ipv6 dhcp pool poolname
4. capwap-ac address ipv6-address
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 ipv6 dhcp pool poolname</td>
<td>Configures a DHCPv6 server configuration information pool and enters DHCPv6 pool configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp pool pool1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 capwap-ac address ipv6-address</td>
<td>Configures CAPWAP access controller address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-dhcpv6)# capwap-ac address 2001:DB8::1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 end</td>
<td>Exits DHCPv6 pool configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-dhcpv6)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring DNS Search List Using IPv6 Router Advertisement Options

Note
The domain name configuration should follow RFC 1035. If not, the configuration will be rejected. For example, the following domain name configuration will result in an error:

Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra dns search list .example.example.com infinite-lifetime

Use the no ipv6 nd ra dns search list name command to delete a single DNS search list under an interface. Use the no ipv6 nd ra dns search list command to delete all DNS search lists under an interface.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-type interface-number
4. ipv6 nd prefix ipv6-prefix/prefix-length
5. ipv6 nd ra lifetime seconds
6. ipv6 nd ra dns search list list-name [infinite-lifetime]
7. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>interface interface-type interface-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/2/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ipv6 nd prefix ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd prefix 2001:DB8::1/64 1111 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>ipv6 nd ra lifetime seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra lifetime 9000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ipv6 nd ra dns search list list-name [infinite-lifetime]</td>
<td>Configures the DNS search list. You can specify the life time of the search list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra dns search list example.example.com infinite-lifetime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

Use the `show ipv6 nd idb interface` command to verify the DNS search list configuration based on IPv6 RA options:

```
Device# show ipv6 nd idb interface gigabitEthernet 0/2/0/0 detail location 0/2/CPU0
```

```
Mon Jul 4 14:28:53.422 IST
ifname: Gi0/2/0/0, ifh: 0x01000300, iftype: 15, VI-type: 0, Pseudo IDB: FALSE
vrf-id: 0x60000000, table-id: 0xe0800000
Mac Addr: 02d1.1e2b.0baf, size: 6, VlAn tag set: FALSE
Media Name: ether, Media Encap: 0x1 (ARPA)
Mac Length: 6, Media Header Len: 14, Media Proto: 0xdd86
Current Encap: 0x1 (ARPA), Mcast Encap : 0x1 (ARPA)
IPV6 Interface: Enabled, IPV6: Enabled, MPLS: Disabled
Link local address: 2001::d1:1eff:fe2b:baf, Global Addr count: 1
Global Addresses: 1::(0x2),
Default Prefix Address: ::, Prefix Addr Count: 3,
Prefix addresses: 1::(0x401), 2001:db8:e8:1011::(0x4), 2001:db8:e8:1011::(0x4)
RA Specific Route Count: 1,
RA Specific Route : Address 3:: Prefix Length 116 Lifetime 1112 Preference Low
RA DNS Search List Count: 3,
RA DNS Search List : Name example.example.com Lifetime 240
RA DNS Search List : Name example1.example1.com Lifetime 240
RA DNS Search List : Name example2.example2.com Lifetime 4294967295
```

## Configuration Examples for DHCPv6 Options Support

### Example: Configuring CAPWAP Access Points

The following example shows how to configure a CAPWAP access point:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp pool pool1
Device(config)# capwap-ac address 2001:db8::1
```
Verifying DHCPv6 Options Support

Verifying Option 52 Support

The following sample output from the `show ipv6 dhcp pool` command displays the DHCPv6 configuration pool information:

```
Device# show ipv6 dhcp pool
DHCPv6 pool: svr-p1
Static bindings:
  Binding for client 000300010002FCA5C01C
  IA PD: IA ID 00040002,
    Prefix: 2001:db8::3/72
    preferred lifetime 604800, valid lifetime 2592000
  IA PD: IA ID not specified; being used by 00040001
    Prefix: 2001:db8::1/72
    preferred lifetime 240, valid lifetime 54321
    Prefix: 2001:db8::2/72
    preferred lifetime 300, valid lifetime 54333
    Prefix: 2001:db8::3/72
    preferred lifetime 280, valid lifetime 51111
Prefix from pool: local-p1, Valid lifetime 12345, Preferred lifetime 180
DNS server: 1001::1
DNS server: 1001::2
CAPWAP-AC Controller address: 2001:DB8::1
Domain name: example1.com
Domain name: example2.com
Domain name: example3.com
Active clients: 2
```

The following example shows how to enable debugging for DHCPv6:

```
Device# debug ipv6 dhcp detail
IPv6 DHCP debugging is on (detailed)
```

Troubleshooting DNS Search Lists

Recursive DNS servers and DNS search lists are sent as part of RA messages. Run the IPv6 ND traces to debug any particular issue related to a DNS servers and DNS search lists:

```
Device# show ipv6 nd trace location 0/2/CPU0
Jun 30 20:07:03.508 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 Sending RA to ff02::1 on GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0 (0x1000300)
Jun 30 20:07:03.508 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 hoplimit 64 lifetime 9000 reachable 0 retrans 0
Jun 30 20:07:03.509 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 1::/64 Onlink Auto
Jun 30 20:07:03.509 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 1::/64 Onlink Auto
Jun 30 20:07:03.509 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 1::/64 Onlink Auto
Jun 30 20:07:03.509 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 1::/64 Onlink Auto
Jun 30 20:07:03.509 nd/fevent 0/2/CPU0 t26702 1::/64 Onlink Auto
```
### Feature Information for DHCPv6 Options Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 62: Feature Information for DHCPv6 Options Support**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAPWAP Access Controller</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The CAPWAP protocol allows lightweight access points to use DHCPv6 to discover a Wireless Controller to which it can connect. CAPWAP is a standard, interoperable protocol that enables a controller to manage a collection of wireless access points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCPv6 Option-52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The DHCPv6 Client Link-Layer Address Option (RFC 6939) defines an optional mechanism and the related DHCPv6 option to allow first-hop DHCPv6 relay agents (relay agents that are connected to the same link as the client) to provide the client's link-layer address in the DHCPv6 messages being sent towards the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Search List</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>DNS Search List (DNSSL) is a list of Domain Name System (DNS) suffix domain names used by IPv6 hosts when they perform DNS query searches for short, unqualified domain names. The DNSSL option contains one or more domain names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) server sends its replies to the source address of relayed messages. Normally, a DHCPv6 relay uses the address of the server-facing interface used to send messages as the source. However, in some networks, it may be desirable to configure a more stable address (such as a loopback interface) and have the relay use that interface as the source address of relayed messages. The DHCPv6 relay source configuration feature provides this capability.

- Restrictions for Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source, on page 449
- Information About DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration, on page 449
- How to Configure a DHCPv6 Relay Source, on page 450
- Configuration Examples for DHCPv6 Relay Source, on page 452
- Additional References for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration, on page 452
- Feature Information for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration, on page 453

Restrictions for Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source

- If the configured interface is shut down, or if all of its IPv6 addresses are removed, the relay will revert to its standard behavior.
- The command line interface (CLI) will report an error if the user attempts to specify an interface that has no IPv6 addresses configured.
- The interface configuration takes precedence over the global configuration if both have been configured.

Information About DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

The DHCPv6 server sends its replies to the source address of relayed messages. Normally, a DHCPv6 relay uses the address of the server-facing interface used to send messages as the source. However, in some networks, it may be desirable to configure a more stable address (such as a loopback interface) and have the relay use that interface as the source address of relayed messages. The DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration feature provides this capability.
The figure below shows a simple network with a single client, relay, and server. The relay and server communicate over 2001:DB8:1::/64, and the relay has a client-facing interface on 2001:DB8:2::/64. The relay also has a loopback interface configured with address 2001:DB8:3:1/64.

**Figure 25: DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration—Simple Network**

When the relay receives a request from the client, the relay includes an address from the client-facing interface (Ethernet 1/0) in the link-address field of a relay-forward message. This address is used by the server to select an address pool. The relay then sends the relay-forward message toward the server. By default, the address of the server-facing (Ethernet 0/0) interface is used as the IPv6 source, and the server will send any reply to that address.

If the relay source interface is explicitly configured, the relay will use that interface’s primary IPv6 address as the IPv6 source for messages it forwards. For example, configuring Loopback 0 as the source would cause the relay to use 2001:DB8:3:1/64 as the IPv6 source address for messages relayed toward the server.

### How to Configure a DHCPv6 Relay Source

#### Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source

Perform the following tasks to configure a DHCPv6 relay source:

#### Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source on an Interface

Perform this task to configure an interface to use as the source when relaying messages.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface type number
4. ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface interface-type interface-number
5. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source Globally

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface** *interface-type interface-number*
4. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface <em>type number</em></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and number, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config)# interface loopback 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface <em>interface-type interface-number</em></td>
<td>Configures an interface to use as the source when relaying messages received on this interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface loopback 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
**Step 3**  
ipv6 dhcp-relay source-interface  
*interface-type*  
*interface-number*  

Example:  
Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp-relay source-interface loopback 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 4**  
end  

Example:  
Device(config)# end

### Configuration Examples for DHCPv6 Relay Source

#### Example: Configuring a DHCPv6 Relay Source on an Interface

The following example show how to configure the Loopback 0 interface to be used as the relay source:

Device> enable  
Device# configure terminal  
Device(config)# interface loopback 0  
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface loopback 0  
Device(config-if)# end

### Additional References for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFCs for IPv6</td>
<td>IPv6 RFCs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 63: Feature Information for DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCPv6 Relay Source Configuration</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>In some networks that use DHCPv6, it may be desirable to configure a stable address (such as a loopback interface) and have the relay use that interface as the source address of relayed messages. The DHCPv6 relay source configuration feature provides this capability.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 30

Configuring IP Source Guard

- Information About IP Source Guard, on page 455
- How to Configure IP Source Guard, on page 457
- Monitoring IP Source Guard, on page 460
- Additional References, on page 460
- Feature Information for IP Source Guard, on page 461

Information About IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard

You can use IP source guard to prevent traffic attacks if a host tries to use the IP address of its neighbor and you can enable IP source guard when DHCP snooping is enabled on an untrusted interface.

After IPSG is enabled on an interface, the switch blocks all IP traffic received on the interface except for DHCP packets allowed by DHCP snooping.

The switch uses a source IP lookup table in hardware to bind IP addresses to ports. For IP and MAC filtering, a combination of source IP and source MAC lookups are used. IP traffic with a source IP address in the binding table is allowed, all other traffic is denied.

The IP source binding table has bindings that are learned by DHCP snooping or are manually configured (static IP source bindings). An entry in this table has an IP address, its associated MAC address, and its associated VLAN number. The switch uses the IP source binding table only when IP source guard is enabled.

IPSG is supported only on Layer 2 ports, including access and trunk ports. You can configure IPSG with source IP address filtering or with source IP and MAC address filtering.

IP Source Guard for Static Hosts

Note

Do not use IPSG (IP source guard) for static hosts on uplink ports or trunk ports.

IPSG for static hosts extends the IPSG capability to non-DHCP and static environments. The previous IPSG used the entries created by DHCP snooping to validate the hosts connected to a switch. Any traffic received from a host without a valid DHCP binding entry is dropped. This security feature restricts IP traffic on
nonrouted Layer 2 interfaces. It filters traffic based on the DHCP snooping binding database and on manually configured IP source bindings. The previous version of IPSG required a DHCP environment for IPSG to work.

IPSG for static hosts allows IPSG to work without DHCP. IPSG for static hosts relies on IP device tracking-table entries to install port ACLs. The switch creates static entries based on ARP requests or other IP packets to maintain the list of valid hosts for a given port. You can also specify the number of hosts allowed to send traffic to a given port. This is equivalent to port security at Layer 3.

IPSG for static hosts also supports dynamic hosts. If a dynamic host receives a DHCP-assigned IP address that is available in the IP DHCP snooping table, the same entry is learned by the IP device tracking table. In a stacked environment, when the master failover occurs, the IP source guard entries for static hosts attached to member ports are retained. When you enter the `show device-tracking database` EXEC command, the IP device tracking table displays the entries as ACTIVE.

Some IP hosts with multiple network interfaces can inject some invalid packets into a network interface. The invalid packets contain the IP or MAC address for another network interface of the host as the source address. The invalid packets can cause IPSG for static hosts to connect to the host, to learn the invalid IP or MAC address bindings, and to reject the valid bindings. Consult the vendor of the corresponding operating system and the network interface to prevent the host from injecting invalid packets.

IPSG for static hosts initially learns IP or MAC bindings dynamically through an ACL-based snooping mechanism. IP or MAC bindings are learned from static hosts by ARP and IP packets. They are stored in the device tracking database. When the number of IP addresses that have been dynamically learned or statically configured on a given port reaches a maximum, the hardware drops any packet with a new IP address. To resolve hosts that have moved or gone away for any reason, IPSG for static hosts leverages IP device tracking to age out dynamically learned IP address bindings. This feature can be used with DHCP snooping. Multiple bindings are established on a port that is connected to both DHCP and static hosts. For example, bindings are stored in both the device tracking database as well as in the DHCP snooping binding database.

**IP Source Guard Configuration Guidelines**

- You can configure static IP bindings only on nonrouted ports. If you enter the `ip source binding mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id` global configuration command on a routed interface, this error message appears:

  Static IP source binding can only be configured on switch port.

- When IP source guard with source IP filtering is enabled on an interface, DHCP snooping must be enabled on the access VLAN for that interface.

- If you are enabling IP source guard on a trunk interface with multiple VLANs and DHCP snooping is enabled on all the VLANs, the source IP address filter is applied on all the VLANs.

  **Note** If IP source guard is enabled and you enable or disable DHCP snooping on a VLAN on the trunk interface, the switch might not properly filter traffic.

- You can enable this feature when 802.1x port-based authentication is enabled.
• When you configure IP source guard smart logging, packets with a source address other than the specified address or an address learned by DHCP are denied, and the packet contents are sent to a NetFlow collector. If you configure this feature, make sure that smart logging is globally enabled.

• In a switch stack, if IP source guard is configured on a stack member interface and you remove the the configuration of that switch by entering the `no switch stack-member-number provision` global configuration command, the interface static bindings are removed from the binding table, but they are not removed from the running configuration. If you again provision the switch by entering the `switch stack-member-number provision` command, the binding is restored.

To remove the binding from the running configuration, you must disable IP source guard before entering the `no switch provision` command. The configuration is also removed if the switch reloads while the interface is removed from the binding table.

How to Configure IP Source Guard

Enabling IP Source Guard

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `exit`
5. `ip source binding mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id`
6. `end`
7. `show running-config`
8. `copy running-config startup-config`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code></td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# exit
```

**Step 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip source binding mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Adds a static IP source binding. Enter this command for each static binding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ip source binding 0100.0230.0002 vlan 11 10.0.0.4 interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
```

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

**Step 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device# show running-config
```

**Step 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device# copy running-config startup-config
```

---

## Configuring IP Source Guard for Static Hosts on a Layer 2 Access Port

You must configure the `ip device tracking maximum limit-number` interface configuration command globally for IPSG for static hosts to work. If you only configure this command on a port without enabling IP device tracking globally or by setting an IP device tracking maximum on that interface, IPSG with static hosts rejects all the IP traffic from that interface.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip device tracking`
4. `interface interface-id`

---
5. `switchport mode access`
6. `switchport access vlan vlan-id`
7. `ip device tracking maximum number`
8. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code>&lt;br&gt;Enables privileged EXEC mode.&lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device# configure terminal</code>&lt;br&gt;Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>ip device tracking</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config)# ip device tracking</code>&lt;br&gt;Turns on the IP host table, and globally enables IP device tracking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>interface interface-id</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code>&lt;br&gt;Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>switchport mode access</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code>&lt;br&gt;Configures a port as access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><strong>switchport access vlan vlan-id</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10</code>&lt;br&gt;Configures the VLAN for this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><strong>ip device tracking maximum number</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config-if)# ip device tracking maximum 8</code>&lt;br&gt;Establishes a maximum limit for the number of static IPs that the IP device tracking table allows on the port. The range is 1to 10. The maximum number is 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose

You must configure the `ip device tracking maximum limit-number` interface configuration command.

**Step 8**

Example:

```
Device(config)# end
```

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

### Monitoring IP Source Guard

**Table 64: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip verify source [ interface interface-id ]</code></td>
<td>Displays the IP source guard configuration on the switch or on a specific interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`show ip device tracking { all</td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 65: Interface Configuration Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip verify source tracking</code></td>
<td>Verifies the data source.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For detailed information about the fields in these displays, see the command reference for this release.

---

### Additional References

**Error Message Decoder**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To help you research and resolve system error messages in this release, use the Error Message Decoder tool.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi">https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordc/index.cgi</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for IP Source Guard

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 66: Feature Information for IP Source Guard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP Source Guard</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>You can use IP source guard to prevent traffic attacks if a host tries to use the IP address of its neighbor and you can enable IP source guard when DHCP snooping is enabled on an untrusted interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Restrictions for Dynamic ARP Inspection

This section lists the restrictions and guidelines for configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection on the switch.

- Dynamic ARP inspection is an ingress security feature; it does not perform any egress checking.

- Dynamic ARP inspection is not effective for hosts connected to switches that do not support dynamic ARP inspection or that do not have this feature enabled. Because man-in-the-middle attacks are limited to a single Layer 2 broadcast domain, separate the domain with dynamic ARP inspection checks from the one with no checking. This action secures the ARP caches of hosts in the domain enabled for dynamic ARP inspection.

- Dynamic ARP inspection depends on the entries in the DHCP snooping binding database to verify IP-to-MAC address bindings in incoming ARP requests and ARP responses. Make sure to enable DHCP snooping to permit ARP packets that have dynamically assigned IP addresses.

When DHCP snooping is disabled or in non-DHCP environments, use ARP ACLs to permit or to deny packets.

- Dynamic ARP inspection is supported on access ports, trunk ports, and EtherChannel ports.
Do not enable Dynamic ARP inspection on RSPAN VLANs. If Dynamic ARP inspection is enabled on RSPAN VLANs, Dynamic ARP inspection packets might not reach the RSPAN destination port.

- A physical port can join an EtherChannel port channel only when the trust state of the physical port and the channel port match. Otherwise, the physical port remains suspended in the port channel. A port channel inherits its trust state from the first physical port that joins the channel. Consequently, the trust state of the first physical port need not match the trust state of the channel.

Conversely, when you change the trust state on the port channel, the switch configures a new trust state on all the physical ports that comprise the channel.

- The rate limit is calculated separately on each switch in a switch stack. For a cross-stack EtherChannel, this means that the actual rate limit might be higher than the configured value. For example, if you set the rate limit to 30 pps on an EtherChannel that has one port on switch 1 and one port on switch 2, each port can receive packets at 29 pps without causing the EtherChannel to become error-disabled.

- The operating rate for the port channel is cumulative across all the physical ports within the channel. For example, if you configure the port channel with an ARP rate-limit of 400 pps, all the interfaces combined on the channel receive an aggregate 400 pps. The rate of incoming ARP packets on EtherChannel ports is equal to the sum of the incoming rate of packets from all the channel members. Configure the rate limit for EtherChannel ports only after examining the rate of incoming ARP packets on the channel-port members.

The rate of incoming packets on a physical port is checked against the port-channel configuration rather than the physical-port configuration. The rate-limit configuration on a port channel is independent of the configuration on its physical ports.

If the EtherChannel receives more ARP packets than the configured rate, the channel (including all physical ports) is placed in the error-disabled state.

- Make sure to limit the rate of ARP packets on incoming trunk ports. Configure trunk ports with higher rates to reflect their aggregation and to handle packets across multiple dynamic ARP inspection-enabled VLANs. You also can use the `ip arp inspection limit none` interface configuration command to make the rate unlimited. A high rate-limit on one VLAN can cause a denial-of-service attack to other VLANs when the software places the port in the error-disabled state.

- When you enable dynamic ARP inspection on the switch, policers that were configured to police ARP traffic are no longer effective. The result is that all ARP traffic is sent to the CPU.

### Understanding Dynamic ARP Inspection

ARP provides IP communication within a Layer 2 broadcast domain by mapping an IP address to a MAC address. For example, Host B wants to send information to Host A but does not have the MAC address of Host A in its ARP cache. Host B generates a broadcast message for all hosts within the broadcast domain to obtain the MAC address associated with the IP address of Host A. All hosts within the broadcast domain receive the ARP request, and Host A responds with its MAC address. However, because ARP allows a gratuitous reply from a host even if an ARP request was not received, an ARP spoofing attack and the poisoning of ARP caches can occur. After the attack, all traffic from the device under attack flows through the attacker’s computer and then to the router, switch, or host.
A malicious user can attack hosts, switches, and routers connected to your Layer 2 network by poisoning the ARP caches of systems connected to the subnet and by intercepting traffic intended for other hosts on the subnet. Figure 26-1 shows an example of ARP cache poisoning.

**Figure 26: ARP Cache Poisoning**

Hosts A, B, and C are connected to the switch on interfaces A, B, and C, all of which are on the same subnet. Their IP and MAC addresses are shown in parentheses; for example, Host A uses IP address IA and MAC address MA. When Host A needs to communicate to Host B at the IP layer, it broadcasts an ARP request for the MAC address associated with IP address IB. When the switch and Host B receive the ARP request, they populate their ARP caches with an ARP binding for a host with the IP address IA and a MAC address MA; for example, IP address IA is bound to MAC address MA. When Host B responds, the switch and Host A populate their ARP caches with a binding for a host with the IP address IB and the MAC address MB.

Host C can poison the ARP caches of the switch, Host A, and Host B by broadcasting forged ARP responses with bindings for a host with an IP address of IA (or IB) and a MAC address of MC. Hosts with poisoned ARP caches use the MAC address MC as the destination MAC address for traffic intended for IA or IB. This means that Host C intercepts that traffic. Because Host C knows the true MAC addresses associated with IA and IB, it can forward the intercepted traffic to those hosts by using the correct MAC address as the destination. Host C has inserted itself into the traffic stream from Host A to Host B, the classic *man-in-the-middle* attack.

Dynamic ARP inspection is a security feature that validates ARP packets in a network. It intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. This capability protects the network from certain *man-in-the-middle* attacks.

Dynamic ARP inspection ensures that only valid ARP requests and responses are relayed. The switch performs these activities:

- Intercepts all ARP requests and responses on untrusted ports
- Verifies that each of these intercepted packets has a valid IP-to-MAC address binding before updating the local ARP cache or before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination
- Drops invalid ARP packets

Dynamic ARP inspection determines the validity of an ARP packet based on valid IP-to-MAC address bindings stored in a trusted database, the DHCP snooping binding database. This database is built by DHCP snooping if DHCP snooping is enabled on the VLANs and on the switch. If the ARP packet is received on a trusted interface, the switch forwards the packet without any checks. On untrusted interfaces, the switch forwards the packet only if it is valid.

You enable dynamic ARP inspection on a per-VLAN basis by using the `ip arp inspection vlan` global configuration command.

In non-DHCP environments, dynamic ARP inspection can validate ARP packets against user-configured ARP access control lists (ACLs) for hosts with statically configured IP addresses. You define an ARP ACL by using the `arp access-list` global configuration command.

You can configure dynamic ARP inspection to drop ARP packets when the IP addresses in the packets are invalid or when the MAC addresses in the body of the ARP packets do not match the addresses specified in
the Ethernet header. Use the **ip arp inspection validate {{src-mac} [dst-mac] [ip]}** global configuration command.

## Interface Trust States and Network Security

Dynamic ARP inspection associates a trust state with each interface on the switch. Packets arriving on trusted interfaces bypass all dynamic ARP inspection validation checks, and those arriving on untrusted interfaces undergo the dynamic ARP inspection validation process.

In a typical network configuration, you configure all switch ports connected to host ports as untrusted and configure all switch ports connected to switches as trusted. With this configuration, all ARP packets entering the network from a given switch bypass the security check. No other validation is needed at any other place in the VLAN or in the network. You configure the trust setting by using the `ip arp inspection trust interface` configuration command.

![Caution](image)

Use the trust state configuration carefully. Configuring interfaces as untrusted when they should be trusted can result in a loss of connectivity.

In the following figure, assume that both Switch A and Switch B are running dynamic ARP inspection on the VLAN that includes Host 1 and Host 2. If Host 1 and Host 2 acquire their IP addresses from the DHCP server connected to Switch A, only Switch A binds the IP-to-MAC address of Host 1. Therefore, if the interface between Switch A and Switch B is untrusted, the ARP packets from Host 1 are dropped by Switch B. Connectivity between Host 1 and Host 2 is lost.

**Figure 27: ARP Packet Validation on a VLAN Enabled for Dynamic ARP Inspection**

Configuring interfaces to be trusted when they are actually untrusted leaves a security hole in the network. If Switch A is not running dynamic ARP inspection, Host 1 can easily poison the ARP cache of Switch B (and Host 2, if the link between the switches is configured as trusted). This condition can occur even though Switch B is running dynamic ARP inspection.

Dynamic ARP inspection ensures that hosts (on untrusted interfaces) connected to a switch running dynamic ARP inspection do not poison the ARP caches of other hosts in the network. However, dynamic ARP inspection does not prevent hosts in other portions of the network from poisoning the caches of the hosts that are connected to a switch running dynamic ARP inspection.
In cases in which some switches in a VLAN run dynamic ARP inspection and other switches do not, configure the interfaces connecting such switches as untrusted. However, to validate the bindings of packets from nondynamic ARP inspection switches, configure the switch running dynamic ARP inspection with ARP ACLs. When you cannot determine such bindings, at Layer 3, isolate switches running dynamic ARP inspection from switches not running dynamic ARP inspection switches.

**Note**
Depending on the setup of the DHCP server and the network, it might not be possible to validate a given ARP packet on all switches in the VLAN.

## Rate Limiting of ARP Packets

The switch CPU performs dynamic ARP inspection validation checks; therefore, the number of incoming ARP packets is rate-limited to prevent a denial-of-service attack. By default, the rate for untrusted interfaces is 15 packets per second (pps). Trusted interfaces are not rate-limited. You can change this setting by using the `ip arp inspection limit` interface configuration command.

When the rate of incoming ARP packets exceeds the configured limit, the switch places the port in the error-disabled state. The port remains in that state until you intervene. You can use the `errdisable recovery` global configuration command to enable error disable recovery so that ports automatically emerge from this state after a specified timeout period.

**Note**
The rate limit for an EtherChannel is applied separately to each switch in a stack. For example, if a limit of 20 pps is configured on the EtherChannel, each switch with ports in the EtherChannel can carry up to 20 pps. If any switch exceeds the limit, the entire EtherChannel is placed into the error-disabled state.

## Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries

Dynamic ARP inspection uses the DHCP snooping binding database for the list of valid IP-to-MAC address bindings.

ARP ACLs take precedence over entries in the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch uses ACLs only if you configure them by using the `ip arp inspection filter vlan` global configuration command. The switch first compares ARP packets to user-configured ARP ACLs. If the ARP ACL denies the ARP packet, the switch also denies the packet even if a valid binding exists in the database populated by DHCP snooping.

## Logging of Dropped Packets

When the switch drops a packet, it places an entry in the log buffer and then generates system messages on a rate-controlled basis. After the message is generated, the switch clears the entry from the log buffer. Each log entry contains flow information, such as the receiving VLAN, the port number, the source and destination IP addresses, and the source and destination MAC addresses.

You use the `ip arp inspection log-buffer` global configuration command to configure the number of entries in the buffer and the number of entries needed in the specified interval to generate system messages. You specify the type of packets that are logged by using the `ip arp inspection vlan logging` global configuration command.
Default Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic ARP inspection</td>
<td>Disabled on all VLANs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface trust state</td>
<td>All interfaces are untrusted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate limit of incoming ARP packets</td>
<td>The rate is 15 pps on untrusted interfaces, assuming that the network is a switched network with a host connecting to as many as 15 new hosts per second. The rate is unlimited on all trusted interfaces. The burst interval is 1 second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARP ACLs for non-DHCP environments</td>
<td>No ARP ACLs are defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation checks</td>
<td>No checks are performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log buffer</td>
<td>When dynamic ARP inspection is enabled, all denied or dropped ARP packets are logged. The number of entries in the log is 32. The number of system messages is limited to 5 per second. The logging-rate interval is 1 second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-VLAN logging</td>
<td>All denied or dropped ARP packets are logged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries

Dynamic ARP inspection uses the DHCP snooping binding database for the list of valid IP-to-MAC address bindings.

ARP ACLs take precedence over entries in the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch uses ACLs only if you configure them by using the ip arp inspection filter vlan global configuration command. The switch first compares ARP packets to user-configured ARP ACLs. If the ARP ACL denies the ARP packet, the switch also denies the packet even if a valid binding exists in the database populated by DHCP snooping.

Configuring ARP ACLs for Non-DHCP Environments

This procedure shows how to configure dynamic ARP inspection when Switch B shown in Figure 2 does not support dynamic ARP inspection or DHCP snooping.

If you configure port 1 on Switch A as trusted, a security hole is created because both Switch A and Host 1 could be attacked by either Switch B or Host 2. To prevent this possibility, you must configure port 1 on Switch A as untrusted. To permit ARP packets from Host 2, you must set up an ARP ACL and apply it to VLAN 1. If the IP address of Host 2 is not static (it is impossible to apply the ACL configuration on Switch A) you must separate Switch A from Switch B at Layer 3 and use a router to route packets between them.
Follow these steps to configure an ARP ACL on Switch A. This procedure is required in non-DHCP environments.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. arp access-list acl-name
4. permit ip host sender-ip mac host sender-mac
5. exit
6. ip arp inspection filter arp-acl-name vlan vlan-range [static]
7. interface interface-id
8. no ip arp inspection trust
9. end
10. Use the following show commands:

    • show arp access-list acl-name
    • show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range
    • show ip arp inspection interfaces

11. show running-config
12. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Defines an ARP ACL, and enters ARP access-list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arp access-list acl-name</td>
<td>By default, no ARP access lists are defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note At the end of the ARP access list, there is an implicit deny ip any mac any command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>Permits ARP packets from the specified host (Host 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit ip host sender-ip mac host sender-mac</td>
<td>• For sender-ip, enter the IP address of Host 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For sender-mac, enter the MAC address of Host 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 6 | `ip arp inspection filter` `arp-acl-name` `vlan` `vlan-range` `[static]` | Applies ARP ACL to the VLAN. By default, no defined ARP ACLs are applied to any VLAN.  
  - For `arp-acl-name`, specify the name of the ACL created in Step 2.  
  - For `vlan-range`, specify the VLAN that the switches and hosts are in. You can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.  
  - (Optional) Specify static to treat implicit denials in the ARP ACL as explicit denials and to drop packets that do not match any previous clauses in the ACL. DHCP bindings are not used.  
  
  If you do not specify this keyword, it means that there is no explicit deny in the ACL that denies the packet, and DHCP bindings determine whether a packet is permitted or denied if the packet does not match any clauses in the ACL.  
  
  ARP packets containing only IP-to-MAC address bindings are compared against the ACL. Packets are permitted only if the access list permits them. |
| Step 7 | `interface` `interface-id` | Specifies Switch A interface that is connected to Switch B, and enters the interface configuration mode. |
| Step 8 | `no ip arp inspection trust` | Configures Switch A interface that is connected to Switch B as untrusted.  
  
  By default, all interfaces are untrusted.  
  
  For untrusted interfaces, the switch intercepts all ARP requests and responses. It verifies that the intercepted packets have valid IP-to-MAC address bindings before updating the local cache and before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination. The switch drops invalid packets and logs them in the log buffer according to the logging configuration specified with the `ip arp inspection vlan logging` global configuration command. |
| Step 9 | `end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| Step 10 | Use the following show commands:  
  - `show arp access-list` `acl-name`  
  - `show ip arp inspection vlan` `vlan-range`  
  - `show ip arp inspection interfaces` | Verifies your entries. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 11</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# <code>show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection in DHCP Environments

### Before you begin

This procedure shows how to configure dynamic ARP inspection when two switches support this feature. Host 1 is connected to Switch A, and Host 2 is connected to Switch B. Both switches are running dynamic ARP inspection on VLAN 1 where the hosts are located. A DHCP server is connected to Switch A. Both hosts acquire their IP addresses from the same DHCP server. Therefore, Switch A has the bindings for Host 1 and Host 2, and Switch B has the binding for Host 2.

### Note

Dynamic ARP inspection depends on the entries in the DHCP snooping binding database to verify IP-to-MAC address bindings in incoming ARP requests and ARP responses. Make sure to enable DHCP snooping to permit ARP packets that have dynamically assigned IP addresses.

Follow these steps to configure dynamic ARP inspection. You must perform this procedure on both switches. This procedure is required.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `show cdp neighbors`
3. `configure terminal`
4. `ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range`
5. `Interface interface-id`
6. `ip arp inspection trust`
7. `end`
8. `show ip arp inspection interfaces`
9. `show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range`
10. `show ip dhcp snooping binding`
11. `show ip arp inspection statistics vlan vlan-range`
12. `configure terminal`
### 13. configure terminal

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>show cdp neighbors</td>
<td>Verify the connection between the switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)#show cdp neighbors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range</td>
<td>Enable dynamic ARP inspection on a per-VLAN basis. By default, dynamic ARP inspection is disabled on all VLANs. For vlan-range, specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094. Specify the same VLAN ID for both switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip arp inspection vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface connected to the other switch, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>ip arp inspection trust</td>
<td>Configures the connection between the switches as trusted. By default, all interfaces are untrusted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)#ip arp inspection trust</td>
<td>The switch does not check ARP packets that it receives from the other switch on the trusted interface. It simply forwards the packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>For untrusted interfaces, the switch intercepts all ARP requests and responses. It verifies that the intercepted packets have valid IP-to-MAC address bindings before updating the local cache and before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination. The switch drops invalid packets and logs them in the log buffer according to the logging configuration specified with the ip arp inspection vlan logging global configuration command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)#end</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8 show ip arp inspection interfaces</td>
<td>Verifies the dynamic ARP inspection configuration on interfaces.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9 show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range</td>
<td>Verifies the dynamic ARP inspection configuration on VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)#show ip arp inspection vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10 show ip dhcp snooping binding</td>
<td>Verifies the DHCP bindings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)#show ip dhcp snooping binding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11 show ip arp inspection statistics vlan vlan-range</td>
<td>Checks the dynamic ARP inspection statistics on VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)#show ip arp inspection statistics vlan 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 13 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Limiting the Rate of Incoming ARP Packets**

The switch CPU performs dynamic ARP inspection validation checks; therefore, the number of incoming ARP packets is rate-limited to prevent a denial-of-service attack.

When the rate of incoming ARP packets exceeds the configured limit, the switch places the port in the error-disabled state. The port remains in that state until you enable error-disabled recovery so that ports automatically emerge from this state after a specified timeout period.

**Note**

Unless you configure a rate limit on an interface, changing the trust state of the interface also changes its rate limit to the default value for that trust state. After you configure the rate limit, the interface retains the rate limit even when its trust state is changed. If you enter the `no ip arp inspection limit` interface configuration command, the interface reverts to its default rate limit.
Follow these steps to limit the rate of incoming ARP packets. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `ip arp inspection limit {rate pps [burst interval seconds] | none}`
5. `exit`
6. Use the following commands:
   - `errdisable detect cause arp-inspection`
   - `errdisable recovery cause arp-inspection`
   - `errdisable recovery interval interval`
7. `exit`
8. Use the following show commands:
   - `show ip arp inspection interfaces`
   - `show errdisable recovery`
9. `show running-config`
10. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td>* Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface <code>interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be rate-limited, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> `ip arp inspection limit {rate pps [burst interval seconds]</td>
<td>none}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <code>rate pps</code>, specify an upper limit for the number of incoming packets processed per second. The range is 0 to 2048 pps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) For <strong>burst interval</strong> seconds, specify the consecutive interval in seconds, over which the interface is monitored for a high rate of ARP packets. The range is 1 to 15.</td>
<td>• For <strong>rate none</strong>, specify no upper limit for the rate of incoming ARP packets that can be processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the following commands:</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables error recovery from the dynamic ARP inspection error-disabled state, and configure the dynamic ARP inspection recover mechanism variables. By default, recovery is disabled, and the recovery interval is 300 seconds. For <strong>interval</strong> seconds, specify the time in seconds to recover from the error-disabled state. The range is 30 to 86400.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• errdisable detect cause arp-inspection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• errdisable recovery cause arp-inspection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• errdisable recovery interval <strong>interval</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the following show commands:</td>
<td>Verifies your settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• show ip arp inspection interfaces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• show errdisable recovery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Performing Dynamic ARP Inspection Validation Checks

Dynamic ARP inspection intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. You can configure the switch to perform additional checks on the destination MAC address, the sender and target IP addresses, and the source MAC address.

Follow these steps to perform specific checks on incoming ARP packets. This procedure is optional.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip arp inspection validate {[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]}
4. exit
5. show ip arp inspection vlan *vlan-range*
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip arp inspection validate {[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]}</td>
<td>Performs a specific check on incoming ARP packets. By default, no checks are performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; ip arp inspection validate {[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# ip arp inspection validate {[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The keywords have these meanings:

- For **src-mac**, check the source MAC address in the Ethernet header against the sender MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed on both ARP requests and responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.

- For **dst-mac**, check the destination MAC address in the Ethernet header against the target MAC address in ARP body. This check is performed for ARP responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.

- For **ip**, check the ARP body for invalid and unexpected IP addresses. Addresses include 0.0.0.0, 255.255.255.255, and all IP multicast addresses. Sender IP addresses are checked in all ARP requests and responses, and target IP addresses are checked only in ARP responses.

You must specify at least one of the keywords. Each command overrides the configuration of the previous command; that is, if a command enables src and dst mac validations, and a second command enables IP validation...
### Monitoring DAI

To monitor DAI, use the following commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear ip arp inspection statistics</td>
<td>Clears dynamic ARP inspection statistics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection statistics [vlan vlan-range]</td>
<td>Displays statistics for forwarded, dropped, MAC validation failure, IP validation failure, ACL permitted and denied, and DHCP permitted and denied packets for the specified VLAN. If no VLANs are specified or if a range is specified, displays information only for VLANs with dynamic ARP inspection enabled (active).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear ip arp inspection log</td>
<td>Clears the dynamic ARP inspection log buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection log</td>
<td>Displays the configuration and contents of the dynamic ARP inspection log buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the `show ip arp inspection statistics` command, the switch increments the number of forwarded packets for each ARP request and response packet on a trusted dynamic ARP inspection port. The switch increments the number of ACL or DHCP permitted packets for each packet that is denied by source MAC, destination MAC, or IP validation checks, and the switch increments the appropriate.

### Verifying the DAI Configuration

To display and verify the DAI configuration, use the following commands:
### Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show arp access-list [acl-name]</code></td>
<td>Displays detailed information about ARP ACLs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip arp inspection interfaces [interface-id]</code></td>
<td>Displays the trust state and the rate limit of ARP packets for the specified interface or all interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range</code></td>
<td>Displays the configuration and the operating state of dynamic ARP inspection for the specified VLAN. If no VLANs are specified or if a range is specified, displays information only for VLANs with dynamic ARP inspection enabled (active).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Additional References

#### Error Message Decoder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To help you research and resolve system error messages in this release, use the Error Message Decoder tool.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi">https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature Information for Dynamic ARP Inspection

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 67: Feature Information for Dynamic ARP Inspection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic ARP Inspection</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>ARP provides IP communication within a Layer 2 broadcast domain by mapping an IP address to a MAC address. Dynamic ARP inspection is a security feature that validates ARP packets in a network. It intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. This capability protects the network from certain man-in-the-middle attacks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring IPv6 First Hop Security

- Prerequisites for First Hop Security in IPv6, on page 481
- Restrictions for First Hop Security in IPv6, on page 481
- Information about First Hop Security in IPv6, on page 482
- How to Configure an IPv6 Snooping Policy, on page 484
- How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to an Interface, on page 485
- How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface, on page 487
- How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs Globally, on page 488
- How to Configure the IPv6 Binding Table Content, on page 489
- How to Configure an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy, on page 490
- How to Configure an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy, on page 494
- How to Configure an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy, on page 499
- How to Configure IPv6 Source Guard, on page 505
- How to Configure IPv6 Prefix Guard, on page 508
- Configuration Examples for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 511
- Feature Information for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 511

Prerequisites for First Hop Security in IPv6

- You have configured the necessary IPv6 enabled SDM template.
- You should be familiar with the IPv6 neighbor discovery feature.

Restrictions for First Hop Security in IPv6

- The following restrictions apply when applying FHS policies to EtherChannel interfaces (Port Channels):
  - A physical port with an FHS policy attached cannot join an EtherChannel group.
  - An FHS policy cannot be attached to an physical port when it is a member of an EtherChannel group.

- By default, a snooping policy has a security-level of guard. When such a snooping policy is configured on an access switch, external IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) or Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) server packets are blocked, even though the uplink port facing the router or DHCP
server/relay is configured as a trusted port. To allow IPv6 RA or DHCPv6 server messages, do the following:

- Apply an IPv6 RA-guard policy (for RA) or IPv6 DHCP-guard policy (for DHCP server messages) on the uplink port.

- Configure a snooping policy with a lower security-level, for example glean or inspect. However; configuring a lower security level is not recommended with such a snooping policy, because benefits of First Hop security features are not effective.

### Information about First Hop Security in IPv6

First Hop Security in IPv6 (FHS IPv6) is a set of IPv6 security features, the policies of which can be attached to a physical interface, an EtherChannel interface, or a VLAN. An IPv6 software policy database service stores and accesses these policies. When a policy is configured or modified, the attributes of the policy are stored or updated in the software policy database, then applied as was specified. The following IPv6 policies are currently supported:

- **IPv6 Snooping Policy**—IPv6 Snooping Policy acts as a container policy that enables most of the features available with FHS in IPv6.

- **IPv6 FHS Binding Table Content**—A database table of IPv6 neighbors connected to the switch is created from information sources such as Neighbor Discovery (ND) protocol snooping. This database, or binding, table is used by various IPv6 guard features (such as IPv6 ND Inspection) to validate the link-layer address (LLA), the IPv4 or IPv6 address, and prefix binding of the neighbors to prevent spoofing and redirect attacks.

- **IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection**—IPv6 ND inspection learns and secures bindings for stateless autoconfiguration addresses in Layer 2 neighbor tables. IPv6 ND inspection analyzes neighbor discovery messages in order to build a trusted binding table database and IPv6 neighbor discovery messages that do not conform are dropped. An ND message is considered trustworthy if its IPv6-to-Media Access Control (MAC) mapping is verifiable.

This feature mitigates some of the inherent vulnerabilities of the ND mechanism, such as attacks on DAD, address resolution, router discovery, and the neighbor cache.

---

**Note**

Effective Cisco IOS XE Release 16.3.1, ND Inspection functionality, IPv6 Snooping Policy, and IPv6 FHS Binding Table Content are supported through Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based Device Tracking. For more information, see Configuring SISF based device tracking section of the Software Configuration Guide.

- **IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard**—The IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) guard feature enables the network administrator to block or reject unwanted or rogue RA guard messages that arrive at the network switch platform. RAs are used by routers to announce themselves on the link. The RA Guard feature analyzes the RAs and filters out bogus RAs sent by unauthorized routers. In host mode, all router advertisement and router redirect messages are disallowed on the port. The RA guard feature compares configuration information on the Layer 2 device with the information found in the received RA frame. Once the Layer 2 device has validated the content of the RA frame and router redirect frame against the
configuration, it forwards the RA to its unicast or multicast destination. If the RA frame content is not validated, the RA is dropped.

- **IPv6 DHCP Guard**—The IPv6 DHCP Guard feature blocks reply and advertisement messages that come from unauthorized DHCPv6 servers and relay agents. IPv6 DHCP guard can prevent forged messages from being entered in the binding table and block DHCPv6 server messages when they are received on ports that are not explicitly configured as facing a DHCPv6 server or DHCP relay. To use this feature, configure a policy and attach it to an interface or a VLAN. To debug DHCP guard packets, use the `debug ipv6 snooping dhcp-guard` privileged EXEC command.

- **IPv6 Source Guard**—Like IPv4 Source Guard, IPv6 Source Guard validates the source address or prefix to prevent source address spoofing.

A source guard programs the hardware to allow or deny traffic based on source or destination addresses. It deals exclusively with data packet traffic.

To debug source-guard packets, use the `debug ipv6 snooping source-guard` privileged EXEC command.

The following restrictions apply:

- An FHS policy cannot be attached to an physical port when it is a member of an EtherChannel group.
- When IPv6 source guard is enabled on a switch port, NDP or DHCP snooping must be enabled on the interface to which the switch port belongs. Otherwise, all data traffic from this port will be blocked.
- An IPv6 source guard policy cannot be attached to a VLAN. It is supported only at the interface level.
- When you configure IPv4 and IPv6 source guard together on an interface, it is recommended to use `ip verify source mac-check` instead of `ip verify source`. IPv4 connectivity on a given port might break due to two different filtering rules set — one for IPv4 (IP-filter) and the other for IPv6 (IP-MAC filter).
- You cannot use IPv6 Source Guard and Prefix Guard together. When you attach the policy to an interface, it should be "validate address" or "validate prefix" but not both.
- PVLAN and Source/Prefix Guard cannot be applied together.

For more information on IPv6 Source Guard, see the IPv6 Source Guard chapter of the Cisco IOS IPv6 Configuration Guide Library on Cisco.com.

- **IPv6 Prefix Guard**—The IPv6 prefix guard feature works within the IPv6 source guard feature, to enable the device to deny traffic originated from non-topologically correct addresses. IPv6 prefix guard is often used when IPv6 prefixes are delegated to devices (for example, home gateways) using DHCP prefix delegation. The feature discovers ranges of addresses assigned to the link and blocks any traffic sourced with an address outside this range.

For more information on IPv6 Prefix Guard, see the IPv6 Prefix Guard chapter of the Cisco IOS IPv6 Configuration Guide Library on Cisco.com.

- **IPv6 Destination Guard**—The IPv6 destination guard feature works with IPv6 neighbor discovery to ensure that the device performs address resolution only for those addresses that are known to be active on the link. It relies on the address glean functionality to populate all destinations active on the link into the binding table and then blocks resolutions before they happen when the destination is not found in the binding table.
For more information about IPv6 Destination Guard, see the IPv6 Destination Guard chapter of the Cisco IOS IPv6 Configuration Guide Library on Cisco.com.

# How to Configure an IPv6 Snooping Policy

The IPv6 Snooping Policy feature has been deprecated. Although the commands are visible on the CLI and you can configure them, we recommend that you use the Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based Device Tracking feature instead.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Snooping Policy:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `ipv6 snooping policy policy-name`
3. `{[default ] | [device-role {node | switch}] | [limit address-count value] | [no] | [protocol {dhcp | ndp}] | [security-level {glean | guard | inspect}] | [tracking {disable [state-lifetime {seconds | infinite}] | enable [reachable-lifetime {seconds | infinite}] } | [trusted-port ]}
4. `end`
5. `show ipv6 snooping policy policy-name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>ipv6 snooping policy policy-name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>ipv6 snooping policy example_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Creates a snooping policy and enters IPv6 Snooping Policy Configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** | `{[default ] | [device-role {node | switch}] | [limit address-count value] | [no] | [protocol {dhcp | ndp}] | [security-level {glean | guard | inspect}] | [tracking {disable [state-lifetime {seconds | infinite}] | enable [reachable-lifetime {seconds | infinite}] } | [trusted-port ]}
| **Example:** | Device(config-ipv6-snooping)# `security-level inspect` |
| **Example:** | Device(config-ipv6-snooping)# `trusted-port` |
| **Purpose:** | Enables data address gleaning, validates messages against various criteria, specifies the security level for messages. |
| | • (Optional) `default`—Sets all to default options. |
| | • (Optional) `device-role {node | switch}`—Specifies the role of the device attached to the port. Default is `node`. |
| | • (Optional) `limit address-count value`—Limits the number of addresses allowed per target. |
| | • (Optional) `no`—Negates a command or sets it to defaults. |
| | • (Optional) `protocol {dhcp | ndp}`—Specifies which protocol should be redirected to the snooping feature.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dhcp and ndp. To change the default, use the no protocol command.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) security-level {glean</td>
<td>guard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glean — Gleans addresses from messages and populates the binding table without any verification.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard — Gleans addresses and inspects messages. In addition, it rejects RA and DHCP server messages. This is the default option.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspect — Gleans addresses, validates messages for consistency and conformance, and enforces address ownership.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) tracking {disable</td>
<td>enable} — Overrides the default tracking behavior and specifies a tracking option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) trusted-port — Sets up a trusted port. It disables the guard on applicable targets. Bindings learned through a trusted port have preference over bindings learned through any other port. A trusted port is given preference in case of a collision while making an entry in the table.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 4

**end**

Example:

Device(config-ipv6-snooping)# **exit**

Exits configuration modes to Privileged EXEC mode.

Step 5

**show ipv6 snooping policy policy-name**

Example:

Device#**show ipv6 snooping policy example_policy**

Displays the snooping policy configuration.

**What to do next**

Attach an IPv6 Snooping policy to interfaces or VLANs.

**How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to an Interface**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping policy on an interface or VLAN:
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>interface Interface_type stack/module/port</strong></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>switchport</strong></td>
<td>Enters the Switchport mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>**ipv6 snooping [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan {vlan_id</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** To configure Layer 2 parameters, if the interface is in Layer 3 mode, you must enter the switchport interface configuration command without any parameters to put the interface into Layer 2 mode. This shuts down the interface and then re-enables it, which might generate messages on the device to which the interface is connected. When you put an interface that is in Layer 3 mode into Layer 2 mode, the previous configuration information related to the affected interface might be lost, and the interface is returned to its default configuration. The command prompt displays as (config-if)# in Switchport configuration mode.
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping vlan 111,112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy vlan 111,112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 5

**Do show running-config**

**Example:**

Device#(config-if)# do show running-config

Verifies that the policy is attached to the specified interface without exiting the interface configuration mode.

---

## How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

Enters the global configuration mode.

| **Step 2** interface range Interface_name                                         |         |

**Example:**

Device(config)# interface range Po11

Specify the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters the interface range configuration mode.

**Tip** Enter the `do show interfaces summary` command for quick reference to interface names and types.

| **Step 3** ipv6 snooping [attach-policy policy_name[ vlan {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ] vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ] |         |

**Example:**

Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy

Attachments the IPv6 Snooping policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on that interface. The default policy is attached if the `attach-policy` option is not used.

### How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface
How to Attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. vlan configuration *vlan_list*
3. ipv6 snooping [attach-policy *policy_name*]
4. do show running-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> vlan configuration <em>vlan_list</em></td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 Snooping policy will be attached ; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 333</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ipv6 snooping [attach-policy <em>policy_name</em>]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Snooping policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used. The default policy is, security-level guard, device-role node, protocol ndp and dhcp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> do show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies that the policy is attached to the specified VLANs without exiting the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device#(config-if)# do show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How to Configure the IPv6 Binding Table Content

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Binding Table Content:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `[no] ipv6 neighbor binding [vlan vlan-id] [ipv6-address interface interface_type stack/module/port hw_address [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] | [tracking] [default | disable] [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] | [enable] [tracking] [default | disable] [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] [retry-interval [seconds | default | infinite]] ]]
3. `[no] ipv6 neighbor binding max-entries number [mac-limit number | port-limit number [mac-limit number] | vlan-limit number [mac-limit number] | [port-limit number [mac-limit number]] ] ]
4. `ipv6 neighbor binding logging`
5. `exit`
6. `show ipv6 neighbor binding`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Adds a static entry to the binding table database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `[no] ipv6 neighbor binding [vlan vlan-id] [ipv6-address interface interface_type stack/module/port hw_address [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] | [tracking] [default | disable] [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] | [enable] [tracking] [default | disable] [reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds | default | infinite] [retry-interval [seconds | default | infinite]] ]]
| Example: | Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding |
| **Step 3**        | Specifies the maximum number of entries that are allowed to be inserted in the binding table cache. |
| `[no] ipv6 neighbor binding max-entries number [mac-limit number | port-limit number [mac-limit number] | vlan-limit number [mac-limit number] | [port-limit number [mac-limit number]] ] ]
| Example: | Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding max-entries 30000 |
| **Step 4**        | Enables the logging of binding table main events. |
| `ipv6 neighbor binding logging` | Example: |
| Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding logging | |
### How to Configure an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 ND Inspection Policy:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. [no]ipv6 nd inspection policy *policy-name*
3. device-role {host | switch}
4. limit address-count *value*
5. tracking {enable [reachable-lifetime {*value | infinite}] | disable [stale-lifetime {*value | infinite}]}
6. trusted-port
7. validate source-mac
8. no {device-role | limit address-count | tracking | trusted-port | validate source-mac}
9. default {device-role | limit address-count | tracking | trusted-port | validate source-mac}
10. do show ipv6 nd inspection policy *policy_name*

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the ND inspection policy name and enters ND Inspection Policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[no]ipv6 nd inspection policy <em>policy-name</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 nd inspection policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the role of the device attached to the port. The default is host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>device-role {host</td>
<td>switch}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-nd-inspection)# device-role switch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Enter 1–10,000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limit address-count <em>value</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exits global configuration mode, and places the router in privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displays contents of a binding table.</td>
<td>show ipv6 neighbor binding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-nd-inspection)# limit address-count 1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> tracking {enable [reachable-lifetime {value</td>
<td>infinite}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# tracking disable stale-lifetime infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> trusted-port</td>
<td>Configures a port to become a trusted port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# trusted-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> validate source-mac</td>
<td>Checks the source media access control (MAC) address against the link-layer address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# validate source-mac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> no {device-role</td>
<td>limit address-count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# no validate source-mac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> default {device-role</td>
<td>limit address-count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# default limit address-count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> do show ipv6 nd inspection policy policy_name</td>
<td>Verifies the ND Inspection Configuration without exiting ND inspection configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-nd-inspection)# do show ipv6 nd inspection policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to an Interface**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 ND Inspection policy to an interface or VLANs on an interface:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface Interface_type stack/module/port
3. ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all] ] [ vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ] ]
4. do show running-config
DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> interface Interface_type stack/module/port</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan {vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> do show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies that the policy is attached to the specified interface without exiting the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device#(config-if)# do show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface range Interface_name
3. ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all; } | vlan {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all; } | vlan {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all; } ]
4. `do show running-config interface portchannel_interface_name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>interface range Interface_name</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device(config)# interface Po11</code></td>
<td>Specify the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters the interface range configuration mode.&lt;br&gt;<strong>Tip</strong> Enter the <code>do show interfaces summary</code> command for quick reference to interface names and types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>`ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan {vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>do show running-config interface portchannel_interface_name</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>Device#(config-if-range)# do show running-config int poll</code></td>
<td>Confirms that the policy is attached to the specified interface without exiting the configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**How to Attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to VLANs Globally**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 ND Inspection policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. **vlan configuration** `vlan_list`  
3. **ipv6 nd inspection** `[attach-policy policy_name]`  
4. `do show running-config`  

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 Snooping policy will be attached; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>vlan configuration</code> <code>vlan_list</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# vlan configuration 334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the <strong>attach-policy</strong> option is not used. The default policy is, device-role <strong>host</strong>, no drop-unsecure, limit address-count disabled, sec-level minimum is disabled, tracking is disabled, no trusted-port, no validate source-mac.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6 nd inspection</code> <code>[attach-policy policy_name]</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Confirms that the policy is attached to the specified VLANs without exiting the configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>do show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device#(config-if)# do show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### How to Configure an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`  
2. `[no]ipv6 nd raguard policy policy-name`  
3. `[no]device-role {host | monitor | router | switch}`  
4. `[no]hop-limit {maximum | minimum} value`  
5. `[no]managed-config-flag {off | on}`  
6. `[no]match {{ipv6 access-list list | ra prefix-list list} | `ipv6 access-list` | ra prefix-list` | other-config-flag | router-preference maximum | trusted-port}`  
7. `[no]trusted-port`  
8. `default {device-role | hop-limit {maximum | minimum} | managed-config-flag | match {ipv6 access-list | ra prefix-list} | other-config-flag | router-preference maximum | trusted-port}`  
9. `do show ipv6 nd raguard policy policy_name`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[no]ipv6 nd raguard policy policy-name</td>
<td>Specifies the RA Guard policy name and enters RA Guard Policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[no]device-role {host</td>
<td>monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>[no]hop-limit {maximum</td>
<td>minimum} value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>[no]managed-config-flag {off</td>
<td>on}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Step 6**

```plaintext
[no] match {ipv6 access-list list | ra prefix-list list}
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# match ipv6 access-list example_list
```

**Purpose**

Matches a specified prefix list or access list.

**Step 7**

```plaintext
[no] other-config-flag {on | off}
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# other-config-flag on
```

**Purpose**

Enables filtering of Router Advertisement messages by the Other Configuration, or "O" flag field. A rogue RA message with an O field of 1 can cause a host to use a rogue DHCPv6 server. If not configured, this filter is disabled.

- **On**—Accepts and forwards RA messages with an O value of 1, blocks those with 0.
- **Off**—Accepts and forwards RA messages with an O value of 0, blocks those with 1.

**Step 8**

```plaintext
[no] router-preference maximum {high | medium | low}
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# router-preference maximum high
```

**Purpose**

Enables filtering of Router Advertisement messages by the Router Preference flag. If not configured, this filter is disabled.

- **high**—Accepts RA messages with the Router Preference set to high, medium, or low.
- **medium**—Blocks RA messages with the Router Preference set to high.
- **low**—Blocks RA messages with the Router Preference set to medium and high.

**Step 9**

```plaintext
[no] trusted-port
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# trusted-port
```

**Purpose**

When configured as a trusted port, all attached devices are trusted, and no further message verification is performed.

**Step 10**

```plaintext
default {device-role | hop-limit {maximum | minimum} | managed-config-flag | match {ipv6 access-list | ra prefix-list | other-config-flag | router-preference maximum | trusted-port}]
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# default hop-limit
```

**Purpose**

Restores a command to its default value.

**Step 11**

```plaintext
do show ipv6 nd raguard policy policy_name
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-nd-raguard)# do show ipv6 nd raguard policy example_policy
```

**Purpose**

(Optional) Displays the ND Guard Policy configuration without exiting the RA Guard policy configuration mode.
# How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy to an interface or to VLANs on the interface:

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface` `Interface_type` `stack/module/port`
3. `ipv6 nd raguard` `[attach-policy` `policy_name` `[vlan` `[vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all] ]` `vlan` `[vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all] ]`
4. `do show running-config`

## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>interface</strong> <code>Interface_type</code> <code>stack/module/port</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** | `ipv6 nd raguard` `[attach-policy` `policy_name` `[vlan` `[vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all] ]` `vlan` `[vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all] ]`
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# `ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy`  |
| or | Device(config-if)# `ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy vlan 222,223,224`  |
| or | Device(config-if)# `ipv6 nd raguard vlan 222, 223,224`  |
| **Step 4** | `do show running-config`  |
| **Example:** | Device#(config-if)# `do show running-config`  |
How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface range Interface_name`
3. `ipv6 nd raguard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ]`
4. `do show running-config interfaceportchannel_interface_name`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>interface range Interface_name</code></td>
<td>Specify the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters the interface range configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>interface Po11</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>`ipv6 nd raguard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if-range)# <code>ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy</code> or Device(config-if-range)# <code>ipv6 nd raguardvlan 222,223,224</code> or Device(config-if-range)# <code>ipv6 nd raguardvlan 222,223,224</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How to Attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy to VLANs regardless of interface:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. vlan configuration  *vlan_list*
3. ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy  *policy_name*]
4. do show running-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>vlan configuration  <em>vlan_list</em></td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 RA Guard policy will be attached; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan configuration 335</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy  <em>policy_name</em>]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 RA Guard policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>do show running-config</td>
<td>Confirms that the policy is attached to the specified VLANs without exiting the configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device#(config-if)# do show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to Configure an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 DHCP (DHCPv6) Guard policy:
SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. [no]ipv6 dhcp guard policy policy-name
3. [no]device-role {client | server}
4. [no] match server access-list ipv6-access-list-name
5. [no] match reply prefix-list ipv6-prefix-list-name
6. [no] preference { max limit | min limit }
7. [no] trusted-port
8. default {device-role | trusted-port}
9. do show ipv6 dhcp guard policy policy_name

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>specifies the DHCPv6 Guard policy name and enters DHCPv6 Guard Policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[no]ipv6 dhcp guard policy policy-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>device(config)# ipv6 dhcp guard policy example_policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(optional) filters out DHCPv6 replies and DHCPv6 advertisements on the port that are not from a device of the specified role. Default is <strong>client</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[no]device-role {client</td>
<td>server}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>device(config-dhcp-guard)# device-role server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(optional). Enables verification that the advertised DHCPv6 server or relay address is from an authorized server access list (the destination address in the access list is 'any'). If not configured, this check will be bypassed. An empty access list is treated as a permit all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[no] match server access-list ipv6-access-list-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>;;assume a preconfigured IPv6 Access List as follows: device(config)# ipv6 access-list my_acls device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit host FE80::A8BB:CCFF:FE01:F700 any device(config-dhcp-guard)# match server access-list my_acls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### How to Configure an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>[no] match reply prefix-list ipv6-prefix-list-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 prefix-list my_prefix permit 2001:0DB8::/64 le 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>[no] preference { max limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-dhcp-guard)# preference max 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>[no] trusted-port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If you configure a trusted port then the device-role option is not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>default {device-role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-dhcp-guard)# default device-role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td>do show ipv6 dhcp guard policy policy_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-dhcp-guard)# do show ipv6 dhcp guard policy example_policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example of DHCPv6 Guard Configuration**

```bash
enable
configure terminal
ipv6 access-list acl1
  permit host FE80::A8BB:CCFF:FE01:F700 any
  ipv6 prefix-list abc permit 2001:0DB8::/64 le 128
  ipv6 dhcp guard policy pol1
device-role server
  match server access-list acl1
  match reply prefix-list abc

device-role server
  match server access-list acl1
  match reply prefix-list abc
```
preference min 0
preference max 255
trusted-port
interface GigabitEthernet 0/2/0
switchport
ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy poll vlan add 1
vlan 1
ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy poll
show ipv6 dhcp guard policy poll

How to Attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to an Interface or a VLAN on an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Binding Table Content:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface Interface_type stack/module/port
3. ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ]
4. do show running-config interface Interface_type stack/module/port

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> interface Interface_type stack/module/port</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all} ]
| **Example:** Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy or Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy vlan 222,223,224 or | Attaches the DHCP Guard policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on that interface. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used. |
How to Attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface range Interface_name`
3. `ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all } ]]`
4. `do show running-config interfaceportchannel_interface_name`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `configure terminal`  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| Step 2 | `interface range Interface_name`  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# interface Po11 | Specify the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters the interface range configuration mode.  
**Tip** Enter the `do show interfaces summary` command for quick reference to interface names and types. |
| Step 3 | `ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [ vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all ] | vlan [ {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | exceptvlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all } ]]`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy | Attaches the DHCP Guard policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on that interface. The default policy is attached if the `attach-policy` option is not used. |
How to Attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. vlan configuration vlan_list
3. ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name]
4. do show running-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 vlan configuration vlan_list</td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 Snooping policy will be attached; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used. The default policy is, device-role client, no trusted-port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### How to Configure IPv6 Source Guard

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `[no] ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name`
4. `[deny global-autoconf] [permit link-local] [default{...}] [exit] [no{...}]`
5. `end`
6. `show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `enable`                                                                          | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  \[Device\> enable\] |                                                                                     |
| Step 2 | `configure terminal`                                                              | Enters the global configuration mode.                                                                                               |
  Example:  
  \[Device\# configure terminal\] |                                                                                     |
| Step 3 | `[no] ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name`                                       | Specifies the IPv6 Source Guard policy name and enters IPv6 Source Guard policy configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  \[Device(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy example_policy\] |                                                                                     |
| Step 4 | `[deny global-autoconf] [permit link-local] [default{...}] [exit] [no{...}]`      | (Optional) Defines the IPv6 Source Guard policy.  
  Example:  
  \[Device(config-sisf-sourceguard)# deny global-autoconf\] |  
  • `deny global-autoconf`—Denies data traffic from auto-configured global addresses. This is useful when all global addresses on a link are DHCP-assigned and the administrator wants to block hosts with self-configured addresses to send traffic.  
  • `permit link-local`—Allows all data traffic that is sourced by a link-local address.  
  **Note**  
  Trusted option under source guard policy is not supported. |
### How to Attach an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to an Interface

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface Interface_type stack/module/port
4. ipv6 source-guard [attach-policy <policy_name> ]
5. show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
|      | Example:          | • Enter your password if prompted. |
|      | Device> enable    |         |
| 2    | configure terminal| Enters the global configuration mode. |
|      | Example:          |         |
|      | Device# configure terminal | |
| 3    | interface Interface_type stack/module/port | Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode. |
|      | Example:          |         |
|      | Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4 |
### How to attach an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface port-channel port-channel-number`
4. `ipv6 source-guard [attach-policy <policy_name>]`
5. `show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>interface port-channel port-channel-number</code></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and port number and places the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>switch in the port channel configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface Po4</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>ipv6 source-guard [attach-policy &lt;policy_name&gt;]</code></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>policy is attached if the <code>attach-policy</code> option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>example_policy`</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**How to Configure IPv6 Prefix Guard**

**Note**
To allow routing protocol control packets sourced by a link-local address when prefix guard is applied, enable the permit link-local command in the source-guard policy configuration mode.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `[no] ipv6 source-guard policy source-guard-policy`
4. `[no] validate address`
5. `validate prefix`
6. `exit`
7. `show ipv6 source-guard policy [source-guard-policy]`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code> Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code> Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>[no] ipv6 source-guard policy source-guard-policy</code> Defines an IPv6 source-guard policy name and enters switch integrated security features source-guard policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device (config)# ipv6 source-guard policy my_snooping_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>[no] validate address</code> Disables the validate address feature and enables the IPv6 prefix guard feature to be configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### How to Attach an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to an Interface

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface Interface_type stack/module/port`
4. `ipv6 source-guard attach-policy policy_name`
5. `show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

  - `enable`

  **Example:**

  ```
  Device> enable
  ```

  Enables privileged EXEC mode.

  - Enter your password if prompted.

| **Step 2**

  - `configure terminal`

  **Example:**

  ```
  Device# configure terminal
  ```

  Enters the global configuration mode.

| **Step 3**

  - `interface Interface_type stack/module/port`

  **Example:**

  ```
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4
  ```

  Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.
How to attach an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. interface port-channel port-channel-number  
4. ipv6 source-guard [attach-policy <policy_name> ]  
5. show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface port-channel port-channel-number</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and port number and places the switch in the port channel configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device (config)# interface Po4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 source-guard [attach-policy &lt;policy_name&gt; ]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy example_policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuration Examples for IPv6 First Hop Security

#### Examples: How to attach an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

The following example shows how to attach an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface:

```
Switch# configure terminal
Switch(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy POL
Switch(config-sisf-sourceguard)# validate address
Switch(config-sisf-sourceguard)# exit
Switch(config)# interface Po4
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 snooping
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy POL
```

#### Examples: How to attach an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

The following example shows how to attach an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface:

```
Switch# configure terminal
Switch(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy POL
Switch(config-sisf-sourceguard)# no validate address
Switch(config-sisf-sourceguard)# validate prefix
Switch(config)# interface Po4
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 snooping
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy POL
```

### Feature Information for IPv6 First Hop Security

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Feature Information for IPv6 First Hop Security

#### Table 68: Feature Information for IPv6 First Hop Security

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 First Hop Security</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>First Hop Security in IPv6 (FHS IPv6) is a set of IPv6 security features, the policies of which can be attached to a physical interface, an EtherChannel interface, or a VLAN. An IPv6 software policy database service stores and accesses these policies. When a policy is configured or modified, the attributes of the policy are stored or updated in the software policy database, then applied as was specified. The IPv6 Snooping Policy feature has been deprecated. Although the commands are visible on the CLI and you can configure them, we recommend that you use the Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based Device Tracking feature instead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Overview of SISF-Based Device Tracking

The Switch Integrated Security Features based (SISF-based) device tracking feature is part of the suite of first-hop security features.

The main role of the feature is to track the presence, location, and movement of end-nodes in the network. SISF snoops traffic received by the switch, extracts device identity (MAC and IP address), and stores them in a binding table. Many features, such as, IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec and LISP etc., depend on the accuracy of this information to operate properly.

SISF-based device tracking supports both IPv4 and IPv6.

Even with the introduction of SISF-based device tracking, the legacy device tracking CLI (IP Device Tracking (IPDT) and IPv6 Snooping CLI) continues to be available. When you bootup the switch, the set of commands that is available depends on existing configuration, and only one of the following is available:

- SISF-based device tracking CLI, or
- IPDT and IPv6 Snooping CLI

Note

The IPDT and IPv6 Snooping commands are deprecated, but continue to be available. We recommend that you upgrade to SISF-based device tracking.

If you are using the IPDT and IPv6 Snooping CLI and want to migrate to SISF-based device tracking, see Migrating from legacy IPDT and IPv6 Snooping to SISF-Based Device Tracking, for more information.

SISF-based device tracking can be enabled manually (by using device-tracking commands), or programmatically (which is the case when providing device tracking services to other features).
Options to Enable SISF-Based Device Tracking

SISF-Based device tracking is disabled by default.

You can enable it by defining a device tracking policy and attaching the policy to a specific target.

Note

The target could be an interface or a VLAN.

Manually Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

• Option 1: Apply the default device tracking policy to a target.

Enter the device-tracking command in the interface configuration mode or in the VLAN configuration mode. The system then attaches the default policy to the interface or VLAN.

Note

The default policy is a built-in policy with default settings; you cannot change any of the attributes of the default policy. In order to be able to configure device tracking policy attributes you must create a custom policy. See Option 2: Create a custom policy with custom settings.

• Option 2: Create a custom policy with custom settings.

Enter the device-tracking policy command in global configuration mode and enter a custom policy name. The system creates a policy with the name you specify. You can then configure the available settings, in the device tracking configuration mode (config-device-tracking), and attach the policy to a specified target.

Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

Some features rely on device tracking and utilize the trusted database of binding entries that SISF-based device tracking builds and maintains. These features, also called device tracking clients, enable device tracking programmatically (create and attach the device tracking policy).

Note

The exceptions here are IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IP Source Guard (IPSG) - they also rely on device tracking, but they do not enable it. For these device tracking clients, you must enter the ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan command, to programmatically enable device tracking on a particular target.

Note the following about programmatically enabling SISF-based device tracking:

• A device tracking client requires device tracking to be enabled.

There are several device tracking clients, therefore, multiple programmatic policies could be created. The settings of each policy differ depending on the device tracking client that creates the policy.

• The policy that is created, and its settings, are system-defined.
Configurable policy attributes are available in the device tracking configuration mode (config-device-tracking) and vary from one release to another. If you try to modify an attribute that is not configurable, the configuration change is rejected and an error message is displayed.

For release-specific information about programmatically created policies, see *Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE* `<release name> <release number>` in the required version of the document.

### Migrating from Legacy IPDT and IPv6 Snooping to SISF-Based Device Tracking

Based on the legacy configuration that exists on your device, the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command upgrades your CLI differently. Consider the following configuration scenarios and the corresponding migration results before you migrate your existing configuration.

**Note**

You cannot configure a mix of the old IPDT and IPv6 snooping CLI with the SISF-based device tracking CLI.

#### Only IPDT Configuration Exists

If your device has only IPDT configuration, running the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command converts the configuration to use the new SISF policy that is created and attached to the interface. You can then update this SISF policy.

If you continue to use the legacy commands, this restricts you to operate in a legacy mode where only the legacy IPDT and IPv6 snooping commands are available on the device.

#### Only IPv6 Snooping Configuration Exists

On a device with existing IPv6 snooping configuration, the old IPv6 Snooping commands are available for further configuration. The following options are available:

- (Recommended) Use the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command to convert all your legacy configuration to the new SISF-based device tracking commands. After conversion, only the new device tracking commands will work on your device.

- Use the legacy IPv6 Snooping commands for your future configuration and do not run the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command. With this option, only the legacy IPv6 Snooping commands are available on your device, and you cannot use the new SISF-based device tracking CLI commands.

#### Both IPDT and IPv6 Snooping Configuration Exist

On a device that has both legacy IPDT configuration and IPv6 snooping configuration, you can convert legacy commands to the SISF-based device tracking CLI commands. However, note that only one snooping policy can be attached to an interface, and the IPv6 snooping policy parameters override the IPDT settings.
If you do not migrate to the new SISF-based commands and continue to use the legacy IPv6 snooping or IPDT commands, your IPv4 device tracking configuration information may be displayed in the IPv6 snooping commands, as the SISF-based device tracking feature handles both IPv4 and IPv6 configuration. To avoid this, we recommend that you convert your legacy configuration to SISF-based device tracking commands.

**Note**

If your device has no legacy IP Device Tracking or IPv6 Snooping configurations, you can use only the new SISF-based device tracking commands for all your future configuration. The legacy IPDT commands and IPv6 snooping commands are not available.

### How to Configure SISF-Based Device Tracking

#### Manually Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

##### Applying the Default Device Tracking Policy to a Target

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to apply the default device tracking policy to an interface or VLAN:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. Specify an interface or a VLAN
   - `interface interface`
   - `vlan configuration vlan_list`
3. `device-tracking`
4. `exit`
5. `show device-tracking policy policy-name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> Specify an interface or a VLAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>interface interface</code></td>
<td><code>interface type number</code>—Specifies the interface and enters the interface configuration mode. The device tracking policy will be attached to the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>vlan configuration vlan_list</code></td>
<td><code>vlan configuration vlan_list</code>—Specifies the VLANs and enters the VLAN feature configuration mode. The device tracking policy will be attached to the specified VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</code> OR <code>Device(config)# vlan configuration 333</code></td>
<td>Enables SISF-based device tracking and attaches the default policy it to the interface or VLAN. The default policy is a built-in policy with default settings; none of the attributes of the default policy can be changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 3

**device-tracking**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# device-tracking
OR
Device(config-vlan-config)# device-tracking
```

### Step 4

**exit**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# exit
OR
Device(config-vlan-config)# exit
```

### Step 5

**show device-tracking policy ** policy-name**

**Example:**

```
Device# show device-tracking policy default
```

Creating a Custom Device Tracking Policy with Custom Settings

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to create and configure a device tracking policy:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. [no] device-tracking policy **policy-name**
3. [data-glean | default | destination-glean | device-role | distribution-switch | exit | limit | no | prefix-glean | protocol | security-level | tracking | trusted-port | vpc]
4. end
5. show device-tracking policy **policy-name**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

| **Step 2**

[no] device-tracking policy **policy-name**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# device-tracking policy example_policy
```

Creates the policy and enters the device-tracking configuration mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Enter the question mark (?) at the system prompt to obtain a list of available options in this mode. You can configure the following for both IPv4 and IPv6:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>data-glean</strong>—Enables learning of addresses from a data packet snooped from a source inside the network and populates the binding table with the data traffic source address. Enter one of these options:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• log-only—Generates a syslog message upon data packet notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• recovery—Uses a protocol to enable binding table recovery. Enter <strong>NDP</strong> or <strong>DHCP</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>default</strong>—Sets the policy attribute to its default value. You can set these policy attributes to their default values: <strong>data-glean</strong>, <strong>destination-glean</strong>, <strong>device-role</strong>, <strong>limit</strong>, <strong>prefix-glean</strong>, <strong>protocol</strong>, <strong>security-level</strong>, <strong>tracking</strong>, <strong>trusted-port</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>destination-glean</strong>—Populates the binding table by gleaning data traffic destination address. Enter one of these options:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• log-only—Generates a syslog message upon data packet notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• recovery—Uses a protocol to enable binding table recovery. Enter <strong>DHCP</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>device-role</strong>—Sets the role of the device attached to the port. It can be a node or a switch. Enter one of these options:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• node—Configures the attached device as a node. This is the default option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• switch—Configures the attached device as a switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>distribution-switch</strong>—Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>exit</strong>—Exits the device-tracking policy configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>limit</strong> address-count—Specifies an address count limit per port. The range is 1 to 32000.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>no</strong>—Negates the command or sets it to defaults.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <code>prefix-glean</code></td>
<td>Enables learning of prefixes from either IPv6 Router Advertisements or from DHCP-PD. You have the following option:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) <code>only</code>—Gleans only prefixes and not host addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <code>protocol</code></td>
<td>Sets the protocol to glean; by default, all are gleaned. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>arp</code> [prefix-list <code>name</code>]—Gleans addresses in ARP packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>dhcp4</code> [prefix-list <code>name</code>]—Glean addresses in DHCPv4 packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>dhcp6</code> [prefix-list <code>name</code>]—Glean addresses in DHCPv6 packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>ndp</code> [prefix-list <code>name</code>]—Glean addresses in NDP packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>udp</code> [prefix-list <code>name</code>]—Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <code>security-level</code></td>
<td>Specifies the level of security enforced by the feature. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>glean</code>—Gleans addresses passively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>guard</code>—Inspects and drops un-authorized messages. This is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>inspect</code>—Gleans and validates messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <code>tracking</code></td>
<td>Specifies a tracking option. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>disable</code> [stale-lifetime [1-86400-seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optionally, you can enter the duration for which the entry is kept inactive before deletion, or keep it permanently inactive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>enable</strong> [reachable-lifetime [1-86400-seconds</td>
<td>infinite]] —Turns on device-tracking. Optionally, you can enter the duration for which the entry is kept reachable, or keep it permanently reachable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>trusted-port</strong> —Sets up a trusted port. Disables the guard on applicable targets. Bindings learned through a trusted port have preference over bindings learned through any other port. A trusted port is given preference in case of a collision while making an entry in the table.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>vpc</strong> —Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example:

**Step 4**

```
Device(config-device-tracking)# exit
```

Exits configuration mode.

**Step 5**

```
Device# show device-tracking policy example_policy
```

Displays the device-tracking policy configuration.

### Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)

### Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach a device tracking policy to an interface:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface** `interface`
3. `[no]` **device-tracking attach-policy** `policy name`
4. **end**
5. **show device-tracking policies** `[interface` `interface]`

### What to do next

Attach the policy to an interface or VLAN.
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> interface interface</td>
<td>Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> [no] device-tracking attach-policy policy name</td>
<td>Attaches the device tracking policy to the interface. Device tracking is also supported on EtherChannels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# device-tracking attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> SISF based device-tracking policies can be disabled only if they are custom policies. Programmatically created policies can be removed only if the corresponding device-tracking client feature configuration is removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show device-tracking policies [interface interface]</td>
<td>Displays policies that match the specified interface type and number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# show device-tracking policies interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to a VLAN

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach a device-tracking policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal  
2. vlan configuration vlan_list  
3. [no] device-tracking attach-policy policy_name  
4. do show device-tracking policies vlan vlan-ID

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Device# configure terminal | |}

### Step 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vlan configuration vlan_list</code></td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the device tracking policy will be attached; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**
```
Device(config)# vlan configuration 333
```

### Step 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>no device-tracking attach-policy policy_name</code></td>
<td>Attaches the device tracking policy to the specified VLANs across all switch interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
SISF based device-tracking policies can be disabled only if they are custom policies. Programmatically created policies can be removed only if the corresponding device-tracking client feature configuration is removed.

**Example:**
```
Device(config-vlan-config)# device-tracking attach-policy example_policy
```

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>do show device-tracking policies vlan vlan-ID</code></td>
<td>Verifies that the policy is attached to the specified VLAN, without exiting the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**
```
Device(config-vlan-config)# do show device-tracking policies vlan 333
```

---

### Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and Later Releases

**Table 69: Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and Later Releases**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device tracking client features that can enable SISF-based device tracking</th>
<th>Starting with Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and all later releases, you can programmatically enable SISF-based device tracking for these features:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features: enter the <code>ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Locator/ID Separation Protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• EVPN on VLAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If there is more than one programmatically created policy, the policy with the highest priority is effective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy Name</th>
<th>The IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features use policy <code>DT-PROGRAMMATIC</code>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The LISP feature creates <code>LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN</code> or <code>LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EVPN on VLAN feature creates <code>evpn-sisf-policy</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The list of settings differ with each programmatic policy. See the examples for more information.
Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking

User Options

- Policy priority is supported. Priority is determined by how the policy is created. A manually created policy has the highest priority. This enables you to apply policy settings that are different from policies that are generated programmatically.
- Multiple policies can be attached to the same VLAN.
- When multiple policies with different priorities are attached to the same VLAN, the settings of the policy with the highest priority are effective. The exceptions here are the `limit address-count for IPv4 per mac` and `limit address-count for IPv6 per mac` settings - the settings of the policy with the lowest priority are effective.
- The policy cannot be removed unless the device tracking client feature configuration is removed.
- The policy attributes cannot be changed.
- You cannot change the address count limit per MAC. This refers to the `limit address-count for IPv4 per mac` and `limit address-count for IPv6 per mac` commands.
- In order to change a policy setting on a VLAN, create a customized device-tracking policy and attach it to the VLAN.
- When a device-tracking policy is attached to an interface under a VLAN, the policy settings on the interface take precedence over those on its VLAN; exceptions here are the values for `limit address-count for IPv4 per mac` and `limit address-count for IPv6 per mac`, which are aggregated from the policy on both the interface and VLAN.

Configuring a Multi-Switch Network to Stop Creating Binding Entries from a Trunk Port

In a multi-switch network, SISF-based device tracking provides the capability to distribute binding table entries between switches running the feature. Binding entries are only created on the switches where the host appears on an access port. No entry is created for a host that appears over a trunk port. This is achieved by configuring a policy with the `trusted-port` and `device-role switch` options, and attaching it to the trunk port.

---

**Important**

Both, the `trusted-port`, and `device-role switch` options, must be configured in the policy.

Further, we recommended that you apply such a policy on a port facing a device, which also has SISF-based device tracking enabled.

Complete the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `device-tracking policy policy-name`
3. `device-role switch`
4. trusted-port
5. end
6. interface interface
7. device-tracking attach-policy policy-name

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> device-tracking policy policy-name</td>
<td>Enters the device-tracking policy configuration mode, for the specified policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# device-tracking policy example_trusted_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> device-role switch</td>
<td>Specifies the role of the device attached to the port. Default is node. Enter the device-role switch option to stop the creation of binding entries for the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-device-tracking)# device-role switch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> trusted-port</td>
<td>Sets up a trusted port. Disables the guard on applicable targets. Bindings learned through a trusted port have preference over bindings learned through any other port. A trusted port is given preference in case of a collision while making an entry in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-device-tracking)# trusted-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits the device-tracking policy configuration mode and enters the global configuration mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-device-tracking)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> interface interface</td>
<td>Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> device-tracking attach-policy policy-name</td>
<td>Attaches a device tracking policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# device-tracking attach-policy example_trusted_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration Examples for SISF-Based Device Tracking

These examples show sample device-tracking configuration and other recommended or related configuration for certain situations.
Example: Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.9.x and Later Releases

The sample output in the examples show the different settings of programmatically created policies.

Device tracking client: LISP on VLAN

After you configure LISP, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN policy that is created and the corresponding settings.

Device# show device-tracking policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN
Policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN configuration:
  security-level guard (*)
  device-role node
gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
gleaning from DHCP
gleaning from ARP
gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 4 (*)
  limit address-count for IPv6 per mac 12 (*)
tracking enable
Policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN is applied on the following targets:
Target   Type   Policy    Feature          Target range
vlan 10   VLAN LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all

note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 10 minutes (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 30 minutes (*)

Device tracking client: LISP on VLAN

After you configure LISP, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN policy that is created and the corresponding settings.

Device# show device-tracking policy LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN
Policy LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
gleaning from DHCP
gleaning from ARP
gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 4 (*)
  limit address-count for IPv6 per mac 12 (*)
tracking enable
Policy LISP-DT-GGUARD-VLAN is applied on the following targets:
Target   Type   Policy    Feature          Target range
vlan 10   VLAN LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all

note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 10 minutes (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 30 minutes (*)

Device tracking client: EVPN on VLAN

After you configure EVPN, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the evpn-sisf-policy policy that is created and the corresponding settings that are made:
Device# show device-tracking policy evpn-sisf-policy
Policy evpn-sisf-policy configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
gleaning from DHCP
gleaning from ARP
gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
tracking enable
Policy evpn-sisf-policy is applied on the following targets:
Target Type Policy Feature Target range
vlan 10 VLAN evpn-sisf-policy Device-tracking vlan all
note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 24 hours (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 24 hours (*)

Device tracking clients: IEEE 802.1X, Web Authentication, Cisco TrustSec, IPSG

Configure the `ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan` command in global configuration mode to enable device-tracking for the IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features. Enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the DT-PROGRAMMATIC policy that is created and the corresponding settings that are made:

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 10
Device(config)# end
Device# show device-tracking policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC
Policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
gleaning from DHCP
gleaning from ARP
gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 1 (*)
  tracking enable
Policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC is applied on the following targets:
Target Type Policy Feature Target range
vlan 10 VLAN DT-PROGRAMMATIC Device-tracking vlan all
note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 24 hours (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 24 hours (*)

Identifying the Active Policy When Multiple Policies are Applied to a Target

This example shows you how to identify the active policy when multiple policies are attached to the same VLAN.

In this example, two policies are attached to VLAN 10; LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN is the active policy.

Device# show device-tracking policies
Target Type Policy Feature Target range
vlan 10 VLAN DT-PROGRAMMATIC Device-tracking vlan all
vlan 10 VLAN LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all

Device# show device-tracking capture-policy vlan 10
Example: Disabling IPv6 Device Tracking on a Target

By default, SISF-based device tracking supports both IPv4 and IPv6. The following configuration examples show how you can disable IPv6 device tracking if you have to:

Disabling IPv6 device tracking when the target is attached to a custom policy:

```
Device(config)# device-tracking policy example-policy
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol ndp
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol dhcp6
Device(config-device-tracking)# end
```

Disabling IPv6 device tracking when the target is attached to a programmatic policy:

```
You cannot disable IPv6 device tracking in the Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.x release.
```

```
In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.x and Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.x, you can disable IPv6 device tracking by changing the programmatic policy:

```
Device(config)# device-tracking policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol ndp
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol dhcp6
Device(config-device-tracking)# end
```

In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and all later releases, you can disable IPv6 device tracking by attaching another customized policy to the same target:

1. Create a policy
   
   ```
   Device(config)# device-tracking policy DT-noIPv6
   Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol ndp
   Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol dhcp6
   Device(config-device-tracking)# tracking enable
   Device(config-device-tracking)# end
   ```

2. Attach the policy to the required target
   
   ```
   Device(config)# vlan config
   Device(config)# vlan configuration 100
   Device(config-vlan-config)# device-tracking attach-policy DT-noIPv6
   Device(config-vlan-config)# end
   ```

3. If you have configured LISP on the target, configure these timers, in the global configuration mode:
   
   ```
   Device(config)# device-tracking binding stale-lifetime 1800
   Device(config)# device-tracking binding down-lifetime 600
   ```
Example: Enabling IPv6 for SVI on VLAN (To Mitigate the Duplicate Address Problem)

When IPv6 is enabled in the network and a switched virtual interface (SVI) is configured on a VLAN, we recommend that you add the following to the SVI configuration. This enables the SVI to acquire a link-local address automatically; this address is used as the source IP address of the SISF probe, thus preventing the duplicate IP address issue.

```
Device(config)# interface vlan 10
Device(config-if)# ipv6 enable
Device(config-if)# end
```

Example: Mitigating the IPv4 Duplicate Address Problem

This example shows how you can tackle the Duplicate IP Address 0.0.0.0 error message problem encountered by clients that run Microsoft Windows:

Configure the `device-tracking tracking auto-source` command in global configuration mode. This command determines the source IP and MAC address used in the Address Resolution Packet (ARP) request sent by the switch to probe a client, in order to maintain its entry in the device-tracking table. The purpose, is to avoid using 0.0.0.0 as source IP address.

**Note**

Configure the `device-tracking tracking auto-source` command when a switch virtual interface (SVI) is not configured. You do not have to configure it when a SVI is configured with an IPv4 address on the VLAN.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Action (In order to select source IP and MAC address for device tracking ARP probe)</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>device-tracking tracking auto-source</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present.</td>
<td>We recommend that you disable device-tracking on all trunk ports to avoid MAC flapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Look for IP and MAC binding in device-tracking table from same subnet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use 0.0.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>device-tracking tracking auto-source override</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present</td>
<td>Not recommended when there is no SVI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use 0.0.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(In order to select source IP and MAC address for device tracking ARP probe)

**Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ip device tracking probe auto-source fallback 0.0.0.X 255.255.255.0 | • Set source to VLAN SVI if present.  
• Look for IP and MAC binding in device-tracking table from same subnet.  
• Compute source IP from client IP using host bit and mask provided. Source MAC is taken from the MAC address of the switchport facing the client*. |
| device-tracking tracking auto-source fallback 0.0.0.X 255.255.255.0 override | • Set source to VLAN SVI if present.  
Compute source IP from client IP using host bit and mask provided*. Source MAC is taken from the MAC address of the switchport facing the client*. |

* Depending on the client IP address, an IPv4 address has to be reserved for the source IP.

A reserved source IPv4 address = (host-ip and mask) | client-ip

- Client IP = 192.0.2.25
- Source IP = (192.0.2.25 and 255.255.255.0) | (0.0.0.1) = 192.0.2.1

IP address 192.0.2.1 should not be assigned to any client or network device.

**Example: Avoiding a Short Device-Tracking Binding Reachable Time**

When migrating from an older release, the following configuration may be present:

device-tracking binding reachable-time 10

Remove this by entering the *no* version of the command.

**Feature History and Information for SISF-Based Device Tracking**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest</td>
<td>This feature was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5.1a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest</td>
<td>Starting with this release, you can change certain settings of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6.1</td>
<td>DT_PROGRAMMATIC (device-tracking policy command, in the device tracking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configuration mode (config-device-tracking)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1</td>
<td>Support for policy priority was introduced. Priority is determined by how the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>policy is created. A manually created policy has the highest priority. This</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enables you to apply policy settings that are different from policies that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are generated programmatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More device tracking client features were introduced. The programmatic policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>differs depending on the device tracking client feature that enables SISF-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>device tracking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 34

Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication. IEEE 802.1x authentication prevents unauthorized devices (clients) from gaining access to the network. Unless otherwise noted, the term switch refers to a standalone switch or a switch stack.

- Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 531
- Information About 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 531
- How to Configure 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 560
- Monitoring 802.1x Statistics and Status, on page 613
- Feature Information for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 614

Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

Switchports are always unauthorized when used with private VLANs. Dynamic VLANs pushed from the Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) server is not supported on private VLAN ports. The data client session is expected to authorize on the secondary VLAN of the private VLAN dot1x port.

Only interface-configured private VLAN-based authorization and dynamic VLAN on a normal access VLAN port is supported.

Information About 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

The 802.1x standard defines a client-server-based access control and authentication protocol that prevents unauthorized clients from connecting to a LAN through publicly accessible ports unless they are properly authenticated. The authentication server authenticates each client connected to a switch port before making available any services offered by the switch or the LAN.

Note

TACACS is not supported with 802.1x authentication.

Until the client is authenticated, 802.1x access control allows only Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL), Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), and Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) traffic through the port to which the client is connected. After authentication is successful, normal traffic can pass through the port.
### Port-Based Authentication Process

To configure IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication, you must enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) and specify the authentication method list. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user.

The AAA process begins with authentication. When 802.1x port-based authentication is enabled and the client supports 802.1x-compliant client software, these events occur:

- If the client identity is valid and the 802.1x authentication succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network.
- If 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange and MAC authentication bypass is enabled, the switch can use the client MAC address for authorization. If the client MAC address is valid and the authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If the client MAC address is invalid and the authorization fails, the switch assigns the client to a guest VLAN that provides limited services if a guest VLAN is configured.
- If the switch gets an invalid identity from an 802.1x-capable client and a restricted VLAN is specified, the switch can assign the client to a restricted VLAN that provides limited services.
- If the RADIUS authentication server is unavailable (down) and inaccessible authentication bypass is enabled, the switch grants the client access to the network by putting the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or the user-specified access VLAN.

#### Note

Inaccessible authentication bypass is also referred to as critical authentication or the AAA fail policy.

If Multi Domain Authentication (MDA) is enabled on a port, this flow can be used with some exceptions that are applicable to voice authorization.

---

### Maximum sessions supported

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client session</th>
<th>Maximum sessions supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum dot1x or MAB client sessions</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum web-based authentication sessions</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum dot1x sessions with critical-auth VLAN enabled and server re-initialized</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum MAB sessions with various session features applied</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum dot1x sessions with service templates or session features applied</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 28: Authentication Flowchart

This figure shows the authentication process.

The switch re-authenticates a client when one of these situations occurs:

- Periodic re-authentication is enabled, and the re-authentication timer expires.

You can configure the re-authentication timer to use a switch-specific value or to be based on values from the RADIUS server.

After 802.1x authentication using a RADIUS server is configured, the switch uses timers based on the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute [29]).

The Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) specifies the time after which re-authentication occurs.

The Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute [29]) specifies the action to take during re-authentication. The actions are Initialize and ReAuthenticate. When the Initialize action is set (the attribute value is DEFAULT), the 802.1x session ends, and connectivity is lost during re-authentication. When the ReAuthenticate action is set (the attribute value is RADIUS-Request), the session is not affected during re-authentication.

- You manually re-authenticate the client by entering the `dot1x re-authenticate interface interface-id` privileged EXEC command.
Port-Based Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange

During 802.1x authentication, the switch or the client can initiate authentication. If you enable authentication on a port by using the `authentication port-control auto` interface configuration command, the switch initiates authentication when the link state changes from down to up or periodically as long as the port remains up and unauthenticated. The switch sends an EAP-request/identity frame to the client to request its identity. Upon receipt of the frame, the client responds with an EAP-response/identity frame.

However, if during bootup, the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame from the switch, the client can initiate authentication by sending an EAPOL-start frame, which prompts the switch to request the client’s identity.

---

**Note**

If 802.1x authentication is not enabled or supported on the network access device, any EAPOL frames from the client are dropped. If the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame after three attempts to start authentication, the client sends frames as if the port is in the authorized state. A port in the authorized state effectively means that the client has been successfully authenticated.

When the client supplies its identity, the switch begins its role as the intermediary, passing EAP frames between the client and the authentication server until authentication succeeds or fails. If the authentication succeeds, the switch port becomes authorized. If the authentication fails, authentication can be retried, the port might be assigned to a VLAN that provides limited services, or network access is not granted.

The specific exchange of EAP frames depends on the authentication method being used.

**Figure 29: Message Exchange**

This figure shows a message exchange initiated by the client when the client uses the One-Time-Password (OTP) authentication method with a RADIUS server.

If 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange and MAC authentication bypass is enabled, the switch can authorize the client when the switch detects an Ethernet packet from the
client. The switch uses the MAC address of the client as its identity and includes this information in the RADIUS-access/request frame that is sent to the RADIUS server. After the server sends the switch the RADIUS-access/accept frame (authorization is successful), the port becomes authorized. If authorization fails and a guest VLAN is specified, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN. If the switch detects an EAPOL packet while waiting for an Ethernet packet, the switch stops the MAC authentication bypass process and starts 802.1x authentication.

*Figure 30: Message Exchange During MAC Authentication Bypass*

This figure shows the message exchange during MAC authentication bypass.

---

## Authentication Manager for Port-Based Authentication

### Port-Based Authentication Methods

*Table 70: 802.1x Features*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authentication method</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Multiple host</th>
<th>MDA</th>
<th>Multiple Authentication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single host</td>
<td>Multiple host</td>
<td>MDA</td>
<td>Multiple Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>802.1x</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)*
### Per-User ACLs and Filter-Ids

#### Authentication method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Single host</th>
<th>Multiple host</th>
<th>MDA</th>
<th>Multiple Authentication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAC authentication bypass</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standalone web authentication</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-ID attribute, downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-ID attribute, downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-ID attribute, downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-ID attribute, downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAC Layer 2 IP validation</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web authentication as fallback method</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
<td>Proxy ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 Supported in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(50)SE and later.
10 For clients that do not support 802.1x authentication.

#### Note

Using role-based ACLs as Filter-ID is not recommended.

More than one host can be authenticated on MDA-enabled and multiauth ports. The ACL policy applied for one host does not affect the traffic of another host. If only one host is authenticated on a multi-host port, and the other hosts gain network access without authentication, the ACL policy for the first host can be applied to the other connected hosts by specifying any in the source address.

### Port-Based Authentication Manager CLI Commands

The authentication-manager interface-configuration commands control all the authentication methods, such as 802.1x, MAC authentication bypass, and web authentication. The authentication manager commands determine the priority and order of authentication methods applied to a connected host.

The authentication manager commands control generic authentication features, such as host-mode, violation mode, and the authentication timer. Generic authentication commands include the `authentication host-mode`, `authentication violation`, and `authentication timer` interface configuration commands.

802.1x-specific commands begin with the `dot1x` keyword. For example, the `authentication port-control auto` interface configuration command enables authentication on an interface.
To disable dot1x on a switch, remove the configuration globally by using the no dot1x system-auth-control, and also remove it from all configured interfaces.

Note

If 802.1x authentication is globally disabled, other authentication methods are still enabled on that port, such as web authentication.

The authentication manager commands provide the same functionality as earlier 802.1x commands.

When filtering out verbose system messages generated by the authentication manager, the filtered content typically relates to authentication success. You can also filter verbose messages for 802.1x authentication and MAB authentication. There is a separate command for each authentication method:

- The no authentication logging verbose global configuration command filters verbose messages from the authentication manager.
- The no dot1x logging verbose global configuration command filters 802.1x authentication verbose messages.
- The no mab logging verbose global configuration command filters MAC authentication bypass (MAB) verbose messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The authentication manager commands in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(50)SE or later</th>
<th>The equivalent 802.1x commands in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(46)SE and earlier</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication control-direction {both</td>
<td>in}</td>
<td>dot1x control-direction {both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| authentication event | dot1x auth-fail vlan
dot1x critical (interface configuration)
dot1x guest-vlan6 | Enable the restricted VLAN on a port.
Enable the inaccessible-authentication-bypass feature.
Specify an active VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. |
| authentication fallback fallback-profile | dot1x fallback fallback-profile | Configure a port to use web authentication as a fallback method for clients that do not support 802.1x authentication. |
| authentication host-mode [multi-auth | multi-domain | multi-host | single-host] | dot1x host-mode {single-host | multi-host | multi-domain} | Allow a single host (client) or multiple hosts on an 802.1x-authorized port. |
ports in authorized and unauthorized states

During 802.1x authentication, depending on the switch port state, the switch can grant a client access to the network. The port starts in the unauthorized state. While in this state, the port that is not configured as a voice VLAN port disallows all ingress and egress traffic except for 802.1x authentication, CDP, and STP packets. When a client is successfully authenticated, the port changes to the authorized state, allowing all traffic for the client to flow normally. If the port is configured as a voice VLAN port, the port allows VoIP traffic and 802.1x protocol packets before the client is successfully authenticated.

CDP bypass is not supported and may cause a port to go into err-disabled state.

If a client that does not support 802.1x authentication connects to an unauthorized 802.1x port, the switch requests the client’s identity. In this situation, the client does not respond to the request, the port remains in the unauthorized state, and the client is not granted access to the network.

In contrast, when an 802.1x-enabled client connects to a port that is not running the 802.1x standard, the client initiates the authentication process by sending the EAPOL-start frame. When no response is received, the client sends the request for a fixed number of times. Because no response is received, the client begins sending frames as if the port is in the authorized state.

You control the port authorization state by using the authentication port-control interface configuration command and these keywords:

- **force-authorized**—disables 802.1x authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without 802.1x-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The authentication manager commands in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(50)SE or later</th>
<th>The equivalent 802.1x commands in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(46)SE and earlier</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication order</td>
<td>mab</td>
<td>Provides the flexibility to define the order of authentication methods to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication periodic</td>
<td>dot1x reauthentication</td>
<td>Enable periodic re-authentication of the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication port-control {auto</td>
<td>force-authorized</td>
<td>force-unauthorized}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication timer</td>
<td>dot1x timeout</td>
<td>Set the 802.1x timers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication violation {protect</td>
<td>restrict</td>
<td>shutdown}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• **force-unauthorized**—causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the client to authenticate. The switch cannot provide authentication services to the client through the port.

• **auto**—enables 802.1x authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The switch requests the identity of the client and begins relaying authentication messages between the client and the authentication server. Each client attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the switch by using the client MAC address.

If the client is successfully authenticated (receives an Accept frame from the authentication server), the port state changes to authorized, and all frames from the authenticated client are allowed through the port. If the authentication fails, the port remains in the unauthorized state, but authentication can be retried. If the authentication server cannot be reached, the switch can resend the request. If no response is received from the server after the specified number of attempts, authentication fails, and network access is not granted.

When a client logs off, it sends an EAPOL-logoff message, causing the switch port to change to the unauthorized state.

If the link state of a port changes from up to down, or if an EAPOL-logoff frame is received, the port returns to the unauthorized state.

### Port-Based Authentication and Switch Stacks

If a switch is added to or removed from a switch stack, 802.1x authentication is not affected as long as the IP connectivity between the RADIUS server and the stack remains intact. This statement also applies if the stack master is removed from the switch stack. Note that if the stack master fails, a stack member becomes the new stack master by using the election process, and the 802.1x authentication process continues as usual.

If IP connectivity to the RADIUS server is interrupted because the switch that was connected to the server is removed or fails, these events occur:

• Ports that are already authenticated and that do not have periodic re-authentication enabled remain in the authenticated state. Communication with the RADIUS server is not required.

• Ports that are already authenticated and that have periodic re-authentication enabled (with the `dot1x re-authentication` global configuration command) fail the authentication process when the re-authentication occurs. Ports return to the unauthenticated state during the re-authentication process. Communication with the RADIUS server is required.

For an ongoing authentication, the authentication fails immediately because there is no server connectivity.

If the switch that failed comes up and rejoins the switch stack, the authentications might or might not fail depending on the boot-up time and whether the connectivity to the RADIUS server is re-established by the time the authentication is attempted.

To avoid loss of connectivity to the RADIUS server, you should ensure that there is a redundant connection to it. For example, you can have a redundant connection to the stack master and another to a stack member, and if the stack master fails, the switch stack still has connectivity to the RADIUS server.

### 802.1x Host Mode

You can configure an 802.1x port for single-host or for multiple-hosts mode. In single-host mode, only one client can be connected to the 802.1x-enabled switch port. The switch detects the client by sending an EAPOL
frame when the port link state changes to the up state. If a client leaves or is replaced with another client, the
switch changes the port link state to down, and the port returns to the unauthorized state.

In multiple-hosts mode, you can attach multiple hosts to a single 802.1x-enabled port. In this mode, only one
of the attached clients must be authorized for all clients to be granted network access. If the port becomes
unauthorized (re-authentication fails or an EAPOL-logoff message is received), the switch denies network
access to all of the attached clients.

The switch supports multidomain authentication (MDA), which allows both a data device and a voice device,
such as an IP Phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), to connect to the same switch port.

802.1x Multiple Authentication Mode

Multiple-authentication (multiauth) mode allows multiple authenticated clients on the data VLAN and voice
VLAN. Each host is individually authenticated. There is no limit to the number of data or voice device that
can be authenticated on a multiauth port.

Note

When a port is in multiple-authentication mode, the authentication-failed VLAN features do not activate.

You can assign a RADIUS-server-supplied VLAN in multi-auth mode, under the following conditions:

- The host is the first host authorized on the port, and the RADIUS server supplies VLAN information
- Subsequent hosts are authorized with a VLAN that matches the operational VLAN.
- A host is authorized on the port with no VLAN assignment, and subsequent hosts either have no VLAN
  assignment, or their VLAN information matches the operational VLAN.
- The first host authorized on the port has a group VLAN assignment, and subsequent hosts either have
  no VLAN assignment, or their group VLAN matches the group VLAN on the port. Subsequent hosts
  must use the same VLAN from the VLAN group as the first host. If a VLAN list is used, all hosts are
  subject to the conditions specified in the VLAN list.
- After a VLAN is assigned to a host on the port, subsequent hosts must have matching VLAN information
  or be denied access to the port.
- You cannot configure a guest VLAN or an auth-fail VLAN in multi-auth mode.
- The behavior of the critical-auth VLAN is not changed for multi-auth mode. When a host tries to
  authenticate and the server is not reachable, all authorized hosts are reinitialized in the configured VLAN.

Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment

The Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment feature allows you to create multiple operational access VLANs
based on VLANs assigned to the clients on the port that has a single configured access VLAN. The port
configured as an access port where the traffic for all the VLANs associated with data domain is not dot1q
tagged, and these VLANs are treated as native VLANs.

The number of hosts per multi-auth port is 8, however there can be more hosts.

The following scenarios are associated with the multi-auth Per User VLAN assignments:

Scenario one
When a hub is connected to an access port, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0). The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1. This behaviour is similar on a single-host or multi-domain-auth port.

When a second host (H2) is connected and gets assigned to VLAN (V2), the port will have two operational VLANs (V1 and V2). If H1 and H2 sends untagged ingress traffic, H1 traffic is mapped to VLAN (V1) and H2 traffic to VLAN (V2), all egress traffic going out of the port on VLAN (V1) and VLAN (V2) are untagged.

If both the hosts, H1 and H2 are logged out or the sessions are removed due to some reason then VLAN (V1) and VLAN (V2) are removed from the port, and the configured VLAN (V0) is restored on the port.

**Scenario two**

When a hub is connected to an access port, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0). The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1.

When a second host (H2) is connected and gets authorized without explicit vlan policy, H2 is expected to use the configured VLAN (V0) that is restored on the port. All egress traffic going out of two operational VLANs, VLAN (V0) and VLAN (V1) are untagged.

If host (H2) is logged out or the session is removed due to some reason then the configured VLAN (V0) is removed from the port, and VLAN (V1) becomes the only operational VLAN on the port.

**Scenario three**

When a hub is connected to an access port in open mode, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0).

The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1. When a second host (H2) is connected and remains unauthorized, it still has access to operational VLAN (V1) due to open mode.

If host H1 is logged out or the session is removed due to some reason, VLAN (V1) is removed from the port and host (H2) gets assigned to VLAN (V0).

---

**Note**

The combination of Open mode and VLAN assignment has an adverse affect on host (H2) because it has an IP address in the subnet that corresponds to VLAN (V1).

---

**Limitation in Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment**

In the Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment feature, egress traffic from multiple vlans are untagged on a port where the hosts receive traffic that is not meant for them. This can be a problem with broadcast and multicast traffic.

- **IPv4 ARPs**: Hosts receive ARP packets from other subnets. This is a problem if two subnets in different Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) tables with overlapping IP address range are active on the port. The host ARP cache may get invalid entries.

- **IPv6 control packets**: In IPv6 deployments, Router Advertisements (RA) are processed by hosts that are not supposed to receive them. When a host from one VLAN receives RA from a different VLAN, the host assign incorrect IPv6 address to itself. Such a host is unable to get access to the network.

The workaround is to enable the IPv6 first hop security so that the broadcast ICMPv6 packets are converted to unicast and sent out from multi-auth enabled ports. The packet is replicated for each client in multi-auth
port belonging to the VLAN and the destination MAC is set to an individual client. Ports having one VLAN, ICMPv6 packets broadcast normally.

• **IP multicast**: Multicast traffic destined to a multicast group gets replicated for different VLANs if the hosts on those VLANs join the multicast group. When two hosts in different VLANs join a multicast group (on the same multi-auth port), two copies of each multicast packet are sent out from that port.

**MAC Move**

When a MAC address is authenticated on one switch port, that address is not allowed on another authentication manager-enabled port of the switch. If the switch detects that same MAC address on another authentication manager-enabled port, the address is not allowed.

There are situations where a MAC address might need to move from one port to another on the same switch. For example, when there is another device (for example a hub or an IP phone) between an authenticated host and a switch port, you might want to disconnect the host from the device and connect it directly to another port on the same switch.

You can globally enable MAC move so the device is reauthenticated on the new port. When a host moves to a second port, the session on the first port is deleted, and the host is reauthenticated on the new port. MAC move is supported on all host modes. (The authenticated host can move to any port on the switch, no matter which host mode is enabled on the that port.) When a MAC address moves from one port to another, the switch terminates the authenticated session on the original port and initiates a new authentication sequence on the new port. The MAC move feature applies to both voice and data hosts.

---

**Note**

In open authentication mode, a MAC address is immediately moved from the original port to the new port, with no requirement for authorization on the new port.

**MAC Replace**

The MAC replace feature can be configured to address the violation that occurs when a host attempts to connect to a port where another host was previously authenticated.

---

**Note**

This feature does not apply to ports in multi-auth mode, because violations are not triggered in that mode. It does not apply to ports in multiple host mode, because in that mode, only the first host requires authentication.

If you configure the `authentication violation` interface configuration command with the `replace` keyword, the authentication process on a port in multi-domain mode is:

• A new MAC address is received on a port with an existing authenticated MAC address.

• The authentication manager replaces the MAC address of the current data host on the port with the new MAC address.

• The authentication manager initiates the authentication process for the new MAC address.

• If the authentication manager determines that the new host is a voice host, the original voice host is removed.
If a port is in open authentication mode, any new MAC address is immediately added to the MAC address table.

### 802.1x Accounting

The 802.1x standard defines how users are authorized and authenticated for network access but does not keep track of network usage. 802.1x accounting is disabled by default. You can enable 802.1x accounting to monitor this activity on 802.1x-enabled ports:

- User successfully authenticates.
- User logs off.
- Link-down occurs.
- Re-authentication successfully occurs.
- Re-authentication fails.

The switch does not log 802.1x accounting information. Instead, it sends this information to the RADIUS server, which must be configured to log accounting messages.

### 802.1x Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs

The information sent to the RADIUS server is represented in the form of Attribute-Value (AV) pairs. These AV pairs provide data for different applications. (For example, a billing application might require information that is in the Acct-Input-Octets or the Acct-Output-Octets attributes of a RADIUS packet.)

AV pairs are automatically sent by a switch that is configured for 802.1x accounting. Three types of RADIUS accounting packets are sent by a switch:

- **START**–sent when a new user session starts
- **INTERIM**–sent during an existing session for updates
- **STOP**–sent when a session terminates

---

To view debug logs for RADIUS and AAA, use the `show platform software trace message smd` command. For more information, see the Tracing Commands section in *Command Reference Guide*.

This table lists the AV pairs and when they are sent are sent by the switch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>AV Pair Name</th>
<th>START</th>
<th>INTERIM</th>
<th>STOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[1]</td>
<td>User-Name</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[4]</td>
<td>NAS-IP-Address</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[5]</td>
<td>NAS-Port</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[8]</td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 802.1x Readiness Check

The 802.1x readiness check monitors 802.1x activity on all the switch ports and displays information about the devices connected to the ports that support 802.1x. You can use this feature to determine if the devices connected to the switch ports are 802.1x-capable. You use an alternate authentication such as MAC authentication bypass or web authentication for the devices that do not support 802.1x functionality.

This feature only works if the supplicant on the client supports a query with the NOTIFY EAP notification packet. The client must respond within the 802.1x timeout value.

### Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication

RADIUS security servers are identified by their hostname or IP address, hostname and specific UDP port numbers, or IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, which enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, authentication—the second host entry configured acts as the fail-over backup to the first one. The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order that they were configured.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>AV Pair Name</th>
<th>START</th>
<th>INTERIM</th>
<th>STOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[30]</td>
<td>Called-Station-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[31]</td>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[40]</td>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[41]</td>
<td>Acct-Delay-Time</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[42]</td>
<td>Acct-Input-Octets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[43]</td>
<td>Acct-Output-Octets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[47]</td>
<td>Acct-Input-Packets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[48]</td>
<td>Acct-Output-Packets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[44]</td>
<td>Acct-Session-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[45]</td>
<td>Acct-Authentic</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[46]</td>
<td>Acct-Session-Time</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[49]</td>
<td>Acct-Terminate-Cause</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[61]</td>
<td>NAS-Port-Type</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11 The Framed-IP-Address AV pair is sent when a valid static IP address is configured or when a Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) binding exists for the host in the DHCP snooping bindings table.
802.1x Authentication with VLAN Assignment

The switch supports 802.1x authentication with VLAN assignment. After successful 802.1x authentication of a port, the RADIUS server sends the VLAN assignment to configure the switch port. The RADIUS server database maintains the username-to-VLAN mappings, assigning the VLAN based on the username of the client connected to the switch port. You can use this feature to limit network access for certain users.

Voice device authentication is supported with multidomain host mode in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(37)SE. In Cisco IOS Release 12.2(40)SE and later, when a voice device is authorized and the RADIUS server returned an authorized VLAN, the voice VLAN on the port is configured to send and receive packets on the assigned voice VLAN. Voice VLAN assignment behaves the same as data VLAN assignment on multidomain authentication (MDA)-enabled ports.

When configured on the switch and the RADIUS server, 802.1x authentication with VLAN assignment has these characteristics:

- If no VLAN is supplied by the RADIUS server or if 802.1x authentication is disabled, the port is configured in its access VLAN after successful authentication. Recall that an access VLAN is a VLAN assigned to an access port. All packets sent from or received on this port belong to this VLAN.

- If 802.1x authentication is enabled but the VLAN information from the RADIUS server is not valid, authorization fails and configured VLAN remains in use. This prevents ports from appearing unexpectedly in an inappropriate VLAN because of a configuration error.

Configuration errors could include specifying a VLAN for a routed port, a malformed VLAN ID, a nonexistent or internal (routed port) VLAN ID, an RSPAN VLAN, a shut down or suspended VLAN. In the case of a multidomain host port, configuration errors can also be due to an attempted assignment of a data VLAN that matches the configured or assigned voice VLAN ID (or the reverse).

- If 802.1x authentication is enabled and all information from the RADIUS server is valid, the authorized device is placed in the specified VLAN after authentication.

- If the multiple-hosts mode is enabled on an 802.1x port, all hosts are placed in the same VLAN (specified by the RADIUS server) as the first authenticated host.

- Enabling port security does not impact the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN behavior.

- If 802.1x authentication is disabled on the port, it is returned to the configured access VLAN and configured voice VLAN.

- If an 802.1x port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect. In the case of a multidomain host, the same applies to voice devices when the port is fully authorized with these exceptions:

  - If the VLAN configuration change of one device results in matching the other device configured or assigned VLAN, then authorization of all devices on the port is terminated and multidomain host mode is disabled until a valid configuration is restored where data and voice device configured VLANs no longer match.

  - If a voice device is authorized and is using a downloaded voice VLAN, the removal of the voice VLAN configuration, or modifying the configuration value to dot1p or untagged results in voice device un-authorization and the disablement of multi-domain host mode.

When the port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state, it is put into the configured access VLAN.
If an 802.1x port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect. In the case of a multidomain host, the same applies to voice devices when the port is fully authorized with these exceptions:

- If the VLAN configuration change of one device results in matching the other device configured or assigned VLAN, authorization of all devices on the port is terminated and multidomain host mode is disabled until a valid configuration is restored where data and voice device configured VLANs no longer match.

- If a voice device is authorized and is using a downloaded voice VLAN, the removal of the voice VLAN configuration, or modifying the configuration value to dot1p or untagged results in voice device un-authorization and the disablement of multi-domain host mode.

When the port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state, it is put into the configured access VLAN.

To configure VLAN assignment you need to perform these tasks:

- Enable AAA authorization by using the `network` keyword to allow interface configuration from the RADIUS server.

- Enable 802.1x authentication. (The VLAN assignment feature is automatically enabled when you configure 802.1x authentication on an access port).

- Assign vendor-specific tunnel attributes in the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server must return these attributes to the switch:
  - [64] Tunnel-Type = VLAN
  - [65] Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802
  - [81] Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN name or VLAN ID
  - [83] Tunnel-Preference

Attribute [64] must contain the value `VLAN` (type 13). Attribute [65] must contain the value `802` (type 6). Attribute [81] specifies the `VLAN name` or `VLAN ID` assigned to the IEEE 802.1x-authenticated user.

**802.1x Authentication with Per-User ACLs**

You can enable per-user access control lists (ACLs) to provide different levels of network access and service to an 802.1x-authenticated user. When the RADIUS server authenticates a user connected to an 802.1x port, it retrieves the ACL attributes based on the user identity and sends them to the switch. The switch applies the attributes to the 802.1x port for the duration of the user session. The switch removes the per-user ACL configuration when the session is over, if authentication fails, or if a link-down condition occurs. The switch does not save RADIUS-specified ACLs in the running configuration. When the port is unauthorized, the switch removes the ACL from the port.

You can configure router ACLs and input port ACLs on the same switch. However, a port ACL takes precedence over a router ACL. If you apply input port ACL to an interface that belongs to a VLAN, the port ACL takes precedence over an input router ACL applied to the VLAN interface. Incoming packets received on the port, to which a port ACL is applied, are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Outgoing routed packets are filtered by the router ACL. To avoid configuration conflicts, you should carefully plan the user profiles stored on the RADIUS server.
RADIUS supports per-user attributes, including vendor-specific attributes. These vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) are in octet-string format and are passed to the switch during the authentication process. The VSAs used for per-user ACLs are in acl#<n> for the ingress direction and outacl#<n> for the egress direction. MAC ACLs are supported only in the ingress direction. The switch supports VSAs only in the ingress direction. It does not support port ACLs in the egress direction on Layer 2 ports.

Use only the extended ACL syntax style to define the per-user configuration stored on the RADIUS server. When the definitions are passed from the RADIUS server, they are created by using the extended naming convention. However, if you use the Filter-Id attribute, it can point to a standard ACL.

You can use the Filter-Id attribute to specify an inbound or outbound ACL that is already configured on the switch. The attribute contains the ACL number followed by .in for ingress filtering or .out for egress filtering. If the RADIUS server does not allow the .in or .out syntax, the access list is applied to the outbound ACL by default. The user is marked unauthorized if the Filter-Id sent from the RADIUS server is not configured on the device. Because of limited support of Cisco IOS access lists on the switch, the Filter-Id attribute is supported only for IP ACLs numbered in the range of 1 to 199 (IP standard ACLs) and 1300 to 2699 (IP extended ACLs).

The maximum size of the per-user ACL is 4000 ASCII characters but is limited by the maximum size of RADIUS-server per-user ACLs.

You must meet the following prerequisites to configure per-user ACLs:

- Enable AAA authentication.
- Enable AAA authorization by using the network keyword to allow interface configuration from the RADIUS server.
- Enable 802.1x authentication.
- Configure the user profile and VSAs on the RADIUS server.
- Configure the 802.1x port for single-host mode.

Note: Per-user ACLs are supported only in single-host mode.

### 802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs

You can download ACLs and redirect URLs from a RADIUS server to the switch during 802.1x authentication or MAC authentication bypass of the host. You can also download ACLs during web authentication.

Note: A downloadable ACL is also referred to as a dACL.

You can apply the ACLs and redirect URLs to all the devices connected to the 802.1x-enabled port.

If no ACLs are downloaded during 802.1x authentication, the switch applies the static default ACL on the port to the host. On a voice VLAN port configured in multi-auth or MDA mode, the switch applies the ACL only to the phone as part of the authorization policies.
VLAN ID-Based MAC Authentication

You can use VLAN ID-based MAC authentication if you wish to authenticate hosts based on a static VLAN ID instead of a downloadable VLAN. When you have a static VLAN policy configured on your switch, VLAN information is sent to an IAS (Microsoft) RADIUS server along with the MAC address of each host for authentication. The VLAN ID configured on the connected port is used for MAC authentication. By using VLAN ID-based MAC authentication with an IAS server, you can have a fixed number of VLANs in the network.

The feature also limits the number of VLANs monitored and handled by STP. The network can be managed as a fixed VLAN.

802.1x Authentication with Guest VLAN

You can configure a guest VLAN for each 802.1x port on the switch to provide limited services to clients, such as downloading the 802.1x client. These clients might be upgrading their system for 802.1x authentication, and some hosts, such as Windows 98 systems, might not be IEEE 802.1x-capable.

When you enable a guest VLAN on an 802.1x port, the switch assigns clients to a guest VLAN when the switch does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame or when EAPOL packets are not sent by the client.

The switch maintains the EAPOL packet history. If an EAPOL packet is detected on the interface during the lifetime of the link, the switch determines that the device connected to that interface is an IEEE 802.1x-capable supplicant, and the interface does not change to the guest VLAN state. EAPOL history is cleared if the interface link status goes down. If no EAPOL packet is detected on the interface, the interface changes to the guest VLAN state.

If the switch is trying to authorize an 802.1x-capable voice device and the AAA server is unavailable, the authorization attempt fails, but the detection of the EAPOL packet is saved in the EAPOL history. When the AAA server becomes available, the switch authorizes the voice device. However, the switch no longer allows other devices access to the guest VLAN. To prevent this situation, use one of these command sequences:

- Enter the `authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id` interface configuration command to allow access to the guest VLAN.
- Enter the `shutdown` interface configuration command followed by the `no shutdown` interface configuration command to restart the port.

If devices send EAPOL packets to the switch during the lifetime of the link, the switch no longer allows clients that fail authentication access to the guest VLAN.

Note

If an EAPOL packet is detected after the interface has changed to the guest VLAN, the interface reverts to an unauthorized state, and 802.1x authentication restarts.

Any number of 802.1x-incapable clients are allowed access when the switch port is moved to the guest VLAN. If an 802.1x-capable client joins the same port on which the guest VLAN is configured, the port is put into the unauthorized state in the user-configured access VLAN, and authentication is restarted.

Guest VLANs are supported on 802.1x ports in single host, multiple host, multi-auth and multi-domain modes.
You can configure any active VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN, a private VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The guest VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

The switch supports MAC authentication bypass. When MAC authentication bypass is enabled on an 802.1x port, the switch can authorize clients based on the client MAC address when IEEE 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange. After detecting a client on an 802.1x port, the switch waits for an Ethernet packet from the client. The switch sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the MAC address. If authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If authorization fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN if one is specified.

### 802.1x Authentication with Restricted VLAN

You can configure a restricted VLAN (also referred to as an authentication failed VLAN) for each IEEE 802.1x port on a switch stack or a switch to provide limited services to clients that cannot access the guest VLAN. These clients are 802.1x-compliant and cannot access another VLAN because they fail the authentication process. A restricted VLAN allows users without valid credentials in an authentication server (typically, visitors to an enterprise) to access a limited set of services. The administrator can control the services available to the restricted VLAN.

---

**Note**

You can configure a VLAN to be both the guest VLAN and the restricted VLAN if you want to provide the same services to both types of users.

Without this feature, the client attempts and fails authentication indefinitely, and the switch port remains in the spanning-tree blocking state. With this feature, you can configure the switch port to be in the restricted VLAN after a specified number of authentication attempts (the default value is 3 attempts).

The authenticator counts the failed authentication attempts for the client. When this count exceeds the configured maximum number of authentication attempts, the port moves to the restricted VLAN. The failed attempt count increments when the RADIUS server replies with either an EAP failure or an empty response without an EAP packet. When the port moves into the restricted VLAN, the failed attempt counter resets.

Users who fail authentication remain in the restricted VLAN until the next re-authentication attempt. A port in the restricted VLAN tries to re-authenticate at configured intervals (the default is 60 seconds). If re-authentication fails, the port remains in the restricted VLAN. If re-authentication is successful, the port moves either to the configured VLAN or to a VLAN sent by the RADIUS server. You can disable re-authentication. If you do this, the only way to restart the authentication process is for the port to receive a link down or EAP logoff event. We recommend that you keep re-authentication enabled if a client might connect through a hub. When a client disconnects from the hub, the port might not receive the link down or EAP logoff event.

After a port moves to the restricted VLAN, a simulated EAP success message is sent to the client. This prevents clients from indefinitely attempting authentication. Some clients (for example, devices running Windows XP) cannot implement DHCP without EAP success.

Restricted VLANs are supported on 802.1x ports in all host modes and on Layer 2 ports.

You can configure any active VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN, a primary private VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The restricted VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.
Other security port features such as dynamic ARP Inspection, DHCP snooping, and IP source guard can be configured independently on a restricted VLAN.

### 802.1x Authentication with Inaccessible Authentication Bypass

Use the inaccessible authentication bypass feature, also referred to as critical authentication or the AAA fail policy, when the switch cannot reach the configured RADIUS servers and new hosts cannot be authenticated.

You can configure the switch to connect those hosts to critical ports.

When a new host tries to connect to the critical port, that host is moved to a user-specified access VLAN, the critical VLAN. The administrator gives limited authentication to the hosts.

When the switch tries to authenticate a host connected to a critical port, the switch checks the status of the configured RADIUS server. If a server is available, the switch can authenticate the host. However, if all the RADIUS servers are unavailable, the switch grants network access to the host and puts the port in the critical-authentication state, which is a special case of the authentication state.

If critical authentication is configured on interface, then vlan used for critical authorization (critical vlan) should be active on the switch. If the critical vlan is inactive (or) down, critical authentication session will keep trying to enable inactive vlan and fail repeatedly. This can lead to large amount of memory holding.

### Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Support on Multiple-Authentication Ports

When a port is configured on any host mode and the AAA server is unavailable, the port is then configured to multi-host mode and moved to the critical VLAN. To support this inaccessible bypass on multiple-authentication (multiauth) ports, use the authentication event server dead action reinitialize vlan vlan-id command. When a new host tries to connect to the critical port, that port is reinitialized and all the connected hosts are moved to the user-specified access VLAN.

This command is supported on all host modes.

### Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Authentication Results

The behavior of the inaccessible authentication bypass feature depends on the authorization state of the port:

- If the port is unauthorized when a host connected to a critical port tries to authenticate and all servers are unavailable, the switch puts the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN.

- If the port is already authorized and reauthentication occurs, the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the current VLAN, which might be the one previously assigned by the RADIUS server.

- If the RADIUS server becomes unavailable during an authentication exchange, the current exchange times out, and the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state during the next authentication attempt.

You can configure the critical port to reinitialize hosts and move them out of the critical VLAN when the RADIUS server is again available. When this is configured, all critical ports in the critical-authentication state are automatically re-authenticated.
Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Feature Interactions

Inaccessible authentication bypass interacts with these features:

- **Guest VLAN**—Inaccessible authentication bypass is compatible with guest VLAN. When a guest VLAN is enabled on 8021.x port, the features interact as follows:
  
  - If at least one RADIUS server is available, the switch assigns a client to a guest VLAN when the switch does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame or when EAPOL packets are not sent by the client.
  
  - If all the RADIUS servers are not available and the client is connected to a critical port, the switch authenticates the client and puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN.
  
  - If all the RADIUS servers are not available and the client is not connected to a critical port, the switch might not assign clients to the guest VLAN if one is configured.
  
  - If all the RADIUS servers are not available and if a client is connected to a critical port and was previously assigned to a guest VLAN, the switch keeps the port in the guest VLAN.

- **Restricted VLAN**—If the port is already authorized in a restricted VLAN and the RADIUS servers are unavailable, the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the restricted VLAN.

- **802.1x accounting**—Accounting is not affected if the RADIUS servers are unavailable.

- **Private VLAN**—You can configure inaccessible authentication bypass on a private VLAN host port. The access VLAN must be a secondary private VLAN.

- **Voice VLAN**—Inaccessible authentication bypass is compatible with voice VLAN, but the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN and the voice VLAN must be different.

- **Remote Switched Port Analyzer (RSPAN)**—Do not configure an RSPAN VLAN as the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN for inaccessible authentication bypass.

### 802.1x Critical Voice VLAN

When an IP phone connected to a port is authenticated by the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE), the phone is put into the voice domain. If the ISE is not reachable, the switch cannot determine if the device is a voice device. If the server is unavailable, the phone cannot access the voice network and therefore cannot operate.

For data traffic, you can configure inaccessible authentication bypass, or critical authentication, to allow traffic to pass through on the native VLAN when the server is not available. If the RADIUS authentication server is unavailable (down) and inaccessible authentication bypass is enabled, the switch grants the client access to the network and puts the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or the user-specified access VLAN. When the switch cannot reach the configured RADIUS servers and new hosts cannot be authenticated, the switch connects those hosts to critical ports. A new host trying to connect to the critical port is moved to a user-specified access VLAN, the critical VLAN, and granted limited authentication.

You can enter the `authentication event server dead action authorize voice` interface configuration command to configure the critical voice VLAN feature. When the ISE does not respond, the port goes into critical authentication mode. When traffic coming from the host is tagged with the voice VLAN, the connected device (the phone) is put in the configured voice VLAN for the port. The IP phones learn the voice VLAN identification through Cisco Discovery Protocol (Cisco devices) or through LLDP or DHCP.
You can configure the voice VLAN for a port by entering the `switchport voice vlan vlan-id` interface configuration command.

This feature is supported in multidomain and multi-auth host modes. Although you can enter the command when the switch in single-host or multi-host mode, the command has no effect unless the device changes to multidomain or multi-auth host mode.

**802.1x User Distribution**

You can configure 802.1x user distribution to load-balance users with the same group name across multiple different VLANs.

The VLANs are either supplied by the RADIUS server or configured through the switch CLI under a VLAN group name.

- Configure the RADIUS server to send more than one VLAN name for a user. The multiple VLAN names can be sent as part of the response to the user. The 802.1x user distribution tracks all the users in a particular VLAN and achieves load balancing by moving the authorized user to the least populated VLAN.

- Configure the RADIUS server to send a VLAN group name for a user. The VLAN group name can be sent as part of the response to the user. You can search for the selected VLAN group name among the VLAN group names that you configured by using the switch CLI. If the VLAN group name is found, the corresponding VLANs under this VLAN group name are searched to find the least populated VLAN. Load balancing is achieved by moving the corresponding authorized user to that VLAN.

---

**Note**

The RADIUS server can send the VLAN information in any combination of VLAN-IDs, VLAN names, or VLAN groups.

**802.1x User Distribution Configuration Guidelines**

- Confirm that at least one VLAN is mapped to the VLAN group.
- You can map more than one VLAN to a VLAN group.
- You can modify the VLAN group by adding or deleting a VLAN.
- When you clear an existing VLAN from the VLAN group name, none of the authenticated ports in the VLAN are cleared, but the mappings are removed from the existing VLAN group.
- If you clear the last VLAN from the VLAN group name, the VLAN group is cleared.
- You can clear a VLAN group even when the active VLANs are mapped to the group. When you clear a VLAN group, none of the ports or users that are in the authenticated state in any VLAN within the group are cleared, but the VLAN mappings to the VLAN group are cleared.

**IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Voice VLAN Ports**

A voice VLAN port is a special access port associated with two VLAN identifiers:
• VVID to carry voice traffic to and from the IP phone. The VVID is used to configure the IP phone connected to the port.

• PVID to carry the data traffic to and from the workstation connected to the switch through the IP phone. The PVID is the native VLAN of the port.

The IP phone uses the VVID for its voice traffic, regardless of the authorization state of the port. This allows the phone to work independently of IEEE 802.1x authentication.

In single-host mode, only the IP phone is allowed on the voice VLAN. In multiple-hosts mode, additional clients can send traffic on the voice VLAN after a supplicant is authenticated on the PVID. When multiple-hosts mode is enabled, the supplicant authentication affects both the PVID and the VVID.

A voice VLAN port becomes active when there is a link, and the device MAC address appears after the first CDP message from the IP phone. Cisco IP phones do not relay CDP messages from other devices. As a result, if several IP phones are connected in series, the switch recognizes only the one directly connected to it. When IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled on a voice VLAN port, the switch drops packets from unrecognized IP phones more than one hop away.

When IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled on a switch port, you can configure an access port VLAN that is also a voice VLAN.

When IP phones are connected to an 802.1x-enabled switch port that is in single host mode, the switch grants the phones network access without authenticating them. We recommend that you use multidomain authentication (MDA) on the port to authenticate both a data device and a voice device, such as an IP phone.

Note
If you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on an access port on which a voice VLAN is configured and to which a Cisco IP Phone is connected, the Cisco IP phone loses connectivity to the switch for up to 30 seconds.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Port Security

In general, Cisco does not recommend enabling port security when IEEE 802.1x is enabled. Since IEEE 802.1x enforces a single MAC address per port (or per VLAN when MDA is configured for IP telephony), port security is redundant and in some cases may interfere with expected IEEE 802.1x operations.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Wake-on-LAN

The IEEE 802.1x authentication with wake-on-LAN (WoL) feature allows dormant PCs to be powered when the switch receives a specific Ethernet frame, known as the magic packet. You can use this feature in environments where administrators need to connect to systems that have been powered down.

When a host that uses WoL is attached through an IEEE 802.1x port and the host powers off, the IEEE 802.1x port becomes unauthorized. The port can only receive and send EAPOL packets, and WoL magic packets cannot reach the host. When the PC is powered off, it is not authorized, and the switch port is not opened.

When the switch uses IEEE 802.1x authentication with WoL, the switch forwards traffic to unauthorized IEEE 802.1x ports, including magic packets. While the port is unauthorized, the switch continues to block ingress traffic other than EAPOL packets. The host can receive packets but cannot send packets to other devices in the network.
If PortFast is not enabled on the port, the port is forced to the bidirectional state.

When you configure a port as unidirectional by using the `authentication control-direction in` interface configuration command, the port changes to the spanning-tree forwarding state. The port can send packets to the host but cannot receive packets from the host.

When you configure a port as bidirectional by using the `authentication control-direction both` interface configuration command, the port is access-controlled in both directions. The port does not receive packets from or send packets to the host.

### IEEE 802.1x Authentication with MAC Authentication Bypass

You can configure the switch to authorize clients based on the client MAC address by using the MAC authentication bypass feature. For example, you can enable this feature on IEEE 802.1x ports connected to devices such as printers.

If IEEE 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL response from the client, the switch tries to authorize the client by using MAC authentication bypass.

When the MAC authentication bypass feature is enabled on an IEEE 802.1x port, the switch uses the MAC address as the client identity. The authentication server has a database of client MAC addresses that are allowed network access. After detecting a client on an IEEE 802.1x port, the switch waits for an Ethernet packet from the client. The switch sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the MAC address. If authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If authorization fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN if one is configured. This process works for most client devices; however, it does not work for clients that use an alternate MAC address format.

You can configure how MAB authentication is performed for clients with MAC addresses that deviate from the standard format or where the RADIUS configuration requires the user name and password to differ.

If an EAPOL packet is detected on the interface during the lifetime of the link, the switch determines that the device connected to that interface is an 802.1x-capable supplicant and uses 802.1x authentication (not MAC authentication bypass) to authorize the interface. EAPOL history is cleared if the interface link status goes down.

If the switch already authorized a port by using MAC authentication bypass and detects an IEEE 802.1x supplicant, the switch does not unauthorize the client connected to the port. When re-authentication occurs, the switch uses the authentication or re-authentication methods configured on the port, if the previous session ended because the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute value is DEFAULT.

Clients that were authorized with MAC authentication bypass can be re-authenticated. The re-authentication process is the same as that for clients that were authenticated with IEEE 802.1x. During re-authentication, the port remains in the previously assigned VLAN. If re-authentication is successful, the switch keeps the port in the same VLAN. If re-authentication fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN, if one is configured.

If re-authentication is based on the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute [29]) and if the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute [29]) action is Initialize (the attribute value is DEFAULT), the MAC authentication bypass session ends, and connectivity is lost during re-authentication. If MAC authentication bypass is enabled and the IEEE 802.1x authentication times out, the switch uses the MAC authentication bypass feature to initiate re-authorization. For more information about these AV pairs, see RFC 3580, “IEEE 802.1X Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) Usage Guidelines.”
MAC authentication bypass interacts with the features:

- IEEE 802.1x authentication—You can enable MAC authentication bypass only if 802.1x authentication is enabled on the port.
- Guest VLAN—If a client has an invalid MAC address identity, the switch assigns the client to a guest VLAN if one is configured.
- Restricted VLAN—This feature is not supported when the client connected to an IEEE 802.1x port is authenticated with MAC authentication bypass.
- Port security
- Voice VLAN
- Private VLAN—You can assign a client to a private VLAN.
- Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT)—MAB and NEAT are mutually exclusive. You cannot enable MAB when NEAT is enabled on an interface, and you should not enable NEAT when MAB is enabled on an interface.

Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE and later supports filtering of verbose MAB system messages

Network Admission Control Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x Validation

The switch supports the Network Admission Control (NAC) Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation, which checks the antivirus condition or posture of endpoint systems or clients before granting the devices network access. With NAC Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation, you can do these tasks:

- Download the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]) from the authentication server.
- Set the number of seconds between re-authentication attempts as the value of the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and get an access policy against the client from the RADIUS server.
- Set the action to be taken when the switch tries to re-authenticate the client by using the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]). If the value is the DEFAULT or is not set, the session ends. If the value is RADIUS-Request, the re-authentication process starts.
- Set the list of VLAN number or name or VLAN group name as the value of the Tunnel Group Private ID (Attribute[81]) and the preference for the VLAN number or name or VLAN group name as the value of the Tunnel Preference (Attribute[83]). If you do not configure the Tunnel Preference, the first Tunnel Group Private ID (Attribute[81]) attribute is picked up from the list.
- View the NAC posture token, which shows the posture of the client, by using the show authentication privileged EXEC command.
- Configure secondary private VLANs as guest VLANs.

Configuring NAC Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation is similar to configuring IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication except that you must configure a posture token on the RADIUS server.
Flexible Authentication Ordering

You can use flexible authentication ordering to configure the order of methods that a port uses to authenticate a new host. The IEEE 802.1X Flexible Authentication feature supports three authentication methods:

- **dot1X**—IEEE 802.1X authentication is a Layer 2 authentication method.
- **mab**—MAC-Authentication Bypass is a Layer 2 authentication method.
- **webauth**—Web authentication is a Layer 3 authentication method.

Using this feature, you can control which ports use which authentication methods, and you can control the failover sequencing of methods on those ports. For example, MAC authentication bypass and 802.1x can be the primary or secondary authentication methods, and web authentication can be the fallback method if either or both of those authentication attempts fail.

The IEEE 802.1X Flexible Authentication feature supports the following host modes:

- **multi-auth**—Multiauthentication allows one authentication on a voice VLAN and multiple authentications on the data VLAN.
- **multi-domain**—Multidomain authentication allows two authentications: one on the voice VLAN and one on the data VLAN.

Open 1x Authentication

Open 1x authentication allows a device access to a port before that device is authenticated. When open authentication is configured, a new host can pass traffic according to the access control list (ACL) defined on the port. After the host is authenticated, the policies configured on the RADIUS server are applied to that host.

You can configure open authentication with these scenarios:

- Single-host mode with open authentication—Only one user is allowed network access before and after authentication.
- MDA mode with open authentication—Only one user in the voice domain and one user in the data domain are allowed.
- Multiple-hosts mode with open authentication—Any host can access the network.
- Multiple-authentication mode with open authentication—Similar to MDA, except multiple hosts can be authenticated.

Note

If open authentication is configured, it takes precedence over other authentication controls. This means that if you use the `authentication open` interface configuration command, the port will grant access to the host irrespective of the `authentication port-control` interface configuration command.
Multidomain Authentication

The switch supports multidomain authentication (MDA), which allows both a data device and voice device, such as an IP phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), to authenticate on the same switch port. The port is divided into a data domain and a voice domain.

For all host modes, the line protocol stays up before authorization when port-based authentication is configured.

MDA does not enforce the order of device authentication. However, for best results, we recommend that a voice device is authenticated before a data device on an MDA-enabled port.

Follow these guidelines for configuring MDA:

- You must configure a switch port for MDA.
- You must configure the voice VLAN for the IP phone when the host mode is set to multidomain.
- Voice VLAN assignment on an MDA-enabled port is supported Cisco IOS Release 12.2(40)SE and later.
- To authorize a voice device, the AAA server must be configured to send a Cisco Attribute-Value (AV) pair attribute with a value of device-traffic-class=voice. Without this value, the switch treats the voice device as a data device.

  Note: When traffic-class=voice is downloaded from AAA servers as a service-template, a session will be created in DATA domain instead of VOICE domain.

- The guest VLAN and restricted VLAN features only apply to the data devices on an MDA-enabled port. The switch treats a voice device that fails authorization as a data device.

- If more than one device attempts authorization on either the voice or the data domain of a port, it is error disabled.

- Until a device is authorized, the port drops its traffic. Non-Cisco IP phones or voice devices are allowed into both the data and voice VLANs. The data VLAN allows the voice device to contact a DHCP server to obtain an IP address and acquire the voice VLAN information. After the voice device starts sending on the voice VLAN, its access to the data VLAN is blocked.

- A voice device MAC address that is binding on the data VLAN is not counted towards the port security MAC address limit.

- MDA can use MAC authentication bypass as a fallback mechanism to allow the switch port to connect to devices that do not support IEEE 802.1x authentication.

- When a data or a voice device is detected on a port, its MAC address is blocked until authorization succeeds. If the authorization fails, the MAC address remains blocked for 5 minutes.

- If more than five devices are detected on the data VLAN or more than one voice device is detected on the voice VLAN while a port is unauthorized, the port is error disabled.

- When a port host mode is changed from single- or multihost to multidomain mode, an authorized data device remains authorized on the port. However, a Cisco IP phone that has been allowed on the port voice VLAN is automatically removed and must be reauthenticated on that port.
Active fallback mechanisms such as guest VLAN and restricted VLAN remain configured after a port changes from single- or multihost mode to multidomain mode.

Switching a port host mode from multidomain to single- or multihost mode removes all authorized devices from the port.

If a data domain is authorized first and placed in the guest VLAN, non-IEEE 802.1x-capable voice devices need to tag their packets on the voice VLAN to trigger authentication.

We do not recommend per-user ACLs with an MDA-enabled port. An authorized device with a per-user ACL policy might impact traffic on both the voice and data VLANs of the port. If used, only one device on the port should enforce per-user ACLs.

802.1x Supplicant and Authenticator Switches with Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT)

The Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) feature extends identity to areas outside the wiring closet (such as conference rooms). This allows any type of device to authenticate on the port.

- 802.1x switch supplicant: You can configure a switch to act as a supplicant to another switch by using the 802.1x supplicant feature. This configuration is helpful in a scenario, where, for example, a switch is outside a wiring closet and is connected to an upstream switch through a trunk port. A switch configured with the 802.1x switch supplicant feature authenticates with the upstream switch for secure connectivity. Once the supplicant switch authenticates successfully the port mode changes from access to trunk in an authenticator switch. In a supplicant switch you must manually configure trunk when enabling CISP.

- If the access VLAN is configured on the authenticator switch, it becomes the native VLAN for the trunk port after successful authentication.

In the default state, when you connect a supplicant switch to an authenticator switch that has BPDU guard enabled, the authenticator port could be error-disabled if it receives a Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) packets before the supplicant switch has authenticated. Beginning with Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)SE, you can control traffic exiting the supplicant port during the authentication period. Entering the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` global configuration command temporarily blocks the supplicant port during authentication to ensure that the authenticator port does not shut down before authentication completes. If authentication fails, the supplicant port opens. Entering the `no dot1x supplicant controlled transient` global configuration command opens the supplicant port during the authentication period. This is the default behavior.

We strongly recommend using the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` command on a supplicant switch when BPDU guard is enabled on the authenticator switch port with the `spanning-tree bpdu guard enable` interface configuration command.

**Note**

If you globally enable BPDU guard on the authenticator switch by using the `spanning-tree portfast bpdu guard default` global configuration command, entering the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` command does not prevent the BPDU violation.

You can enable MDA or multiauth mode on the authenticator switch interface that connects to one more supplicant switches. Multihost mode is not supported on the authenticator switch interface.
When you reboot an authenticator switch with single-host mode enabled on the interface, the interface may move to err-disabled state before authentication. To recover from err-disabled state, flap the authenticator port to activate the interface again and initiate authentication.

Use the `dot1x supplicant force-multicast` global configuration command on the supplicant switch for Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) to work in all host modes.

- **Host Authorization:** Ensures that only traffic from authorized hosts (connecting to the switch with supplicant) is allowed on the network. The switches use Client Information Signalling Protocol (CISP) to send the MAC addresses connecting to the supplicant switch to the authenticator switch.

- **Auto enablement:** Automatically enables trunk configuration on the authenticator switch, allowing user traffic from multiple VLANs coming from supplicant switches. Configure the `cisco-av-pair` as `device-traffic-class=switch` at the ISE. (You can configure this under the `group` or the `user` settings.)

*Figure 31: Authenticator and Supplicant Switch using CISP*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Workstations (clients)</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Supplicant switch (outside wiring closet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Authenticator switch</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cisco ISE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Trunk port</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
The `switchport nonegotiate` command is not supported on supplicant and authenticator switches with NEAT. This command should not be configured at the supplicant side of the topology. If configured on the authenticator side, the internal macros will automatically remove this command from the port.

**Voice Aware 802.1x Security**

**Note**
To use voice aware IEEE 802.1x authentication, the switch must be running the LAN base image.

You use the voice aware 802.1x security feature to configure the switch to disable only the VLAN on which a security violation occurs, whether it is a data or voice VLAN. In previous releases, when an attempt to authenticate the data client caused a security violation, the entire port shut down, resulting in a complete loss of connectivity.
You can use this feature in IP phone deployments where a PC is connected to the IP phone. A security violation found on the data VLAN results in the shutdown of only the data VLAN. The traffic on the voice VLAN flows through the switch without interruption.

### Common Session ID

Authentication manager uses a single session ID (referred to as a common session ID) for a client no matter which authentication method is used. This ID is used for all reporting purposes, such as the show commands and MIBs. The session ID appears with all per-session syslog messages.

The session ID includes:

- The IP address of the Network Access Device (NAD)
- A monotonically increasing unique 32 bit integer
- The session start time stamp (a 32 bit integer)

This example shows how the session ID appears in the output of the show authentication command. The session ID in this example is 160000050000000B288508E5:

```
Device# show authentication sessions
Interface MAC Address Method Domain Status Session ID
Fa4/0/4 0000.0000.0203 mab DATA Authz Success 160000050000000B288508E5
```

This is an example of how the session ID appears in the syslog output. The session ID in this example is also 160000050000000B288508E5:

```
1w0d: %AUTHMGR-5-START: Starting 'mab' for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4
AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
1w0d: %MAB-5-SUCCESS: Authentication successful for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4
AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
1w0d: %AUTHMGR-7-RESULT: Authentication result 'success' from 'mab' for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4
AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
```

The session ID is used by the NAD, the AAA server, and other report-analyzing applications to identify the client. The ID appears automatically. No configuration is required.

### How to Configure 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

#### Default 802.1x Authentication Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch 802.1x enable state</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Default Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-port 802.1x enable state</td>
<td>Disabled (force-authorized). The port sends and receives normal traffic without 802.1x-based authentication of the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS server</td>
<td>• None specified. • 1645. • 1646. • None specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host mode</td>
<td>Single-host mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control direction</td>
<td>Bidirectional control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic re-authentication</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of seconds between re-authentication attempts</td>
<td>3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-authentication number</td>
<td>2 times (number of times that the switch restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiet period</td>
<td>60 seconds (number of seconds that the switch remains in the quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with the client).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retransmission time</td>
<td>30 seconds (number of seconds that the switch should wait for a response to an EAP request/identity frame from the client before resending the request).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum retransmission number</td>
<td>2 times (number of times that the switch will send an EAP-request/identity frame before restarting the authentication process).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client timeout period</td>
<td>30 seconds (when relaying a request from the authentication server to the client, the amount of time the switch waits for a response before resending the request to the client.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication server timeout period</td>
<td>30 seconds (when relaying a response from the client to the authentication server, the amount of time the switch waits for a reply before resending the response to the server.) You can change this timeout period by using the dot1x timeout server-timeout interface configuration command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 802.1x Authentication Configuration Guidelines

#### 802.1x Authentication

Here are the 802.1x authentication configuration guidelines:

- You must enable SISF-Based device tracking to use 802.1x authentication. By default, SISF-Based device tracking is disabled on a switch.

- When 802.1x authentication is enabled, ports are authenticated before any other Layer 2 or Layer 3 features are enabled.

- If the VLAN to which an 802.1x-enabled port is assigned changes, this change is transparent and does not affect the switch. For example, this change occurs if a port is assigned to a RADIUS server-assigned VLAN and is then assigned to a different VLAN after re-authentication.

If the VLAN to which an 802.1x port is assigned to shut down, disabled, or removed, the port becomes unauthorized. For example, the port is unauthorized after the access VLAN to which a port is assigned shuts down or is removed.

- The 802.1x protocol is supported on Layer 2 static-access ports, voice VLAN ports, and Layer 3 routed ports, but it is not supported on these port types:
  - Dynamic ports—A port in dynamic mode can negotiate with its neighbor to become a trunk port. If you try to enable 802.1x authentication on a dynamic port, an error message appears, and 802.1x authentication is not enabled. If you try to change the mode of an 802.1x-enabled port to dynamic, an error message appears, and the port mode is not changed.
  
- EtherChannel port—Do not configure a port that is an active or a not-yet-active member of an EtherChannel as an 802.1x port. If you try to enable 802.1x authentication on an EtherChannel port, an error message appears, and 802.1x authentication is not enabled.
  
- Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) and Remote SPAN (RSPAN) destination ports—You can enable 802.1x authentication on a port that is a SPAN or RSPAN destination port. However, 802.1x authentication is disabled until the port is removed as a SPAN or RSPAN destination port. You can enable 802.1x authentication on a SPAN or RSPAN source port.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity timeout</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest VLAN</td>
<td>None specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inaccessible authentication bypass</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restricted VLAN</td>
<td>None specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authenticator (switch) mode</td>
<td>None specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC authentication bypass</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice-aware security</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Before globally enabling 802.1x authentication on a switch by entering the `dot1x system-auth-control` global configuration command, remove the EtherChannel configuration from the interfaces on which 802.1x authentication and EtherChannel are configured.

Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE and later supports filtering of system messages related to 802.1x authentication.

Note

We recommend that you configure all the dependent 802.1x CLIs under the same interface or on the same template.

VLAN Assignment, Guest VLAN, Restricted VLAN, and Inaccessible Authentication Bypass

These are the configuration guidelines for VLAN assignment, guest VLAN, restricted VLAN, and inaccessible authentication bypass:

- When 802.1x authentication is enabled on a port, you cannot configure a port VLAN that is equal to a voice VLAN.

- You can configure any VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The guest VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

- After you configure a guest VLAN for an 802.1x port to which a DHCP client is connected, you might need to get a host IP address from a DHCP server. You can change the settings for restarting the 802.1x authentication process on the switch before the DHCP process on the client times out and tries to get a host IP address from the DHCP server. Decrease the settings for the 802.1x authentication process (`authentication timer inactivity` and `authentication timer reauthentication` interface configuration commands). The amount to decrease the settings depends on the connected 802.1x client type.

- When configuring the inaccessible authentication bypass feature, follow these guidelines:
  - The feature is supported on 802.1x port in single-host mode and multihosts mode.
  - If the client is running Windows XP and the port to which the client is connected is in the critical-authentication state, Windows XP might report that the interface is not authenticated.
  - If the Windows XP client is configured for DHCP and has an IP address from the DHCP server, receiving an EAP-Success message on a critical port might not re-initiate the DHCP configuration process.
  - You can configure the inaccessible authentication bypass feature and the restricted VLAN on an 802.1x port. If the switch tries to re-authenticate a critical port in a restricted VLAN and all the RADIUS servers are unavailable, switch changes the port state to the critical authentication state and remains in the restricted VLAN.
  - If the CTS links are in Critical Authentication mode and the master reloads, the policy where SGT was configured on a device will not be available on the new master. This is because the internal bindings will not be synced to the standby switch in a 3750-X switch stack.

- You can configure any VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The restricted VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.
MAC Authentication Bypass

These are the MAC authentication bypass configuration guidelines:

- Unless otherwise stated, the MAC authentication bypass guidelines are the same as the 802.1x authentication guidelines.
- If you disable MAC authentication bypass from a port after the port has been authorized with its MAC address, the port state is not affected.
- If the port is in the unauthorized state and the client MAC address is not the authentication-server database, the port remains in the unauthorized state. However, if the client MAC address is added to the database, the switch can use MAC authentication bypass to re-authorize the port.
- If the port is in the authorized state, the port remains in this state until re-authorization occurs.
- You can configure a timeout period for hosts that are connected by MAC authentication bypass but are inactive. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds.

Maximum Number of Allowed Devices Per Port

This is the maximum number of devices allowed on an 802.1x-enabled port:

- In single-host mode, only one device is allowed on the access VLAN. If the port is also configured with a voice VLAN, an unlimited number of Cisco IP phones can send and receive traffic through the voice VLAN.
- In multidomain authentication (MDA) mode, one device is allowed for the access VLAN, and one IP phone is allowed for the voice VLAN.
- In multihost mode, only one 802.1x supplicant is allowed on the port, but an unlimited number of non-802.1x hosts are allowed on the access VLAN. An unlimited number of devices are allowed on the voice VLAN.

Configuring 802.1x Readiness Check

The 802.1x readiness check monitors 802.1x activity on all the switch ports and displays information about the devices connected to the ports that support 802.1x. You can use this feature to determine if the devices connected to the switch ports are 802.1x-capable.

The 802.1x readiness check is allowed on all ports that can be configured for 802.1x. The readiness check is not available on a port that is configured as dot1x force-unauthorized.

Follow these steps to enable the 802.1x readiness check on the switch:

Before you begin

Follow these guidelines to enable the readiness check on the switch:

- The readiness check is typically used before 802.1x is enabled on the switch.
- If you use the dot1x test eapol-capable privileged EXEC command without specifying an interface, all the ports on the switch stack are tested.
- When you configure the dot1x test eapol-capable command on an 802.1x-enabled port, and the link comes up, the port queries the connected client about its 802.1x capability. When the client responds with a notification packet, it is 802.1x-capable. A syslog message is generated if the client responds.
withinthetimeoutperiod. If the client does not respond to the query, the client is not 802.1x-capable. No syslog message is generated

• When you configure the **dot1x test eapol-capable** command on an 802.1x-enabled port, and the link comes up, the port queries the connected client about its 802.1x capability. When the client responds with a notification packet, it is 802.1x-capable. A syslog message is generated if the client responds within the timeout period. If the client does not respond to the query, the client is not 802.1x-capable. No syslog message is generated

• The readiness check can be sent on a port that handles multiple hosts (for example, a PC that is connected to an IP phone). A syslog message is generated for each of the clients that respond to the readiness check within the timer period.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. dot1x test eapol-capable [interface interface-id]
4. dot1x test timeout timeout
5. end
6. show running-config
7. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 dot1x test eapol-capable [interface interface-id]</td>
<td>Enables the 802.1x readiness check on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# dot1x test eapol-capable interface gigabitethernet1/0/13 DOT1X_PORT_EAPOL_CAPABLE:DOT1X: MAC 00-01-02-4b-f1-a3 on gigabitethernet1/0/13 is EAPOL capable</td>
<td>(Optional) For interface-id specify the port on which to check for IEEE 802.1x readiness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note If you omit the optional interface keyword, all interfaces on the switch are tested.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 dot1x test timeout timeout</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the timeout used to wait for EAPOL response. The range is from 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 10 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Voice Aware 802.1x Security

**To use voice aware IEEE 802.1x authentication, the switch must be running the LAN base image.**

You use the voice aware 802.1x security feature on the switch to disable only the VLAN on which a security violation occurs, whether it is a data or voice VLAN. You can use this feature in IP phone deployments where a PC is connected to the IP phone. A security violation found on the data VLAN results in the shutdown of only the data VLAN. The traffic on the voice VLAN flows through the switch without interruption.

Follow these guidelines to configure voice aware 802.1x voice security on the switch:

- You enable voice aware 802.1x security by entering the `errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan` global configuration command. You disable voice aware 802.1x security by entering the `no` version of this command. This command applies to all 802.1x-configured ports in the switch.

  **Note** If you do not include the `shutdown vlan` keywords, the entire port is shut down when it enters the error-disabled state.

- If you use the `errdisable recovery cause security-violation` global configuration command to configure error-disabled recovery, the port is automatically re-enabled. If error-disabled recovery is not configured for the port, you re-enable it by using the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` interface configuration commands.

- You can re-enable individual VLANs by using the `clear errdisable interface interface-id vlan` [vlan-list] privileged EXEC command. If you do not specify a range, all VLANs on the port are enabled.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable voice aware 802.1x security:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>end</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>show running-config</strong></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy running-config startup-config</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan
3. errdisable recovery cause security-violation
4. clear errdisable interface interface-id vlan [vlan-list]
5. Enter the following:
   - shutdown
   - no shutdown
6. end
7. show errdisable detect

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enter global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan</td>
<td>Shut down any VLAN on which a security violation error occurs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If the <strong>shutdown vlan</strong> keywords are not included, the entire port enters the error-disabled state and shuts down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> errdisable recovery cause security-violation</td>
<td>Enter global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> clear errdisable interface interface-id vlan [vlan-list]</td>
<td>(Optional) Reenable individual VLANs that have been error disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For interface-id specify the port on which to reenable individual VLANs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) For vlan-list specify a list of VLANs to be re-enabled. If vlan-list is not specified, all VLANs are re-enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> Enter the following:</td>
<td>(Optional) Re-enable an error-disabled VLAN, and clear all error-disable indications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• shutdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• no shutdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Return to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show errdisable detect</td>
<td>Verify your entries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the switch to shut down any VLAN on which a security violation error occurs:

```
Switch(config)# errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan
```
This example shows how to re-enable all VLANs that were error disabled on port Gigabit Ethernet 40/2.

```
Switch# clear errdisable interface gigabitethernet40/2
vlan
```

You can verify your settings by entering the `show errdisable detect` privileged EXEC command.

### Configuring 802.1x Violation Modes

You can configure an 802.1x port so that it shuts down, generates a syslog error, or discards packets from a new device when:

- a device connects to an 802.1x-enabled port
- the maximum number of allowed about devices have been authenticated on the port

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure the security violation actions on the switch:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `aaa new-model`
3. `aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1`
4. `interface interface-id`
5. `switchport mode access`
6. `authentication violation {shutdown | restrict | protect | replace}`
7. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1</td>
<td>Creates an 802.1x authentication method list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default</td>
<td>To create a default list that is used when a named list is <em>not</em> specified in the <code>authentication</code> command, use the <code>default</code> keyword followed by the method that is to be used in default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>group radius</code></td>
<td>The default method list is automatically applied to all ports. For <code>method1</code>, enter the <code>group radius</code> keywords to use the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

**interface interface-id**

*Example:*

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/4
```

Specifies the port connected to the client that is to be enabled for IEEE 802.1x authentication, and enter interface configuration mode.

**Step 5**

**switchport mode access**

*Example:*

```
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
```

Sets the port to access mode.

**Step 6**

**authentication violation {shutdown | restrict | protect | replace}**

*Example:*

```
Device(config-if)# authentication violation restrict
```

Configures the violation mode. The keywords have these meanings:

- **shutdown** – Error disable the port.
- **restrict** – Generate a syslog error.
- **protect** – Drop packets from any new device that sends traffic to the port.
- **replace** – Removes the current session and authenticates with the new host.

**Step 7**

**end**

*Example:*

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

**Configuring 802.1x Authentication**

To allow per-user ACLs or VLAN assignment, you must enable AAA authorization to configure the switch for all network-related service requests.

This is the 802.1x AAA process:

**Before you begin**

To configure 802.1x port-based authentication, you must enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) and specify the authentication method list. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. A user connects to a port on the switch.
2. Authentication is performed.
3. VLAN assignment is enabled, as appropriate, based on the RADIUS server configuration.
4. The switch sends a start message to an accounting server.
5. Re-authentication is performed, as necessary.
6. The switch sends an interim accounting update to the accounting server that is based on the result of re-authentication.
7. The user disconnects from the port.
8. The switch sends a stop message to the accounting server.

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>A user connects to a port on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Authentication is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>VLAN assignment is enabled, as appropriate, based on the RADIUS server configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>The switch sends a start message to an accounting server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>Re-authentication is performed, as necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>The switch sends an interim accounting update to the accounting server that is based on the result of re-authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>The user disconnects from the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>The switch sends a stop message to the accounting server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure 802.1x port-based authentication:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. aaa new-model
3. aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1
4. dot1x system-auth-control
5. aaa authorization network {default} group radius
6. radius server server name
7. address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address
8. key string
9. exit
10. interface interface-id
11. switchport mode access
12. `authentication port-control auto`
13. `dot1x pae authenticator`
14. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `configure terminal`
  **Example:**
  Device# `configure terminal`
  
  | Enables global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | `aaa new-model`
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# `aaa new-model`
  
  | Enables AAA. |
| **Step 3** | `aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1`
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# `aaa authentication dot1x default group radius`
  
  | Creates an 802.1x authentication method list.  
  To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `authentication` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the method that is to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports.  
  For `method1`, enter the `group radius` keywords to use the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.  
  **Note** Though other keywords are visible in the command-line help string, only the `group radius` keywords are supported. |
| **Step 4** | `dot1x system-auth-control`
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# `dot1x system-auth-control`
  
  | Enables 802.1x authentication globally on the switch. |
| **Step 5** | `aaa authorization network {default} group radius`
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# `aaa authorization network default group radius`
  
  | (Optional) Configures the switch to use user-RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests, such as per-user ACLs or VLAN assignment. |
| **Step 6** | `radius server server name`
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# `radius server rsim address ipv4`
  
<p>| (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.2.2.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} ip address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> key string</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port connected to the client that is to be enabled for IEEE 802.1x authentication, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server in Step 6 and Step 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> authentication port-control auto</td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong> dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td>Sets the interface Port Access Entity to act only as an authenticator and ignore messages meant for a supplicant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication

Follow these steps to configure the RADIUS server parameters:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip radius source-interface`
4. `radius server server name`
5. `address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address`
6. `key string`
7. `exit`
8. `radius-server dead-criteria tries num-tries`
9. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  * Enter your password if prompted.  
  
Example:  

```
Device> enable
``` |
| Step 2 | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
  
Example:  

```
Device# configure terminal
``` |
| Step 3 | `ip radius source-interface` | Specifies that the RADIUS packets have the IP address of the indicated interface.  
  
Example:  

```
Device(config)# ip radius source-interface vlan 80
``` |
| Step 4 | `radius server server name` | (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.  
  
Example:  

```
Device(config)# radius server rsim address ipv4
``` |
### Configuring the Host Mode

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to allow multiple hosts (clients) on an IEEE 802.1x-authorized port that has the `authentication port-control` interface configuration command set to `auto`. Use the `multi-domain` keyword to configure and enable multidomain authentication (MDA), which allows both a host and a voice device, such as an IP phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), on the same switch port. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `authentication host-mode [multi-auth | multi-domain | multi-host | single-host]`
4. `end`

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.2.2.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} ip address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.2 auth-port 1550 acct-port 1560</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> key string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode. Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</td>
<td>Specifies the number of unanswered sent messages to a RADIUS server before considering the server to be inactive. The range of <code>num-tries</code> is 1 to 100. Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> radius-server dead-criteria tries num-tries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria tries 30</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | configure terminal  
Example: Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Step 2 | interface interface-id  
Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 | Specifies the port to which multiple hosts are indirectly attached, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | authentication host-mode [multi-auth | multi-domain | multi-host | single-host]  
Example: Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-host | Allows multiple hosts (clients) on an 802.1x-authorized port.  
The keywords have these meanings:  
  - **multi-auth**—Allow multiple authenticated clients on both the voice VLAN and data VLAN.  
    Note The **multi-auth** keyword is only available with the **authentication host-mode** command.  
  - **multi-host**—Allow multiple hosts on an 802.1x-authorized port after a single host has been authenticated.  
  - **multi-domain**—Allow both a host and a voice device, such as an IP phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), to be authenticated on an IEEE 802.1x-authorized port.  
    Note You must configure the voice VLAN for the IP phone when the host mode is set to **multi-domain**.  
Make sure that the **authentication port-control** interface configuration command is set to **auto** for the specified interface. |
| Step 4 | end  
Example: Device(config-if)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
Configuring Periodic Re-Authentication

You can enable periodic 802.1x client re-authentication and specify how often it occurs. If you do not specify a time period before enabling re-authentication, the number of seconds between attempts is 3600.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable periodic re-authentication of the client and to configure the number of seconds between re-authentication attempts. This procedure is optional.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. authentication periodic
4. authentication timer {[[inactivity | reauthenticate | restart | unauthorized]} {value}}
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Step 2 | interface interface-id |
| Example: | Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 |

| Step 3 | authentication periodic |
| Example: | Enables periodic re-authentication of the client, which is disabled by default. |
| Note | The default value is 3600 seconds. To change the value of the reauthentication timer or to have the switch use a RADIUS-provided session timeout, enter the authentication timer reauthenticate command. |
| Device(config-if)# authentication periodic |

| Step 4 | authentication timer {[[inactivity | reauthenticate | restart | unauthorized]} {value}} |
| Example: | Sets the number of seconds between re-authentication attempts. |
| The authentication timer keywords have these meanings: |
| • inactivity—Interval in seconds after which if there is no activity from the client then it is unauthorized |
| • reauthenticate—Time in seconds after which an automatic re-authentication attempt is initiated |
| Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate 180 |
### Changing the Quiet Period

When the switch cannot authenticate the client, the switch remains idle for a set period of time and then tries again. The **authentication timer restart** interface configuration command controls the idle period. A failed authentication of the client might occur because the client provided an invalid password. You can provide a faster response time to the user by entering a number smaller than the default.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to change the quiet period. This procedure is optional.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `authentication timer restart seconds`
4. `end`
5. `show authentication sessions interface interface-id`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
configure terminal

  Example:

  Device# configure terminal |

Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2**
interface interface-id

  Example:

  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 |

Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
Changing the Switch-to-Client Retransmission Time

The client responds to the EAP-request/identity frame from the switch with an EAP-response/identity frame. If the switch does not receive this response, it waits a set period of time (known as the retransmission time) and then resends the frame.

**Note**
You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to change the amount of time that the switch waits for client notification. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**
1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `authentication timer reauthenticate seconds`
4. `end`
5. `show authentication sessions interface interface-id`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`
# Setting the Switch-to-Client Frame-Retransmission Number

In addition to changing the switch-to-client retransmission time, you can change the number of times that the switch sends an EAP-request/identity frame (assuming no response is received) to the client before restarting the authentication process.

## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Enters global configuration mode. | **Step 1** configure terminal  
Example: Device# configure terminal |
| Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. | **Step 2** interface interface-id  
Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 |
| Sets the number of seconds that the switch waits for a response to an EAP-request/identity frame from the client before resending the request. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds; the default is 5. | **Step 3** authentication timer reauthenticate seconds  
Example: Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate 60 |
| Returns to privileged EXEC mode. | **Step 4** end  
Example: Device(config-if)# end |
| Verifies your entries. | **Step 5** show authentication sessions interface interface-id  
Example: Device# show authentication sessions interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 |
| (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. | **Step 6** copy running-config startup-config  
Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config |
You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to set the switch-to-client frame-retransmission number. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal  
2. interface interface-id  
3. dot1x max-reauth-req count  
4. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** configure terminal  
  **Example:**  
  Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** interface interface-id  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1 | Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** dot1x max-reauth-req count  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# dot1x max-reauth-req 5 | Sets the number of times that the switch sends an EAP-request/identity frame to the client before restarting the authentication process. The range is 1 to 10; the default is 2. |
| **Step 4** end  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

**Setting the Re-Authentication Number**

You can also change the number of times that the switch restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state.
You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to set the re-authentication number. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `switchport mode access`
4. `dot1x max-req count`
5. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode only if you previously configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> dot1x max-req count</td>
<td>Sets the number of times that the switch restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state. The range is 0 to 10; the default is 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# dot1x max-req 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling MAC Move

MAC move allows an authenticated host to move from one port on the switch to another.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to globally enable MAC move on the switch. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. authentication mac-move permit
3. end
4. show running-config
5. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>authentication mac-move permit</td>
<td>Enables MAC move on the switch. Default is deny.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>In Session Aware Networking mode, the default CLI is access-session mac-move deny. To enable Mac Move in Session Aware Networking, use the no access-session mac-move global configuration command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# authentication mac-move permit</td>
<td>In legacy mode (IBNS 1.0), default value for mac-move is deny and in C3PL mode (IBNS 2.0) default value is permit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling MAC Replace

MAC replace allows a host to replace an authenticated host on a port.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable MAC replace on an interface. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `authentication violation {protect | replace | restrict | shutdown}`
4. `end`
5. `show running-config`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet2/0/2</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`authentication violation {protect</td>
<td>replace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# <code>authentication violation replace</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# <code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Configuring 802.1x Accounting**

Enabling AAA system accounting with 802.1x accounting allows system reload events to be sent to the accounting RADIUS server for logging. The server can then infer that all active 802.1x sessions are closed.

**Note**

In Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.x and Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.x, periodic AAA accounting updates are not supported. The switch does not send periodic interim accounting records to the accounting server. Periodic AAA accounting updates are available in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and later releases.

Because RADIUS uses the unreliable UDP transport protocol, accounting messages might be lost due to poor network conditions. If the switch does not receive the accounting response message from the RADIUS server after a configurable number of retransmissions of an accounting request, this system message appears:

Accounting message %s for session %s failed to receive Accounting Response.

When the stop message is not sent successfully, this message appears:

00:09:55: %RADIUS-4-RADIUS_DEAD: RADIUS server 172.20.246.201:1645,1646 is not responding.

**Note**

You must configure the RADIUS server to perform accounting tasks, such as logging start, stop, and interim-update messages and time stamps. To turn on these functions, enable logging of “Update/Watchdog packets from this AAA client” in your RADIUS server Network Configuration tab. Next, enable “CVS RADIUS Accounting” in your RADIUS server System Configuration tab.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure 802.1x accounting after AAA is enabled on your switch. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius
### 4. aaa accounting system default start-stop group radius
### 5. end
### 6. show running-config
### 7. copy running-config startup-config

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `configure terminal`  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Step 2 | `interface interface-id`  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/3 | Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | `aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius | Enables 802.1x accounting using the list of all RADIUS servers. |
| Step 4 | `aaa accounting system default start-stop group radius`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# aaa accounting system default start-stop group radius | (Optional) Enables system accounting (using the list of all RADIUS servers) and generates system accounting reload event messages when the switch reloads. |
| Step 5 | `end`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# end | Returns to privileged EXEce mode. |
| Step 6 | `show running-config`  
**Example:**  
Device# show running-config | Verifies your entries. |
| Step 7 | `copy running-config startup-config`  
**Example:**  
| (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |
## Configuring a Guest VLAN

When you configure a guest VLAN, clients that are not 802.1x-capable are put into the guest VLAN when the server does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame. Clients that are 802.1x-capable but that fail authentication are not granted network access. The switch supports guest VLANs in single-host or multiple-hosts mode.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a guest VLAN. This procedure is optional.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. Use one of the following:
   - `switchport mode access`
   - `switchport mode private-vlan host`
4. `authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id`
5. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/2</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Use one of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>switchport mode access</code></td>
<td>• Sets the port to access mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>switchport mode private-vlan host</code></td>
<td>• Configures the Layer 2 port as a private-VLAN host port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

Configuring a Restricted VLAN

When you configure a restricted VLAN on a switch stack or a switch, clients that are IEEE 802.1x-compliant are moved into the restricted VLAN when the authentication server does not receive a valid username and password. The switch supports restricted VLANs only in single-host mode.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a restricted VLAN. This procedure is optional.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. Use one of the following:
   - switchport mode access
   - switchport mode private-vlan host
4. authentication port-control auto
5. authentication event fail action authorize vlan vlan-id
6. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Step 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Specifies an active VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094. You can configure any active VLAN except an internal VLAN (routed port), an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>authentication event no-response action authorize vlan 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# authentication event no-response action authorize vlan 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Step 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Number of Authentication Attempts on a Restricted VLAN

You can configure the maximum number of authentication attempts allowed before a user is assigned to the restricted VLAN by using the `authentication event retry retry count` interface configuration command. The range of allowable authentication attempts is 1 to 3. The default is 3 attempts.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure the maximum number of allowed authentication attempts. This procedure is optional.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. Use one of the following:
   - `switchport mode access`
   - `switchport mode private-vlan host`
4. `authentication port-control auto`
5. `authentication event fail action authorize vlan vlan-id`
6. `authentication event retry retry count`
7. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/3</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Use one of the following:&lt;br&gt;• <code>switchport mode access</code>&lt;br&gt;• <code>switchport mode private-vlan host</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;or&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td>• Sets the port to access mode.&lt;br&gt;• Configures the Layer 2 port as a private-VLAN host port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication port-control auto</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication event fail action authorize vlan vlan-id</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication event fail action authorize vlan 8</td>
<td>Specifies an active VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094.&lt;br&gt;You can configure any active VLAN except an internal VLAN (routed port), an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication event retry retry count</code>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication event retry 2</td>
<td>Specifies a number of authentication attempts to allow before a port moves to the restricted VLAN. The range is 1 to 3, and the default is 3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

**Purpose**

**Step 7**  
end  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# end

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Configuring 802.1x Inaccessible Authentication Bypass with Critical Voice VLAN

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure critical voice VLAN on a port and enable the inaccessible authentication bypass feature.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal  
2. aaa new-model  
3. radius-server dead-criteria {time seconds} [tries number]  
4. radius-serverdeadtime minutes  
5. radius server server name  
6. address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address auth-port port_number acct-port port_number  
7. key string  
8. exit  
9. dot1x critical {eapol | recovery delay milliseconds}  
10. interface interface-id  
11. authentication event server dead action {authorize | reinitialize} vlan vlan-id  
12. switchport voice vlan vlan-id  
13. authentication event server dead action authorize voice  
14. show authentication interface interface-id  
15. copy running-config startup-config

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**  
  configure terminal  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2**  
  aaa new-model  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# aaa new-model | Enables AAA. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 3    | `radius-server dead-criteria {time seconds} [tries number]` | Sets the conditions that determine when a RADIUS server is considered un-available or down (dead).  
  - **time**—1 to 120 seconds. The switch dynamically determines a default `seconds` value between 10 and 60.  
  - **number**—1 to 100 tries. The switch dynamically determines a default `tries number` between 10 and 100. |
| 4    | `radius-server dead-time minutes` | (Optional) Sets the number of minutes during which a RADIUS server is not sent requests. The range is from 0 to 1440 minutes (24 hours). The default is 0 minutes. |
| 5    | `radius server server name` | (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server. |
| 6    | `address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address auth-port port_number acct-port port_number` | Configures the IP address for the RADIUS server. |
| 7    | `key string` | (Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. |
| 8    | `exit` | Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode. |
| 9    | `dot1x critical {eapol | recovery delay milliseconds}` | (Optional) Configure the parameters for inaccessible authentication bypass:  
  - **eapol**—Specify that the switch sends an EAPOL-Success message when the switch successfully authenticates the critical port. |
### Configuring 802.1x Inaccessible Authentication Bypass with Critical Voice VLAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specify the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> authentication event server dead action {authorize</td>
<td>reinitialize} vlan vlan-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# authentication event server dead action reinitialize vlan 20</td>
<td>- <strong>authorize</strong>—Move any new hosts trying to authenticate to the user-specified critical VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>reinitialize</strong>—Move all authorized hosts on the port to the user-specified critical VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> switchport voice vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Specifies the voice VLAN for the port. The voice VLAN cannot be the same as the critical data VLAN configured in Step 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong> authentication event server dead action authorize voice</td>
<td>Configures critical voice VLAN to move data traffic on the port to the voice VLAN if the RADIUS server is unreachable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# authentication event server dead action authorize voice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong> show authentication interface interface-id</td>
<td>(Optional) Verify your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# do show authentication interface gigabit 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 15</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Verify your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# do copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

To return to the RADIUS server default settings, use the `no radius-server dead-criteria`, the `no radius-server deadtime`, and the `no radius server` global configuration commands. To disable inaccessible authentication bypass, use the `no authentication event server dead action` interface configuration command. To disable critical voice VLAN, use the `no authentication event server dead action authorize voice` interface configuration command.

Example of Configuring Inaccessible Authentication Bypass

This example shows how to configure the inaccessible authentication bypass feature:

```
Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 30 tries 20
Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 60
Device(config)# radius server server1
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 172.29.36.49 acct-port 1618 auth-port 1612
Device(config-radius-server)# key abc1234
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# dot1x critical eapol
Device(config)# dot1x critical recovery delay 2000
Device(config-if)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# dot1x critical
Device(config-if)# dot1x critical recovery action reinitialize
Device(config-if)# dot1x critical vlan 20
Device(config-if)# end
```

Configuring 802.1x Authentication with WoL

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable 802.1x authentication with WoL. This procedure is optional.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `authentication control-direction {both | in}`
4. `end`
5. `show authentication sessions interface interface-id`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>config or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> authentication control-direction {both</td>
<td>in}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# authentication control-direction both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• both—Sets the port as bidirectional. The port cannot receive packets from or send packets to the host. By default, the port is bidirectional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• in—Sets the port as unidirectional. The port can send packets to the host but cannot receive packets from the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show authentication sessions interface interface-id</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# show authentication sessions interface gigabitethernet2/0/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring MAC Authentication Bypass

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable MAC authentication bypass. This procedure is optional.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal  
2. interface interface-id  
3. authentication port-control auto  
4. mab [eap]
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  configure terminal  
  Example:
  Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2**
  interface interface-id  
  Example:
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1 | Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**
  authentication port-control auto  
  Example:
  Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto | Enables 802.1x authentication on the port. |
| **Step 4**
  mab [eap]  
  Example:
  Device(config-if)# mab | Enables MAC authentication bypass.  
  (Optional) Use the eap keyword to configure the switch to use EAP for authorization. |
| **Step 5**
  end  
  Example:
  Device(config-if)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

---

**Configuring 802.1x User Distribution**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a VLAN group and to map a VLAN to it:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. **vlan group** vlan-group-name **vlan-list** vlan-list
3. end
4. no **vlan group** vlan-group-name **vlan-list** vlan-list

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
## Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>vlan group vlan-group-name vlan-list vlan-list</code></td>
<td>Configures a VLAN group, and maps a single VLAN or a range of VLANs to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>no vlan group vlan-group-name vlan-list vlan-list</code></td>
<td>Clears the VLAN group configuration or elements of the VLAN group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# no vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Example of Configuring VLAN Groups

This example shows how to configure the VLAN groups, to map the VLANs to the groups, to and verify the VLAN group configurations and mapping to the specified VLANs:

```
Device(config)# vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10

Device(config)# show vlan group group-name eng-dept
Group Name   Vlans Mapped
-------------- ---------------
eng-dept      10

Device(config)# show dot1x vlan-group all
Group Name   Vlans Mapped
-------------- ---------------
eng-dept      10
hr-dept       20
```

This example shows how to add a VLAN to an existing VLAN group and to verify that the VLAN was added:

```
Device(config)# vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 30
Device(config)# show vlan group eng-dept
Group Name   Vlans Mapped
-------------- ---------------
`
This example shows how to remove a VLAN from a VLAN group:

```
Device# no vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10
```

This example shows that when all the VLANs are cleared from a VLAN group, the VLAN group is cleared:

```
Device(config)# no vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 30
Vlan 30 is successfully cleared from vlan group eng-dept.
Device(config)# show vlan group group-name eng-dept
```

This example shows how to clear all the VLAN groups:

```
Device(config)# no vlan group end-dept vlan-list all
Device(config)# show vlan-group all
```

For more information about these commands, see the Cisco IOS Security Command Reference.

### Configuring NAC Layer 2 802.1x Validation

You can configure NAC Layer 2 802.1x validation, which is also referred to as 802.1x authentication with a RADIUS server.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure NAC Layer 2 802.1x validation. The procedure is optional.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. switchport mode access
4. authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id
5. authentication periodic
6. authentication timer reauthenticate
7. end
8. show authentication sessions interface interface-id
9. copy running-config startup-config

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 2** | **interface interface-id**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/3  
  Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **switchport mode access**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# switchport mode access  
  Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server. |
| **Step 4** | **authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# authentication event no-response action authorize vlan 8  
  Specifies an active VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094.  
  You can configure any active VLAN except an internal VLAN (routed port), an RSPAN VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **authentication periodic**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# authentication periodic  
  Enables periodic re-authentication of the client, which is disabled by default. |
| **Step 6** | **authentication timer reauthenticate**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate  
  Sets re-authentication attempt for the client (set to one hour).  
  This command affects the behavior of the switch only if periodic re-authentication is enabled. |
| **Step 7** | **end**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# end  
  Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 8** | **show authentication sessions interface interface-id**  
  **Example:**  
  Device# show authentication sessions interface gigabitethernet2/0/3  
  Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 9** | **copy running-config startup-config**  
  **Example:**  
  (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |
Configuring an Authenticator Switch with NEAT

Configuring this feature requires that one switch outside a wiring closet is configured as a supplicant and is connected to an authenticator switch.

Note

- The authenticator switch interface configuration must be restored to access mode by explicitly flapping it if a line card is removed and inserted in the chassis when CISP or NEAT session is active.
- The `cisco-av-pairs` must be configured as `device-traffic-class=switch` on the ISE, which sets the interface as a trunk after the supplicant is successfully authenticated.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a switch as an authenticator:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `cisp enable`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `switchport mode access`
5. `authentication port-control auto`
6. `dot1x pae authenticator`
7. `spanning-tree portfast`
8. `end`
9. `show running-config interface interface-id`
10. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cisp enable</code></td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# cisp enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>interface interface-id</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</code>&lt;br&gt;Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>switchport mode access</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code>&lt;br&gt;Sets the port mode to <strong>access</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication port-control auto</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</code>&lt;br&gt;Sets the port-authentication mode to <strong>auto</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>dot1x pae authenticator</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</code>&lt;br&gt;Configures the interface as a port access entity (PAE) authenticator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><code>spanning-tree portfast</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast trunk</code>&lt;br&gt;Enables Port Fast on an access port connected to a single workstation or server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td><code>end</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device(config-if)# end</code>&lt;br&gt;Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td><code>show running-config interface interface-id</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: <code>Device# show running-config interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</code>&lt;br&gt;Verifies your configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code>&lt;br&gt;Example: (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring a Supplicant Switch with NEAT

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a switch as a supplicant:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. cisp enable
3. dot1x credentials profile
4. username suppswitch
5. password password
6. dot1x supplicant force-multicast
7. interface interface-id
8. switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
9. switchport mode trunk
10. dot1x pae supplicant
11. dot1x credentials profile-name
12. end
13. show running-config interface interface-id
14. copy running-config startup-config
15. Configuring NEAT with Auto Smartports Macros

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cisp enable</td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cisp enable</td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cisp enable</td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
Device(config)# cisp enable
```
### Purpose

**Step 3**

**Command or Action**: `dot1x credentials profile`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config)# dot1x credentials test
```

**Purpose**: Creates 802.1x credentials profile. This must be attached to the port that is configured as supplicant.

**Step 4**

**Command or Action**: `username suppswitch`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config)# username suppswitch
```

**Purpose**: Creates a username.

**Step 5**

**Command or Action**: `password password`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config)# password myswitch
```

**Purpose**: Creates a password for the new username.

**Step 6**

**Command or Action**: `dot1x supplicant force-multicast`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config)# dot1x supplicant force-multicast
```

**Purpose**: Forces the switch to send only multicast EAPOL packets when it receives either unicast or multicast packets. This also allows NEAT to work on the supplicant switch in all host modes.

**Step 7**

**Command or Action**: `interface interface-id`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
```

**Purpose**: Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.

**Step 8**

**Command or Action**: `switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
```

**Purpose**: Sets the port to trunk mode.

**Step 9**

**Command or Action**: `switchport mode trunk`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

**Purpose**: Configures the interface as a VLAN trunk port.

**Step 10**

**Command or Action**: `dot1x pae supplicant`  
**Example**:  
```
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae supplicant
```

**Purpose**: Configures the interface as a port access entity (PAE) supplicant.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 11</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dot1x credentials <em>profile-name</em></td>
<td>Attaches the 802.1x credentials profile to the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# dot1x credentials test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 13</td>
<td>show running-config interface <em>interface-id</em></td>
<td>Verifies your configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show running-config interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 14</td>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 15</td>
<td>Configuring NEAT with Auto Smartports Macros</td>
<td>You can also use an Auto Smartports user-defined macro instead of the switch VSA to configure the authenticator switch. For more information, see the <em>Auto Smartports Configuration Guide</em> for this release.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring 802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs

**Note**

You must configure a downloadable ACL on the ACS before downloading it to the switch.

After authentication on the port, you can use the `show ip access-list` privileged EXEC command to display the downloaded ACLs on the port.

**Configuring Downloadable ACLs**

The policies take effect after client authentication and the client IP address addition to the IP device tracking table. The switch then applies the downloadable ACL to the port.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode:
**Before you begin**

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to configuring 802.1x authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually. For more information, see the *Configuring SISF-Based Tracking* chapter.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `aaa new-model`
3. `aaa authorization network default local group radius`
4. `radius-server vsa send authentication`
5. `interface interface-id`
6. `ip access-group acl-id in`
7. `show running-config interface interface-id`
8. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Sets the authorization method to local. To remove the authorization method, use the <code>no aaa authorization network default local group radius</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa authorization network default local group radius</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization network default local group radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Configures the radius vsa send authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server vsa send authentication</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server vsa send authentication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ip access-group acl-id in</td>
<td>Configures the default ACL on the port in the input direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip access-group default_acl in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: The <strong>acl-id</strong> is an access list name or number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show running-config interface interface-id</td>
<td>Verifies your configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# show running-config interface gigabitethernet2/0/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring a Downloadable Policy**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode:

**Before you begin**

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to configuring 802.1x authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually.

For more information, see *Configuring SISF-Based Tracking*.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. access-list access-list-number { deny | permit } { hostname | any | host } log
3. interface interface-id
4. ip access-group acl-id in
5. exit
6. aaa new-model
7. aaa authorization network default group radius
8. radius-server vsa send authentication
9. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> access-list access-list-number { deny</td>
<td>permit } { hostname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# access-list 1 deny any log</td>
<td>The access-list-number is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The source is the source address of the network or host that sends a packet, such as this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• hostname: The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• any: The keyword any as an abbreviation for source and source wildcard value of 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source wildcard value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• host: The keyword host as an abbreviation for source and source wildcard of source 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Applies the source wildcard wildcard bits to the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Enters log to cause an informational logging message about the packet that matches the entry to be sent to the console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip access-group acl-id in</td>
<td>Configures the default ACL on the port in the input direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# ip access-group default_acl in</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The acl-id is an access list name or number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> exit</td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring VLAN ID-based MAC Authentication

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. mab request format attribute 32 vlan access-vlan
3. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mab request format attribute 32 vlan access-vlan</td>
<td>Enables VLAN ID-based MAC authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Flexible Authentication Ordering

The examples used in the instructions below change the order of Flexible Authentication Ordering so that MAB is attempted before IEEE 802.1X authentication (dot1x). MAB is configured as the first authentication method, so MAB will have priority over all other authentication methods.

**Note**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `switchport mode access`
4. `authentication order [ dot1x | mab ] | {webauth}`
5. `authentication priority [ dot1x | mab ] | {webauth}`
6. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** | Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| `interface interface-id` | |
| Example: | |
### Configuring Open1x

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable manual control of the port authorization state:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface interface-id
3. switchport mode access
4. authentication control-direction {both | in}
5. authentication fallback name
6. authentication host-mode [multi-auth | multi-domain | multi-host | single-host]
7. authentication open
8. authentication order [ dot1x | mab ] | {webauth}
9. authentication periodic
10. authentication port-control {auto | force-authorized | force-un authorized}
11. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong>&lt;br&gt;configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong>&lt;br&gt;interface interface-id&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong>&lt;br&gt;switchport mode access&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong>&lt;br&gt;authentication control-direction {both</td>
<td>in}&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-if)# authentication control-direction both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong>&lt;br&gt;authentication fallback name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-if)# authentication fallback profile1</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures a port to use web authentication as a fallback method for clients that do not support 802.1x authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong>&lt;br&gt;authentication host-mode [multi-auth</td>
<td>multi-domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong>&lt;br&gt;authentication open&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-if)# authentication open</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables or disable open access on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong>&lt;br&gt;authentication order [ dot1x</td>
<td>mab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disabling 802.1x Authentication on the Port

You can disable 802.1x authentication on the port by using the `no dot1x pae` interface configuration command. Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to disable 802.1x authentication on the port. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal  
2. interface interface-id  
3. switchport mode access  
4. no dot1x pae authenticator  
5. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Resetting the 802.1x Authentication Configuration to the Default Values

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to reset the 802.1x authentication configuration to the default values. This procedure is optional.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface interface-id`
3. `dot1x default`
4. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>switchport mode access</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>no dot1x pae authenticator</code></td>
<td>Disables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# no dot1x pae authenticator</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

### Monitoring 802.1x Statistics and Status

**Table 74: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show dot1x all statistics</code></td>
<td>Displays 802.1x statistics for all ports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show dot1x interface interface-id statistics</code></td>
<td>Displays 802.1x statistics for a specific port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`show dot1x all [count</td>
<td>details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show dot1x interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Displays the 802.1x administrative and operational status for a specific port</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 75: Global Configuration Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>no dot1x logging verbose</code></td>
<td>Filters verbose 802.1x authentication messages (beginning with Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For detailed information about the fields in these displays, see the command reference for this release.
Feature Information for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 76: Feature Information for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>IEEE 802.1x authentication prevents unauthorized devices (clients) from gaining access to the network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is automatically enabled when IEEE 802.1X authentication is configured for an access port, which allows the RADIUS server to send a VLAN assignment to the device port. This assignment configures the device port so that network access can be limited for certain users.

- Prerequisites for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 615
- Restrictions for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 616
- Information About IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 617
- How to Configure IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 617
- Configuration Example for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 621
- Additional References for IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Authentication, on page 622
- Feature Information for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 623

Prerequisites for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

The following tasks must be completed before implementing the IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature:

- IEEE 802.1X must be enabled on the device port.
- The device must have a RADIUS configuration and be connected to the Cisco secure access control server (ACS). You should understand the concepts of the RADIUS protocol and have an understanding of how to create and apply access control lists (ACLs).
- EAP support must be enabled on the RADIUS server.
- You must configure the IEEE 802.1X supplicant to send an EAP-logoff (Stop) message to the switch when the user logs off. If you do not configure the IEEE 802.1X supplicant, an EAP-logoff message is not sent to the switch and the accompanying accounting Stop message is not sent to the authentication server. See the Microsoft Knowledge Base article at the location http://support.microsoft.com and set the SupplicantMode registry to 3 and the AuthMode registry to 1.
- Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) must be configured on the port for all network-related service requests. The authentication method list must be enabled and specified. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user. See the IEEE 802.1X Authenticator feature module for information.
- The port must be successfully authenticated.
The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is available only on Cisco 89x and 88x series integrated switching routers (ISRs) that support switch ports.

The following ISR-G2 routers are supported:
- 1900
- 2900
- 3900
- 3900e

The following cards or modules support switch ports:
- Enhanced High-speed WAN interface cards (EHWICs) with ACL support:
  - EHWIC-4ESG-P
  - EHWIC-9ESG-P
  - EHWIC-4ESG
  - EHWIC-9ESG
- High-speed WAN interface cards (HWICs) without ACL support:
  - HWIC-4ESW-P
  - HWIC-9ESW-P
  - HWIC-4ESW
  - HWIC-9ES

Not all Cisco ISR routers support all the components listed. For information about module compatibility with a specific router platform, see Cisco EtherSwitch Modules Comparison.

To determine whether your router has switch ports, use the `show interfaces switchport` command.

**Restrictions for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment**

- The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is available only on a switch port.
- The device port is always assigned to the configured access VLAN when any of the following conditions occurs:
  - No VLAN is supplied by the RADIUS server.
  - The VLAN information from the RADIUS server is not valid.
  - IEEE 802.1X authentication is disabled on the port.
  - The port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state.
An access VLAN is a VLAN assigned to an access port. All packets sent from or received on this port belong to this VLAN.

- Assignment to the configured access VLAN prevents ports from appearing unexpectedly in an inappropriate VLAN because of a configuration error. Examples of configuration errors include the following:
  - A nonexistent or malformed VLAN ID
  - Attempted assignment to a voice VLAN ID
- When IEEE 802.1X authentication is enabled on a port, you cannot configure a port VLAN that is equal to a voice VLAN.
- If the multihost mode is enabled on an IEEE 802.1X port, all hosts are placed in the same VLAN (specified by the RADIUS server) as the first authenticated host.
- If an IEEE 802.1X port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect.
- This feature does not support standard ACLs on the switch port.

Information About IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

Configuring Authorization

The AAA authorization feature is used to determine what a user can and cannot do. When AAA authorization is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. Once this done, the user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

IEEE 802.1X Authentication with VLAN Assignment

In Cisco IOS Release 12.4(11)T and later releases, the device ports support IEEE 802.1X authentication with VLAN assignment. After successful IEEE 802.1X authentication of a port, the RADIUS server sends the VLAN assignment to configure the device port.

The RADIUS server database maintains the username-to-VLAN mappings, assigning the VLAN based on the username of the supplicant connected to the device port.

How to Configure IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the device uses information retrieved from the user's profile, which is in the local user database or on the security server,
to configure the user's session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated
5. aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated
6. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests. RADIUS authorization succeeds if the user has authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization if the user has privileged EXEC access. RADIUS authorization succeeds if the user has authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Enabling IEEE 802.1X Authentication and Authorization

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa authentication dot1x {default | listname} method1 [method2...]`
5. `dot1x system-auth-control`
6. `identity profile default`
7. `interface type slot/port`
8. `access-session port-control {auto | force-authorized | force-unauthorized}`
9. `dot1x pae [supplicant | authenticator | both]`
10. `end`
11. `show dot1x`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>`aaa authentication dot1x {default</td>
<td>listname} method1 [method2...]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>dot1x system-auth-control</code></td>
<td>Globally enables 802.1X port-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>identity profile default</code></td>
<td>Creates an identity profile and enters dot1x profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# identity profile default</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the interface to be enabled for 802.1X authentication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface type slot/port</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`access-session port-control {auto</td>
<td>force-authorized</td>
<td>force-unauthorized}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`dot1x pae [supplicant</td>
<td>authenticator</td>
<td>both]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 7

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# interface type slot/port
```

### Step 8

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# access-session port-control auto
```

#### Purpose

- **auto**—Enables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The Device requests the identity of the supplicant and begins relaying authentication messages between the supplicant and the authentication server. Each supplicant attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the Device by using the supplicant MAC address.

- **force-authorized**—Disables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without IEEE 802.1X-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting.

- **force-unauthorized**—Causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the supplicant to authenticate. The Device cannot provide authentication services to the supplicant through the port.

#### Note

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.2(33)SX1, the `authentication port-control` command replaces the `dot1xport-control` command.

### Step 9

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator
```

- **supplicant**—The interface acts only as a supplicant and does not respond to messages that are meant for an authenticator.

- **authenticator**—The interface acts only as an authenticator and does not respond to any messages meant for a supplicant.

- **both**—The interface behaves both as a supplicant and as an authenticator and thus does respond to all dot1x messages.

### Step 10

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)#end
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Displays whether 802.1X authentication has been configured on the device.</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11</td>
<td>show dot1x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show dot1x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying an Authorized VLAN in the RADIUS Server Database

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the device and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) allow vendors to support their own extended attributes not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option by using the format recommended in the specification.

- You must assign the following vendor-specific tunnel attributes in the RADIUS server database. The RADIUS server must return these attributes to the device:
  - [64] Tunnel-Type = VLAN
  - [65] Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802
  - [81] Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN name or VLAN ID

Attribute [64] must contain the value “VLAN” (type 13). Attribute [65] must contain the value “802” (type 6). Attribute [81] specifies the VLAN name or VLAN ID assigned to the IEEE 802.1X-authenticated user.

### Configuration Example for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

#### Example: Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment

The following example shows how to enable AAA Authorization for VLAN assignment:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# end
```

#### Example: Enabling 802.1X Authentication

The following example shows how to enable 802.1X authentication on a device:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius group radius
device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control
Device(config)# interface fastethernet 1
Device(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
```
The following `show dot1x` command output shows that 802.1X authentication has been configured on a device:

```
Device# show dot1x all
Sysauthcontrol   Enabled
Dot1x Protocol Version 2
Dot1x Info for FastEthernet1
-----------------------------------
PAE = AUTHENTICATOR
PortControl = AUTO
ControlDirection = Both
HostMode = MULTI_HOST
ReAuthentication = Enabled
QuietPeriod = 600
ServerTimeout = 60
SuppTimeout = 30
ReAuthPeriod = 1800 (Locally configured)
ReAuthMax = 2
MaxReq = 3
TxPeriod = 60
RateLimitPeriod = 60
```

Specifying an Authorized VLAN in the RADIUS Server Database

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the device and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) allow vendors to support their own extended attributes not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option by using the format recommended in the specification.

- You must assign the following vendor-specific tunnel attributes in the RADIUS server database. The RADIUS server must return these attributes to the device:
  - [64] Tunnel-Type = VLAN
  - [65] Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802
  - [81] Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN name or VLAN ID

Attribute [64] must contain the value “VLAN” (type 13). Attribute [65] must contain the value “802” (type 6). Attribute [81] specifies the VLAN name or VLAN ID assigned to the IEEE 802.1X-authenticated user.

Additional References for IEEE802.1X Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Topic</td>
<td>Document Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands A to C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands D to L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands M to R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands S to Z</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Standards and RFCs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1X</td>
<td><em>Port Based Network Access Control</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3580</td>
<td><em>IEEE 802.1X Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) Usage Guidelines</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MIBs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Cisco-PAE-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• IEEE8021-PAE-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Technical Assistance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature Information for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 77: Feature Information for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEEE Information for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is automatically enabled when IEEE 802.1X authentication is configured for an access port, which allows the RADIUS server to send a VLAN assignment to the device port. This assignment configures the device port so that network access can be limited for certain users. This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Web-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure web-based authentication on the device. It contains these sections:

- Web-Based Authentication Overview, on page 625
- How to Configure Web-Based Authentication, on page 634
- Monitoring Web-Based Authentication Status, on page 647

Web-Based Authentication Overview

Use the web-based authentication feature, known as web authentication proxy, to authenticate end users on host systems that do not run the IEEE 802.1x supplicant.

You can configure web-based authentication on Layer 2 and Layer 3 interfaces.

Note

When you initiate an HTTP session, web-based authentication intercepts ingress HTTP packets from the host and sends an HTML login page to the users. The users enter their credentials, which the web-based authentication feature sends to the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server for authentication.

If authentication succeeds, web-based authentication sends a Login-Successful HTML page to the host and applies the access policies returned by the AAA server.

If authentication fails, web-based authentication forwards a Login-Fail HTML page to the user, prompting the user to retry the login. If the user exceeds the maximum number of attempts, web-based authentication forwards a Login-Expired HTML page to the host, and the user is placed on a watch list for a waiting period.

Note

HTTPS traffic interception for central web authentication redirect is not supported.
You should use global parameter-map (for method-type, custom, and redirect) only for using the same web authentication methods like consent, web consent, and webauth, for all the clients and SSIDs. This ensures that all the clients have the same web-authentication method.

If the requirement is to use Consent for one SSID and Web-authentication for another SSID, then you should use two named parameter-maps. You should configure Consent in first parameter-map and configure webauth in second parameter-map.

The traceback that you receive when webauth client tries to do authentication does not have any performance or behavioral impact. It happens rarely when the context for which FFM replied back to EPM for ACL application is already dequeued (possibly due to timer expiry) and the session becomes ‘unauthorized’.

Based on where the web pages are hosted, the local web authentication can be categorized as follows:

- **Internal**—The internal default HTML pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) in the controller are used during the local web authentication.
- **Customized**—The customized web pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) are downloaded onto the controller and used during the local web authentication.
- **External**—The customized web pages are hosted on the external web server instead of using the in-built or custom web pages.

Based on the various web authentication pages, the types of web authentication are as follows:

- **Webauth**—This is a basic web authentication. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the user name and password. You need to enter the correct credentials to access the network.
- **Consent or web-passthrough**—Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the Accept or Deny buttons. You need to click the Accept button to access the network.
- **Webconsent**—This is a combination of webauth and consent web authentication types. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with Accept or Deny buttons along with username or password. You need to enter the correct credentials and click the Accept button to access the network.

**Device Roles**

With web-based authentication, the devices in the network have these specific roles:

- **Client**—The device (workstation) that requests access to the LAN and the services and responds to requests from the switch. The workstation must be running an HTML browser with JavaScript enabled.
- **Authentication server**—Authenticates the client. The authentication server validates the identity of the client and notifies the switch that the client is authorized to access the LAN and the switch services or that the client is denied.
- **Switch**—Controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the client. The switch acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the client and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the client, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the client.
Host Detection

The switch maintains an IP device tracking table to store information about detected hosts.

For Layer 2 interfaces, web-based authentication detects IP hosts by using these mechanisms:

- ARP based trigger—ARP redirect ACL allows web-based authentication to detect hosts with a static IP address or a dynamic IP address.
- Dynamic ARP inspection
- DHCP snooping—Web-based authentication is notified when the switch creates a DHCP-binding entry for the host.

Session Creation

When web-based authentication detects a new host, it creates a session as follows:

- Reviews the exception list.
  
  If the host IP is included in the exception list, the policy from the exception list entry is applied, and the session is established.
  
- Reviews for authorization bypass
  
  If the host IP is not on the exception list, web-based authentication sends a nonresponsive-host (NRH) request to the server.
  
  If the server response is access accepted, authorization is bypassed for this host. The session is established.
  
- Sets up the HTTP intercept ACL
  
  If the server response to the NRH request is access rejected, the HTTP intercept ACL is activated, and the session waits for HTTP traffic from the host.

Authentication Process

When you enable web-based authentication, these events occur:

- The user initiates an HTTP session.
• The HTTP traffic is intercepted, and authorization is initiated. The switch sends the login page to the user. The user enters a username and password, and the switch sends the entries to the authentication server.

• If the authentication succeeds, the switch downloads and activates the user’s access policy from the authentication server. The login success page is sent to the user.

• If the authentication fails, the switch sends the login fail page. The user retries the login. If the maximum number of attempts fails, the switch sends the login expired page, and the host is placed in a watch list. After the watch list times out, the user can retry the authentication process.

• If the authentication server does not respond to the switch, and if an AAA fail policy is configured, the switch applies the failure access policy to the host. The login success page is sent to the user.

• The switch reauthenticates a client when the host does not respond to an ARP probe on a Layer 2 interface, or when the host does not send any traffic within the idle timeout on a Layer 3 interface.

• The feature applies the downloaded timeout or the locally configured session timeout.

---

**Note**

Beginning with Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.1.1 and later, the default session timeout value for web-based authentication on WLC is 1800 seconds. The default session timeout value was infinite seconds, prior to Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.1.1.

• If the terminate action is RADIUS, the feature sends a nonresponsive host (NRH) request to the server. The terminate action is included in the response from the server.

• If the terminate action is default, the session is dismantled, and the applied policy is removed.

---

**Local Web Authentication Banner**

With Web Authentication, you can create a default and customized web-browser banners that appears when you log in to a switch.

The banner appears on both the login page and the authentication-result pop-up pages. The default banner messages are as follows:

- **Authentication Successful**
- **Authentication Failed**
- **Authentication Expired**

The Local Web Authentication Banner can be configured in legacy and new-style (Session-aware) CLIs as follows:

- Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http` global configuration command.
- New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type webauth global banner` global configuration command.

The default banner *Cisco Systems and Switch host-name Authentication* appear on the Login Page. *Cisco Systems* appears on the authentication result pop-up page.
The banner can be customized as follows:

- Add a message, such as switch, router, or company name to the banner:
  - Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http banner-text` global configuration command.
  - New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type webauth global banner` global configuration command.

- Add a logo or text file to the banner:
  - Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http file-path` global configuration command.
  - New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type webauth global banner` global configuration command.
If you do not enable a banner, only the username and password dialog boxes appear in the web authentication login screen, and no banner appears when you log into the switch.
Web Authentication Customizable Web Pages

During the web-based authentication process, the switch internal HTTP server hosts four HTML pages to deliver to an authenticating client. The server uses these pages to notify you of these four-authentication process states:

• Login—Your credentials are requested.
• Success—The login was successful.
• Fail—The login failed.
• Expire—The login session has expired because of excessive login failures.

Guidelines

• You can substitute your own HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages.
• You can use a logo or specify text in the login, success, failure, and expire web pages.
• On the banner page, you can specify text in the login page.
• The pages are in HTML.
• You must include an HTML redirect command in the success page to access a specific URL.
• The URL string must be a valid URL (for example, http://www.cisco.com). An incomplete URL might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.
• If you configure web pages for HTTP authentication, they must include the appropriate HTML commands (for example, to set the page time out, to set a hidden password, or to confirm that the same page is not submitted twice).
• The CLI command to redirect users to a specific URL is not available when the configured login form is enabled. The administrator should ensure that the redirection is configured in the web page.
• If the CLI command redirecting users to specific URL after authentication occurs is entered and then the command configuring web pages is entered, the CLI command redirecting users to a specific URL does not take effect.
• Configured web pages can be copied to the switch boot flash or flash.
• The login page can be on one flash, and the success and failure pages can be another flash (for example, the flash on the stack master or a member).
• You must configure all four pages.
• The banner page has no effect if it is configured with the web page.
• All of the logo files (image, flash, audio, video, and so on) that are stored in the system directory (for example, flash, disk0, or disk) and that must be displayed on the login page must use web_auth_<filename> as the file name.
• The configured authentication proxy feature supports both HTTP and SSL.

You can substitute your HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages. You can also specify a URL to which users are redirected after authentication occurs, which replaces the internal Success page.
Authentication Proxy Web Page Guidelines

When configuring customized authentication proxy web pages, follow these guidelines:

• To enable the custom web pages feature, specify all four custom HTML files. If you specify fewer than four files, the internal default HTML pages are used.

• The four custom HTML files must be present on the flash memory of the switch. The maximum size of each HTML file is 8 KB.

• Any images on the custom pages must be on an accessible HTTP server. Configure an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

• Any external link from a custom page requires configuration of an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

• To access a valid DNS server, any name resolution required for external links or images requires configuration of an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

• If the custom web pages feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used.

• If the custom web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL for successful login feature is not available.

• To remove the specification of a custom file, use the no form of the command.

Because the custom login page is a public web form, consider these guidelines for the page:

• The login form must accept user entries for the username and password and must show them as uname and pwd.

• The custom login page should follow best practices for a web form, such as page timeout, hidden password, and prevention of redundant submissions.
Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines

When configuring a redirection URL for successful login, consider these guidelines:

- If the custom authentication proxy web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL feature is disabled and is not available in the CLI. You can perform redirection in the custom-login success page.

- If the redirection URL feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used.

- To remove the specification of a redirection URL, use the **no** form of the command.

- If the redirection URL is required after the web-based authentication client is successfully authenticated, then the URL string must start with a valid URL (for example, http://) followed by the URL information. If only the URL is given without http://, then the redirection URL on successful authentication might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.

Web-based Authentication Interactions with Other Features

Port Security

You can configure web-based authentication and port security on the same port. Web-based authentication authenticates the port, and port security manages network access for all MAC addresses, including that of the client. You can then limit the number or group of clients that can access the network through the port.

LAN Port IP

You can configure LAN port IP (LPIP) and Layer 2 web-based authentication on the same port. The host is authenticated by using web-based authentication first, followed by LPIP posture validation. The LPIP host policy overrides the web-based authentication host policy.

If the web-based authentication idle timer expires, the NAC policy is removed. The host is authenticated, and posture is validated again.

Gateway IP

You cannot configure Gateway IP (GWIP) on a Layer 3 VLAN interface if web-based authentication is configured on any of the switch ports in the VLAN.

You can configure web-based authentication on the same Layer 3 interface as Gateway IP. The host policies for both features are applied in software. The GWIP policy overrides the web-based authentication host policy.

ACLs

If you configure a VLAN ACL or a Cisco IOS ACL on an interface, the ACL is applied to the host traffic only after the web-based authentication host policy is applied.

For Layer 2 web-based authentication, it is more secure, though not required, to configure a port ACL (PACL) as the default access policy for ingress traffic from hosts connected to the port. After authentication, the web-based authentication host policy overrides the PACL. The Policy ACL is applied to the session even if there is no ACL configured on the port.

You cannot configure a MAC ACL and web-based authentication on the same interface.

You cannot configure web-based authentication on a port whose access VLAN is configured for VACL capture.
Context-Based Access Control

Web-based authentication cannot be configured on a Layer 2 port if context-based access control (CBAC) is configured on the Layer 3 VLAN interface of the port VLAN.

EtherChannel

You can configure web-based authentication on a Layer 2 EtherChannel interface. The web-based authentication configuration applies to all member channels.

How to Configure Web-Based Authentication

Default Web-Based Authentication Configuration

The following table shows the default web-based authentication configuration.

Table 78: Default Web-based Authentication Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• IP address</td>
<td>• None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• UDP authentication port</td>
<td>• None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value of inactivity timeout</td>
<td>3600 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity timeout</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Web-Based Authentication Configuration Guidelines and Restrictions

• Web-based authentication is an ingress-only feature.

• You can configure web-based authentication only on access ports. Web-based authentication is not supported on trunk ports, EtherChannel member ports, or dynamic trunk ports.

• External web authentication, where the switch redirects a client to a particular host or web server for displaying login message, is not supported.

• You cannot authenticate hosts on Layer 2 interfaces with static ARP cache assignment. These hosts are not detected by the web-based authentication feature because they do not send ARP messages.

• You must enable SISF-Based device tracking to use web-based authentication. By default, SISF-Based device tracking is disabled on a switch.

• You must configure at least one IP address to run the switch HTTP server. You must also configure routes to reach each host IP address. The HTTP server sends the HTTP login page to the host.
• Hosts that are more than one hop away might experience traffic disruption if an STP topology change results in the host traffic arriving on a different port. This occurs because the ARP and DHCP updates might not be sent after a Layer 2 (STP) topology change.

• Web-based authentication does not support VLAN assignment as a downloadable-host policy.

• Web-based authentication and Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) are mutually exclusive. You cannot use web-based authentication when NEAT is enabled on an interface, and you cannot use NEAT when web-based authentication is running on an interface.

• Identify the following RADIUS security server settings that will be used while configuring switch-to-RADIUS-server communication:
  - Host name
  - Host IP address
  - Host name and specific UDP port numbers
  - IP address and specific UDP port numbers

The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, that enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service (for example, authentication) the second host entry that is configured functions as the failover backup to the first one. The RADIUS host entries are chosen in the order that they were configured.

• When you configure the RADIUS server parameters:
  - Specify the **key string** on a separate command line.
  - For **key string**, specify the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server.
  - When you specify the **key string**, use spaces within and at the end of the key. If you use spaces in the key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks are part of the key. This key must match the encryption used on the RADIUS daemon.
  - You can globally configure the timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values for all RADIUS servers by using with the **radius-server host** global configuration command. If you want to configure these options on a per-server basis, use the **radius-server timeout**, radius-server transmit, and the radius-server key global configuration commands.

  **Note** You need to configure some settings on the RADIUS server, including: the switch IP address, the key string to be shared by both the server and the switch, and the downloadable ACL (DACL). For more information, see the RADIUS server documentation.

• When you upgrade from IOS XE release 3.6.x and 3.7.x, ensure that you use **radius-server attribute wireless accounting call-station-id macaddress** command to configure mac-address. This is because the accounting default call-station-id is changed from mac-address to IP address from Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.x onwards.
Configuring the Authentication Rule and Interfaces

Follow these steps to configure the authentication rule and interfaces:

**Before you begin**

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to Web Authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually.

For more information, see Configuring SISF-Based Tracking.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip admission name name proxy http
4. interface type slot/port
5. ip access-group name
6. ip admission name
7. end
8. show ip admission
9. copy running-config startup-config

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip admission name name proxy http</td>
<td>Configures an authentication rule for web-based authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip admission name webauth1 proxy http</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the ingress Layer 2 or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Layer 3 interface to be enabled for web-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td>* type can be fastethernet, gigabit ethernet, or tengigabitethernet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring AAA Authentication

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa authentication login default group {tacacs+ | radius}`
5. `aaa authorization auth-proxy default group {tacacs+ | radius}`
6. `tacacs server server-name`
7. `address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address`
8. `key string`
9. `exit`
10. `end`
11. `show running-config`
12. `copy running-config startup-config`
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
- Enter your password if prompted.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device> `enable` |
| **Step 2** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device# `configure terminal` |
| **Step 3** | `aaa new-model` | Enables AAA functionality.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# `aaa new-model` |
| **Step 4** | `aaa authentication login default group {tacacs+ | radius}` | Defines the list of authentication methods at login.  
- `named_authorization_list` refers to any name that is not greater than 31 characters.  
- `AAA_group_name` refers to the server group name. You need to define the server-group `server_name` at the beginning itself.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# `aaa authentication login default group tacacs+` |
| **Step 5** | `aaa authorization auth-proxy default group {tacacs+ | radius}` | Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# `aaa authorization auth-proxy default group tacacs+` |
| **Step 6** | `tacacs server server-name` | Specifies an AAA server.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# `tacacs server yourserver` |
| **Step 7** | `address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address` | Configures the IP address for the TACACS server.  
  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-server-tacacs)# `address ipv4 10.0.1.12` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>key string</td>
<td>Configures the authorization and encryption key used between the switch and the TACACS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-server-tacacs)# key cisco123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits the TACACS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-server-tacacs)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication

Follow these steps to configure the RADIUS server parameters:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip radius source-interface
4. radius server  server name  
5. address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address  
6. key string  
7. exit  
8. radius-server dead-criteria tries num-tries  
9. end  

...
# DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  \* Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Example:**  
  Device> enable | |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:**  
  Device# configure terminal | |
| **Step 3** ip radius source-interface | Specifies that the RADIUS packets have the IP address of the indicated interface. |
| **Example:**  
  Device(config)# ip radius source-interface vlan 80 | |
| **Step 4** radius server server name | (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server. |
| **Example:**  
  Device(config)# radius server rsim address ipv4 124.2.2.12 | |
| **Step 5** address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address | Configures the IP address for the RADIUS server. |
| **Example:**  
  Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.2  
  auth-port 1550 acct-port 1560 | |
| **Step 6** key string | (Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. |
| **Example:**  
  Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123 | |
| **Step 7** exit | Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Example:**  
  Device(config-radius-server)# exit | |
Purpose

Command or Action | Purpose |
---|---|
**Step 8** | \texttt{radius-server dead-criteria tries \textit{num-tries}}
Example: | Specifies the number of unanswered sent messages to a RADIUS server before considering the server to be inactive. The range of \textit{num-tries} is 1 to 100. |
Device(config)# \texttt{radius-server dead-criteria tries 30} |
**Step 9** | \texttt{end}
Example: | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
Device(config)# \texttt{end} |

---

**Configuring the HTTP Server**

To use web-based authentication, you must enable the HTTP server within the Device. You can enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS.

\begin{itemize}
  \item The Apple pseudo-browser will not open if you configure only the \texttt{ip http secure-server} command. You should also configure the \texttt{ip http server} command.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{SUMMARY STEPS}

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip http server
4. ip http secure-server
5. end

\textbf{DETAILED STEPS}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; \texttt{enable}</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# \texttt{configure terminal}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Customizing the Authentication Proxy Web Pages

You can configure web authentication to display four substitute HTML pages to the user in place of the Device default HTML pages during web-based authentication.

Follow these steps to specify the use of your custom authentication proxy web pages:

**Before you begin**

Store your custom HTML files on the Device flash memory.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip admission proxy http login page file device:login-filename`
4. `ip admission proxy http success page file device:success-filename`
5. `ip admission proxy http failure page file device:fail-filename`
6. `ip admission proxy http login expired page file device:expired-filename`
7. `end`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

**Device:**

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

**Step 3**

**Device:**

**ip admission proxy http login page file**

device:login-filename

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip admission proxy http login page file disk1:login.htm

**Step 4**

**Device:**

**ip admission proxy http success page file**

device:success-filename

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip admission proxy http success page file disk1:success.htm

**Step 5**

**Device:**

**ip admission proxy http failure page file**

device:fail-filename

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip admission proxy http fail page file disk1:fail.htm

**Step 6**

**Device:**

**ip admission proxy http login expired page file**

device:expired-filename

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip admission proxy http login expired page file disk1:expired.htm

**Step 7**

**Device:**

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

Enters global configuration mode.

Specifies the location in the Device memory file system of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login page. The device: is flash memory.

Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login success page.

Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login failure page.

Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login expired page.

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Specifying a Redirection URL for Successful Login

Follow these steps to specify a URL to which the user is redirected after authentication, effectively replacing the internal Success HTML page:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip admission proxy http success redirect url-string
4. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Example:                     |         |
| Device# configure terminal   |         |

| **Step 3** ip admission proxy http success redirect url-string | Specifies a URL for redirection of the user in place of the default login success page. |
| Example: |         |
| Device(config)# ip admission proxy http success redirect www.example.com |         |

| **Step 4** end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| Example:       |         |
| Device(config)# end |         |

Configuring the Web-Based Authentication Parameters

Follow these steps to configure the maximum number of failed login attempts before the client is placed in a watch list for a waiting period:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. `ip admission max-login-attempts number`
4. `end`
5. `show running-config`
6. `copy running-config startup-config`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>ip admission max-login-attempts number</code></td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of failed login attempts. The range is 1 to 2147483647 attempts. The default is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# ip admission max-login-attempts 10</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>· Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring a Web-Based Authentication Local Banner

Follow these steps to configure a local banner on a switch that has web authentication configured.
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip admission auth-proxy-banner http [banner-text | file-path]
4. end
5. show running-config
6. copy running-config startup-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**
Device> enable |
| 2    | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device# configure terminal |
| 3    | ip admission auth-proxy-banner http [banner-text | file-path] | Enables the local banner.  
(Optional) Create a custom banner by entering C banner-text C (where C is a delimiting character), or file-path that indicates a file (for example, a logo or text file) that appears in the banner.  
**Example:**
Device(config)# ip admission auth-proxy-banner http C My Switch C |
| 4    | end               | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**
Device(config)# end |
| 5    | show running-config | Verifies your entries.  
**Example:**
Device# show running-config |
| 6    | copy running-config startup-config | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.  
**Example:**
Device# copy running-config startup-config |
Removing Web-Based Authentication Cache Entries

Follow these steps to remove web-based authentication cache entries:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `clear ip auth-proxy cache {* | host ip address}`
3. `clear ip admission cache {* | host ip address}`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Example:** Device> enable | |
| **Step 2** clear ip auth-proxy cache {* | host ip address} | Delete authentication proxy entries. Use an asterisk to delete all cache entries. Enter a specific IP address to delete the entry for a single host. |
| **Example:** Device# clear ip auth-proxy cache 192.168.4.5 | |
| **Step 3** clear ip admission cache {* | host ip address} | Delete authentication proxy entries. Use an asterisk to delete all cache entries. Enter a specific IP address to delete the entry for a single host. |
| **Example:** Device# clear ip admission cache 192.168.4.5 | |

**Monitoring Web-Based Authentication Status**

Use the commands in this topic to display the web-based authentication settings for all interfaces or for specific ports.

**Table 79: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show authentication sessions method webauth</code></td>
<td>Displays the web-based authentication settings for all interfaces for fastethernet, gigabitethernet, or tengigabitethernet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show authentication sessions interface type slot/port[details]</code></td>
<td>Displays the web-based authentication settings for the specified interface for fastethernet, gigabitethernet, or tengigabitethernet. In Session Aware Networking mode, use the <code>show access-session interface</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Web-Based Authentication Status
Overview of Port-Based Traffic Control

Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco Catalyst switches used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions. The following port-based traffic control features are supported:

- Storm Control
- Protected Ports
- Port Blocking
- Port Security

Information About Storm Control

Storm Control

Storm control prevents traffic on a LAN from being disrupted by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast storm on one of the physical interfaces. A LAN storm occurs when packets flood the LAN, creating excessive traffic and degrading network performance. Errors in the protocol-stack implementation, mistakes in network configurations, or users issuing a denial-of-service attack can cause a storm.

Storm control (or traffic suppression) monitors packets passing from an interface to the switching bus and determines if the packet is unicast, multicast, or broadcast. The switch counts the number of packets of a specified type received within the 1-second time interval and compares the measurement with a predefined suppression-level threshold.

How Traffic Activity is Measured

Storm control uses one of these methods to measure traffic activity:

- Bandwidth as a percentage of the total available bandwidth of the port that can be used by the broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic
- Traffic rate in packets per second at which broadcast, multicast, or unicast packets are received
• Traffic rate in bits per second at which broadcast, multicast, or unicast packets are received

With each method, the port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The port remains blocked until the traffic rate drops below the falling threshold (if one is specified) and then resumes normal forwarding. If the falling suppression level is not specified, the switch blocks all traffic until the traffic rate drops below the rising suppression level. In general, the higher the level, the less effective the protection against broadcast storms.

When the storm control threshold for multicast traffic is reached, all multicast traffic except control traffic, such as bridge protocol data unit (BDPU) and Cisco Discovery Protocol frames, are blocked. However, the switch does not differentiate between routing updates, such as OSPF, and regular multicast data traffic, so both types of traffic are blocked.

Traffic Patterns

Figure 37: Broadcast Storm Control Example

This example shows broadcast traffic patterns on an interface over a given period of time.

Broadcast traffic being forwarded exceeded the configured threshold between time intervals T1 and T2 and between T4 and T5. When the amount of specified traffic exceeds the threshold, all traffic of that kind is dropped for the next time period. Therefore, broadcast traffic is blocked during the intervals following T2 and T5. At the next time interval (for example, T3), if broadcast traffic does not exceed the threshold, it is again forwarded.

The combination of the storm-control suppression level and the 1-second time interval controls the way the storm control algorithm works. A higher threshold allows more packets to pass through. A threshold value of 100 percent means that no limit is placed on the traffic. A value of 0.0 means that all broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic on that port is blocked.

Because packets do not arrive at uniform intervals, the 1-second time interval during which traffic activity is measured can affect the behavior of storm control.

You use the storm-control interface configuration commands to set the threshold value for each traffic type.
How to Configure Storm Control

Configuring Storm Control and Threshold Levels

You configure storm control on a port and enter the threshold level that you want to be used for a particular type of traffic.

However, because of hardware limitations and the way in which packets of different sizes are counted, threshold percentages are approximations. Depending on the sizes of the packets making up the incoming traffic, the actual enforced threshold might differ from the configured level by several percentage points.

Note

Storm control is supported on physical interfaces. You can also configure storm control on an EtherChannel. When storm control is configured on an EtherChannel, the storm control settings propagate to the EtherChannel physical interfaces.

Follow these steps to storm control and threshold levels:

Before you begin

Storm control is supported on physical interfaces. You can also configure storm control on an EtherChannel. When storm control is configured on an EtherChannel, the storm control settings propagate to the EtherChannel physical interfaces.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. storm-control {broadcast | multicast | unicast} level {level [level-low] | bps bps [bps-low] | pps pps [pps-low]}
5. storm-control action {shutdown | trap}
6. end
7. show storm-control [interface-id] [broadcast | multicast | unicast]
8. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 3

**interface interface-id**

**Example:**

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1

#### Step 4

**storm-control {broadcast | multicast | unicast} level {level [level-low] | bps bps [bps-low] | pps pps [pps-low]}**

**Example:**

Device(config-if)# storm-control unicast level 87

**Purpose:** Configures broadcast, multicast, or unicast storm control.

By default, storm control is disabled.

The keywords have these meanings:

- For **level**, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic as a percentage (up to two decimal places) of the bandwidth. The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.00 to 100.00.

- (Optional) For **level-low**, specifies the falling threshold level as a percentage (up to two decimal places) of the bandwidth. This value must be less than or equal to the rising suppression value. The port forwards traffic when traffic drops below this level. If you do not configure a falling suppression level, it is set to the rising suppression level. The range is 0.00 to 100.00.

  If you set the threshold to the maximum value (100 percent), no limit is placed on the traffic. If you set the threshold to 0.0, all broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic on that port is blocked.

- For **bps bps**, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic in bits per second (up to one decimal place). The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.

  (Optional) For **bps-low**, specifies the falling threshold level in bits per second (up to one decimal place). It can be less than or equal to the rising threshold level. The port forwards traffic when traffic drops below this level. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.

- For **pps pps**, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic in packets per second (up to one decimal place). The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.

  (Optional) For **pps-low**, specifies the falling threshold level in packets per second (up to one decimal place). It can be less than or equal to the rising threshold level.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>storm-control action {shutdown</td>
<td>trap}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

Example:

```
Device(config-if)# storm-control action trap
```

Specifies the action to be taken when a storm is detected. The default is to filter out the traffic and not to send traps.

- Select the `shutdown` keyword to error-disable the port during a storm.
- Select the `trap` keyword to generate an SNMP trap when a storm is detected.

**Step 6**

Example:

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 7**

Example:

```
Device# show storm-control gigabitethernet1/0/1 unicast
```

Verifies the storm control suppression levels set on the interface for the specified traffic type. If you do not enter a traffic type, details for all traffic types (broadcast, multicast and unicast) are displayed.

**Step 8**

Example:

```
Device# copy running-config startup-config
```

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

**Information About Protected Ports**

**Protected Ports**

Some applications require that no traffic be forwarded at Layer 2 between ports on the same switch so that one neighbor does not see the traffic generated by another neighbor. In such an environment, the use of protected ports ensures that there is no exchange of unicast, broadcast, or multicast traffic between these ports on the switch.

Protected ports have these features:

- A protected port does not forward any traffic (unicast, multicast, or broadcast) to any other port that is also a protected port. Data traffic cannot be forwarded between protected ports at Layer 2; only control traffic, such as PIM packets, is forwarded because these packets are processed by the CPU and forwarded in software. All data traffic passing between protected ports must be forwarded through a Layer 3 device.
- Forwarding behavior between a protected port and a nonprotected port proceeds as usual.
Because a switch stack represents a single logical switch, Layer 2 traffic is not forwarded between any protected ports in the switch stack, whether they are on the same or different switches in the stack.

**Default Protected Port Configuration**

The default is to have no protected ports defined.

**Protected Ports Guidelines**

You can configure protected ports on a physical interface (for example, Gigabit Ethernet port 1) or an EtherChannel group (for example, port-channel 5). When you enable protected ports for a port channel, it is enabled for all ports in the port-channel group.

**How to Configure Protected Ports**

**Configuring a Protected Port**

**Before you begin**

Protected ports are not pre-defined. This is the task to configure one.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `switchport protected`
5. `end`
6. `show interfaces interface-id switchport`
7. `show running-config`
8. `copy running-config startup-config`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>interface interface-id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>switchport protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport protected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Configures the interface to be a protected port.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>show interfaces interface-id switchport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show interfaces gigabitethernet 1/0/1 switchport</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Verifies your entries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>show running-config</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Verifies your entries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>copy running-config startup-config</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

### Monitoring Protected Ports

**Table 80: Commands for Displaying Protected Port Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show interfaces [interface-id] switchport</td>
<td>Displays the administrative and operational status of all switching (nonrouting) ports or the specified port, including port blocking and port protection settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information About Port Blocking

Port Blocking

By default, the switch floods packets with unknown destination MAC addresses out of all ports. If unknown unicast and multicast traffic is forwarded to a protected port, there could be security issues. To prevent unknown unicast or multicast traffic from being forwarded from one port to another, you can block a port (protected or nonprotected) from flooding unknown unicast or multicast packets to other ports.

Note

With multicast traffic, the port blocking feature blocks only pure Layer 2 packets. Multicast packets that contain IPv4 or IPv6 information in the header are not blocked.

How to Configure Port Blocking

Blocking Flooded Traffic on an Interface

Before you begin

The interface can be a physical interface or an EtherChannel group. When you block multicast or unicast traffic for a port channel, it is blocked on all ports in the port-channel group.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. switchport block multicast
5. switchport block unicast
6. end
7. show interfaces interface-id switchport
8. show running-config
9. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable<br>Example: Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Enter your password if prompted. |
<p>| Step 2 | configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: | Enters global configuration mode. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport block multicast</td>
<td>Blocks unknown multicast forwarding out of the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport block multicast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport block unicast</td>
<td>Blocks unknown unicast forwarding out of the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport block unicast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show interfaces interface-id switchport</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show interfaces gigabitethernet 1/0/1 switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Monitoring Port Blocking**

**Table 8.1: Commands for Displaying Port Blocking Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show interfaces [interface-id] switchport</code></td>
<td>Displays the administrative and operational status of all switching (nonrouting) ports or the specified port, including port blocking and port protection settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prerequisites for Port Security**

Note: If you try to set the maximum value to a number less than the number of secure addresses already configured on an interface, the command is rejected.

**Restrictions for Port Security**

The maximum number of secure MAC addresses that you can configure on a switch is set by the maximum number of available MAC addresses allowed in the system. This number is the total of available MAC addresses, including those used for other Layer 2 functions and any other secure MAC addresses configured on interfaces.

**Information About Port Security**

**Port Security**

You can use the port security feature to restrict input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port. When you assign secure MAC addresses to a secure port, the port does not forward packets with source addresses outside the group of defined addresses. If you limit the number of secure MAC addresses to one and assign a single secure MAC address, the workstation attached to that port is assured the full bandwidth of the port.

If a port is configured as a secure port and the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is reached, when the MAC address of a station attempting to access the port is different from any of the identified secure MAC addresses, a security violation occurs. Also, if a station with a secure MAC address configured or learned on one secure port attempts to access another secure port, a violation is flagged.

**Types of Secure MAC Addresses**

The switch supports these types of secure MAC addresses:

- Static secure MAC addresses—These are manually configured by using the `switchport port-security mac-address mac-address` interface configuration command, stored in the address table, and added to the switch running configuration.
• Dynamic secure MAC addresses—These are dynamically configured, stored only in the address table, and removed when the switch restarts.

• Sticky secure MAC addresses—These can be dynamically learned or manually configured, stored in the address table, and added to the running configuration. If these addresses are saved in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to dynamically reconfigure them.

Sticky Secure MAC Addresses

You can configure an interface to convert the dynamic MAC addresses to sticky secure MAC addresses and to add them to the running configuration by enabling sticky learning. The interface converts all the dynamic secure MAC addresses, including those that were dynamically learned before sticky learning was enabled, to sticky secure MAC addresses. All sticky secure MAC addresses are added to the running configuration.

The sticky secure MAC addresses do not automatically become part of the configuration file, which is the startup configuration used each time the switch restarts. If you save the sticky secure MAC addresses in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to relearn these addresses. If you do not save the sticky secure addresses, they are lost.

If sticky learning is disabled, the sticky secure MAC addresses are converted to dynamic secure addresses and are removed from the running configuration.

Security Violations

It is a security violation when one of these situations occurs:

• The maximum number of secure MAC addresses have been added to the address table, and a station whose MAC address is not in the address table attempts to access the interface.

• An address learned or configured on one secure interface is seen on another secure interface in the same VLAN.

• Running diagnostic tests with port security enabled.

You can configure the interface for one of three violation modes, based on the action to be taken if a violation occurs:

• protect—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred.

We do not recommend configuring the protect violation mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit.

• restrict—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. In this mode, you are notified that a security violation has occurred. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.
• shutdown—a port security violation causes the interface to become error-disabled and to shut down immediately, and the port LED turns off. When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation global configuration command, or you can manually re-enable it by entering the shutdown and no shutdown interface configuration commands. This is the default mode.

• shutdown vlan—Use to set the security violation mode per-VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.

This table shows the violation mode and the actions taken when you configure an interface for port security.

Table 82: Security Violation Mode Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Violation Mode</th>
<th>Traffic is forwarded</th>
<th>Sends SNMP trap</th>
<th>Sends syslog message</th>
<th>Displays error message</th>
<th>Violation counter increments</th>
<th>Shuts down port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>protect</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restrict</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown vlan</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 Packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses.
13 The switch returns an error message if you manually configure an address that would cause a security violation.
14 Shuts down only the VLAN on which the violation occurred.

**Port Security Aging**

You can use port security aging to set the aging time for all secure addresses on a port. Two types of aging are supported per port:

• Absolute—The secure addresses on the port are deleted after the specified aging time.

• Inactivity—The secure addresses on the port are deleted only if the secure addresses are inactive for the specified aging time.

**Port Security and Switch Stacks**

When a switch joins a stack, the new switch will get the configured secure addresses. All dynamic secure addresses are downloaded by the new stack member from the other stack members.

When a switch (either the active switch or a stack member) leaves the stack, the remaining stack members are notified, and the secure MAC addresses configured or learned by that switch are deleted from the secure MAC address table.
Default Port Security Configuration

Table 83: Default Port Security Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port security</td>
<td>Disabled on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sticky address learning</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of secure MAC addresses per port</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Violation mode</td>
<td>Shutdown. The port shuts down when the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port security aging</td>
<td>Disabled. Aging time is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Static aging is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type is absolute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Port Security Configuration Guidelines

- Port security can only be configured on static access ports or trunk ports. A secure port cannot be a dynamic access port.

- A secure port cannot be a destination port for Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN).

- When you enable port security on an interface that is also configured with a voice VLAN, set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two. When the port is connected to a Cisco IP phone, the IP phone requires one MAC address. The Cisco IP phone address is learned on the voice VLAN, but is not learned on the access VLAN. If you connect a single PC to the Cisco IP phone, no additional MAC addresses are required. If you connect more than one PC to the Cisco IP phone, you must configure enough secure addresses to allow one for each PC and one for the phone.

- When a trunk port configured with port security and assigned to an access VLAN for data traffic and to a voice VLAN for voice traffic, entering the `switchport voice` and `switchport priority extend` interface configuration commands has no effect.

- When a connected device uses the same MAC address to request an IP address for the access VLAN and then an IP address for the voice VLAN, only the access VLAN is assigned an IP address.

- When you enter a maximum secure address value for an interface, and the new value is greater than the previous value, the new value overwrites the previously configured value. If the new value is less than the previous value and the number of configured secure addresses on the interface exceeds the new value, the command is rejected.

- The switch does not support port security aging of sticky secure MAC addresses.
This table summarizes port security compatibility with other port-based features.

### Table 84: Port Security Compatibility with Other Switch Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Port or Feature on Port</th>
<th>Compatible with Port Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTP 15 port 16</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic-access port 17</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routed port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN source port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN destination port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtherChannel</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunneling port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1x port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice VLAN port 18</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP source guard</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flex Links</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15 DTP = Dynamic Trunking Protocol  
16 A port configured with the `switchport mode dynamic` interface configuration command.  
17 A VLAN Query Protocol (VQP) port configured with the `switchport access vlan dynamic` interface configuration command.  
18 You must set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two plus the maximum number of secure addresses allowed on the access VLAN.

### Port-Based Traffic Control

Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco devices used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions. The following port-based traffic control features are supported:

- Storm Control
- Protected Ports
- Port Blocking
How to Configure Port Security

Enabling and Configuring Port Security

Before you begin

This task restricts input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id
4. switchport mode {access | trunk}
5. switchport voice vlan vlan-id
6. switchport port-security
7. switchport port-security [maximum value [vlan {vlan-list | {access | voice}}]]
8. switchport port-security violation {protect | restrict | shutdown | shutdown vlan}
9. switchport port-security [mac-address mac-address {vlan vlan-id | {access | voice}}]
10. switchport port-security mac-address sticky
11. switchport port-security mac-address sticky [mac-address | vlan {vlan-id | {access | voice}}]
12. end
13. show port-security
14. show running-config
15. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> &lt;br&gt; `switchport mode {access</td>
<td>trunk}<code>&lt;br&gt; Example: &lt;br&gt; Device(config-if)#</code>switchport mode access`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> &lt;br&gt; <code>switchport voice vlan vlan-id</code> &lt;br&gt; Example: &lt;br&gt; Device(config-if)# <code>switchport voice vlan 22</code></td>
<td>Enables voice VLAN on a port. &lt;br&gt; vlan-id—Specifies the VLAN to be used for voice traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> &lt;br&gt; <code>switchport port-security</code> &lt;br&gt; Example: &lt;br&gt; Device(config-if)# <code>switchport port-security</code></td>
<td>Enable port security on the interface. &lt;br&gt; <strong>Note</strong> Under certain conditions, when port security is enabled on the member ports in a switch stack, the DHCP and ARP packets would be dropped. To resolve this, configure a shut and no shut on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> &lt;br&gt; `switchport port-security [maximum value [vlan {vlan-list</td>
<td>{access</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Port-Based Traffic Control

#### Step 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`switchport port-security violation {protect</td>
<td>restrict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>protect</strong>—When the number of port secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>restrict</strong>—When the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>shutdown</strong>—The interface is error-disabled when a violation occurs, and the port LED turns off. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>shutdown vlan</strong>—Use to set the security violation mode per VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

We do not recommend configuring the protect mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit.

**Note**

When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the `errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation` global configuration command. You can manually re-enable it by entering the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` interface configuration commands or by using the `clear errdisable interface vlan` privileged EXEC command.

#### Step 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`switchport port-security [mac-address mac-address [vlan {vlan-id</td>
<td>{access</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security violation restrict
```
### Command or Action

```
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
mac-address 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan 3 voice
```

### Purpose

MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned.

**Note** If you enable sticky learning after you enter this command, the secure addresses that were dynamically learned are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses and are added to the running configuration.

(Optional) `vlan`—sets a per-VLAN maximum value.

Enter one of these options after you enter the `vlan` keyword:

- `vlan-id`—On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If you do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used.
- `access`—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN.
- `voice`—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN.

**Note** The `voice` keyword is available only if a voice VLAN is configured on a port and if that port is not the access VLAN. If an interface is configured for voice VLAN, configure a maximum of two secure MAC addresses.

### Step 10

**switchport port-security mac-address sticky**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
mac-address sticky
```

(Optional) Enables sticky learning on the interface.

### Step 11

**switchport port-security mac-address sticky**

```
[mac-address | vlan {vlan-id | (access | voice)}]
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
mac-address sticky 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan voice
```

(Optional) Enters a sticky secure MAC address, repeating the command as many times as necessary. If you configure fewer secure MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned, are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses, and are added to the running configuration.

**Note** If you do not enable sticky learning before this command is entered, an error message appears, and you cannot enter a sticky secure MAC address.

(Optional) `vlan`—sets a per-VLAN maximum value.

Enter one of these options after you enter the `vlan` keyword:
### Configuring Port-Based Traffic Control

**Enabling and Configuring Port Security Aging**

Use this feature to remove and add devices on a secure port without manually deleting the existing secure MAC addresses and to still limit the number of secure addresses on a port. You can enable or disable the aging of secure addresses on a per-port basis.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface interface-id

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• vlan-id — On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If you do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• access — On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• voice — On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The voice keyword is available only if a voice VLAN is configured on a port and if that port is not the access VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 12** end

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

**Step 13** show port-security

**Example:**

Device# show port-security

**Step 14** show running-config

**Example:**

Device# show running-config

**Step 15** copy running-config startup-config

**Example:**

Device# copy running-config startup-config

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.
4. \texttt{switchport port-security aging \{static | time time | type \{absolute | inactivity\}\}}

5. \texttt{end}

6. \texttt{show port-security [interface interface-id] [address]}

7. \texttt{show running-config}

8. \texttt{copy running-config startup-config}

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: \texttt{Device&gt; enable}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: \texttt{Device# configure terminal}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: \texttt{Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport port-security aging {static</td>
<td>time time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: \texttt{Device(config-if)# switchport port-security aging time 120}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** The switch does not support port security aging of sticky secure addresses.

Enter \texttt{static} to enable aging for statically configured secure addresses on this port.

For \texttt{time}, specifies the aging time for this port. The valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes.

For \texttt{type}, select one of these keywords:

- \texttt{absolute}—Sets the aging type as absolute aging. All the secure addresses on this port age out exactly after the time (minutes) specified lapses and are removed from the secure address list.

- \texttt{inactivity}—Sets the aging type as inactivity aging. The secure addresses on this port age out only if there is no data traffic from the secure source addresses for the specified time period.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>show port-security [interface interface-id] [address]</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# show port-security interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# show running-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples for Port Security

This example shows how to enable port security on a port and to set the maximum number of secure addresses to 50. The violation mode is the default, no static secure MAC addresses are configured, and sticky learning is enabled.

```plaintext
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 50
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
```

This example shows how to configure a static secure MAC address on VLAN 3 on a port:

```plaintext
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0200.0004 vlan 3
```

This example shows how to enable sticky port security on a port, to manually configure MAC addresses for data VLAN and voice VLAN, and to set the total maximum number of secure addresses to 20 (10 for data VLAN and 10 for voice VLAN).

```plaintext
Device(config)# interface tengigabitethernet1/0/1
```

---

```
Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
```
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 21
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 22
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 20
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security violation restrict
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0002
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0003
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0001 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0004 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan voice

Additional References for Port-Based Traffic Control

**MIBs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Technical Assistance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature Information for Port-Based Traffic Control**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco Catalyst switches used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port-Based Traffic Control</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco Catalyst switches used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Port Security

- Prerequisites for Port Security, on page 673
- Restrictions for Port Security, on page 673
- Information About Port Security, on page 673
- Default Port Security Configuration, on page 676
- Port Security Configuration Guidelines, on page 676
- Port-Based Traffic Control, on page 678
- How to Configure Port Security, on page 678
- Configuration Examples for Port Security, on page 685

Prerequisites for Port Security

If you try to set the maximum value to a number less than the number of secure addresses already configured on an interface, the command is rejected.

Restrictions for Port Security

The maximum number of secure MAC addresses that you can configure on a switch is set by the maximum number of available MAC addresses allowed in the system. This number is the total of available MAC addresses, including those used for other Layer 2 functions and any other secure MAC addresses configured on interfaces.

Information About Port Security

Port Security

You can use the port security feature to restrict input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port. When you assign secure MAC addresses to a secure port, the port
does not forward packets with source addresses outside the group of defined addresses. If you limit the number of secure MAC addresses to one and assign a single secure MAC address, the workstation attached to that port is assured the full bandwidth of the port.

If a port is configured as a secure port and the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is reached, when the MAC address of a station attempting to access the port is different from any of the identified secure MAC addresses, a security violation occurs. Also, if a station with a secure MAC address configured or learned on one secure port attempts to access another secure port, a violation is flagged.

Types of Secure MAC Addresses

The switch supports these types of secure MAC addresses:

- Static secure MAC addresses—These are manually configured by using the `switchport port-security mac-address mac-address` interface configuration command, stored in the address table, and added to the switch running configuration.

- Dynamic secure MAC addresses—These are dynamically configured, stored only in the address table, and removed when the switch restarts.

- Sticky secure MAC addresses—These can be dynamically learned or manually configured, stored in the address table, and added to the running configuration. If these addresses are saved in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to dynamically reconfigure them.

Sticky Secure MAC Addresses

You can configure an interface to convert the dynamic MAC addresses to sticky secure MAC addresses and to add them to the running configuration by enabling sticky learning. The interface converts all the dynamic secure MAC addresses, including those that were dynamically learned before sticky learning was enabled, to sticky secure MAC addresses. All sticky secure MAC addresses are added to the running configuration.

The sticky secure MAC addresses do not automatically become part of the configuration file, which is the startup configuration used each time the switch restarts. If you save the sticky secure MAC addresses in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to relearn these addresses. If you do not save the sticky secure addresses, they are lost.

If sticky learning is disabled, the sticky secure MAC addresses are converted to dynamic secure addresses and are removed from the running configuration.

Security Violations

It is a security violation when one of these situations occurs:

- The maximum number of secure MAC addresses have been added to the address table, and a station whose MAC address is not in the address table attempts to access the interface.

- An address learned or configured on one secure interface is seen on another secure interface in the same VLAN.

- Running diagnostic tests with port security enabled.

You can configure the interface for one of three violation modes, based on the action to be taken if a violation occurs:
• protect—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred.

Note: We do not recommend configuring the protect violation mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit.

• restrict—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. In this mode, you are notified that a security violation has occurred. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.

• shutdown—a port security violation causes the interface to become error-disabled and to shut down immediately, and the port LED turns off. When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the `errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation` global configuration command, or you can manually re-enable it by entering the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` interface configuration commands. This is the default mode.

• shutdown vlan—Use to set the security violation mode per-VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.

This table shows the violation mode and the actions taken when you configure an interface for port security.

Table 86: Security Violation Mode Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Violation Mode</th>
<th>Traffic is forwarded</th>
<th>Sends SNMP trap</th>
<th>Sends syslog message</th>
<th>Displays error message</th>
<th>Violation counter increments</th>
<th>Shuts down port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>protect</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restrict</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown vlan</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19 Packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses.

20 The switch returns an error message if you manually configure an address that would cause a security violation.

21 Shuts down only the VLAN on which the violation occurred.
Port Security Aging

You can use port security aging to set the aging time for all secure addresses on a port. Two types of aging are supported per port:

- Absolute—The secure addresses on the port are deleted after the specified aging time.
- Inactivity—The secure addresses on the port are deleted only if the secure addresses are inactive for the specified aging time.

Port Security and Switch Stacks

When a switch joins a stack, the new switch will get the configured secure addresses. All dynamic secure addresses are downloaded by the new stack member from the other stack members.

When a switch (either the active switch or a stack member) leaves the stack, the remaining stack members are notified, and the secure MAC addresses configured or learned by that switch are deleted from the secure MAC address table.

Default Port Security Configuration

Table 87: Default Port Security Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port security</td>
<td>Disabled on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sticky address learning</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of secure MAC addresses per port</td>
<td>One address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Violation mode</td>
<td>Shutdown. The port shuts down when the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port security aging</td>
<td>Disabled. Aging time is 0. Static aging is disabled. Type is absolute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Port Security Configuration Guidelines

- Port security can only be configured on static access ports or trunk ports. A secure port cannot be a dynamic access port.
- A secure port cannot be a destination port for Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN).
Voice VLAN is only supported on access ports and not on trunk ports, even though the configuration is allowed.

- When you enable port security on an interface that is also configured with a voice VLAN, set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two. When the port is connected to a Cisco IP phone, the IP phone requires one MAC address. The Cisco IP phone address is learned on the voice VLAN, but is not learned on the access VLAN. If you connect a single PC to the Cisco IP phone, no additional MAC addresses are required. If you connect more than one PC to the Cisco IP phone, you must configure enough secure addresses to allow one for each PC and one for the phone.

- When a trunk port configured with port security and assigned to an access VLAN for data traffic and to a voice VLAN for voice traffic, entering the switchport voice and switchport priority extend interface configuration commands has no effect.

  When a connected device uses the same MAC address to request an IP address for the access VLAN and then an IP address for the voice VLAN, only the access VLAN is assigned an IP address.

- When you enter a maximum secure address value for an interface, and the new value is greater than the previous value, the new value overwrites the previously configured value. If the new value is less than the previous value and the number of configured secure addresses on the interface exceeds the new value, the command is rejected.

- The switch does not support port security aging of sticky secure MAC addresses.

This table summarizes port security compatibility with other port-based features.

### Table 88: Port Security Compatibility with Other Switch Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Port or Feature on Port</th>
<th>Compatible with Port Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTP 22 port 23</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic-access port 24</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routed port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN source port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN destination port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtherChannel</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunneling port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1x port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice VLAN port 22</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP source guard</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Type of Port or Feature on Port | Compatible with Port Security
---|---
Dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection | Yes
Flex Links | Yes

---

22 DTP = Dynamic Trunking Protocol
23 A port configured with the `switchport mode dynamic` interface configuration command.
24 A VLAN Query Protocol (VQP) port configured with the `switchport access vlan dynamic` interface configuration command.
25 You must set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two plus the maximum number of secure addresses allowed on the access VLAN.

### Port-Based Traffic Control

Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco devices used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions. The following port-based traffic control features are supported:

- Storm Control
- Protected Ports
- Port Blocking

### How to Configure Port Security

#### Enabling and Configuring Port Security

**Before you begin**

This task restricts input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `switchport mode {access | trunk}`
5. `switchport voice vlan vlan-id`
6. `switchport port-security`
7. `switchport port-security [maximum value vlan {vlan-list | {access | voice}}]`
8. `switchport port-security violation {protect | restrict | shutdown | shutdown vlan}`
9. `switchport port-security [mac-address mac-address vlan {vlan-id | {access | voice}}]`
10. `switchport port-security mac-address sticky`
11. `switchport port-security mac-address sticky [mac-address | vlan {vlan-id | {access | voice}}]`
12. `end`
13. `show port-security`
14. `show running-config`
15. `copy running-config startup-config`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport mode {access</td>
<td>trunk}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport voice vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Enables voice VLAN on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 22</code></td>
<td>vlan-id—Specifies the VLAN to be used for voice traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> switchport port-security</td>
<td>Enable port security on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport port-security</code></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Under certain conditions, when port security is enabled on the member ports in a switch stack, the DHCP and ARP packets would be dropped. To resolve this, configure a shut and no shut on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> switchport port-security [maximum value [vlan {vlan-list</td>
<td>{access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>or switch stack is set by the maximum number of available MAC addresses allowed in the system. This number is the total of available MAC addresses, including those used for other Layer 2 functions and any other secure MAC addresses configured on interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 20` | (Optional) **vlan**—sets a per-VLAN maximum value  
| | Enter one of these options after you enter the **vlan** keyword: |
| | • **vlan-list**—On a trunk port, you can set a per-VLAN maximum value on a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen or a series of VLANs separated by commas. For nonspecified VLANs, the per-VLAN maximum value is used. |
| | • **access**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN. |
| | • **voice**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN. |
| **Note** | The **voice** keyword is available only if a voice VLAN is configured on a port and if that port is not the access VLAN. If an interface is configured for voice VLAN, configure a maximum of two secure MAC addresses. |
| **Step 8** | (Optional) Sets the violation mode, the action to be taken when a security violation is detected, as one of these: |
| **Example:** | • **protect**—When the number of port secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred. |
| `Device(config-if)# switchport port-security violation {protect | restrict | shutdown | shutdown vlan}` | • **restrict**—When the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses or increase the number of maximum allowable |
| **Note** | We do not recommend configuring the protect mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit. |
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| switchport port-security [mac-address mac-address [vlan {vlan-id | {access | voice}}]] | (Optional) Enters a secure MAC address for the interface. You can use this command to enter the maximum number of secure MAC addresses. If you configure fewer secure MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned. **Note** If you enable sticky learning after you enter this command, the secure addresses that were dynamically learned are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses and are added to the running configuration. (Optional) **vlan**—sets a per-VLAN maximum value. Enter one of these options after you enter the **vlan** keyword:

- **vlan-id**—On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If you do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used.
- **access**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN.
- **voice**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN. |

- **shutdown**—The interface is error-disabled when a violation occurs, and the port LED turns off. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.

- **shutdown vlan**—Use to set the security violation mode per VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.

**Note** When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the **errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation** global configuration command. You can manually re-enable it by entering the **shutdown** and **no shutdown** interface configuration commands or by using the **clear errdisable interface vlan** privileged EXEC command.

---

**Step 9**

Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan 3 voice
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong>: switchport port-security mac-address sticky&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables sticky learning on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong>: switchport port-security mac-address sticky&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan voice</td>
<td>(Optional) Enters a sticky secure MAC address, repeating the command as many times as necessary. If you configure fewer secure MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned, are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses, and are added to the running configuration. &lt;br&gt;<strong>Note</strong> If you do not enable sticky learning before this command is entered, an error message appears, and you cannot enter a sticky secure MAC address. &lt;br&gt;(Optional) <strong>vlan</strong>—sets a per-VLAN maximum value. &lt;br&gt;Enter one of these options after you enter the <strong>vlan</strong> keyword: &lt;br&gt;• <strong>vlan-id</strong>—On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If you do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used. &lt;br&gt;• <strong>access</strong>—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN. &lt;br&gt;• <strong>voice</strong>—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN. &lt;br&gt;<strong>Note</strong> The <strong>voice</strong> keyword is available only if a voice VLAN is configured on a port and that port is not the access VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong>: end&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong>: show port-security&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Verifies your entries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Enabling and Configuring Port Security Aging

Use this feature to remove and add devices on a secure port without manually deleting the existing secure MAC addresses and to still limit the number of secure addresses on a port. You can enable or disable the aging of secure addresses on a per-port basis.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface interface-id`
4. `switchport port-security aging {static | time time | type {absolute | inactivity}}`
5. `end`
6. `show port-security [interface interface-id] [address]`
7. `show running-config`
8. `copy running-config startup-config`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example:&lt;br&gt;Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example:&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** | **interface interface-id**
  Example:
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1 |
| | Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **switchport port-security aging** \{static | time time | type \{absolute | inactivity\}\}  
  Example:
  Device(config-if)# switchport port-security aging time 120 |
| | Enables or disable static aging for the secure port, or set the aging time or type.  
  **Note** The switch does not support port security aging of sticky secure addresses.  
  Enter **static** to enable aging for statically configured secure addresses on this port.  
  For **time**, specifies the aging time for this port. The valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes.  
  For **type**, select one of these keywords:  
  - **absolute**—Sets the aging type as absolute aging. All the secure addresses on this port age out exactly after the time (minutes) specified lapses and are removed from the secure address list.  
  - **inactivity**—Sets the aging type as inactivity aging. The secure addresses on this port age out only if there is no data traffic from the secure source addresses for the specified time period. |
| **Step 5** | **end**  
  Example:
  Device(config)# end |
| | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 6** | **show port-security** \[interface interface-id\] \[address\]  
  Example:
  Device# show port-security interface gigabitethernet1/0/1 |
| | Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 7** | **show running-config**  
  Example:
  Device# show running-config |
| | Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 8** | **copy running-config startup-config**  
  Example: |
| | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |
Configuration Examples for Port Security

This example shows how to enable port security on a port and to set the maximum number of secure addresses to 50. The violation mode is the default, no static secure MAC addresses are configured, and sticky learning is enabled.

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 50
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
```

This example shows how to configure a static secure MAC address on VLAN 3 on a port:

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0200.0004 vlan 3
```

This example shows how to enable sticky port security on a port, to manually configure MAC addresses for data VLAN and voice VLAN, and to set the total maximum number of secure addresses to 20 (10 for data VLAN and 10 for voice VLAN).

```
Device(config)# interface tengigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 21
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 22
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 20
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security violation restrict
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0002
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0003
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0001 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0004 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan voice
```
Port Security MAC Aging

Information About Port Security MAC Aging

Default MAC Address Table Settings

The following table shows the default settings for the MAC address table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aging time</td>
<td>300 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic addresses</td>
<td>Automatically learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static addresses</td>
<td>None configured</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MAC Address Table Creation

With multiple MAC addresses supported on all ports, you can connect any port on the device to other network devices. The device provides dynamic addressing by learning the source address of packets it receives on each port and adding the address and its associated port number to the address table. As devices are added or removed from the network, the device updates the address table, adding new dynamic addresses and aging out those that are not in use.

The aging interval is globally configured. However, the device maintains an address table for each VLAN, and STP can accelerate the aging interval on a per-VLAN basis.

The device sends packets between any combination of ports, based on the destination address of the received packet. Using the MAC address table, the device forwards the packet only to the port associated with the destination address. If the destination address is on the port that sent the packet, the packet is filtered and not forwarded. The device always uses the store-and-forward method: complete packets are stored and checked for errors before transmission.
How to Configure Port Security MAC Aging

Changing the Address Aging Time

Follow these steps to configure the dynamic address table aging time:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. mac address-table aging-time [0 | 10-1000000] [routed-mac | vlan vlan-id]
4. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
* Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Example:** | Device> enable | |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:** | Device# configure terminal | |
| **Step 3** | mac address-table aging-time [0 | 10-1000000] [routed-mac | vlan vlan-id] | Sets the length of time that a dynamic entry remains in the MAC address table after the entry is used or updated.  
The range is 10 to 1000000 seconds. The default is 300.  
You can also enter 0, which disables aging. Static address entries are never aged or removed from the table.  
vlan-id—Valid IDs are 1 to 4094. |
| **Example:** | Device(config)# mac address-table aging-time 500 vlan 2 | |
| **Step 4** | end | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** | Device(config)# end | |

Feature Information for Port Security

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 90: Feature Information for Port Security**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port Security</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>The Port Security feature restricts input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Security MAC Aging</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>When devices are added or removed from a network, the device updates the address table, adding new dynamic addresses and aging out those that are not in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Restrictions for CoPP

Restrictions for control plane policing (CoPP) include the following:

- Only ingress CoPP is supported. The system-cpp-policy policy-map is available on the control plane interface, and only in the ingress direction.

- Only the system-cpp-policy policy-map can be installed on the control plane interface.

- The system-cpp-policy policy-map and the system-defined classes cannot be modified or deleted.

- Only the police action is allowed under the system-cpp-policy policy-map. The police rate for system-defined classes must be configured only in packets per second (pps).

- When setting the policer rate, note that a clock frequency limitation causes differences in the default rate and the set rate values displayed for some classes (even if you set the default rate for all classes). See the User-Configurable Aspects of CoPP and Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues topics in this chapter for more information.

- One or more CPU queues are part of each class-map. Where multiple CPU queues belong to one class-map, changing the policer rate of a class-map affects all CPU queues that belong to that class-map. Similarly, disabling the policer in a class-map disables all queues that belong to that class-map. See Table: System-Defined Values for CoPP for information about which CPU queues belong to each class-map.

- We recommend not disabling the policer for a system-defined class map, that is, do not configure no police rate rate pps command. Doing so affects the overall system health in case of high traffic towards the CPU. Further, even if you disable the policer rate for a system-defined class map, the systems automatically reverts to the default policer rate after system bootup in order to protect the system bring-up process.
• The `show run` command does not display information about classes configured under `system-cpp policy`, when they are left at default values. Use the `show policy-map system-cpp-policy` or the `show policy-map control-plane` commands instead.

  You can continue use the `show run` command to display information about custom policies.

• Starting from Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, the creation of user-defined class-maps is not supported.

---

### Information About Control Plane Policing

This chapter describes how control plane policing (CoPP) works on your device and how to configure it.

### CoPP Overview

The CoPP feature improves security on your device protecting the CPU from unnecessary traffic and DoS attacks. It can also protect control and management traffic from traffic drops caused by high volumes of other, lower priority traffic.

Your device is typically segmented into three planes of operation, each with its own objective:

- The data plane, to forward data packets.
- The control plane, to route data correctly.
- The management plane, to manage network elements.

You can use CoPP to protect most of the CPU-bound traffic and ensure routing stability, reachability, and packet delivery. Most importantly, you can use CoPP to protect the CPU from a DoS attack.

CoPP uses the modular QoS command-line interface (MQC) and CPU queues to achieve these objectives. Different types of control plane traffic are grouped together based on certain criteria, and assigned to a CPU queue. You can manage these CPU queues by configuring dedicated policers in hardware. For example, you can modify the policer rate for certain CPU queues (traffic-type), or you can disable the policer for a certain type of traffic.

Although the polices are configured in hardware, CoPP does not affect CPU performance or the performance of the data plane. But since it limits the number of packets going to CPU, the CPU load is controlled. This means that services waiting for packets from hardware may see a more controlled rate of incoming packets (the rate being user-configurable).

### System-Defined Aspects of CoPP

When you power-up the device for the first time, the system automatically performs the following tasks:

- Looks for policy-map `system-cpp-policy`. If not found, the system creates and installs it on the control-plane.

- Creates eighteen class-maps under `system-cpp-policy`.

  The next time you power-up the device, the system detects the policy and class maps that have already been created.
• Enables all CPU queues by default, with their respective default rate. The default rates are indicated in the table System-Defined Values for CoPP.

The following table lists the class-maps that the system creates when you load the device. It lists the policer that corresponds to each class-map and one or more CPU queues that are grouped under each class-map. There is a one-to-one mapping of class-maps to policers; and one or more CPU queues map to a class-map.

Table 91: System-Defined Values for CoPP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Maps Names</th>
<th>Policer Index (Policer No.)</th>
<th>CPU queues (Queue No.)</th>
<th>Default Policer Rate (pps)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp- police-data</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_DATA(0)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ICMP_GEN(3)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_BROADCAST(12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ICMP_REDIRECT(6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-l2- control</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_L2_CONTROL(1)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_L2_CONTROL(1)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-routing-control</td>
<td>WK_CPP_ROUTING_CONTROL</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ROUTING_CONTROL(4)</td>
<td>5400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_LOW_LATENCY(27)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-punt-webauth</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_PUNT_WEBAUTH(7)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_PUNT_WEBAUTH(22)</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-topology-control</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_TOPOLOGY_CONTROL(15)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_TOPOLOGY_CONTROL(15)</td>
<td>13000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police- multicast</td>
<td>WK_CPP_MULTICAST_DATA(15)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_TRANSIT_TRAFFIC(18)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_MCAST_DATA(30)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-sys-data</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_SYS_DATA(10)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_OPENFLOW(13)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_CRYPTO_CONTROL(23)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_EXCEPTION(24)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_EGR_EXCEPTION(28)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_NFL_SAMPLED_DATA(26)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_GOLD_PKT(31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_RPF_FAILED(19)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth</td>
<td>WK_CPP_DOT1X_AUTH(11)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_DOT1X_AUTH(0)</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_PROTO_SNOOPING(16)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_PROTO_SNOOPING(16)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protocol-snooping</td>
<td>WK_CPP_DHCP_SNOOPING</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_DHCP_SNOOPING(17)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-dhcp-snooping</td>
<td>WK_CPP_DHCP_SNOOPING</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Maps Names</td>
<td>Policer Index (Policer No.)</td>
<td>CPU queues (Queue No.)</td>
<td>Default Policer Rate (pps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-sw-forward</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_SW_FWD(13)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_SW_FORWARDING_Q(14) WK_CPU_Q_LOGGING(21) WK_CPU_Q_L2_LVX_DATA_PACK(11)</td>
<td>1000 1000 1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-forus</td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_FWD(14)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_ADDR_RESOLUTIONS(8) WK_CPU_QToFit_TRAFFIC(2)</td>
<td>4000 4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-multicast-end-station</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование multicast-end-station</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_MCAST_END_STATION_SERVICE(20)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-default</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование default</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_INTER_FED_TRAFFIC WK_CPU_QToFit_EWLC_CONTROL(9) WK_CPU_QToFit_EWLC_DATA(10)</td>
<td>2000 2000 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-stackwise-virt-control</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование stackwise-virt-control</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_STACKWISE_VIRTUAL_CONTROL(29)</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-l2lvx-control</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование l2lvx-control</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_L2_LVX_CONT_PACK(8)</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-high-rate-app</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование high-rate-app</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_HIGH_RATE_APP</td>
<td>13000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system-cpp-police-system-critical</td>
<td>WK_CPP полицирование system-critical</td>
<td>WK_CPU_QToFit_SYSTEM_CRITICAL</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you upgrade or downgrade the software version on your device, note the following:

- **When upgrading from one software release to another:**
  The upgrade could be from one Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release to another Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release:
  - If the device did not have a `system-cpp-policy` policy map before upgrade, then on upgrade, a default policy is created.
  - If the device had a `system-cpp-policy` policy map before upgrade, then on upgrade, the policy is not re-generated. Enter the `cpp system-default` command in global configuration mode to get the default policy working.

  **Note** We recommend that you to enter the `cpp system-default` command after any major upgrade to get the latest, default policer rates.

- **When downgrading from one software release to another:**
  The downgrade could be from one Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release to another Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release:
  - The `system-cpp-policy` policy map is retained on the device, but not installed on the control plane.
    You can delete the policy.
• If you downgrade to an earlier release and then upgrade to a later release:
  • If you delete the policy after downgrading to an earlier Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x and then upgrade to a Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release, the policy is generated with defaults
  • If you do not delete the policy after downgrading to an earlier Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release, then on upgrade to a later Cisco IOS XE 16.x.x release, the policy is not regenerated.

Enter the `cpp system-default` command in global configuration mode to get the default policy working.

User-Configurable Aspects of CoPP

You can perform these tasks to manage control plane traffic:

---

**Note**

All `system-cpp-policy` configurations must be saved so they are retained after reboot.

---

**Enable or Disable a Policer for CPU Queues**

Enable a policer for a CPU queue, by configuring a policer action (in packets per second) under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy policy-map`.

Disable a policer for CPU queue, by removing the policer action under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy policy-map`.

---

**Note**

If a default policer is already present, carefully consider and control its removal; otherwise the system may see a CPU hog or other anomalies, such as control packet drops.

---

**Change the Policer Rate**

You can do this by configuring a policer rate action (in packets per second), under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy policy-map`.

When setting a policer rate, note that the rate you set is automatically converted to the nearest multiple of 200. For instance, if you set the policer rate of a CPU queue 100 pps, the system changes it to 200; or if set the policer rate to 650, the system changes it to 600. See *Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues* in this chapter, for sample output that displays this behavior.

---

**Set Policer Rates to Default**

Set the policer for CPU queues to their default values, by entering the `cpp system-default` command in global configuration mode.
How to Configure CoPP

Enabling a CPU Queue or Changing the Policer Rate

The procedure to enable a CPU queue and change the policer rate of a CPU queue is the same. Follow these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. policy-map policy-map-name
4. class class-name
5. police rate rate pps
6. exit
7. control-plane
8. service-policy input policy-name
9. end
10. show policy-map control-plane

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policy-map policy-map-name</td>
<td>Enters the policy map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-pmap)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class class-name</td>
<td>Enters the class action configuration mode. Enter the name of the class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>that corresponds to the CPU queue you want to enable. See table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-pmap)# class</td>
<td>System-Defined Values for CoPP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

```bash
system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
Device(config-pmap-c)#
```

**Purpose**

Specifies an upper limit on the number of incoming packets processed per second, for the specified traffic class.

**Note**

The rate you specify is applied to all CPU queues that belong to the class-map you have specified.

### Step 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>police rate rate pps</code></td>
<td>Specifies an upper limit on the number of incoming packets processed per second, for the specified traffic class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap-c)# police rate 100 pps</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap-c-police)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Returns to the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap-c)# exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap)# exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>control-plane</code></td>
<td>Enters the control plane (config-cp) configuration mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# control-plane</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-cp)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>service-policy input policy-name</code></td>
<td>Installs system-cpp-policy in FED. This command is required for you to see the FED policy. Not configuring this command will lead to an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# control-plane</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-cp)# service-policy input</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-policy</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-cp)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-cp)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show policy-map control-plane</code></td>
<td>Displays all the classes configured under system-cpp policy, the rates configured for the various traffic types, and statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show policy-map control-plane</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## Disabling a CPU Queue

Follow these steps to disable a CPU queue:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
### 3. `policy-map policy-map-name`

### 4. `class class-name`

### 5. `no police rate rate pps`

### 6. `end`

### 7. `show policy-map control-plane`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>policy-map policy-map-name</code></td>
<td>Enters the policy map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy Device(config-pmap)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <code>class class-name</code></td>
<td>Enters the class action configuration mode. Enter the name of the class that corresponds to the CPU queue you want to disable. See the table, <em>System-Defined Values for CoPP</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping Device(config-pmap-c)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> <code>no police rate rate pps</code></td>
<td>Disables incoming packet processing for the specified traffic class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-pmap-c)# no police rate 100 pps</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> This disables all CPU queues that belong to the class-map you have specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> <code>end</code></td>
<td>Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-pmap-c)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 7 show policy-map control-plane</td>
<td>Displays all the classes configured under <code>system-cpp policy</code> and the rates configured for the various traffic types and statistics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

Follow these steps to set the policer rates for all CPU queues to their default rates:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. cpp system-default
4. end
5. show platform hardware fed switch { switch-number | active | standby } qos que stats internal cpu policer

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 cpp system-default</td>
<td>Sets the policer rates for all the classes to the default rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# cpp system-default</td>
<td>Defaulting CPP : Policer rate for all classes will be set to their defaults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 end</td>
<td>Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples for Configuring CoPP

Example: Enabling a CPU Queue or Changing the Policer Rate of a CPU Queue

This example shows how to enable a CPU queue or to change the policer rate of a CPU queue. Here the `class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping` CPU queue is enabled with the policer rate of 2000 pps.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy
Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
Device(config-pmap-c)# police rate 2000 pps
Device(config-pmap-c-police)# end

Device# show policy-map control-plane
Control Plane

Service-policy input: system-cpp-policy
<output truncated>

Class-map: system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth (match-any)
  0 packets, 0 bytes
  5 minute offered rate 0000 bps, drop rate 0000 bps
  Match: none
  police:
    rate 1000 pps, burst 244 packets
    conformed 0 bytes; actions: transmit
    exceeded 0 bytes; actions: drop

Class-map: system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping (match-any)
  0 packets, 0 bytes
  5 minute offered rate 0000 bps, drop rate 0000 bps
  Match: none
  police:
    rate 2000 pps, burst 488 packets
    conformed 0 bytes; actions: transmit
    exceeded 0 bytes; actions: drop
```
Example: Disabling a CPU Queue

This example shows how to disable a CPU queue. Here the class `system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping` CPU queue is disabled.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy
Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
Device(config-pmap-c)# no police rate 100 pps
Device(config-pmap-c)# end
```

Device# show running-config | begin system-cpp-policy

```
policy-map system-cpp-policy
  class system-cpp-police-data
    police rate 200 pps
  class system-cpp-police-sys-data
    police rate 100 pps
  class system-cpp-police-sw-forward
    police rate 1000 pps
  class system-cpp-police-multicast
    police rate 500 pps
  class system-cpp-police-multicast-end-station
    police rate 2000 pps
  class system-cpp-police-punt-webauth
  class system-cpp-police-l2-control
  class system-cpp-police-routing-control
    police rate 500 pps
  class system-cpp-police-control-low-priority
  class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority1
  class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority2
  class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority3-4-5
  class system-cpp-police-topology-control
  class system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth
  class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
  class system-cpp-police-forus
  class system-cpp-default
```

Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

This example shows how to set the policer rates for all CPU queues to their default and then verify the setting.
For some CPU queues, the **default rate** and the **set rate** values will not be the same, even if you set the default rate for all classes. This because the set rate is rounded off to the nearest multiple of 200. This behavior is controlled by the clock speed of your device. In the sample output below, the default and set rate values for DHCP Snooping and NFL SAMPLED DATA display this difference.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QId</th>
<th>PlcIdx</th>
<th>Queue Name</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>(default) Rate</th>
<th>(set) Rate</th>
<th>Queue Drop(Bytes)</th>
<th>Queue Drop(Frames)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>DOT1X Auth</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L2 Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Forus traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ICMP GEN</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Routing Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Forus Address resolution</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ICMP Redirect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Inter FED Traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>L2 LVX Cont Pack</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>EWLC Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>EWLC Data</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>L2 LVX Data Pack</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>BROADCAST</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Openflow</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Sw forwarding</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Topology Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Proto Snooping</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>DHCP Snooping</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Transit Traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>RPF Failed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Control Plane Policing

Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

* NOTE: CPU queue policer rates are configured to the closest hardware supported value

### CPU Queue Policer Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policer Index</th>
<th>Policer Bytes</th>
<th>Policer Accept Frames</th>
<th>Policer Drop Bytes</th>
<th>Policer Drop Frames</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CPP Classes to queue map

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PlcIdx</th>
<th>CPP Class</th>
<th>Queues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-data</td>
<td>ICMP GEN/BROADCAST/ICMP Redirect/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-sys-data</td>
<td>Openflow/Exception/EGR Exception/NFL SAMPLED DATA/Gold Pkt/RPF Failed/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-multicast</td>
<td>Transit Traffic/MCAST Data/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-swap-forward</td>
<td>Sw forwarding/LOGGING/L2 LVX Data Pack/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-multicast-end-station</td>
<td>MCAST END STATION/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-punt-webauth</td>
<td>Punt Webauth/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-l2-control</td>
<td>L2 Control/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring CoPP

Use these commands to display policer settings, such as, traffic types and policer rates (user-configured and default rates) for CPU queues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show policy-map control-plane</td>
<td>Displays the rates configured for the various traffic types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show policy-map system-cpp-policy</td>
<td>Displays all the classes configured under system-cpp policy, and policer rates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show platform hardware fed switch {switch-number</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show platform software fed {switch-number</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for Control Plane Policing

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control Plane Policing (CoPP) or CPP</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>This feature was introduced. The CoPP feature improves security on your device by protecting the CPU from unnecessary traffic, or DoS traffic, and by prioritizing control plane and management traffic. The feature provides CLI configuration options to enable and disable CPU queues, to change the policer rate, set policer rates to default, and to create user-defined class-maps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in the system behavior for policer rates that are set.</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.4</td>
<td>For some CPU queues, the default rate and the set rate values will not be the same, even if you set the default rate for all classes. This because the set rate is rounded off to the nearest multiple of 200.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Removal of support for user-defined class-maps and changes in system-defined values for CoPP | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a    | • Starting from this release, the creation of user-defined class-maps is not supported.  
• This new system-defined class was introduced: system-cpp-police-dhcp-snooping  
• This new CPU queue was added to the existing system-cpp-default class: WK_CPU_Q_INTER_FED_TRAFFIC  
• These CPU queues are no longer available:  
  • WK_CPU_Q_SHOW_FORWARD  
  • WK_CPU_Q_UNUSED  
• The default policer rate (pps) for some CPU queues has changed:  
  • The default rate for WK_CPU_Q_EXCEPTION(24) was changed to 100  
  • The default rate for all the CPU queues under system-cpp-default was increased to 2000.  
  • The default rate for all the CPU queues under system-cpp-police-forus was increased to 4000.  
• The feature was introduced on the High Performance models in the series. All Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a release changes apply to all models in the series. |
Feature History for Control Plane Policing
CHAPTER 41

Configuring Lawful Intercept

- Finding Feature Information, on page 707
- Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept, on page 707
- Restrictions for Lawful Intercept, on page 708
- Information About Lawful Intercept, on page 708
- How to Configure Lawful Intercept Support, on page 715
- Additional References for Lawful Intercept, on page 719
- Feature Information for Lawful Intercept, on page 720

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept

- You must be running images that support secure shell (SSH). Lawful intercept is not supported on images that do not support SSH.

- The switch you are logged into must have the highest access level (L15). To log in with L15 access, enter the enable command and specify the highest-level password defined for the switch.

- The time of day on the switch and the mediation device (supplied by a third-party vendor) connected to the network must be must be synchronized; also, configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) on both the switch and the mediation device.

- (Optional) It might be helpful to use a loopback interface for the switch to communicate with the mediation device. If you do not use a loopback interface, you must configure the mediation device with multiple physical interfaces on the switch to handle network failures.
Restrictions for Lawful Intercept

- This feature is not supported on the C9500-12Q, C9500-16X, C9500-24Q, C9500-40X models of the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.
- Intercept or tap can be configured using only SNMP. Also, configuring interface-specific intercept is not allowed.
- The CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB does not support the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) OID citapStreamVRF.
- IPv4 multicast, IPv6 unicast, and IPv6 multicast flows are not supported. Only IPv4 unicast traffic is supported.
- Lawful Intercept is not supported on Layer 2 interfaces. However, lawful intercept can intercept traffic on VLANs that run over a Layer 2 interface.
- Lawful Intercept is not supported in packets that are encapsulated within other packets, for example, tunneled packets or Q-in-Q packets.
- Lawful Intercept is not supported for Layer 2 taps.
- Lawful Intercept is not supported in packets that are subject to Layer 3 or Layer 4 rewrite, for example, Network Address Translation (NAT) or TCP reflexive.

Information About Lawful Intercept

Overview of Lawful Intercept

Lawful intercept is a process that enables a law enforcement agency to perform electronic surveillance on an individual (a target) as authorized by a judicial (court) or administrative order. To facilitate the lawful intercept process, certain legislation and regulations require service providers and Internet Service Providers (ISPs) to implement their networks to explicitly support authorized electronic surveillance.

Surveillance is performed through the use of wiretaps on traditional telecommunications and internet services in voice, data, and multiservice networks. The law enforcement agencies deliver a request for a wiretap to the target’s service provider who is responsible for intercepting data communication to and from the individual. The service provider uses the target’s IP address to determine which of its edge devices handles the target’s traffic (data communication). The service provider then intercepts the target’s traffic as it passes through the device, and sends a copy of the intercepted traffic to the LEA without the target’s knowledge.

The Lawful Intercept feature supports the Communications Assistance for Law Enforcement Act (CALEA), which describes how service providers in the United States must support lawful intercept. Currently, lawful intercept is defined by the following standards:

- Telephone Industry Association (TIA) specification J-STD-025
- Packet Cable Electronic Surveillance Specification (PKT-SP-ESP-101-991229)

For information about the Cisco lawful intercept solution, contact your Cisco account representative.
Benefits of Lawful Intercept

- Allows multiple LEAs to run a lawful intercept on the same target without each other’s knowledge.
- Does not affect subscriber services on the device.
- Supports wiretaps in both the input and output direction.
- Supports wiretaps of Layer 1 and Layer 3 traffic. Layer 2 traffic is supported as IP traffic over VLANs.
- Supports Layer 3 physical interfaces or Switch Virtual Interfaces (SVI).
- Supports wiretaps of individual subscribers that share a single physical interface.
- Cannot be detected by the target. Neither the network administrator nor the calling party is aware that packets are being copied or that the call is being tapped.
- Uses Simple Network Management Protocol Version 3 (SNMPv3) and security features such as the View-based Access Control Model (SNMP-VACM-MIB) and the User-based Security Model (SNMP-USM-MIB) to restrict access to lawful intercept information and components.
- Hides information about lawful intercepts from all but the most privileged users. An administrator must set up access rights to enable privileged users to access lawful intercept information.
- Provides two secure interfaces for performing an intercept; one for setting up the wiretap and one for sending the intercepted traffic to the LEA.

CALEA for Voice

The CALEA for Voice feature allows the lawful interception of voice conversations that are running on VoIP. Although the devices are not voice gateway devices, VoIP packets traverse the devices at the edge of the service provider network.

When an approved government agency determines that a telephone conversation is interesting, CALEA for Voice copies the IP packets comprising the conversation and sends the duplicate packets to the appropriate monitoring device for further analysis.

Configuration Guidelines

- To deploy Lawful Intercept at a node, do not configure optimized ACL logging (OAL), VLAN access control list (VACL) capture, or Intrusion Detection System (IDS) at the node. Deploying lawful intercept at the node causes unpredictable behavior in OAL, VACL capture, and IDS.
- The maximum number of TAPs supported on Catalyst 9500 series switches is 160.
- When provisioning the mediation device, if the interface index passed is zero, the switch selects the best possible interface to reach the mediation device. If the interface index is set to another value, the switch uses that interface index to reach the mediation device.
• (Optional) The domain name for both the device and the mediation device can be registered in the Domain Name System (DNS).
• The mediation device must have an access function.
• You must add the mediation device to the SNMP user group that has access to the CISCO-TAP2-MIB view. Specify the username of the mediation device as the user to add to the group.
• When you add the mediation device as a CISCO-TAP2-MIB user, you must also include the mediation device’s authorization password.
• The device intercepts and replicates packets even if the packets are later dropped, for example, due to rate limiting or an access control list (ACL) deny statement.
• Lawful intercept ACLs are applied internally to both the ingress and the egress directions of an interface.
• Packets that are subject to hardware rate limiting are processed by lawful intercept as follows:
  • Packets that are dropped by the rate limiter are not intercepted or processed.
  • Packets that are passed by the rate limiter are intercepted and processed.
• If multiple law enforcement agencies use a single mediation device and each of these agencies is executing a wiretap on the same target, the device sends a single packet to the mediation device. It is up to the mediation device to duplicate the packet for each law enforcement agency.
• Lawful intercept can intercept IPv4 packets with values that match a combination of one or more of the following fields:
  • Destination IP address and mask
  • Destination port range
  • Source IP address and mask
  • Source port range
  • Protocol ID

Network Components Used for Lawful Intercept

This section describes the network components used for lawful intercept.

Mediation Device

A mediation device (supplied by a third-party vendor) handles most of the processing for lawful intercept. The mediation device:
• Provides the interface used to set up and provision the lawful intercept.
• Generates requests to other network devices to set up and run the lawful intercept.
• Converts the intercepted traffic into the format required by the LEA (which can vary from country to country) and sends a copy of the intercepted traffic to the LEA without the target’s knowledge.
If multiple LEAs are performing intercepts on the same target, the mediation device must make a copy of the intercepted traffic for each LEA. The mediation device is also responsible for restarting the lawful intercepts that are disrupted due to a failure.

**Lawful Intercept Administration**

Lawful intercept administration (LIA) provides the authentication interface for lawful intercept or wiretap requests and administration.

**Intercept Access Point**

An intercept access point (IAP) is a device that provides information to lawful intercept. There are two types of IAPs:

- **Identification (ID) IAP**—A device, such as an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server that provides intercept-related information (IRI) for the intercept (for example, the target’s username and system IP address) or call agents for VoIP. The IRI helps a service provider determine which content IAP (switch) the target’s traffic passes through.

- **Content IAP**—A device that the target’s traffic passes through. The content IAP:
  - Intercepts traffic to and from the target for the length of time specified in the court order. The device continues to forward traffic to its destination to ensure that the wiretap is undetected.
  - Creates a copy of the intercepted traffic, encapsulates it in User Datagram Protocol (UDP) packets, and forwards the packets to the mediation device without the target’s knowledge. Note that the IP option header is not supported.

Note: If multiple LEAs are performing intercepts on the same target, the mediation device must make a copy of the intercepted traffic for each LEA.

**Content Intercept Access Point**

Content IAP intercepts the interested data stream, duplicates the content, and sends the duplicated content to the mediation device. The mediation device receives the data from the ID IAP and content IAP, converts the information to the required format depending on country-specific requirements and forwards it to the law enforcement agency.

**Lawful Intercept Processing**

After acquiring a court order or warrant to perform surveillance, the LEA delivers a surveillance request to the target’s service provider. Service provider personnel use an administration function that runs on the mediation device to configure a lawful intercept to monitor the target’s electronic traffic for a specific period of time (as defined in the court order).
After the intercept is configured, user intervention is no longer required. The administration function communicates with other network devices to set up and execute the lawful intercept. The following sequence of events occurs during a lawful intercept:

1. The administration function contacts the ID IAP for intercept-related information (IRI), such as the target’s username and the IP address of the system, to determine which content IAP (switch) the target’s traffic passes through.

2. After identifying the device that handles the target’s traffic, the administration function sends SNMPv3 get and set requests to the device’s Management Information Base (MIB) to set up and activate the lawful intercept. The CISCO-TAP2-MIB is the supported lawful intercept MIB to provide per-subscriber intercepts.

3. During lawful intercept, the device:
   1. Examines incoming and outgoing traffic and intercepts any traffic that matches the specifications of the lawful intercept request.
   2. Creates a copy of the intercepted traffic and forwards the original traffic to its destination so that the target does not suspect anything.
   3. Encapsulates the intercepted traffic in UDP packets, and forwards the packets to the mediation device without the target’s knowledge.

Note

The process of intercepting and duplicating the target’s traffic does not add detectable latency in the traffic stream.

4. The mediation device converts the intercepted traffic into the required format and sends it to a collection function running at the LEA. Here, the intercepted traffic is stored and processed.

Note

If the device intercepts traffic that is not allowed by the judicial order, the mediation device filters out the excess traffic and sends only the traffic allowed by the judicial order to the LEA.

5. When the lawful intercept expires, the device stops intercepting the target’s traffic.

Lawful Intercept MIBs

- CISCO-TAP2-MIB—Used for lawful intercept processing.
- CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB—Used for intercepting Layer 3 (IPv4) traffic.

Due to its sensitive nature, the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs are only available in software images that support the Lawful Intercept feature. To access the Cisco IOS MIB Locator page, go to:


CISCO-TAP2-MIB

The CISCO-TAP2-MIB contains SNMP management objects that control lawful intercepts. The mediation device uses the MIB to configure and run lawful intercepts on targets whose traffic passes through the device.
The CISCO-TAP2-MIB contains several tables that provide information for lawful intercepts that are running on the device:

- cTap2MediationTable—Contains information about each mediation device that is currently running lawful intercept on the device. Each table entry provides information that the device uses to communicate with the mediation device, for example, the device’s address, the interfaces to send intercepted traffic over, and the protocol to use to transmit the intercepted traffic.

- cTap2StreamTable—Contains information used to identify the traffic to intercept. Each table entry contains a pointer to a filter that is used to identify the traffic stream associated with the target of a lawful intercept. Traffic that matches the filter is intercepted, copied, and sent to the corresponding mediation device application (cTap2MediationContentId).

  The cTap2StreamTable table also contains counts of the number of packets that were intercepted, and counts of dropped packets that should have been intercepted, but were not.

- cTap2DebugTable—Contains debug information for troubleshooting lawful intercept errors.

The CISCO-TAP2-MIB also contains several SNMP notifications for lawful intercept events. For detailed descriptions of MIB objects, see corresponding MIBs.

**CISCO-TAP2-MIB Processing**

The administration function (running on the mediation device) issues SNMPv3 set and get requests to the device’s CISCO-TAP2-MIB to set up and initiate a lawful intercept. To do this, the administration function performs the following actions:

1. Creates a cTap2MediationTable entry to define how the device is to communicate with the mediation device executing the intercept.

   The cTap2MediationNewIndex object provides a unique index for the mediation table entry.

2. Creates an entry in the cTap2StreamTable to identify the traffic stream to intercept.

3. Sets cTap2StreamInterceptEnable to true(1) to start the intercept. The device intercepts traffic in the stream until the intercept expires (cTap2MediationTimeout).

**CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB**

The CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB contains the SNMP management objects to configure and execute lawful intercepts on IPv4 traffic streams that flow through the device. This MIB is an extension of the CISCO-TAP2-MIB.

You can use the CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB to configure lawful intercept on a device to intercept IPv4 packets with values that match a combination of one or more of the following fields:

- Destination IP address and mask
- Destination port range
- Source IP address and mask
- Source port range
- Protocol ID
CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB Processing

When data is intercepted, two streams are created. One stream is for packets that originate from the target IP address to any other IP address using any port. The second stream is created for packets that are routed to the target IP address from any other address using any port. For VoIP, two streams are created, one for RTP packets from the target and the second stream for the RTP packets to target using the specific source and destination IP addresses and ports specified in the SDP information used to set up the RTP stream.

MIB Guidelines

The following Cisco MIBs are used for lawful intercept processing. Include these MIBs in the SNMP view of lawful intercept MIBs to enable the mediation device to configure and execute wiretaps on traffic that flows through the device.

- CISCO-TAP2-MIB—Required for both types of lawful intercepts: regular and broadband.
- CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB—Required for wiretaps on Layer 3 (IPv4) streams. Supported for regular and broadband lawful intercept.
- The CISCO-IP-TAB-MIB imposes limitations on the following features:
  - If one or all of the following features are configured and functioning and lawful intercept is enabled, lawful intercept takes precedence, and the feature behaves as follows:
    - Optimized ACL logging (OAL)—Does not function.
    - VLAN access control list (VACL) capturing—Does not function properly.
    - Intrusion detection system (IDS)—Does not function properly.
  These features start to function after you disable or unconfigure lawful intercept.
- IDS cannot capture traffic on its own, but captures traffic that has been intercepted by lawful intercept.

Security Considerations

- SNMP notifications for lawful intercept must be sent to UDP port 161 on the mediation device, not port 162 (which is the SNMP default).
- The only users who should be allowed to access the lawful intercept MIBs are the mediation device and system administrators who need to know about lawful intercepts on the device. In addition, these users must have authPriv or authNoPriv access rights to access the lawful intercept MIBs. Users with NoAuthNoPriv access cannot access the lawful intercept MIBs.
- You cannot use the SNMP-VACM-MIB to create a view that includes the lawful intercept MIBs.
- The default SNMP view excludes the following MIBs:
  - CISCO-TAP2-MIB
  - CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB
  - SNMP-COMMUNITY-MIB
  - SNMP-USM-MIB
Restricting Access to the Lawful Intercept MIBs

Only the mediation device and users who need to know about lawful intercepts should be allowed to access the lawful intercept MIBs. To restrict access to these MIBs, you must:

1. Create a view that includes the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs.
2. Create an SNMP user group that has read-and-write access to the view. Only users assigned to this user group can access information in the MIBs.
3. Add users to the Cisco lawful intercept user groups to define who can access the MIBs along with information, if any, related to lawful intercepts. Be sure to add the mediation device as a user in this group; otherwise, the device cannot perform lawful intercepts.

Note

Access to the Cisco lawful intercept MIB view should be restricted to the mediation device and to system administrators who need to be aware of lawful intercepts on the device. To access the MIB, users must have level-15 access rights on the device.

How to Configure Lawful Intercept Support

Creating a Restricted SNMP View of Lawful Intercept MIBs

To create and assign users to an SNMP view that includes the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs, perform the steps provided in this section.

Before you begin

- SNMPv3 must be configured on the device. To instructions about configuring SNMPv3, see the SNMP Version 3 section in the SNMP Configuration Guide.

Note

Issue the commands in global configuration mode with level-15 access rights.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included
4. snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included
Creating a Restricted SNMP View of Lawful Intercept MIBs

5. `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included`
6. `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included`
7. `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included`
8. `snmp-server group group-name v3 auth read view-name write view-name`
9. `snmp-server user user-name group-name v3 auth md5 auth-password`
10. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2**        | Enters global configuration mode. |
| `configure terminal` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device# configure terminal` |         |

| **Step 3**        | Creates an SNMP view that includes the CISCO-TAP2-MIB, where `exampleView` is the name of the view to create for the MIB. This MIB is required for both regular and broadband lawful intercept. |
| `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoTap2MIB included` |         |

| **Step 4**        | Adds the CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view. |
| `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoIpTapMIB included` |         |

| **Step 5**        | Adds the CISCO-802-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view. |
| `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView cisco802TapMIB included` |         |

| **Step 6**        | Adds the CISCO-USER-CONNECTION-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view. |
| `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoUserConnectionTapMIB included` |         |

| **Step 7**        | Adds the CISCO-MOBILITY-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view. |
| `snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoMobilityTapMIB included` |         |
Enabling SNMP Notifications for Lawful Intercept

SNMP automatically generates notifications for lawful intercept events. To configure the device to send lawful intercept notifications to the mediation device, perform the steps in this section.

Before you begin

• SNMPv3 must be configured on the device. To instructions about configuring SNMPv3, see the SNMP Version 3 section in the SNMP Configuration Guide.

Note

Issue the commands in global configuration mode with level-15 access rights.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY STEPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. configure  terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. snmp-server host ip-address community-string udp-port port notification-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkup linkdown coldstart warmstart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DETAILED STEPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 2

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

### Step 3

**snmp-server host ip-address community-string udp-port port notification-type**

**Example:**

Device(config)# snmp-server host 10.2.2.1 community-string udp-port 161 udp

### Step 4

**snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkup linkdown coldstart warmstart**

**Example:**

Device(config)# snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkup linkdown coldstart warmstart

### Step 5

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

---

### Disabling SNMP Notifications

To disable SNMP notifications on the device, perform the steps provided in this section.

#### Note

To disable lawful intercept notifications, use SNMPv3 to set the CISCO-TAP2-MIB object cTap2MediationNotificationEnable to false(2). To re-enable lawful intercept notifications through SNMPv3, reset the object to true(1).

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. no snmp-server enable traps
4. end
**Example: Enabling Mediation Device Access Lawful Intercept MIBs**

The following example shows how to enable the mediation device to access the lawful intercept MIBs. It creates an SNMP view (tapV) that includes three LI MIBs (CISCO-TAP2-MIB, CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB, CISCO-802-TAP-MIB). It also creates a user group that has read, write, and notify access to MIBs in the tapV view.

```plaintext
snmp-server view tapV ciscoTap2MIB included
snmp-server view tapV ciscoIpTapMIB included
snmp-server view tapV cisco802TapMIB included
snmp-server group tapGrp v3 auth read tapV write tapV notify tapV
snmp-server user MDuser tapGrp v3 auth md5 MDpasswd
snmp-server engineID local 1234
```

**Additional References for Lawful Intercept**

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.</td>
<td><em>Command Reference, Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the supported MIBs for this release.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Lawful Intercept

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 92: Feature Information for Lawful Intercept

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lawful Intercept</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The Lawful Intercept feature supports service providers in meeting the requirements of law enforcement agencies to provide electronic surveillance as authorized by a judicial or administrative order. In Cisco IOS XE 16.8.1, this feature is supported on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

The Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority feature allows the IP address of an interface to be specified and used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint when a designated trustpoint has been configured.

- Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 721
- How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 722
- Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 725
- Additional References, on page 725
- Feature Information for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 726

Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

Certificates That Identify an Entity

Certificates can be used to identify an entity. A trusted server, known as the certification authority (CA), issues the certificate to the entity after determining the identity of the entity. A router that is running Cisco IOS software obtains its certificate by making a network connection to the CA. Using the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), the router transmits its certificate request to the CA and receives the granted certificate. The router obtains the certificate of the CA in the same manner using SCEP. When validating a certificate from a remote device, the router may again contact the CA or a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) or HTTP server to determine whether the certificate of the remote device has been revoked. (This process is known as checking the certificate revocation list [CRL].)

In some configurations, the router may make the outgoing TCP connection using an interface that does not have a valid or IP address that can be routed. The user must specify that the address of a different interface be used as the source IP address for the outgoing connection. Cable modems are a specific example of this scenario.
requirement because the outgoing cable interface (the RF interface) usually does not have an IP address that can be routed. However, the user interface (usually Ethernet) does have a valid IP address.

Source Interface for Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint

The `crypto ca trustpoint` command is used to specify a trustpoint. The `source interface` command is used along with the `crypto ca trustpoint` command to specify the address of the interface that is to be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint.

**Note**
If the interface address is not specified using the `source interface` command, the address of the outgoing interface is used.

How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

Configuring the Interface for All Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint

Perform this task to configure the interface that you want to use as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with a trustpoint.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `crypto ca trustpoint name`
4. `enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]`
5. `source interface interface-address`
6. `interface type slot / port`
7. `description string`
8. `ip address ip-address mask`
9. `interface type slot/port`
10. `description string`
11. `ip address ip-address mask`
12. `crypto map map-name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
Device> enable | Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 2**

**Device Configuration**

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

Declares the Certificate Authority (CA) that your router should use and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.

**Step 3**

**Device Configuration**

**Example:**

Device(config)# crypto ca trustpoint ms-ca

Specifies the following enrollment parameters of the CA:

- (Optional) The **mode** keyword specifies the registration authority (RA) mode, if your CA system provides an RA. By default, RA mode is disabled.

- (Optional) The **retry period** keyword and **minutes** argument specifies the period, in minutes, in which the router waits before sending the CA another certificate request. Valid values are from 1 to 60. The default is 1.

- (Optional) The **retry count** keyword and **number** argument specifies the number of times a router will resend a certificate request when it does not receive a response from the previous request. Valid values are from 1 to 100. The default is 10.

- The **url** argument is the URL of the CA to which your router should send certificate requests.

**Note** With the introduction of Cisco IOS Release 15.2(1)T, an IPv6 address can be added to the **http** enrolment method. For example: http://[ipv6-address]:80. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in brackets in the URL. See the enrollment url (ca-trustpoint) command page for more information on the other enrollment methods that can be used.

- (Optional) The **pem** keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.

**Step 4**

**Device Configuration**

**Example:**

Device (ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://caserver.myexample.com

- or-

Device (ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80

Interface to be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>interface type slot / port</code></td>
<td>Configures an interface type and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (ca-trustpoint)# interface ethernet 1 |
| 7    | `description string` | Adds a description to an interface configuration. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# description inside interface |
| 8    | `ip address ip-address mask` | Sets a primary or secondary IP address for an interface. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0 |
| 9    | `interface type slot/port` | Configures an interface type. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# interface ethernet1/0 |
| 10   | `description string` | Adds a description to an interface configuration. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# description outside interface 10.1.1.205 255.255.255.0 |
| 11   | `ip address ip-address mask` | Sets a primary or secondary IP address for an interface. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# ip address 10.2.2.205 255.255.255.0 |
| 12   | `crypto map map-name` | Applies a previously defined crypto map set to an interface. |
|      | Example:  
|      | Device (config-if)# crypto map mymap |
Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority Example

In the following example, the router is located in a branch office. The router uses IP Security (IPSec) to communicate with the main office. Ethernet 1 is the “outside” interface that connects to the Internet Service Provider (ISP). Ethernet 0 is the interface connected to the LAN of the branch office. To access the CA server located in the main office, the router must send its IP datagrams out interface Ethernet 1 (address 10.2.2.205) using the IPSec tunnel. Address 10.2.2.205 is assigned by the ISP. Address 10.2.2.205 is not a part of the branch office or main office.

The CA cannot access any address outside the company because of a firewall. The CA sees a message coming from 10.2.2.205 and cannot respond (that is, the CA does not know that the router is located in a branch office at address 10.1.1.1, which it is able to reach).

Adding the `source interface` command tells the router to use address 10.1.1.1 as the source address of the IP datagram that it sends to the CA. The CA is able to respond to 10.1.1.1.

This scenario is configured using the `source interface` command and the interface addresses as described above.

```
crypto ca trustpoint ms-ca
   enrollment url http://ms-ca:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
   source interface ethernet0
!
interface ethernet 0
   description inside interface
   ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface ethernet 1
   description outside interface
   ip address 10.2.2.205 255.255.255.0
   crypto map main-office
```

Additional References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring IPSec and certification authority</td>
<td>Security for VPNs with IPSec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPSec and certification authority commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBs</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 93: Feature Information for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
<td>The Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority feature allows you to specify that the address of an interface be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint when a designated trustpoint has been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
CHAPTER 43

Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

The Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature allows you to configure a dedicated LDAP source interface IP address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details on Cisco Integrated Services Routers (ISR) Generation 2. The source interface address (the address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address) and VRF details are populated while creating a TCP connection between the Cisco ISR Generation 2 and the LDAP server. This module describes how to configure this feature.

- Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 727
- How to Configure Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 728
- Configuration Examples for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 730
- Additional References for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 730
- Feature Information for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 731

Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP Overview

Prior to the introduction of the Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature, the source interface address cannot be specified in the source IP field of the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) query; instead the tunnel interface IP address was used in the source IP field.

The Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature helps you configure a dedicated LDAP source interface address on a Cisco device. The source interface address is configured on the Cisco device, and the device uses this interface address to originate all LDAP packets it sends to the LDAP server. The source interface address is also used for polling the end-server to ensure the reachability of the end-server.

The source interface IP (either an IPv4 or IPv6 address) address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details are populated in the LDAP query while creating a TCP connection between the Cisco device (client) and the LDAP server.

The VRF instance is configured on the Cisco device and VRF table ID details are set in the socket option before creating a TCP connection to allow multiple instances of a routing table to coexist on the same device at the same time. Because routing instances are independent of each other, the same or overlapping IP address can be used without conflict.
Cloud Web Security with LDAP Source Interfaces

The following illustration shows a Cloud Web Security deployment that uses an Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) configuration that supports source interface address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details, while establishing a TCP connection between Cisco Integrated Services Routers (ISR) Generation 2 (G2) and Cloud Web Security.

The following section describes the packet flow that happens in the deployment scenario shown in the illustration:

1. A AAA process posts a bind or search request to the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) process.
2. The LDAP process processes the AAA request.
3. A TCP connection is established <<between what >> before sending the request to the LDAP server.
   While creating the TCP connection, the source IP address and the VRF table details are set in the LDAP socket context.
4. • If the \{ip | ipv6\} ldap source-interface command is configured under the \aaa group server ldap\ command, the source IP address and VRF details are populated before the TCP connection is established.
   • If the \{ip | ipv6\} ldap source-interface command is configured in global configuration mode; globally for the box, the source IP address and VRF details are populated after the TCP connection is established.
   • If the \{ip | ipv6\} ldap source-interface command is not configured, the best local IP address and the default table ID details are populated in the TCP packet while establishing the connection.
   • If you have configured the source interface address both under the \aaa group server ldap\ command and in global configuration mode, the configuration under the \aaa group server ldap\ command has the highest priority.
5. The LDAP process uses the TCP connection to send or receive packets.
6. If the source interface address or VRF configurations are changed or removed, the LDAP process tears down all existing TCP connections and establishes a new TCP connection with a new source interface address or the best local IP address when sending an LDAP packet.

How to Configure Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF

If you have configured the source interface address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance under the \aaa group server ldap\ command and in global configuration mode, the configuration under the \aaa group server ldap\ command has the highest priority.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa group server ldap group-name
5. {ip | ipv6} ldap source-interface interface-type interface-number
6. {ip | ipv6} vrf forwarding vrf-name
7. server name
8. exit
9. {ip | ipv6} ldap source-interface interface-type interface-number [vrf vrf-name]
10. end

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa group server ldap group-name</td>
<td>Groups different Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) servers into distinct lists and methods and enters LDAP server-group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa group server ldap ldap-server-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> {ip</td>
<td>ipv6} ldap source-interface interface-type interface-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> {ip</td>
<td>ipv6} vrf forwarding vrf-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip vrf forwarding cws-vrf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> server name</td>
<td>Specifies the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-ldap-sg)# server ldap-server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits LDAP server-group configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ldap-sg)# exit</code></td>
<td>Specifies the source interface IP address in the LDAP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> `ip</td>
<td>ipv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> <code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0 vrf cws-vrf-1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Examples for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP**

**Example: Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF**

```
Device> enable
Device(config)# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa group server ldap ldap-server-group
Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip vrf forwarding cws-vrf
Device(config-ldap-sg)# server ldap-server
Device(config-ldap-sg)# exit
Device(config)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0 vrf cws-vrf-1
Device(config)# end
```

**Additional References for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP**

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The source interface, which can be an IPv4 or IPv6 interface, and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details are populated while creating a TCP connection between a Cisco device and the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

Prerequisites for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

Plan Your PKI Strategy

Tip
It is strongly recommended that you plan your entire PKI strategy before you begin to deploy actual certificates.

Authorization and revocation can occur only after you or a network administrator have completed the following tasks:

- Configured the certificate authority (CA).
- Enrolled peer devices with the CA.
- Identified and configured the protocol (such as IP Security [IPsec] or secure socket layer [SSL]) that is to be used for peer-to-peer communication.

You should decide which authorization and revocation strategy you are going to configure before enrolling peer devices because the peer device certificates might have to contain authorization and revocation-specific information.

High Availability

For high availability, IPsec-secured Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) must be configured on both the active and the standby routers. For synchronization to work, the redundancy mode on the certificate servers must be set to ACTIVE/STANDBY after you configure SCTP.
Restrictions for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

- Depending on your Cisco IOS release, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is supported.

Information About Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

PKI Authorization

PKI authentication does not provide authorization. Current solutions for authorization are specific to the router that is being configured, although a centrally managed solution is often required.

There is not a standard mechanism by which certificates are defined as authorized for some tasks and not for others. This authorization information can be captured in the certificate itself if the application is aware of the certificate-based authorization information. But this solution does not provide a simple mechanism for real-time updates to the authorization information and forces each application to be aware of the specific authorization information embedded in the certificate.

When the certificate-based ACL mechanism is configured as part of the trustpoint authentication, the application is no longer responsible for determining this authorization information, and it is no longer possible to specify for which application the certificate is authorized. In some cases, the certificate-based ACL on the router gets so large that it cannot be managed. Additionally, it is beneficial to retrieve certificate-based ACL indications from an external server.

Current solutions to the real-time authorization problem involve specifying a new protocol and building a new server (with associated tasks, such as management and data distribution).

PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status

Integrating your PKI with an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server provides an alternative online certificate status solution that leverages the existing AAA infrastructure. Certificates can be listed in the AAA database with appropriate levels of authorization. For components that do not explicitly support PKI-AAA, a default label of “all” from the AAA server provides authorization. Likewise, a label of “none” from the AAA database indicates that the specified certificate is not valid. (The absence of any application label is equivalent, but “none” is included for completeness and clarity). If the application component does support PKI-AAA, the component may be specified directly; for example, the application component could be “ipsec,” “ssl,” or “osp.” (ipsec=IP Security, ssl=Secure Sockets Layer, and osp=Open Settlement Protocol.)

Note

Currently, no application component supports specification of the application label.

- There may be a time delay when accessing the AAA server. If the AAA server is not available, the authorization fails.

RADIUS or TACACS+ Choosing a AAA Server Protocol

The AAA server can be configured to work with either the RADIUS or TACACS+ protocol. When you are configuring the AAA server for the PKI integration, you must set the RADIUS or TACACS attributes that are required for authorization.

If the RADIUS protocol is used, the password that is configured for the username in the AAA server should be set to “cisco,” which is acceptable because the certificate validation provides authentication and the AAA
database is only being used for authorization. When the TACACS protocol is used, the password that is configured for the username in the AAA server is irrelevant because TACACS supports authorization without requiring authentication (the password is used for authentication).

In addition, if you are using TACACS, you must add a PKI service to the AAA server. The custom attribute “cert-application=all” is added under the PKI service for the particular user or usergroup to authorize the specific username.

**Attribute-Value Pairs for PKI and AAA Server Integration**

The table below lists the attribute-value (AV) pairs that are to be used when setting up PKI integration with a AAA server. (Note the values shown in the table are possible values.) The AV pairs must match the client configuration. If they do not match, the peer certificate is not authorized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AV Pair</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-application=all</td>
<td>Valid values are “all” and “none.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-trustpoint=msca</td>
<td>The value is a Cisco IOS command-line interface (CLI) configuration trustpoint label. <strong>Note</strong> The cert-trustpoint AV pair is normally optional. If it is specified, the Cisco IOS router query must be coming from a certificate trustpoint that has a matching label, and the certificate that is authenticated must have the specified certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-serial=16318DB7000100001671</td>
<td>The value is a certificate serial number. <strong>Note</strong> The cert-serial AV pair is normally optional. If it is specified, the Cisco IOS router query must be coming from a certificate trustpoint that has a matching label, and the certificate that is authenticated must have the specified certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** Users can sometimes have AV pairs that are different from those of every other user. As a result, a unique username is required for each user. The all parameter (within the authorization username command) specifies that the entire subject name of the certificate will be used as the authorization username.
The cert-lifetime-end AV pair is available to artificially extend a certificate lifetime beyond the time period that is indicated in the certificate itself. If the cert-lifetime-end AV pair is used, the cert-trustpoint and cert-serial AV pairs must also be specified. The value must match the following form: hours:minutes month day, year.

Note: Only the first three characters of a month are used: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec. If more than three characters are entered for the month, the remaining characters are ignored (for example Janxx).
• The CRL lifetime determines the length of time between CA-issued updates to the CRL. The default CRL lifetime value, which is 168 hours [1 week], can be changed through the `lifetime crl` command.

• The method of the CDP determines how the CRL is retrieved; some possible choices include HTTP, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), SCEP, or TFTP. HTTP, TFTP, and LDAP are the most commonly used methods. Although Cisco IOS software defaults to SCEP, an HTTP CDP is recommended for large installations using CRLs because HTTP can be made highly scalable.

• The location of the CDP determines from where the CRL is retrieved; for example, you can specify the server and file path from which to retrieve the CRL.

### Querying All CDPs During Revocation Check

When a CDP server does not respond to a request, the Cisco IOS software reports an error, which may result in the peer’s certificate being rejected. To prevent a possible certificate rejection and if there are multiple CDPs in a certificate, the Cisco IOS software will attempt to use the CDPs in the order in which they appear in the certificate. The router will attempt to retrieve a CRL using each CDP URL or directory specification. If an error occurs using a CDP, an attempt will be made using the next CDP.

**Tip**

Although the Cisco IOS software will make every attempt to obtain the CRL from one of the indicated CDPs, it is recommended that you use an HTTP CDP server with high-speed redundant HTTP servers to avoid application timeouts because of slow CDP responses.

### What Is OCSP

OCSP is an online mechanism that is used to determine certificate validity and provides the following flexibility as a revocation mechanism:

• OCSP can provide real-time certificate status checking.

• OCSP allows the network administrator to specify a central OCSP server, which can service all devices within a network.

• OCSP also allows the network administrator the flexibility to specify multiple OCSP servers, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates.

• OCSP server validation is usually based on the root CA certificate or a valid subordinate CA certificate, but may also be configured so that external CA certificates or self-signed certificates may be used. Using external CA certificates or self-signed certificates allows the OCSP servers certificate to be issued and validated from an alternative PKI hierarchy.

A network administrator can configure an OCSP server to collect and update CRLs from different CA servers. The devices within the network can rely on the OCSP server to check the certificate status without retrieving and caching each CRL for every peer. When peers have to check the revocation status of a certificate, they send a query to the OCSP server that includes the serial number of the certificate in question and an optional unique identifier for the OCSP request, or a nonce. The OCSP server holds a copy of the CRL to determine if the CA has listed the certificate as being revoked; the server then responds to the peer including the nonce. If the nonce in the response from the OCSP server does not match the original nonce sent by the peer, the response is considered invalid and certificate verification fails. The dialog between the OCSP server and the peer consumes less bandwidth than most CRL downloads.

If the OCSP server is using a CRL, CRL time limitations will be applicable; that is, a CRL that is still valid might be used by the OCSP server although a new CRL has been issued by the CRL containing additional
Certificate revocation information. Because fewer devices are downloading the CRL information on a regular basis, you can decrease the CRL lifetime value or configure the OCSP server not to cache the CRL. For more information, check your OCSP server documentation.

**Note**
OCSP multiple response handling: Support has been enabled for handling of multiple OCSP single responses from an OCSP responder in a response packet. In addition to the debug log messages the following debug log message will be displayed:

```
CRYPTO_PKI: Number of single Responses in OCSP response: 1 (this value can change depending upon the number of responses).
```

---

**When to Use an OCSP Server**

OCSP may be more appropriate than CRLs if your PKI has any of the following characteristics:

- Real-time certificate revocation status is necessary. CRLs are updated only periodically and the latest CRL may not always be cached by the client device. For example, if a client does not yet have the latest CRL cached and a newly revoked certificate is being checked, that revoked certificate will successfully pass the revocation check.

- There are a large number of revoked certificates or multiple CRLs. Caching a large CRL consumes large portions of Cisco IOS memory and may reduce resources available to other processes.

- CRLs expire frequently, causing the CDP to handle a larger load of CRLs.

---

**When to Use Certificate-Based ACLs for Authorization or Revocation**

Certificates contain several fields that are used to determine whether a device or user is authorized to perform a specified action.

Because certificate-based ACLs are configured on the device, they do not scale well for large numbers of ACLs; however, certificate-based ACLs do provide very granular control of specific device behavior. Certificate-based ACLs are also leveraged by additional features to help determine when PKI components such as revocation, authorization, or a trustpoint should be used. They provide a general mechanism allowing users to select a specific certificate or a group of certificates that are being validated for either authorization or additional processing.

Certificate-based ACLs specify one or more fields within the certificate and an acceptable value for each specified field. You can specify which fields within a certificate should be checked and which values those fields may or may not have.

There are six logical tests for comparing the field with the value—equal, not equal, contains, does not contain, less than, and greater than or equal. If more than one field is specified within a single certificate-based ACL, the tests of all of the fields within the ACL must succeed to match the ACL. The same field may be specified multiple times within the same ACL. More than one ACL may be specified, and ACL will be processed in turn until a match is found or all of the ACLs have been processed.

**Ignore Revocation Checks Using a Certificate-Based ACL**

Certificate-based ACLs can be configured to instruct your router to ignore the revocation check and expired certificates of a valid peer. Thus, a certificate that meets the specified criteria can be accepted regardless of the validity period of the certificate, or if the certificate meets the specified criteria, revocation checking does
not have to be performed. You can also use a certificate-based ACL to ignore the revocation check when the communication with a AAA server is protected with a certificate.

**Ignoring Revocation Lists**

To allow a trustpoint to enforce CRLs except for specific certificates, enter the `match certificate` command with the `skip revocation-check` keyword. This type of enforcement is most useful in a hub-and-spoke configuration in which you also want to allow direct spoke-to-spoke connections. In pure hub-and-spoke configurations, all spokes connect only to the hub, so CRL checking is necessary only on the hub. For one spoke to communicate directly with another spoke, the `match certificate` command with the `skip revocation-check` keyword can be used for neighboring peer certificates instead of requiring a CRL on each spoke.

**Ignoring Expired Certificates**

To configure your router to ignore expired certificates, enter the `match certificate` command with the `allow expired-certificate` keyword. This command has the following purposes:

- If the certificate of a peer has expired, this command may be used to “allow” the expired certificate until the peer can obtain a new certificate.
- If your router clock has not yet been set to the correct time, the certificate of a peer will appear to be not yet valid until the clock is set. This command may be used to allow the certificate of the peer even though your router clock is not set.

---

**Note**

If Network Time Protocol (NTP) is available only via the IPSec connection (usually via the hub in a hub-and-spoke configuration), the router clock can never be set. The tunnel to the hub cannot be “brought up” because the certificate of the hub is not yet valid.

- “Expired” is a generic term for a certificate that is expired or that is not yet valid. The certificate has a start and end time. An expired certificate, for purposes of the ACL, is one for which the current time of the router is outside the start and end times specified in the certificate.

**Skipping the AAA Check of the Certificate**

If the communication with an AAA server is protected with a certificate, and you want to skip the AAA check of the certificate, use the `match certificate` command with the `skip authorization-check` keyword. For example, if a virtual private network (VPN) tunnel is configured so that all AAA traffic goes over that tunnel, and the tunnel is protected with a certificate, you can use the `match certificate` command with the `skip authorization-check` keyword to skip the certificate check so that the tunnel can be established.

The `match certificate` command and the `skip authorization-check` keyword should be configured after PKI integration with an AAA server is configured.

---

**Note**

If the AAA server is available only via an IPSec connection, the AAA server cannot be contacted until after the IPSec connection is established. The IPSec connection cannot be “brought up” because the certificate of the AAA server is not yet valid.
PKI Certificate Chain Validation

A certificate chain establishes a sequence of trusted certificates -- from a peer certificate to the root CA certificate. Within a PKI hierarchy, all enrolled peers can validate the certificate of one another if the peers share a trusted root CA certificate or a common subordinate CA. Each CA corresponds to a trustpoint.

When a certificate chain is received from a peer, the default processing of a certificate chain path continues until the first trusted certificate, or trustpoint, is reached. An administrator may configure the level to which a certificate chain is processed on all certificates including subordinate CA certificates.

Configuring the level to which a certificate chain is processed allows for the reauthentication of trusted certificates, the extension of a trusted certificate chain, and the completion of a certificate chain that contains a gap.

Reauthentication of Trusted Certificates

The default behavior is for the router to remove any trusted certificates from the certificate chain sent by the peer before the chain is validated. An administrator may configure certificate chain path processing so that the router does not remove CA certificates that are already trusted before chain validation, so that all certificates in the chain are re-authenticated for the current session.

Extending the Trusted Certificate Chain

The default behavior is for the router to use its trusted certificates to extend the certificate chain if there are any missing certificates in the certificate chain sent by the peer. The router will validate only certificates in the chain sent by the peer. An administrator may configure certificate chain path processing so that the certificates in the peer’s certificate chain and the router’s trusted certificates are validated to a specified point.

Completing Gaps in a Certificate Chain

An administrator may configure certificate chain processing so that if there is a gap in the configured Cisco IOS trustpoint hierarchy, certificates sent by the peer can be used to complete the set of certificates to be validated.

Note

If the trustpoint is configured to require parent validation and the peer does not provide the full certificate chain, the gap cannot be completed and the certificate chain is rejected and invalid.

Note

It is a configuration error if the trustpoint is configured to require parent validation and there is no parent trustpoint configured. The resulting certificate chain gap cannot be completed and the subordinate CA certificate cannot be validated. The certificate chain is invalid.

How to Configure Authorization and Revocation of Certificates for Your PKI

Configuring PKI Integration with a AAA Server

Perform this task to generate a AAA username from the certificate presented by the peer and specify which fields within a certificate should be used to build the AAA database username.
The following restrictions should be considered when using the `all` keyword as the subject name for the `authorization username` command:

- Some AAA servers limit the length of the username (for example, to 64 characters). As a result, the entire certificate subject name cannot be longer than the limitation of the server.
- Some AAA servers limit the available character set that may be used for the username (for example, a space [ ] and an equal sign [=] may not be acceptable). You cannot use the `all` keyword for a AAA server having such a character-set limitation.
- The `subject-name` command in the trustpoint configuration may not always be the final AAA subject name. If the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), serial number, or IP address of the router are included in a certificate request, the subject name field of the issued certificate will also have these components. To turn off the components, use the `fqdn`, `serial-number`, and `ip-address` commands with the `none` keyword.
- CA servers sometimes change the requested subject name field when they issue a certificate. For example, CA servers of some vendors switch the relative distinguished names (RDNs) in the requested subject names to the following order: CN, OU, O, L, ST, and C. However, another CA server might append the configured LDAP directory root (for example, O=cisco.com) to the end of the requested subject name.
- Depending on the tools you choose for displaying a certificate, the printed order of the RDNs in the subject name could be different. Cisco IOS software always displays the least significant RDN first, but other software, such as Open Source Secure Socket Layer (OpenSSL), does the opposite. Therefore, if you are configuring a AAA server with a full distinguished name (DN) (subject name) as the corresponding username, ensure that the Cisco IOS software style (that is, with the least significant RDN first) is used.

```
or
radius-server host hostname [key string]
```

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa authorization network listname [method]`
5. `crypto pki trustpoint name`
6. `enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]`
7. `revocation-check method`
8. `exit`
9. `authorization username subjectname subjectname`
10. `authorization list listname`
11. `tacacs-server host hostname [key string]`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device&gt;enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authorization network listname [method]</td>
<td>Sets the parameters that restrict user access to a network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa authorization network maxaaa group tacacs+</td>
<td>• method --Can be group radius, group tacacs+, or group group-name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> crypto pki trustpoint name</td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint msca</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]</td>
<td>Specifies the following enrollment parameters of the CA:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> &lt;br&gt;Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://caserver.myexample.com">http://caserver.myexample.com</a></td>
<td>• (Optional) The mode keyword specifies the registration authority (RA) mode, if your CA system provides an RA. By default, RA mode is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- or-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80</td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry period keyword and minutes argument specifies the period, in minutes, in which the router waits before sending the CA another certificate request. Valid values are from 1 to 60. The default is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry count keyword and number argument specifies the number of times a router will resend a certificate request when it does not receive a response from the previous request. Valid values are from 1 to 100. The default is 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The url argument is the URL of the CA to which your router should send certificate requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> An IPv6 address can be added to the http: enrollment method. For example: http://[ipv6-address]:80. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in brackets in the URL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>pem</code> keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>revocation-check method</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Checks the revocation status of a certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td>Sets parameters for the different certificate fields that are used to build the AAA username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>authorization username subjectname subjectname</code></td>
<td>The <code>subjectname</code> argument can be any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>- all — Entire distinguished name (subject name) of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# authorization username subjectname serialnumber</code></td>
<td>- <code>commonname</code> — Certification common name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>country</code> — Certificate country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>email</code> — Certificate e-mail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>ipaddress</code> — Certificate IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>locality</code> — Certificate locality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>organization</code> — Certificate organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>organizationalunit</code> — Certificate organizational unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>postalcode</code> — Certificate postal code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>serialnumber</code> — Certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>state</code> — Certificate state field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>streetaddress</code> — Certificate street address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>unstructuredname</code> — Certificate unstructured name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the AAA authorization list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>authorization list listname</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# authorization list maxaaa</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tacacs-server host hostname [key string]</code></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Purpose and Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# tacacs-server host 192.0.2.2 key a_secret_key</td>
<td>Specifies a RADIUS host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example:

```
radius-server host hostname [key string]
```

### Example:

```
Device(config)# radius-server host 192.0.2.1 key another_secret_key
```

---

### Troubleshooting Tips

To display debug messages for the trace of interaction (message type) between the CA and the router, use the `debug crypto pki transactions` command. (See the sample output, which shows a successful PKI integration with AAA server exchange and a failed PKI integration with AAA server exchange.)

#### Successful Exchange

```
Device# debug crypto pki transactions
Apr 22 23:15:03.695: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
Apr 22 23:15:03.955: CRYPTO_PKI: cert revocation status unknown.
Apr 22 23:15:03.955: CRYPTO_PKI: Certificate validated without revocation check
```

Each line that shows “CRYPTO_PKI_AAA” indicates the state of the AAA authorization checks. Each of the AAA AV pairs is indicated, and then the results of the authorization check are shown.

```
Apr 22 23:15:04.019: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization (ipsecca_script_aal3list, PK1AAA-L, <all>)
Apr 22 23:15:04.503: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
Apr 22 23:15:04.503: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-trustpoint" = "CA1")
Apr 22 23:15:04.503: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-serial" = "15DE")
Apr 22 23:15:04.503: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: authorization passed
Apr 22 23:12:30.327: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
```

#### Failed Exchange

```
Device# debug crypto pki transactions
Apr 22 23:11:13.703: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization -
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-trustpoint" = "CA1")
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-serial" = "233D")
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: parsed cert-lifetime-end as: 21:30:00
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: cert-lifetime-end is expired
```

In the above failed exchange, the certificate has expired.

---

### Configuring a Revocation Mechanism for PKI Certificate Status Checking

Perform this task to set up a CRL as the certificate revocation mechanism--CRLs or OCSP--that is used to check the status of certificates in a PKI.
The revocation-check Command

Use the `revocation-check` command to specify at least one method (OCSP, CRL, or skip the revocation check) that is to be used to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked. For multiple methods, the order in which the methods are applied is determined by the order specified via this command.

If your router does not have the applicable CRL and is unable to obtain one or if the OCSP server returns an error, your router will reject the peer’s certificate—unless you include the `none` keyword in your configuration. If the `none` keyword is configured, a revocation check will not be performed and the certificate will always be accepted.

Nonces and Peer Communications with OCSP Servers

When using OCSP, nonces, unique identifiers for OCSP requests, are sent by default during peer communications with your OCSP server. The use of nonces offers a more secure and reliable communication channel between the peer and OCSP server.

If your OCSP server does not support nonces, you may disable the sending of nonces. For more information, check your OCSP server documentation.

Before you begin

- Before issuing any client certificates, the appropriate settings on the server (such as setting the CDP) should be configured.
- When configuring an OCSP server to return the revocation status for a CA server, the OCSP server must be configured with an OCSP response signing certificate that is issued by that CA server. Ensure that the signing certificate is in the correct format, or the router will not accept the OCSP response. See your OCSP manual for additional information.

Note

- OCSP transports messages over HTTP, so there may be a time delay when you access the OCSP server.
- If the OCSP server depends on normal CRL processing to check revocation status, the same time delay that affects CRLs will also apply to OCSP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `crypto pki trustpoint name`
4. `ocsp url url`
5. `revocation-check method1 [method2 method3]`
6. `ocsp disable-nonce`
7. `exit`
8. `exit`
9. `show crypto pki certificates`
10. `show crypto pki trustpoints [status | label [status]]`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example: Enter your password if prompted.  
Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example: |
| **Step 3** | crypto pki trustpoint name | Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.  
Example: |
| **Step 4** | ocsp url url | The url argument specifies the URL of an OCSP server so that the trustpoint can check the certificate status. This URL overrides the URL of the OCSP server (if one exists) in the Authority Info Access (AIA) extension of the certificate. All certificates associated with a configured trustpoint are checked by the OCSP server. The URL can be a hostname, IPv4 address, or an IPv6 address.  
Example: |
| **Step 5** | revocation-check method1 [method2 method3] | Checks the revocation status of a certificate.  
Example: |
| **Step 6** | ocsp disable-nonce | (Optional) Specifies that a nonce, or an OCSP request unique identifier, will not be sent during peer communications with the OCSP server.  
Example: |
### Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings

Perform this task to specify a certificate-based ACL, to ignore revocation checks or expired certificates, to manually override the default CDP location, to manually override the OCSP server setting, to configure CRL caching, or to set session acceptance or rejection based on a certificate serial number, as appropriate.

#### Configuring Certificate-Based ACLs to Ignore Revocation Checks

To configure your router to use certificate-based ACLs to ignore revocation checks and expired certificates, perform the following steps:

- Identify an existing trustpoint or create a new trustpoint to be used when verifying the certificate of the peer. Authenticate the trustpoint if it has not already been authenticated. The router may enroll with this trustpoint if you want. Do not set optional CRLs for the trustpoint if you plan to use the `match certificate` command and `skip revocation-check` keyword.

- Determine the unique characteristics of the certificates that should not have their CRL checked and of the expired certificates that should be allowed.

- Define a certificate map to match the characteristics identified in the prior step.

- You can add the `match certificate` command and `skip revocation-check` keyword and the `match certificate command` and `allow expired-certificate` keyword to the trustpoint that was created or identified in the first step.
Manually Overriding CDPs in a Certificate

Certificate maps are checked even if the peer’s public key is cached. For example, when the public key is cached by the peer, and a certificate map is added to the trustpoint to ban a certificate, the certificate map is effective. This prevents a client with the banned certificate, which was once connected in the past, from reconnecting.

Manually Overriding CDPs in a Certificate

Users can override the CDPs in a certificate with a manually configured CDP. Manually overriding the CDPs in a certificate can be advantageous when a particular server is unavailable for an extended period of time. The certificate’s CDPs can be replaced with a URL or directory specification without reissuing all of the certificates that contain the original CDP.

Manually Overriding the OCSP Server Setting in a Certificate

Administrators can override the OCSP server setting specified in the Authority Information Access (AIA) field of the client certificate or set by the issuing the `ocsp-url` command. One or more OCSP servers may be manually specified, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates by the `match certificate override ocsp` command. The `match certificate override ocsp` command overrides the client certificate AIA field or the `ocsp-url` command setting if a client certificate is successfully matched to a certificate map during the revocation check.

Note

Only one OCSP server can be specified per client certificate.

Configuring CRL Cache Control

By default, a new CRL will be downloaded after the currently cached CRL expires. Administrators can either configure the maximum amount of time in minutes a CRL remains in the cache by issuing the `crl-cache delete-after` command or disable CRL caching by issuing the `crl-cache none` command. Only the `crl-cache delete-after` command or the `crl-cache none` command may be specified. If both commands are entered for a trustpoint, the last command executed will take effect and a message will be displayed.

Neither the `crl-cache none` command nor the `crl-cache delete-after` command affects the currently cached CRL. If you configure the `crl-cache none` command, all CRLs downloaded after this command is issued will not be cached. If you configure the `crl-cache delete-after` command, the configured lifetime will only affect CRLs downloaded after this command is issued.

This functionality is useful when a CA issues CRLs with no expiration date or with expiration dates days or weeks ahead.

Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control

A certificate serial number can be specified to allow a certificate validation request to be accepted or rejected by the trustpoint for a session. A session may be rejected, depending on certificate serial number session control, even if a certificate is still valid. Certificate serial number session control may be configured by using either a certificate map with the `serial-number` field or an AAA attribute, with the `cert-serial-not` command.

Using certificate maps for session control allows an administrator to specify a single certificate serial number. Using the AAA attribute allows an administrator to specify one or more certificate serial numbers for session control.
Before you begin

- The trustpoint should be defined and authenticated before attaching certificate maps to the trustpoint.
- The certificate map must be configured before the CDP override feature can be enabled or the `serial-number` command is issued.
- The PKI and AAA server integration must be successfully completed to use AAA attributes as described in “PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status.”

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. crypto pki certificate map label sequence-number
4. field-name match-criteria match-value
5. exit
6. crypto pki trustpoint name
7. Do one of the following:
   - crl-cache none
   - crl-cache delete-after time
8. match certificate certificate-map-label [allow expired-certificate | skip revocation-check | skip authorization-check]
9. match certificate certificate-map-label override cdp {url | directory} string
10. match certificate certificate-map-label override ocsp [trustpoint trustpoint-label] sequence-number url ocsp-url
11. exit
12. aaa new-model
13. aaa attribute list list-name
14. attribute type {name} {value}
15. exit
16. exit
17. show crypto pki certificates

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>crypto pki certificate map label sequence-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map Group 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defines values in a certificate that should be matched or not matched and enters ca-certificate-map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>field-name match-criteria match-value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-certificate-map)# subject-name co MyExample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies one or more certificate fields together with their matching criteria and the value to match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The field-name is one of the following case-insensitive name strings or a date:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• alt-subject-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• expires-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• issuer-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• serial-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• subject-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• unstructured-subject-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• valid-start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Date field format is dd mm yyyy hh:mm:ss or mmm dd yyyy hh:mm:ss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The match-criteria is one of the following logical operators:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• co — contains (valid only for name fields and serial number field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• eq — equal (valid for name, serial number, and date fields)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ge — greater than or equal (valid only for date fields)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• lt — less than (valid only for date fields)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• nc — does not contain (valid only for name fields and serial number field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ne — not equal (valid for name, serial number, and date fields)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The match-value is the name or date to test with the logical operator assigned by match-criteria.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>Use this command only when setting up a certificate-based ACL—not when setting up a certificate-based ACL to ignore revocation checks or expired certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-certificate-map)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>crypto pki trustpoint name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint Access2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint, given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• crl-cache none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• crl-cache delete-after time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl-cache none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl-cache delete-after 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Disables CRL caching completely for all CRLs associated with the trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The crl-cache none command does not affect any currently cached CRLs. All CRLs downloaded after this command is configured will not be cached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the maximum time CRLs will remain in the cache for all CRLs associated with the trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• time — The amount of time in minutes before the CRL is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The crl-cache delete-after command does not affect any currently cached CRLs. The configured lifetime will only affect CRLs downloaded after this command is configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>match certificate certificate-map-label [allow expired-certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate Group skip revocation-check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Associates the certificate-based ACL (that was defined via the crypto pki certificate map command) to a trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• certificate-map-label — Must match the label argument specified via the crypto pki certificate map command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• allowexpired-certificate — Ignores expired certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• skip revocation-check — Allows a trustpoint to enforce CRLs except for specific certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• skip authorization-check — Skips the AAA check of a certificate when PKI integration with an AAA server is configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td>match certificate certificate-map-label override cdp [url</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Manually overrides the existing CDP entries for a certificate with a URL or directory specification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate Group1 override cdp url <a href="http://server.cisco.com">http://server.cisco.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match certificate certificate-map-label override ocsp [trustpoint trustpoint-label] sequence-number url ocsp-url</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies an OCSP server, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates, and may be issued more than once to specify additional OCSP servers and client certificate settings including alternative PKI hierarchies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate mycertmapname override ocsp trustpoint mytp 15 url <a href="http://192.0.2.2">http://192.0.2.2</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **certificate-map-label** — A user-specified label that must match the `label` argument specified in a previously defined `crypto pki certificate map` command.
- **url** — Specifies that the certificate’s CDPs will be overridden with an HTTP or LDAP URL.
- **directory** — Specifies that the certificate’s CDPs will be overridden with an LDAP directory specification.
- **string** — The URL or directory specification.

**Note**  
Some applications may time out before all CDPs have been tried and will report an error message. The error message will not affect the router, and the Cisco IOS software will continue attempting to retrieve a CRL until all CDPs have been tried.

When the certificate matches a configured certificate map, the AIA field of the client certificate and any previously issued `ocsp url` command settings are overwritten with the specified OCSP server.

If no map-based match occurs, one of the following two cases will continue to apply to the client certificate:

- If OCSP is specified as the revocation method, the AIA field value will continue to apply to the client certificate.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit</td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong></td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong></td>
<td>aaa attribute list list-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config)# aaa attribute list crl</td>
<td>(Optional) Defines an AAA attribute list locally on a router and enters config-attr-list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong></td>
<td>attribute type {name}{value}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type cert-serial-not 6C4A</td>
<td>(Optional) Defines an AAA attribute type that is to be added to an AAA attribute list locally on a router. To configure certificate serial number session control, an administrator may specify a specific certificate in the <em>value</em> field to be accepted or rejected based on its serial number where <em>name</em> is set to <em>cert-serial-not</em>. If the serial number of the certificate matches the serial number specified by the attribute type setting, the certificate will be rejected. For a full list of available AAA attribute types, execute the <em>show aaa attributes</em> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 15</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit</td>
<td>Returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 16</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device(config)# exit</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 17</strong></td>
<td>show crypto pki certificates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Device# show crypto pki certificates</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the components of the certificates installed on the router if the CA certificate has been authenticated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

The following is a sample certificate. The OCSP-related extensions are shown using exclamation points.

Certificate:
   Data:
      Version: v3
      Serial Number:0x14
      Signature Algorithm:SHAwithRSA - 1.2.840.113549.1.1.4
      Issuer:CN=CA server,OU=PKI,O=Cisco Systems
      Validity:
         Not Before:Thursday, August 8, 2002 4:38:05 PM PST
         Not After:Tuesday, August 7, 2003 4:38:05 PM PST
      Subject:CN=OCSP server,OU=PKI,O=Cisco Systems
      Subject Public Key Info:
         Algorithm:RSA - 1.2.840.113549.1.1.1
         Public Key:
            Exponent:65537
            Public Key Modulus:(2048 bits):
               <snip>
      Extensions:
         Identifier:Subject Key Identifier - 2.5.29.14
            Critical:no
            Key Identifier:
               <snip>
         Identifier:Authority Key Identifier - 2.5.29.35
            Critical:no
            Key Identifier:
               <snip>
         ! Identifier:OCSP-NoCheck:- 1.3.6.1.5.5.7.48.1.5
            Critical:no
         ! Identifier:Extended Key Usage:- 2.5.29.37
            Critical:no
         ! Extended Key Usage:
            OCSPSigning
         ! Identifier:CRL Distribution Points - 2.5.29.31
            Critical:no
            Number of Points:1
            Point 0
               Distribution Point:
                  [URIName:ldap://CA-server/CN=CA server,OU=PKI,O=Cisco Systems]
         Signature:
            Algorithm:SHAwithRSA - 1.2.840.113549.1.1.4
            Signature:
               <snip>

The following example shows an excerpt of the running configuration output when adding a **match certificate override ocsp** command to the beginning of an existing sequence:

```
match certificate map3 override ocsp 5 url http://192.0.2.3/
show running-configuration
```

```
The following example shows an excerpt of the running configuration output when an existing `match certificate override ocsp` command is replaced and a trustpoint is specified to use an alternative PKI hierarchy:

```
match certificate map4 override ocsp trustpoint tp4 10 url http://192.0.2.4/newvalue
show running-configuration
  .  
    match certificate map3 override ocsp trustpoint tp3 5 url http://192.0.2.3/
    match certificate map1 override ocsp trustpoint tp1 10 url http://192.0.2.1/
    match certificate map4 override ocsp trustpoint tp4 10 url http://192.0.2.4/newvalue
    match certificate map2 override ocsp trustpoint tp2 15 url http://192.0.2.2/
```

**Troubleshooting Tips**

If you ignored revocation check or expired certificates, you should carefully check your configuration. Verify that the certificate map properly matches either the certificate or certificates that should be allowed or the AAA checks that should be skipped. In a controlled environment, try modifying the certificate map and determine what is not working as expected.

**Configuring Certificate Chain Validation**

Perform this task to configure the processing level for the certificate chain path of your peer certificates.

**Before you begin**

- The device must be enrolled in your PKI hierarchy.
- The appropriate key pair must be associated with the certificate.

**Note**

- A trustpoint associated with the root CA cannot be configured to be validated to the next level.

The `chain-validation` command is configured with the `continue` keyword for the trustpoint associated with the root CA, an error message will be displayed and the chain validation will revert to the default `chain-validation` command setting.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. crypto pki trustpoint name
4. chain-validation [{stop | continue} [parent-trustpoint]]
5. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

**Example:**

```markdown
Device> enable
```

- Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2**

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

```markdown
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3**

**crypto pki trustpoint** `name`

**Example:**

```markdown
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint ca-sub1
```

Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.

**Step 4**

**chain-validation** `[stop | continue] [parent-trustpoint]`

**Example:**

```markdown
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue ca-sub1
```

Configures the level to which a certificate chain is processed on all certificates including subordinate CA certificates.

- Use the `stop` keyword to specify that the certificate is already trusted. This is the default setting.
- Use the `continue` keyword to specify that the subordinate CA certificate associated with the trustpoint must be validated.
- The `parent-trustpoint` argument specifies the name of the parent trustpoint the certificate must be validated against.

**Step 5**

**exit**

**Example:**

```markdown
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
```

Returns to global configuration mode

---

### Configuration Examples for Setting Up Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

#### Configuration and Verification Examples for PKI AAA Authorization

This section provides configuration examples of PKI AAA authorizations:

#### Example: Router Configuration

The following `show running-config` command output shows the working configuration of a router that is set up to authorize VPN connections using the PKI Integration with AAA Server feature:

```bash
Device#show running-config
Building configuration...
!
```
version 12.3
!
hostname router7200
!
! aaa new-model
!
! aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
! aaa authentication login no_tacacs enable
! aaa authorization exec ACSLab group tacacs+
! aaa authorization network ACSLab group tacacs+
! aaa accounting exec ACSLab start-stop group tacacs+
! aaa accounting network default start-stop group ACSLab
! session-id common
!
ip domain name example.com
!
crypto pki trustpoint EM-CERT-SERV
! enrollment url http://192.0.2.33:80
! serial-number
! rsakeypair STOREVPN 2048
! auto-enroll
! authorization list ACSLab
!
crypto pki certificate chain EM-CERT-SERV
! certificate ca 01

Example: Debug of a Successful PKI AAA Authorization

The following `show debugging` command output shows a successful authorization using the PKI Integration with AAA Server feature:

Device#show debugging

General OS:
   TACACS access control debugging is on
AAA Authentication debugging is on
AAA Authorization debugging is on
Cryptographic Subsystem:
Crypto PKI Trans debugging is on
Device#
May 28 19:36:11.117: CRYPTO_PKI: Trust-Point EM-CERT-SERV picked up
May 28 19:36:12.789: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
May 28 19:36:12.813: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization (ACSLab, POD5.example.com, <all>)
May 28 19:36:12.813: AAA/BIND(00000042): Bind i/f
May 28 19:36:12.813: AAA/AUTHOR (0x42): Pick method list 'ACSLab'
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Queuing AAA authorization request 66 for processing
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: processing authorization request Id 66
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Protocol set to None ......Skipping
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Sending AV service-pki
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Authorization request created for 66(POD5.example.com)
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Using server 192.0.2.55
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS(00000042)/0/NB_WAIT/203A4628: Started 5 sec timeout
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS(00000042)/0/NB_WAIT: wrote entire 46 bytes request
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Would block while reading pak header
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/READ: read entire 12 header bytes (expect 27 bytes)
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/READ: read entire 39 bytes response
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/203A4628: Processing the reply packet
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS: Processed AV cert-application=all
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS: received authorization response for 66: PASS
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/READ: Read entire 12 header (re-read)
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/203A4628: Processed AV cert-application=all
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS: received authorization response for 66: PASS
May 28 19:36:12.817: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: authorization passed
Device#
Device#
May 28 19:36:18.681: %DUAL-5-NBRCHANGE: IP-EIGRP(0) 101: Neighbor 192.0.2.171 (Tunnel0) is up: new adjacency
Device#
Device# show crypto isakmp sa
dst  src  state  conn-id slot
192.0.2.22 192.0.2.102  QM_IDLE  84  0

Example: Debug of a Failed PKI AAA Authorization

The following `show debugging` command output shows that the router is not authorized to connect using VPN. The messages are typical of those that you might see in such a situation.

In this example, the peer username was configured as not authorized, by moving the username to a Cisco Secure ACS group called VPN_Router_Disabled in Cisco Secure ACS. The router, router7200.example.com, has been configured to check with a Cisco Secure ACS AAA server prior to establishing a VPN connection to any peer.

Device# show debugging

General OS:
TACACS access control debugging is on
AAA Authentication debugging is on
AAA Authorization debugging is on
Cryptographic Subsystem:
Crypto PKI Trans debugging is on
Device#
May 28 19:48:29.837: CRYPTO_PKI: Trust-Point EM-CERT-SERV picked up
Examples: Configuring a Revocation Mechanism

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used when specifying a revocation mechanism for your PKI:

```
Device# show crypto iskmp sa
  dst   src    state   conn-id   slot
  192.0.2.2 192.0.2.102 MM_KEY_EXCH     95  0
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
Example: Configuring an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure the router to use the OCSP server that is specified in the AIA extension of the certificate:

```
Device(config)#crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)#revocation-check ocsp
```

Example: Specifying a CRL and Then an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure the router to download the CRL from the CDP. If the CRL is unavailable, the OCSP server that is specified in the AIA extension of the certificate will be used. If both options fail, certificate verification will also fail.

```
Device(config)#crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)#revocation-check crl ocsp
```

Example: Specifying an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure your router to use the OCSP server at the HTTP URL “http://myocspserver:81.” If the server is down, the revocation check will be ignored.

```
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url http://myocspserver:81
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check ocsp none
```

Example: Disabling Nonces in Communications with the OCSP Server

The following example shows communications when a nonce, or a unique identifier for the OCSP request, is disabled for communications with the OCSP server:

```
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url http://myocspserver:81
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check ocsp none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp disable-nonce
```

Example: Configuring a Hub Router at a Central Site for Certificate Revocation Checks

The following example shows a hub router at a central site that is providing connectivity for several branch offices to the central site.

The branch offices are also able to communicate directly with each other using additional IPSec tunnels between the branch offices.

The CA publishes CRLs on an HTTP server at the central site. The central site checks CRLs for each peer when setting up an IPSec tunnel with that peer.

The example does not show the IPSec configuration--only the PKI-related configuration is shown.

**Home Office Hub Configuration**

```
crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
serial-number none
fqdn none
ip-address none
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches) 761
subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Central VPN Gateway
revocation-check crl

Central Site Hub Router

Device# show crypto ca certificate
Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number: 2F62BE14000000000CA0
Certificate Usage: General Purpose
Issuer:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
  Name: Central VPN Gateway
  cn=Central VPN Gateway
  o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
  http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
  start date: 00:43:26 GMT Sep 26 2003
  end date: 00:53:26 GMT Sep 26 2004
  renew date: 00:00:00 GMT Jan 1 1970
Associated Trustpoints: VPN-GW
CA Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number: 1244325DE0369880465F977A18F61CA8
Certificate Usage: Signature
Issuer:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
  http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
  start date: 22:19:29 GMT Oct 31 2002
  end date: 22:27:27 GMT Oct 31 2017
Associated Trustpoints: VPN-GW

Trustpoint on the Branch Office Router

crypto pki trustpoint home-office
  enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
  serial-number none
  fqdn none
  ip-address none
  subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Branch 1
  revocation-check crl

A certificate map is entered on the branch office router.

Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
branch1(config)# crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
branch1(ca-certificate-map)#

The output from the show certificate command on the central site hub router shows that the certificate was issued by the following:
cn=Central Certificate Authority
o=Home Office Inc

These two lines are combined into one line using a comma (,) to separate them, and the original lines are added as the first criteria for a match.

Device(ca-certificate-map)# issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
!The above line wrapped but should be shown on one line with the line above it.

The same combination is done for the subject name from the certificate on the central site router (note that the line that begins with “Name:” is not part of the subject name and must be ignored when creating the certificate map criteria). This is the subject name to be used in the certificate map.

cn=Central VPN Gateway
o=Home Office Inc

Device(ca-certificate-map)# subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc

Now the certificate map is added to the trustpoint that was configured earlier.

Device(ca-certificate-map)# crypto pki trustpoint home-office
Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate central-site skip revocation-check
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# exit

The configuration is checked (most of configuration is not shown).

Device# write term
!Many lines left out
.
.
crypto pki trustpoint home-office
    enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
    serial-number none
    fqdn none
    ip-address none
    subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Branch 1
    revocation-check crl
    match certificate central-site skip revocation-check
!

crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
    issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
    subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc
!many lines left out

Note that the issuer-name and subject-name lines have been reformatted to make them consistent for later matching with the certificate of the peer.

If the branch office is checking the AAA, the trustpoint will have lines similar to the following:

crypto pki trustpoint home-office
    auth list allow_list
    auth user subj commonname

After the certificate map has been defined as was done above, the following command is added to the trustpoint to skip AAA checking for the central site hub.
match certificate central-site skip authorization-check

In both cases, the branch site router has to establish an IPSec tunnel to the central site to check CRLs or to contact the AAA server. However, without the `match certificate` command and `central-site skip authorization-check` (argument and keyword), the branch office cannot establish the tunnel until it has checked the CRL or the AAA server. (The tunnel will not be established unless the `match certificate` command and `central-site skip authorization-check` argument and keyword are used.)

The `match certificate` command and `allow expired-certificate` keyword would be used at the central site if the router at a branch site had an expired certificate and it had to establish a tunnel to the central site to renew its certificate.

**Trustpoint on the Central Site Router**

crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
serial-number none
fqdn none
ip-address none
subject-name o=Home Office Inc, cn=Central VPN Gateway
revocation-check crl

**Trustpoint on the Branch 1 Site Router**

```
Device# show crypto ca certificate
Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number: 2F62BE14000000000CA0
Certificate Usage: General Purpose
Issuer:
 cn=Central Certificate Authority
 o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
 Name: Branch 1 Site
 cn=Branch 1 Site
 o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
 http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
 start date: 00:43:26 GMT Sep 26 2003
 end date: 00:53:26 GMT Oct 3 2003
 renew date: 00:00:00 GMT Jan 1 1970
Associated Trustpoints: home-office
```

```
CA Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number: 1244325DE0369880465F977A18F61CA8
Certificate Usage: Signature
Issuer:
 cn=Central Certificate Authority
 o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
 cn=Central Certificate Authority
 o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
 http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
 start date: 22:19:29 GMT Oct 31 2002
 end date: 22:27:27 GMT Oct 31 2017
Associated Trustpoints: home-office
```
A certificate map is entered on the central site router.

Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map branch1 10
! The above line wrapped but should be part of the line above it.
Device(config)# issuer-name cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
Device(config)# subject-name eq cn=Brahcn 1 Site, o=home office inc

The certificate map is added to the trustpoint.

Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
Device(config)# match certificate branch1 allow expired-certificate
Device(config)# exit

Router (config) #
exit

The configuration should be checked (most of the configuration is not shown).

Device# write term
! many lines left out
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
  enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
  serial-number none
  fqdn none
  ip-address none
  subject-name o=Home Office Inc, cn=Central VPN Gateway
  revocation-check crl
  match certificate branch1 allow expired-certificate
  !
Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
  issuer-name co=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
  subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc
  ! many lines left out

The match certificate command and branch1 allow expired-certificate (argument and keyword) and the certificate map should be removed as soon as the branch router has a new certificate.

### Examples: Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used when specifying a CRL cache control setting or certificate serial number session control:

#### Configuring CRL Cache Control

The following example shows how to disable CRL caching for all CRLs associated with the CA1 trustpoint:

crypto pki trustpoint CA1
  enrollment url http://CA1:80
  ip-address FastEthernet0/0
  crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
  revocation-check crl
  crl-cache none

The current CRL is still cached immediately after executing the example configuration shown above:

Device# show crypto pki crls
When the current CRL expires, a new CRL is then downloaded to the router at the next update. The `crl-cache none` command takes effect and all CRLs for the trustpoint are no longer cached; caching is disabled. You can verify that no CRL is cached by executing the `show crypto pki crls` command. No output will be shown because there are no CRLs cached.

The following example shows how to configure the maximum lifetime of 2 minutes for all CRLs associated with the CA1 trustpoint:

```
crypto pki trustpoint CA1
  enrollment url http://CA1:80
  ip-address FastEthernet0/0
  crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
  revocation-check crl
  crl-cache delete-after 2
```

The current CRL is still cached immediately after executing the example configuration above for setting the maximum lifetime of a CRL:

```
Device# show crypto pki crls
```

When the current CRL expires, a new CRL is downloaded to the router at the next update and the `crl-cache delete-after` command takes effect. This newly cached CRL and all subsequent CRLs will be deleted after a maximum lifetime of 2 minutes. You can verify that the CRL will be cached for 2 minutes by executing the `show crypto pki crls` command. Note that the NextUpdate time is 2 minutes after the LastUpdate time.

```
Device# show crypto pki crls
```

Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control

The following example shows the configuration of certificate serial number session control using a certificate map for the CA1 trustpoint:

```
crypto pki trustpoint CA1
  enrollment url http://CA1
  chain-validation stop
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)
crl query ldap://ldap_server
revocation-check crl
match certificate crl
!
crypto pki certificate map crl 10
  serial-number co 279d

Note
If the match-criteria value is set to eq (equal) instead of co (contains), the serial number must match the certificate map serial number exactly, including any spaces.

The following example shows the configuration of certificate serial number session control using AAA attributes. In this case, all valid certificates will be accepted if the certificate does not have the serial number “4ACA.”

crypto pki trustpoint CA1
  enrollment url http://CA1
  ip-address FastEthernet0/0
crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
  revocation-check crl
  aaa new-model
  !
  aaa attribute list crl
  attribute-type aaa-cert-serial-not 4ACA
The server log shows that the certificate with the serial number “4ACA” was rejected. The certificate rejection is shown using exclamation points.

. .
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: Trust-Point CA1 picked up
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: locked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 1
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: unlocked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 0
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: locked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 1
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: validation path has 1 certs
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: Using CA1 to validate certificate
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: checking AAA authorization (CRL, PKIAAA-L1, <all>)
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: pre-authorization chain validation status (0x4)
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: AAA/AUTHOR (0x21): Pick method list 'CRL'
. .
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: reply attribute ("cert-trustpoint" = "CA1")
!
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: reply attribute ("cert-serial-not" = "4ACA")
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: cert-serial doesn't match ("4ACA" != "4ACA")
!
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI AAA: post-authorization chain validation status (0x7)
!
Dec 3 04:24:39.175: CRYPTO_PKI: chain cert was anchored to trustpoint CA1, and chain validation result was: CRYPTO_PKI_CERT_NOT_AUTHORIZED
!
Examples: Configuring Certificate Chain Validation

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used to specify the level of certificate chain processing for your device certificates:

Configuring Certificate Chain Validation from Peer to Root CA

In the following configuration example, all of the certificates will be validated—the peer, SubCA11, SubCA1, and RootCA certificates.

```
crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation stop
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair RootCA

crypto pki trustpoint SubCA1
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation continue RootCA
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair SubCA1

crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation continue SubCA1
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair SubCA11
```

Configuring Certificate Chain Validation from Peer to Subordinate CA

In the following configuration example, the following certificates will be validated—the peer and SubCA1 certificates.

```
crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation stop
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair RootCA

crypto pki trustpoint SubCA1
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation continue RootCA
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair SubCA1

crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation continue SubCA1
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair SubCA11
```

Configuring Certificate Chain Validation Through a Gap

In the following configuration example, SubCA1 is not in the configured Cisco IOS hierarchy but is expected to have been supplied in the certificate chain presented by the peer.
If the peer supplies the SubCA1 certificate in the presented certificate chain, the following certificates will be validated—the peer, SubCA1, and SubCA1 certificates. If the peer does not supply the SubCA1 certificate in the presented certificate chain, the chain validation will fail.

```plaintext
crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation stop
  revocation-check none
rsakeypair RootCA
crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
  enrollment terminal
  chain-validation continue RootCA
  revocation-check none
rsakeypair SubCA11
```

### Additional References

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of PKI, including RSA keys, certificate enrollment, and CAs</td>
<td>“Cisco IOS PKI Overview: Understanding and Planning a PKI” module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA key generation and deployment</td>
<td>“Deploying RSA Keys Within a PKI” module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate enrollment: supported methods, enrollment profiles, configuration tasks</td>
<td>“Configuring Certificate Enrollment for a PKI” module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS certificate server overview information and configuration tasks</td>
<td>“Configuring and Managing a Cisco IOS Certificate Server for PKI Deployment” module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">https://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature Information for Certificate Authorization and Revocation

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 96: Feature Information for PKI Certificate Authorization and Revocation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PKI Certificate Authorization and Revocation</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>The feature was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>